Conservation of this volume was made possible through the generous support of PETER WARRIAN and the Friends of the Library.

PIMS
PONTIFICAL INSTITUTE OF MEDIAEVAL STUDIES
RERUM BRITANNICARUM MEDIÆVAE
SCRIPTORES,

OR

CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF GREAT BRITAIN
AND IRELAND

DURING

THE MIDDLE AGES.
On the 26th of January 1857, the Master of the Rolls submitted to the Treasury a proposal for the publication of materials for the History of this Country from the Invasion of the Romans to the Reign of Henry VIII.

The Master of the Rolls suggested that these materials should be selected for publication under competent editors without reference to periodical or chronological arrangement, without mutilation or abridgment, preference being given, in the first instance, to such materials as were most scarce and valuable.

He proposed that each chronicle or historical document to be edited should be treated in the same way as if the editor were engaged on an Editio Princeps; and for this purpose the most correct text should be formed from an accurate collation of the best MSS.

To render the work more generally useful, the Master of the Rolls suggested that the editor should give an account of the MSS. employed by him, of their age and their peculiarities; that he should add to the work a brief account of the life and times of the author, and any remarks necessary to explain the chronology; but no other note or comment was to be allowed, except what might be necessary to establish the correctness of the text.
The works to be published in octavo, separately, as they were finished; the whole responsibility of the task resting upon the editors, who were to be chosen by the Master of the Rolls with the sanction of the Treasury.

The Lords of Her Majesty's Treasury, after a careful consideration of the subject, expressed their opinion in a Treasury Minute, dated February 9, 1857, that the plan recommended by the Master of the Rolls "was well calculated for the accomplishment of this important national object, in an effectual and satisfactory manner, within a reasonable time, and provided proper attention be paid to economy, in making the detailed arrangements, without unnecessary expense."

They expressed their approbation of the proposal that each Chronicle and historical document should be edited in such a manner as to represent with all possible correctness the text of each writer, derived from a collation of the best MSS., and that no notes should be added, except such as were illustrative of the various readings. They suggested, however, that the preface to each work should contain, in addition to the particulars proposed by the Master of the Rolls, a biographical account of the author, so far as authentic materials existed for that purpose, and an estimate of his historical credibility and value.

Rolls House,

December 1857.
POLYCHRONICON RANULPHI HIGINDEN
MONACHI CESTRENSIS;

TOGETHER WITH THE

ENGLISH TRANSLATIONS OF JOHN TREvisa
AND OF AN UNKNOWN WRITER OF
THE FIFTEENTH CENTURY.

EDITED
BY
CHURCHILL BABINGTON, B.D., F.L.S., ETC.,
DISNEY PROFESSOR OF ARCHAEOLOGY IN THE UNIVERSITY OF CAMBRIDGE; RECTOR
OF COCKFIELD, SUFFOLK; LATE FELLOW OF ST. JOHN'S COLLEGE.

VOL. II.

PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHORITY OF THE LORDS COMMISSIONERS OF HER MAJESTY'S
TREASURY, UNDER THE DIRECTION OF THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS.

LONDON:
LONGMANS, GREEN, AND CO.
1869.
CONTENTS.

Introduction - - - - vii

Summary of Contents - - - xl

Polychronicon Ranulphi Higden, Liber Primus,
Cap. xxxix. - - - 2

—— Liber Secundus - - - 174
INTRODUCTION.
INTRODUCTION.

THE remainder of Higden's First Book, or Map of the World, is taken up with an account of England, and this is given in much more detail than any other, occupying in fact nearly a third of the whole book (capp. xxxix.-lx.).

In the thirty-ninth chapter he announces the ten divisions under which he proposes to treat of England, viz., its name, site, productions, marvels, principal divisions, adjacent islands, roads, rivers, cities, and counties. He then enlarges on the first of these, and notes that the island was originally called Albion, a name which he connects with the whiteness of its marine rocks, and afterwards Britannia, so called, according to Higden, from Brutus, the grandson of Æneas, in accordance with the Trojanising notions which held our medieval historians spell-bound. Upon the Saxons or Angles conquering it, it obtained the name of Anglia, for which Higden gives more than one derivation, not forgetting the jocularly pious etymology of Pope Gregory, recorded.

1 Dr. Liangard points out that Nennius says he extracted his history of Brutus "ex veteribus "scriptis veterum nostrorum;" which, as he observes, makes it older than Geoffrey or Tysidio. Hist. of Eng. c.i. p. 14, note (6th ed., 1854). Some accounts make Brutus the great grandson of Æneas. See p. 442 of this volume.

2 He refers to Isid. Hist. Etym. lib. xv., as deriving Anglia "ab angulo orbis." The passage does not occur in that book, and I much doubt if Isidore gives any such derivation anywhere. But Higden's citations are so frequently inaccurate that I am compelled to say of his quotations and references generally, Current lectur. (See vol. i. p. xxiii. note.) With regard to the derivation itself, Bede has led the way to it, who speaks of the native country of the Angli as "illa patria, quae "Anglus dicitur." Hist. Eccl. lib. i. c. 15. According to a late Italian tradition, Anglus was a son of Ascanius. Très de Nennio, et de Glypt. Méd. conf. et élis. en Italic, vol. i. p. 2, Paris, 1834.
in Bede's well-known story.\(^1\) He refers also to Solinus (c. 22), as well as to Alfred of Beverley,\(^2\) for the importance of Britain, who speak of it as in a manner "another world."

Higden next proceeds to speak of the site and dimensions of Britain in his fortieth chapter, and begins by defining its position nearly in the words of Pliny (lib. iv. c. 30, ed. Hard.\(^3\)), to whom, as well as to Bede, he also refers for the duration of the longest day in Britain.\(^4\) The length and breadth of the island are set down according to the estimates of Solinus and Alfred of Beverley,\(^5\) and the circumference according to that of Bede; thus giving eight hundred miles for its length from the Land's End to the extremity of Caithness; two hundred miles for its breadth, measuring from St. David's to Yarmouth; and between three and four thousand for its outline.\(^6\)

The natural productions of the island are enumerated in the forty-first chapter. It is to be regretted that Higden, instead of stating facts which must have come within his own knowledge, should have done little else but remand us to the classical authors Pliny and Solinus, and to earlier medieval writers, as Isidore, Bede, William of Malmesbury, Alfred of Beverley, and Henry of Huntingdon. There is little or nothing in their accounts of the animals, plants, and minerals of England to call for

---

\(^1\) Lib. ii. c. 1. (Not lib. i., as Higden says.)
\(^2\) I have failed to find the passages quoted.
\(^3\) The MSS. both of the text and versions refer to lib. ii. c. 77, and this reference has been consequently allowed to stand in the edited text (p. 6). Higden does in fact quote from this book and chapter later on, p. 8, where he only gives Plinius.
\(^4\) Pliny (lib. ii. c. 77) makes it xvi. hours, and so does his copyist, Marcellinus Capella (see Haydonin's note); but Higden makes Pliny as well as Bede (lib. i. c. 1, not c. 11) say xviii. The MSS. of Bede appear to agree in xviii.
\(^5\) Solinus, c. 22. I cannot discover the citation from Alfred in his Annals.
\(^6\) The true greatest length is about 587 miles, and the true greatest breadth about 360 miles; the outline scarcely admits of satisfactory measurement. Bede excludes the tongues of the longer promontories.
INTRODUCTION.

IX

remarks here.¹ Higden himself remarks principally on the richness of our ores, marbles, and other minerals; of our exports of wool to Flanders, of iron and lead to Gascony, of salt to Ireland, and of white metal (so Trevisa renders era nīvea) to all Europe.

An enumeration of some of the marvels of England Marvels. follow, which may be passed over lightly (c. xliii.). They are principally derived from Alfred of Beverley,² Giraldrus Cambrensis, and William of Malmesbury. Among the marvels are recounted various petrifying springs and windy caverns, while others are of a magical or supernatural character in connexion with lakes, mountains, and caves.³ In conclusion it is observed that in no country are there more bodies of saints preserved from corruption than in England, as instanced in St. Ethelreda, St. Edmund, St. Elphege, and St. Cuthbert.

In his forty-third chapter Higden gives an account of the principal parts of Britain, which are England, Wales, divisions.

¹ The assertion of Isidore, which however I cannot find in his Origines, that wolves were scarce in Britain in his time, i.e. early in the seventh century, is somewhat surprising, when we remember how numerous they afterwards became in the reigns of Athelstan and Edgar. In Higden's own age they were, perhaps, scarcely extinct, in spite of the vigorous war of extermination waged against them by Edward the First.

² Alf. Bev. Ann. lib. i. p. 6. (Ed. Hearne.) The names of places which are given here and elsewhere, require more topographical knowledge than I can claim to identify with their modern sites in all cases. One of these is Peccum or Pectum (p. 22), for the identity of c and t in the MSS. becomes, in cases like this, very embarrassing. As MS. C. has Pekkum, I had supposed in the note that some Pekkham was intended, and there are three places bearing this name in Surrey and Kent. But in Henry of Huntington, lib. i. (p. 694, Mon. Hist. Brit.) for Peccum we have "in Monte qui vocatur Pece," which strongly suggests the Peak of Derbyshire to be meant; and I have now very little doubt that this is so (see Mr. Dimock's glossary to Giraldrus Cambrensis, vol. vi. p. 232). In the same place mention is made of one Chedehole, or Sherdehoole, which only tends to mislead; but in Henry of Huntington the word is written Chederhole or Chedernhole, which leaves little doubt that at Cheddar in Somersetshire is to be sought the cavern described.

³ The observation of Alfred that it is not clearly understood how or for what purpose Stonehenge was constructed is even now scarcely antiquated.
and Scotland. The ancient names of these he derives from three sons of Brutus; Loegria (England) from Locrinus; Cambria (Wales) from Camber; Albania (Scotland) from Albanactus. With the exception of a small extract from Bede's first book, Higden quotes no authorities in this chapter. The fountain-head however of much of what he says is no doubt Geoffrey of Monmouth. The chapter ends with a somewhat lengthy account of Offa's Dyke, which long separated England from Wales. We learn at the same time from the concluding sentence that in Higden's time Englishmen and Welshmen were found living together on both sides of the dyke, more particularly in Cheshire, Shropshire, and Herefordshire.

He then proceeds to give some account (c. xlv.) of the principal islands adjacent to Britain, viz., the isles of Wight, Anglesey, and Man, which are described from Bede, Giraldus Cambrensis; a few observations about the Isle of Thanet being added from Bede. He observes, apparently from his own knowledge, that various superstitions (as selling wind to sailors) prevailed in the Isle of Man.

Higden's account of the Four great Royal Roads (c. xlv.) is more important, and has given rise to a good deal of discussion. He tells us, from Geoffrey of Monmouth, that Molmutius, king of the Britons, protected ploughs, temples of gods, and city roads by the privilege of refuge; and that in after times his son Belinus defined and reconstructed four royal roads, which should

---

1 Bed. Hist. Eccl. i. 3, ii. 9, iv. 16 (not 15, as Higden says).
3 The reference is to lib. ii., which is false. Lib. i. c. 25, seems to be intended; but Higden has added sundry absurdities, which Bede has not.
4 Geoffrey does not mention the names of the roads; his first road was probably the Foss road; "the second, there can be doubt," says Dr. Guest, "was meant for the Roman road which passed from South Wales through Monmouthshire to Gloucester, and thence to Winchester and Southampton." It is impossible to fix the identity of the others, as he thinks, beyond dispute. See Archaeological Journal, No. 54.
INTRODUCTION.

have this privilege exclusively.¹ Higden defines these four to be, the Foss, Watling-street, Ermynghe-street, and Rykenild-street, and he gives the course of them all. Dr. Guest speaks of Higden's account of the two roads, the Watling-street and the Foss, as (with some exceptions) accurate and important, and observes that "the minute details into which he has entered, more particularly with respect to the Watling-street, are extremely valuable." About the other roads, Erming-street and Rykenild-street, there is some difficulty and uncertainty, and the reader is referred to Dr. Guest's paper for a learned disquisition upon them.²

Passing lightly over his account of the courses of the three famous rivers, the Thames, the Severn, and the Humber (c. xlvii), as well as their political significance, taken principally from Alfred of Beverley and William of Malmesbury, we arrive at his enumeration and description of the ancient cities of Britain (capp. xlvii. and xlviii.). The sources from which he derived his information are not always set down;³ but some parts of his account are taken from William of Malmesbury's work, De Pontificibus; from the Itinerary of Giraldus, and from Bede's Ecclesiastical History. He quotes likewise from Geoffrey of Monmouth and Alfred of Beverley. Upon the whole these chapters contain a good deal of interesting matter, especially what relates to the changes of names which certain towns and cities underwent.⁴

¹ The privilege was known in Norman times as the King's peace. Gal. Mon. lib. ii. c. 17; lib. iii. c. 5.
² It deserves attention that for Rikenildstrete one MS. of Higden has Hikenildstrete. It seems probable that Higden himself made a confusion between the Roman road called Rykenild-street, passing through Warwickshire and Staffordshire (whose course may be seen in the map of Britannia Romana in the Monumeta Historica of Petrie) and the British trackway or Icknield-street, passing from Old Sarum towards Bury St. Edmund's.
³ For his account of Gloucester, Lincoln, and Leicester (pp. 60, 62.) see Gal. Mon. iv. 15 ; ix. 3 ; ii. 11.
⁴ His statements, however, must not be received implicitly. Thus he makes Brutus build a city Tri-novantum, which L:d afterwards called Caerlud; and the Angels,
towus described are Canterbury, Winchester, Bath, Gloucester, Shrewsbury, Nottingham, Lincoln, York, Edinburgh, Alcluaid (for whose identification the reader

still later, termed it Lundene; a form changed by the Normans into Loundres, and called in Latin Londonia (p. 56). It may be that Trinovantum or Augustia Trinobantium occupied the site of London; this opinion has been maintained, though not without doubts, by various scholars, from C. Stephens to our own time; but it was a great mistake in Higden to suppose that London is an English name, seeing that it occurs in slightly varied forms in Tacitus, Ptolemy, Eumenius, and Ammianus Marcellinus, as well as on Roman coins of the fourth century. But I now perceive that he was misled by Geoffrey of Monmouth (iii. 20), and Alfred of Beverley (i. p. 12). His account of Canterbury (p. 56) is substantially correct (setting aside Rudhadubras and his Caerkent), but Dorovernis, not Dorobernia, is the earliest medieval or English form of the word, as coins and charters prove beyond doubt (Numism. Chron. vol. iv. p. 120). Dorobernia was in use A.D. 790, as appears by a charter so dated, and continued so to be till about the middle of the tenth century, when we find Cantwara occurring on coins of Edgar. “Usus " que nunc Cantuaria vocatur,” says Lanfranc (Will. Malm. Gest. Pont. i. p. 207. Sav.), “antiquis " temporibus ab ipsius terra in- " colis Dorobernia vocabatur.” At what time however it first came into use for the name of Dover it would be interesting to know. It is, of course, older than Higden, but it may be suspected to be later than the Conquest. Florence of Worcester, at the beginning of the twelfth century, writes, “Doroberniam, id est, Cantuariorum " civitatem,” (Chron. s., A.D. 851), as though Dorobernia was then obsolete as a name of Canterbury; he calls Dover sometimes Dovera, sometimes Dovernia (see Mon. Hist. Brit., Index), as if no other place in Kent then bore such a name. Dorobernia is used for Dover by Henry of Huntingdon, lib. i. (p. 694. B. in Mon. Hist. Brit.), and Alfred of Bevcrley (p. 120). Dover, Dovera, Dofrana, and Dofræ are forms which occur on coins of Ethelred II. and Canute; and we have also Dofrænum and Dofræ on those of Harold I. and William I. In the 14th century it was often called Dovorria. Dugd. Monast. iv. pp. 530–532, ed. Lond. 1833. In the Itinerary of Antoninus Canterbury and Dover are named Doverumen and Dubris respectively; so that the medieval or English names are, in fact, only modifications of the Roman names. Again, in what Higden says of Lincoln (p. 62), it is manifest that he was not aware that in Roman times it was called Lindium, before it was changed in medieval times into Linseedium. It would take up too much space to pursue Higden’s topography farther. One of the more important sections is that which relates to Chester, which is in good part original, though to some extent taken from Gir. Camb. (Hin. Camb., lib. ii. c. 11.) The supposed tomb of the emperor Henry IV.
may consult Higden himself\(^1\), Carlisle, Hexham, Caerleon, and Chester, besides brief allusions to a few others.\(^2\)

With regard to the enumeration of the British names of towns with which the forty-seventh chapter opens, which is taken from Alfred of Beverley,\(^3\) there can be little doubt that the fountain head of some of the information is the sixty-seventh chapter of Nennius.

Higden’s account of the shires of England (c. xlix.) is professedly taken from Alfred of Beverley,\(^4\) but there are many things in Higden of which Alfred says nothing. His enumeration moreover of the different laws which prevailed at different times and places (c. 1.) is to some slight extent borrowed from the same source, though without acknowledgment. Higden would seem to have added much from some legal authority which he does not name.\(^5\) The law terms which occur in the laws of

---

\(^1\) In the *Monumenta Historica Britannica* (Index) and in A. K. Johnson’s *Dictionary of Geography* it is identified with Dumbarton. Higden evidently inclines to Aldeburgh, in Yorkshire (p. 67, where he refers to Gal. Mon. iii. 17), but thinks Bede means some place close to Carlisle, which he assuredly does not. Higden has made a confusion between the two Roman walls.

\(^2\) It may be here observed that the orthography of medieval names of persons and places differs a good deal in the various MSS. of Higden; their variations have been conscientiously noticed, but the contractions which abound, and the similarity of certain letters to one another (particularly c and t, k and n) increase an editor’s difficulties considerably. I am now convinced that Ebrancus, which I have edited (p. 64, &c.), following Gale, should be Ebrancus. Possibly Mevania (p. 36, where see note) should be changed into Menavia; see Hearne on Alfr. Bev., p. 154.

\(^3\) *Annal*, lib. i. p. 9.

\(^4\) See his *Annals*, lib. vi. p. 97.

\(^5\) In the notes I had supposed that the *Chronicon* of John Brompton was the fountain-head of his account, being misled by Cave, who considers (*Hist. Lit.* s. v.) that Brompton wrote about A.D. 1198. But it
Edward the Confessor, and which are explained by Higden, vary somewhat in the different MSS., and I am happy to acknowledge the kind assistance which Dr. Bosworth has rendered me in editing the text of some of them.\(^1\)

The fifty-first chapter, on the succession of kingdoms in Britain, is taken, according to most MSS.,\(^2\) from Alfred of Beverley. It gives an epitome of the forms of government from Brutus to Julius Cæsar, from Cæsar to Septimius Severus, thence to Gratian; and proceeds at length to describe the cessation of Roman power and the foundation and durations of the kingdoms of the Heptarchy. The history and chronology are not always accurate, but it is an interesting chapter nevertheless.\(^3\)

\(^1\) "I have," (he writes), "a great objection to conjectural readings, but I think you will be safe in reading self finde in warde, p. 94, 13, c. (see Note 18, D., pelliandinward)." It will then read in Anglo-Saxon: "In-fangen leof self finde in warde, *i.e.*, *a thief* *taken within his own ward or lordship*; or as in your text, 'id est, infra summ [attachia-mentum] capere reum.' I think that in your MSS. the A.S. *r* is probably written *p* or *p*, easily taken for *l* or *p*.

\(^2\) Both versions however as well as MS. B., omit the reference. The words do not occur, I believe, in Alfred; the substance occurs more or less in every chronicle of England.

\(^3\) It is hardly credible that Higden should mean that all the Roman emperors who were rulers of Britain, from Septimius Severus down to Gratian, were of British extraction; but I scarcely know how else to interpret his words: Reges tamen habuit ex seipsa a Severo quoque usque ad ultimum municipem Gratianum. The usurper Gratian here meant, who died A.D. 407, was indeed a native of England (Orosius, vii. 40.), and some claim Magnus Maximus to be one also; but Higden's assertion is beyond doubt erroneous. Carausius, who, as well as Allectus, kept exclusive possession of Britain in spite of the other emperors, Dioclesian and
Higden devotes no less than six chapters to the history of episcopal sees in England. He begins by alluding to the well-known story of the three archiepiscopal sees, (London, York, and Caerleon,) and the twenty-eight episcopal sees in the time of Lucius, whose occupants were called flamens, and refers to Alfred of Beverley as his authority; but the original historian of this and of many more legendary accounts transferred to the Polychronicon is Geoffrey of Monmouth. Higden then describes the episcopal constitutions of the Saxons, as well as the ancient regulations of the Welsh episcopate, which, till the time of Henry the Second, made no profession of subjection to any other church. Beginning with Canterbury, the principal see, he proceeds to mention the temporary erection of Lichfield into an archbishopric in the time of Offa, and the restitution of the primacy to the archbishop of Canterbury in the time of Kenulphus. In like manner he slightly touches on the varied fortunes of the other archbishops, viz., of York and Caerleon; and proceeds to name the suffragan bishops of England and Wales in order, mentioning the changes of the sees of some of them and the extinction of others, noticing also the creation of new sees from time to time; and concludes by an enumeration of the bishoprics as they existed in his own

Maximian, was not a Briton. Again, the chronology of the departure of the Romans from Britain is false. Magnus Maximus went over with the British soldiers to Gaul against the Emperor Gratian in 383, and the Roman mint does indeed appear to have ceased in England in his reign; but there were Romans fighting in Britain towards the middle of the fifth century. (See Mon. Hist. Brit. Chron. Abstract.)

The account of the kingdoms of the Heptarchy is more trustworthy. Eadgar however, and not Athelstan, "solus et primus monarchiam An-
"glicae tenuit" (p. 108), though Athelstan says as much of himself. (Hawkins' Silver Coins of England, pp. 61, 65.) Athelstan's conquests, moreover, are misdated by a century (p. 108); but this may be a slip or a blander of the scribes, which however, if it be one, occurs also in the versions.


b 2
time, when thirteen bishops were subject to the archbishop of Canterbury, the primate of all England, and four were under the archbishop of York, the primate of England.

The principal authorities referred to for England are Bede and William of Malmesbury, and for Wales, Giraldus Cambrensis. He also makes a good many statements on his own authority. This part of his work has evidently cost him some labour, and it appears to be one of the most trustworthy parts of his history.¹

Higden next enters (c. lviii.) on the subject of British ethnology, and enumerates seven tribes or peoples who successively inhabited the country or settled therein; viz., the Britons, Picts, Scots (from Ireland), Saxons or

¹ I have compared a good deal of it with Professor Stubbs’ valuable *Registrum Sacrum Anglicanum*, and find that it commonly agrees; Higden however converts the bishopric of Leicester into a bishopric of Chester; an error arising from the name Legecestria being common to the two. Considering that Higden himself long dwelt in Chester, his blunder is the more extraordinary. That it is a blunder there can, I think, be no doubt; the following extract from a letter of Professor Stubbs will ally all misgivings. “The original authority for placing Wilfrid’s Merovingian bishopric at Leicester is the list of bishops appended to Florence of Worcester, which is of course much earlier than Florence’s own time. This gives a list of the bishops of Măl-Anglia, ‘nomina Presbium Leogeren-sium.’ Of these, Leofwin, sec. xi., united the ‘Leogersonian’ and Lindsey bishoprics into the modern diocese of Lincoln in the time of Edgar; proof that the maker of the list believed Leicester to be the place signified, as indeed is quite certain with reference to all the later bishops. Totta, Fad- berht, Unwona, Werenbert, Rot- hun, Aldred, and Ceoldred all sat at Leicester. In 874 the Danes conquered Middle Anglia, and thenceforth the see was at Dorchester in Oxfordshire. I believe there is no doubt about this. And the statement about Wilfrid stands on the same authority. I should question whether Chester could be regarded as a Middle Angle or Mercian town in Wilfrid’s time, and certainly no bishop could unite Chester and Lindsey without including Lichfield also. The confusion between Chester and Leicester in the early chronicles is very trying, but on this point I am quite sure.” William of Malmesbury also, who gives a list of the bishops (*Gest. Pont.* iv. p. 289, Sav.) clearly meant Leicester to be their see; Legecestria est civitas antiqua in *mediterraneis* Angliae; but Higden as clearly meant Chester (p. 128).
Angles, Danes, Normans, and Flandrians. His authorities are Bede, Geoffrey of Monmouth, Giraldus Cambrensis, Marianus Scotus, and Alfred of Beverley, and he also interpolates various remarks of his own.

In tacit allusion to the Trojan story about Brutus, Higden considers the Britons the first inhabitants of our island, and that they came over from Armorica four hundred and thirty-two years before the building of Rome.¹

It is remarkable that he does not consider the Romans as worthy to be reckoned among the peoples who settled amongst us, but passing them over without notice, he proceeds to say that the Picts came over from Scythia in Vespasian's time, first to Ireland, where the Scoti dwelt, and thence to the northern parts of Britain, about Caithness. Bede, from whom the account professes to be taken, probably intended Scandinavia by Scythia, but says nothing about Vespasian, and seems to place their arrival at a more remote period;² their connexion with the age of Vespasian is due to Geoffrey of Monmouth,³ from whom Higden has derived other untrustworthy statements in this chapter.⁴ Higden then quotes Giraldus

¹ Notwithstanding all our laborious examinations, both of literary records and of archaeological monuments, we are scarcely even now able to replace the medieval fragments on this subject by anything which can well be called historical.
² Who were the first inhabitants of Britain, is among the unsettled "questions of history," says Professor Pearson (Early and Middle Ages of England, c. i., London, 1861); and if the question is ever to be settled, it must be by a careful comparison of the remains of man and of the art of man found in this country with those found in other countries.
³ See Bede, lib. i. e. 1., where Smith observes that the Scoti, who came after the Picts, appear to have arrived, in Bede's opinion, "ante Romanorum temporam."
⁴ As that Carausius gave a settlement to the Picts in Scotland (lib. v. c. 3). Higden's speculation that we must understand the south of Scotland seems to be a castle built on air. Stukeley however persuades himself of the reality of Carausius' expedition into Scotland, which he places A.D. 290 (Med. Hist. of Carausius, pp. 128-138), as does also Dr. Lingard (Hist. Engl. c. i. p. 35). The additions to Nennius
Cambrensis (De Instruct. Princ., lib. i. c. 6.) in favour of the view that the Picts are the same as the Agathyrsi, and of Gothic stock.¹

He proceeds to relate the migration of some of the Scoti from Ireland under the leadership of Renual to the district of Argyle, in the country which several centuries afterwards became known as Scotland. This Dalriadic kingdom, which is commonly dated from the beginning of the sixth century, expanded itself, according to Higden, into a dominion over the whole of Scotland in the reign of Kenneth MacAlpine, king of Scots, in the middle of the ninth century, who destroyed the Pictish kingdom of the north of Scotland.²

He next tells us how the Saxons, or as the Britons called them Germans, being invited by the Britons against the Picts and Scots, by degrees forced the Britons into Wales, and extended their own empire as far as the Scotch sea; and at length, in the reign of Egbert, were known by the common appellation of Angles or Englishmen.

The Danes, who kept invading the country from the reign of Egbert to that of the Confessor, left, according to Higden, no trace behind, and like the Picts completely died out.

¹The best modern critics, according to Professor Pearson, consider Pict (painted) as merely the Latin rendering of Briton, and that the Picts are consequently not of Gothic origin; he thinks them of the Kymric variety. Pearson, as above, c. ii. p. 17 (note). Dr. Lingard feels confident that they are the Caledonians under a new name (Hist. Engl. c. i. p. 39).

²On the obscurity and difficulty of the history of this event, for which Higden's authority is Giraldus, see Penny Cyclopedia, s. v. Scotland. According to Giraldus, the Pictish chiefs were fraudulently murdered at a banquet. His account is tinged with a mythological colouring, but may very possibly be founded on fact.
The Normans, who came in with the Conqueror, remained in possession of the soil in Higden’s time, the English being still in a state of subjugation.

The Flandrians, or Flemings, are the seventh and last people, according to Higden, who settled in the island. He tells us, from Alfred of Beverley,¹ that King Henry I. gave them a temporary abode at Melrose in Roxburghshire, but that he afterwards removed them to Haverfordwest in Wales; and it appears that their descendants remain there to this day, being readily distinguished from the aboriginal inhabitants both by language and manners.²

Higden sums up by saying, that as the Picts and Danes had vanished, there were five nations at present living in the island, viz., the Scots in Albania or Scotland, the Britons in Wales, the Flemings in West Wales, the Normans and English mixed in the whole island.

The fifty-ninth chapter, on the languages of the natives of Britain, is almost entirely Higden’s own. The Scotch and Welsh (he observes) retain their own dialects nearly pure, as mingling but little with the other tribes; though the Pictish element may perhaps have somewhat entered into the Scotch speech. The Flemings had adopted the English language, and spoke it tolerably well. The English dialects were originally three, Southern, Midland or Mercian, and Northern or Northumbrian; being due to as many German tribes. These forms however, which extended east and west, became much corrupted by Danish and Norman mixtures. The midland dialect partook of many northern and southern forms, so that a midlander might understand these in some degree; but a North-Englander and a South-Englander were barbarians to each other. Higden observes that one great cause of the corruption was the neglect of the English language in schools, boys being always taught to construe

¹ See lib. i. p. 10, and lib. ix. p. 147.
their lessons in French, and, among the noble class, to speak French from their infancy. Trevisa inserts here an interesting passage, in which he notes a great change since Higden's time. He tells us, writing in 1385, that in all the grammar schools of England English was then taught and French laid aside; and that gentlemen taught their sons French less than formerly. He also observes, in reference to Higden's assertion that the Anglo-Norman French is one and the same in all England, that there are as many forms of French, in France at least, as of English in England. Another cause of the debasement of our language is due, in Higden's judgment, to the affectation of the words and language of their betters by the ignorant rusties, who "francigenated" or frencheified their talk to the utmost of their power.

The sixtieth and last chapter of the first book, on the manners of the English, is mostly by Higden, who has certainly shown little disposition to paint his countrymen in too favourable colours. His bombastic and not very intelligible periods warn us that he must not be taken too literally. Among our faults he especially reckons the discontented spirit in every class, which affects to appear and to be thought above itself. Thus the yeoman affects the squire; the squire the knight; the knight the duke; the duke the king. Consequently such a variety of dress had been introduced that a man's clothes gave little indication of his degree. Gluttony, drunkenness, dishonesty, and irreligion appear to have taken deep root amongst us. The first two vices he dates more especially from the days of Harthacnut (1041–1042), whose death was occasioned thereby.

Among our better qualities he enumerates our aptitude for every kind of industry, our desire to visit foreign

---

1 The authors of the change were, it seems, John Cornwailc, a master of a grammar school, and his pupil, Richard Penerich.
INTRODUCTION.

parts with a view to learn, our bravery in war, and the excellent discipline of our soldiers, both horse and foot.

He observes that the southerners were more civilized and gentle than men of the north; those of middle Anglia occupying an intermediate position, socially as well as geographically.¹

The Welsh Flemings, he observes from Giraldu,² had become in a manner anglicised by contact with the English; they were industrious, enterprising, and equally successful in the arts of peace and of war. They were addicted, however, to some singular superstitions, such as divining with the boiled shoulder bone of a ram, by which they both dived into futurity, and saw, as by a kind of clairvoyance, what was going on or had been performed afar off. They entertained a cordial hatred towards the Welsh.

Thus ends Higden's First Book, or Geographical Introduction to his Universal History. Of the sixty chapters of which it is composed, twenty-nine are occupied with an account of Great Britain and Ireland, twenty-two of these, all comprised in the present volume, being devoted to England alone, the country, as he tells us himself, on whose account he compiled and elaborated his chronicle. This is the only part of his introduction of which, as being to some slight extent original, the historian or antiquary can well make use;³ the remainder, relating to foreign parts, being derived from other sources, and those not always the most trustworthy.

¹ Higden quotes from Henry of Huntingdon (lib. vi. p. 359, Sav.), the prophecy of a holy anchorite, which bears every appearance of being composed after the event. It was written, or ought to have been written, in the time of king Egelfred or Egilred, by whom he intends Ethelred the Second, who is called Egilred by Roger de Hoveden (p. 472, Sav.) and William of Malmesbury. (Gest. Reg. ii. § 159, p. 255, Hard.)
² Hist. Camb. i. 11.
³ It has been published by Gale, Hist. Brit. Script. xvi. pp. 191–212. The only other portion of this volume contained in his collection are parts of lib. ii. c. 27 (nearly all), and c. 28 (a few lines); they occupy less than a folio page. See Gale, n. s. pp. 212, 213.
The book however, taken as a whole, is not without its value, as indicating the geographical knowledge of a writer, who in his own and in the next age was widely read and generally followed.

The second book has for its prologue (cap. i.) a comparison between man and the world. The geography of the world is properly followed by the history of the world, that is of man, who is himself the microcosm or little world. He then proceeds to point out the similarities between man and the world in their dimensions, composition, and operations. The doctrine of the microcosm is as old as Pythagoras, or at least was espoused by some of his disciples, and found numerous adherents in after times, and has survived almost down to our own age. Higden's application of it may be in good measure his own; at least he refers to no authority, except for slight details. For the facts in natural history which he adduces in illustration he is indebted principally to

1 See the anonymous Life of Pythagoras in Phot. Bibl. Cod. 249 (p. 449, ed. Beek.), where we learn that man is called a little world, not only because he is composed of the four elements, but also because he possesses all the forces of the world, Higden's account is an expansion of these views.

2 See a note on Nicholas Ferrar, pp. 239, 240, Cambridge, 1855, by my learned friend Mr. J. E. B. Mayor, to which add that Nathan Wanley wrote a book entitled The Wonders of the Little World, or a General History of Man, published in 1678 (fol. London). It was re-printed with additions in the last and also in the present century. Wanley much resembles Higden in style, and he sometimes refers to the same examples. See more especially his eighth chapter (On the strange constitution and marvellous properties of some human bodies), in which he refers to the great toe of Pyrrhus. See Higden, p. 188. Robinet, who considered certain natural objects, as the brain-stone coral, to be types of parts of man, died in the present century. See also Shakesp. Rich. II. Act V. sc. 5, and the notes. (Clar. Press Series).

3 As St. Gregory the Great. The "Homily on the Ascension," as Higden calls it (p. 182), occurs in his Moral. in Job, lib. vi. vol. i. p. 190 (ed. Ben. Paris, 1705). The "Homily on Advent" (quoted at p. 184) will be found among In Evang. Homil. (vol. i. p. 1439). The passage of Plato to which he alludes, p. 180, is, perhaps, Phaed., p. 81. E. (ed. Steph.) but if so, it is not quite accurately rendered.
Pliny, and in a smaller degree to St. Augustine, Hugutio, Livy, and Avicenna; for the historical allusions he refers to Pliny and Seneca. On these we need not dwell; but merely observe that for the only historical facts or pretended facts in this chapter, not otherwise known, we are under obligation not to Higden, but to Trevisa, who relates some marvellous peculiarities in the constitution of one Roger Bagge, and (in the following chapter) in the conformation of a child born in Lorraine, on the eye-witness of one of his own parishioners at Berkeley, William Wayte. But on these points, as well as on the details and speculations given by Higden respecting monstrous forms of the human species, as cyclopes, sciapodes, &c., which form the subject of his second chapter, we shall only say that he is indebted for almost all his remarks to St. Augustine and to Isidore of Seville. He does not, like Augustine, entirely repudiate the notion of the Antipodes, and cites with approbation the astronomical views of Marcianus Capella on this subject.

Higden's third chapter is a rhetorical flourish on the differences between man and the world. Before his fall he had prerogatives above the rest of nature; afterwards he fell below the creatures themselves, being destitute of their natural defences, as he observes from Pliny.

The fourth and fifth chapters comprise his History of the First Age of the World, which commences with the creation of Adam, and ends with Noah's flood. The greatest part of it is naturally taken from Scripture, but a few speculations and traditional details are added from

---

1 Whom in one instance he misnames Trogus (p. 196). Some other of his references to Pliny are more or less erroneous (see pp. 190, 196, 198, 214, 422 notes). His capitulation of lib. vii. (see pp. 176, 178, 188, 194, 200) apparently differs a little from that now adopted; his chapters are capp. 17, 16, 15, 18, and 10 respectively in the edition of Franzius. (Taps. 1778.)
2 See pp. 195, 209.
3 His division of the history of the world into six ages agrees with that of Isidore (lib. v. c. 39.), from whom he probably takes it. It was adopted by various other writers.
Pseudo-Methodius, Petrus Comestor, Isidore of Seville Hugutio Pisanus, Jerome, and Josephus, which scarcely require to be discussed in this place.

In adjusting his chronology he has made constant use of Isidore (lib. v. c. 39) and of Marianus Scotus, whom he mentions at the beginning of his Polychronicon (lib. i. c. 2) as one of his main authorities in this matter. From them he probably derives most or all that he knew of the patriarchal chronology followed by the Septuagint, which differs from the Hebrew text. 1

The History of the Second Age of the World, from Noah’s departure from the ark to the birth of Abraham, is comprised in the sixth, seventh, eighth, and ninth chapters. The eighth chapter, however, is in a great measure anticipatory, being occupied with an account of the rise and progress of the great empires of the ancient world generally, some of which originated in times long posterior to Abraham. Higden commences his sixth chapter with a notice of God’s covenant with Noah after he came forth from the ark, as signified by the rainbow, and notes from Petrus Comestor the figurative or rather fanciful significance of its outer and inner colours. 2 After remarking that "secundum sanctorum" there was neither rain nor rainbow before the flood, and that neither fish, flesh, nor wine were in use till after the flood, he proceeds to give a pedigree of Shem’s children, noticing the differences between the chronology of the Hebrew text and that of the Septuagint, till he at length comes down to Terah and the birth of Abraham, at which point the second age terminates,

---

1 Thus Marianus writes:—Septuaginta interpretetis ante natum Seth duxerunt annos ducentos triginta, et postea annos secentos et triginta (col. 4, ed. Bas. 1559). This is in substance, though not in words, what we have in Higden, p. 220.

2 Here and elsewhere the number of the chapters as cited by Higden does not agree with the capitulation of the Historia Scholastica in the edition which I have consulted, printed at Lyons in 1543; and I am inclined to believe that his copy was differently capitulated; but the trivial variations cause but little difficulty.
INTRODUCTION.

comprising 9921 years according to the Hebrews, or 1072 according to the LXX., which leads him to discuss the cause of the diversity after Bede and Augustine. He takes this occasion to say, following Eusebius, that from Adam to Abraham we have no history either of the Greeks or barbarians.3

Higden now takes into account the other sons of Noah and their descendants, and begins by borrowing from the spurious “Revelations” of Methodius a history of Ionichus, a son of Noah, who reigned as far as the sea Eliochora, that is to say, as Methodius explains, the region where the sun rises, or, in other words, the Indian Ocean; his disciple Nemphrot or Nimrod ruled in Babylon among the children of Ham.4 In Nimrod’s time, according to Higden, following Josephus, the tower of Babel was built; and he observes in conclusion from Petrus Comestor, that Nimrod was the first founder of Nineveh as well as of Babylon, and the inventor of fire worship.

The seventh chapter, which mentions the seats of the first descendants of Shem, Ham, and Japhet, and the kingdoms of Assyria, Egypt, Scythia, and Sicyon, which

1 For ducentos in the Latin text of the MSS. (which Trevisa also read) we should, no doubt, read ducentos with the Harleian translator.
2 The quotations, like many others, are derived from Marianus Scotus (coll. 49, 50.)
3 The passage occurs in the author’s preface to his Chronicon (i.e. his Canon), translated by St. Jerome, which is the Chronicle of Eusebius as known to Higden. (See Hieron. Op. t. viii. p. 57, ed. Migne, and Higd. Polychron., vol. i. p. 38.) It will be found at p. 32 of the Armenian version of the entire work (the second part), published by Ancher in 1818; see his remarks, Pref. § v. p. xiv. Higden seems, however, to derive much of his acquaintance with Eusebius’ chronicle from Marianus Scotus, who quotes it by name frequently, and more often copies it tacitly. This passage is quoted by him from Eusebius at lib. i. c. ii. (col. 72, ed. Basil, 1559.)
4 See Pseudo-Method. Revel. Sig. a. vii., ed. Bas. 1504. His words are (in the Latin version): Ionichus autem filius Noe tenet introitum in Etham usque ad mare quod vocatur Eliochora; id est, regio solis in quo solis ortus fit, et habitavit ibidem. For the very late production itself see Cave’s Hist. Lit. §. v. Methodius.
INTRODUCTION.

were founded nearly contemporaneously with the first dispersion of nations, is mostly derived from St. Augustine and from Isidore of Seville, a few unimportant remarks being added from other authors. The kingdoms of Assyria, Persia, Greece, and Rome, which succeeded each other, became most notable for their progress, but Higden promises to take first into consideration the earlier kingdoms contemporary with Assyria.

The eighth chapter gives an outline of the three kingdoms which arose, according to Higden, about the same time as the Assyrian monarchy, viz., those of Scythia, Sicyon, and Egypt.

For the first the longer text ¹ gives no authority, but the latter part of the account is certainly derived from Justin. The former portion has the appearance of being to some extent borrowed from Isidore.²

The notice of the kingdom of Sicyon is taken from Petrus Comestor,³ who derives it in all likelihood from Jerome's version of the Canon of Eusebius.⁴ There is, however, some slight variation in the number of years during which the kings are said to have reigned.⁵ Higden in conclusion notes an imaginary discrepancy in the chronology of Dionysius Exiguus.⁶

¹ The shorter MSS. C. D. prefix Willelmuus here and before §§ 4, 5, 6. William of Malmesbury is usually so cited in this work, and the only other William mentioned by Higden in his catalogue of authorities is William of Rievaulx, who may perhaps be the same as William of Newbury. (See Cave and Hardy). I do not know whence these citations from William are derived. For the last sentence, see Justin, lib. ii. c. 3., whose Zopyrion is transformed into Zephiron by Higden.
² Hist. Lib. Gen. c. 64. (not 69, as Higden says.)
⁴ 967 (Arm. version); 962 (Jerome's version); 971 (Petrus and Higden).
⁵ Dionysius says that in the 50th year of Terah,Europs, whom Higden miscalls Cecrops, was the second king of Sicyon, (not quod regimen Seyoniorum increpit), and that Agiulens, the first king, reigned 52 years, i.e., according to his computation, in the 28th year of Nahor. This differs from Petrus only by four years, who places him in the 24th year of Nahor. See Mariannus Scotus, who follows Dionysius (coll. 69-71).
INTRODUCTION.

The account of the third kingdom, Egypt, is nearly all derived from Eusebius, more or less blundered, one sentence being added from Josephus.

Fourth in order, but first in time, the Assyrian kingdom is described in outline. A well-chosen passage adapted from Augustine commences the section, followed by another, taken from the same chapter of Petrus, but ultimately derived from Eusebius, which brings the history down to the death of Sardanapalus. Higden then gives in his own view the state of Assyrian affairs afterwards, and following the language of Scripture, calls Sennacherib, &c. kings of Assyria, whom he considers to have been independent, but not monarchs of the whole country (reges potentes, quamvis non monarchae), of whom Sargon was the last. He goes on to say that some consider a Median monarchy over the entire East arose after the death of Sardanapalus, beginning with Arbaces, and ending with Astyages, (whom Cyrus overthrew, and so transferred the empire to Persia,) or in other words that the Assyrian kings, so called, were but Median tributaries. In saying this he seems to express his disagreement with Eusebius, who makes no more mention of an Assyrian kingdom after the death of Sardanapalus. Still giving no authority he proceeds to the end, and notices the rise of the Babylonian and Chaldean kingdoms, giving a catalogue of their kings according to his own view.

After this he traces the Persian kings from the begin-

---

1 Jerome's version says: "Porro apud Aegyptios xvi. potestas erat, quam vocant dynastiam; quo tempore regnavant Thebeis, qui praeter Aegyptius annis exe." (coll. 108.) But Higden says (p. 260): "Deinde Thebeis tenuerunt xvi. dynastias," which completely destroys the sense. It is not worth while to point out other errors.

2 See Hier. u. s. coll. 337, 339.

3 It is mostly derived from Marianus Scotus (who refers to Josephus), but with variations of spelling (coll. 52.) Higden has Balthasar, qui el Nabar, (Naban is read in the printed text of Marianus), but Josephus has Nabonnedus (Ant. x. 11), writing elsewhere (Lib. 1. c. Ap. § 29) Nabonnedus. Ruffin, however, has Naboor. See the notes in Havercamp's edition, vol. i. p. 539.
INTRODUCTION.

ning to the end of the monarchy, professing herein to follow Giraldus; but Eusebius seems to be the original source from which the history is mostly drawn. He gives little besides their names, some of which are corrupted.

Having observed that Alexander the Great absorbed the kingdom of Persia into that of Macedonia, he goes on to add that this kingdom, which lasted 636 years, was founded by Caranux, whom he erroneously calls Cranaus, and lasted till the capture and dethronement of Persens by the Romans. This computation nearly agrees with Eusebius. He concludes by remarking that there were other kingdoms of Greece in Sicyon, Argos, Athens, Sparta, and Epirus, which, like Macedonia, ultimately formed part of the great empire of Rome. For this section, as well as for the following, the MSS. of the longer form of the Chronicle refer to no authority; in the shorter form reference is made in each case to William of Malmesbury.

The concluding section sketches the rise and progress of the Roman empire, from the Latin, Alban, and Roman kings, to the consuls, tribunes of the people, dictators, and emperors. Tacitly following St. Jerome’s version of the Canon of Eusebius, he makes Philip Senior the first Christian emperor. He seems also to allude to the

1 The Chronographia metrica of Giraldus may possibly be intended (see De libris a se scriptis, Gir. Cambr. Op., tom. i. p. 414.), but I rather suspect that Giraldus is an error.

2 See Euseb. Chron. pars. 1, p. 50; pars. 2, p. 19 (ed. Auch.) for the list of kings, and Euseb. Canon, s. a. 1487 for what is said of Judith, and s. a. 1540 for Esther; and compare Marianus Scotus passim.

3 He has Ermeides for Smerdis; Fogodianus for Sogdianus; to say nothing of smaller errors.

4 Higden errs in saying “quem occiderant Romani.”

5 He makes Caranux begin to reign 1263 years after Abraham; and Persens’ reign to end 1850 years after Abraham.

6 See Euseb. Canon, s. a. 2261. But the words “primusque omnium ex Romanis imperatoribus Christianus fuist” have no counterpart in the Armenian version, and are probably an addition by Jerome himself. (See Aucher’s note, p. 197.)
INTRODUCTION.

fabulous donation of Constantine to the pope at the conclusion.

The ninth chapter is devoted to the early history of Assyria, from the times of Belus, the son of Nimrod, and second founder of Babylon, and of Ninus, the son of Belus, and second founder of Nineveh. The chapter concludes with the exploits of Semiramis, wife of Ninus, who had also a son of the same name. The authorities referred to are St. Augustine, Orosius, Petrus Comestor, Isidore of Seville, and Justin. It would be useless to dwell upon the history, where all is mythology and fable. Higden in the same chapter discusses the origin of pagan idolatry from Petrus Comestor, Isidore of Seville, St. Augustine, and an Alexander who is doubtless Alexander Neckham. He also mentions from St. Jerome a strange superstition connected with the worship of Fortune. In the course of his quotations are many things which may reasonably be questioned, but their discussion need hardly be entered upon in this place.

The histories of Abraham and the patriarchs comprised in the tenth, eleventh, and twelfth chapters need not detain us long. The life of the former is mostly taken from Genesis, a few particulars about him being added from Josephus and Petrus Comestor. Melchisedech's history and interview with Abraham are slightly enlarged from St. Jerome and Petrus Comestor; from the latter Higden explains the meaning of Kirjath-Arba to be the City of Four. From the same authority he tells us that the Jews give their sons names, when they are circumcised, in allusion to Abram's name being

---

1 See Fabricius, Bibl. Med. et Inf. Lat. s. v. p. 174. His Mythologia has not, I believe, been printed.
2 As the identification of Zoroastes, king of Bactria, with Ham, and of Belus with Baal. They are taken from Petrus Comestor, Hist. Lib. Genes. cap. 39, 40.
3 The Rabbins and St. Jerome are the original authorities for this view, which seems contrary to the derivation given in Josh. xiv. 15. See Mr. Grove's remarks in Smith's Dict. of the Bible, s. v.
changed into Abraham at the time of his circumcision; also that Keturah, Abraham’s wife after Sarah’s death, was Hagar under a new name. For the other patriarchs, Isaac, Jacob, and his family, as well as Lot, Higden has scarcely anything to say which is not contained in the Old Testament, though he sometimes prefers to refer to other books, and not to the original authority itself.

The eleventh and twelfth chapters contain a few particulars relating to the early traditions of Greece and Egypt; Higden regards them as real events, and, like Eusebius and others, assigns dates to their occurrence. His remarks on Minerva and Prometheus are mostly taken from St. Augustine; also those on the kingdom of the Argives, and on Egyptian affairs. The last are further illustrated in some slight degree from Isidore, Petrus Comestor, and Hugutio Pisanus. The myths of Atlas, Triptolemus, and Ceres, are related from Isidore and Petrus Comestor. It is needless to say anything of these in this place; but it may be observed Higden’s knowledge of them is not very profound.

1 The derivation of Ishmael’s descendants, the Saracens, from Sarah (p. 292), occurs in Isidore, lib. ix. c. 2., and in Marianus Scotus, Col. 76.

2 St. Augustine’s remarks, if indeed they be his, quoted by Higden (p. 304), about Potiphar, arise from the misrendering; as it would seem, of the LXX. and Vulgate. The identification of Potiphar with Potipherah is very questionable, and is not mentioned with favour by Augustine, Quest in Gen. 136. (tom. iii. Col. 307, ed. ant. v. 1700.) But Higden appears to copy not from Augustine, but from Petrus Comestor, capp. 88 and 92.

3 The events which Higden notices are in several instances tacitly taken from Eusebius; his history of Ceres, for example, p. 294. Cf. Euseb. Can. s. a. 56, p. 37, Auch. The dates however do not always accurately correspond. Higden’s date of the Ogygian deluge (p. 300) is 265 years after Abraham; the MSS., however, vary; in Eusebius it is eleven years earlier. See Eusch. Chron. s. a. 254, and Migne’s notes, col. 142. Marianus Scotus places it (col. 80), 260 years after Abraham.

4 Thus we have (p. 296) professedly from St. Augustine: “Ap. paruit virgo Tritonia nomine, quam Graeci Minervam dierunt.” The passage about Tritonia is in De
Higden's account of Moses (capp. xiii. and xiv.) is mostly to be found in the Pentateuch, though he prefers to derive it from secondary authorities, such as Josephus and Petrus Comestor. 1 There are however traditional stories mingled with the scriptural account, nearly all of which are preserved by Josephus. 2 In the same chapters are brief allusions to Grecian history and mythology (see summary of contents), on which we need not dwell, 3 for which Higden refers to Josephus.

1 Higden, when he refers to the Pentateuch directly, misquotes it. Thus at p. 318, and at p. 324, he refers to Genesis, when he should have written Exodus. At p. 328 Genesis is similarly an error for Exodus; but, as most MSS. omit all reference, this false reference may not be due to Higden himself.

2 As the name (Thermuth) of Pharaoh's daughter; the treading under foot of Pharaoh's crown by Moses; the war of Moses against the Ethiopians; his marriage with Tharbis, daughter of the king of Ethiopia; and a few other smaller matters (Ant. ii. 9, 10.) The story of Moses burning his tongue with live coals is taken from Petrus Comestor (Hist. Lib. Evod. c. 5.), and does not, I believe, occur in Josephus. Petrus indicates that it is derived from Hebrew sources. The story about Moses making a ring of memory and a ring of forgetfulness, also preserved by Petrus (Hist. Lib. Evod. c. 6), savours of an Arabian origin. See Higden, p. 322.

3 For Dasaneus, which is the name by which he tells us (p. 336) that Mariranus Scotus calls the Phenician Hercules, we should perhaps read Dosenus, as in Herold's edition of Mariranus, col. 90. Eusebius, in Jerome's version, has Desinaus; in the Armenian, Desandas; in Synceillus, Dibidas. See Hieron. Op. tom. viii. col. 182, and the notes in Migne's edition (Paris, 1846), and Euseb. Canon. Vers. Arm. p. 59. (Auch.)
INTRODUCTION.

St. Augustine, and Orosius; he has likewise tacitly incorporated some parts of the Canon of Eusebius.¹

The history of Joshua is very briefly contained in the fifteenth chapter; with the exception of the length of his government, which is added from Josephus;² and of the confirmation of his dying covenant, by the pouring out of water, related from Petrus Comestor,³ the whole may be found in the Old Testament.

The allusions to profane history and mythology are numerous, but mostly brief. Some of them are evidently taken from Eusebius, or rather from his copyist Marianus Scotus, as, for example, those relating to Erichthonius, Phenix, Cadmus, and Asterius.⁴ He is more particular about the legends relating to Jove and Saturn, for which he refers to St. Augustine, Isidore, Eutropius, as well as to Alexander Neckham and Henricus, who may be Henry of Huntingdon. Higden himself properly points out the inconsistencies in the accounts which authors have delivered. In this chapter we have (from Isidore) an example of the rationalizing method of explaining myths, viz., in the case of Europa, which in a succeeding chapter is set forth at length.

In the following chapters Higden gives an account of Jewish affairs under the judges, most usually assigning

¹ As the building of the temple of Delphi by Erysichthon (p. 334). This is also included in the Chronicle of Marianus Scotus, cap. Moses, as well as the change of the name Aerea into Egypt.
² The allusion to Josephus (Ant. Jud. v. 1, § 29.) occurs in the midst of a sentence said to be taken from Isidore, Elym. lib. v. No such passage occurs there, nor elsewhere in Isidore, so far as I know. The versions may be right in omitting all reference.
³ Hist. Lib. Jos. c. 16, where both quotations on p. 346 will be found. I have in vain sought for Comestor’s authority for his statements, which are very positive and explicit. At p. 346. 1. 5, Petrus and not Genesis (see versions) must be the true reading.
⁴ Higden’s reference to Marianus as the authority for saying that Asterius and not Jupiter is the father of Rhadamantius and his brothers, shows that he did not consult Eusebius himself in this instance, from whom Marianus borrows. See Euseb. Can. s. n. 570, and Marianus Scotus, Col. 94.
one chapter to each judge in order: He also takes the times of the government of the successive judges. The sixteenth chapter is devoted to a notice of Othniel, the first of the judges, and to mythical events in Greece and Italy supposed to be contemporary, particularly the birth of the Delian Apollo, and of the Theban Bacchus; also the introduction of letters into Greece and Phenicia by Cadmus and Phenix. These and other matters in this chapter are tacitly derived, as usual, from Eusebius, probably through Mariannus Scotus. The only authors referred to in this unimportant chapter are Petrus Comestor, St. Augustine, and Isidore.

The Jewish history in the times of Ehud is related very briefly in the seventeenth chapter. The allusions to Grecian history and mythology are numerous, and mostly the same as those given in Eusebius; they are often expressed in the very words of Jerome's version. Of Hercules we have a full account at the end of the chapter, derived from Justin, Lucan, Virgil, Claudian, and others. Following St. Augustine, he considers that more heroes than one bore the name of Hercules; and mentions the opinion of some, that the word itself signifies a glorious man.

The eighteenth chapter is devoted to the explanations of the Greek mythology which have been proposed by St. Augustine and others, and to the different kinds of fables current in antiquity. Higden quotes Eusebius as an authority for saying that mythical

---

1 From this chapter we infer that Higden was not absolutely ignorant of Greek, or at least not ignorant of the numerical value of the Greek letters. It is curious to observe the improvement of the sentence in the later form of the chronicle. But his knowledge perhaps well nigh ended with the alphabet; he manifestly shows ignorance of the language in various places.

2 The heading is, Eusebius in Chronici. I have in vain searched the Canon of Eusebius for the passage. It is true that Eusebius places a good many of the myths in Ehud's time in the body of his chronicle.
fables were invented in Greece principally in the time of Ehud, and Augustine's opinion that they arose between the time of Joshua's death and the Trojan war. It is not necessary to say anything here of the different kinds of fables, or of the interpretations given to the different myths. Higden refers in the course of his remarks upon them to St. Augustine, Isidore, Peter Comestor,¹ and Alexander Neckham. He concludes with an account of Mercury and his inventions.

The history of the judges is continued in chapter nineteen, which contains the history of Deborah (or, as Higden, in common with Petrus Comestor, writes her name, Delborah) and of Barak. He notices, from St. Augustine, the fall of the Argive kingdom, which is translated to Mycenae, and the rise of the Laurentine monarchy in Italy. The death of Liber Pater, the reign of Midas, and the foundation of Troy, are introduced here after Eusebius, though without reference to any authority.

Higden proceeds in the twentieth chapter to notice very briefly the history of Gideon, and observes, from Josephus,² that Tyre was founded in his days. He then touches on the histories of Minos, Theseus and the Minotaur, Helen, Dedalus, his son Icarus, and his nephew Perdix, from Isidore and Petrus Comestor. This leads him to describe the various Labyrinths from Hugo Pisanus.³ From the same authority he gives an account

¹See p. 378. Comestor, who refers to Walafred Strabus, strangely supposes the chorus introduced into Greece to be a kind of musical instrument. See Hist. Lib. Jud. c. 9. The passage quoted at p. 376 occurs in c. 8 of the same book, but Comestor places the event in time of Gideon; this is not the only chronological discrepancy between Higden and Comestor. The former places the rape of Helen in the time of Gideon, quoting the words of Comestor very closely (p. 382), who places it in the time of Jair. (Hist. Lib. Jud. c. 11.)

²The citation is probably derived from Marianus Scotus, cap. Gedeon, who, copying Eusebius, refers to his Ant. Jud. lib. iii. The true reference is to lib. viii. c. 3.

³Hugo however does but copy Isidore, lib. xv. cap. 2. § 36.
of the plague which afflicted the Athenians in consequence of their murder of Icarus and of the suicide of his daughter Erigone; and of its expiation by images oscillating in the air.¹

The histories of Abimelech and Tola are briefly related in the twenty-first chapter, in which Higden introduces (after Eusebius) allusions to the battle of the Lapithæ and the Centaurs, and to the departure of Medea to Colchis. From Justin an account is given of Faunus, king of Italy, and of his wife Fatua; also of the birth of king Latinus. He concludes with an account of Vesores, who is possibly the same as Sesostris, king of Egypt, and his war with the Scythians, and thence passes to the origin and history of the Amazons, herein copying pretty closely the fourteenth and fifteenth chapters of the first book of Orosius.

After alluding to the history of Jair in his twenty-second chapter, Higden mentions (after Eusebius) the opinion of some that Carthage was now founded. He alludes also (still following the same authority,) to the war of Minos with Daedalus, and ends this short chapter with an account of the introduction of the Latin alphabet into Italy by Carmentis, mother of king Latinus, and one of the Camenæ, to which is appended a brief history of the four stages of Latinity; the whole being taken from Isidore.² Of Jephthah, the successor of Jair, Higden mentions little more than the name (c. xxiii.), but immediately passes on to mention the rise of the Latin kingdom under Latinus, the first king. He then tells us, from Isidore, that the Erythrean Sibyl flourished in his reign, and gives an account of the ten Sybils, and a derivation of the word Sibylla. From St. Augustine, who places

¹ Hugo derives his account from Servius on Virg. Georg. ii. 389. See also Facciolati, Lex. s. v. Oscillum.

² Lib. i. c. 4. (not 10.), and Lib. ix. c. 1. (not 7).
the Erythrean Sibyl in the time of Romulus, he quotes a prophecy of hers relating to Christ. He then goes on to give an account of the Argonautic expedition and of the Trojan war, principally from Justin and Dares Phrygius. The history of the latter is pursued throughout the whole of the twenty-fourth chapter, which also relates (or rather, barely alludes to) the government of Israel by Ibzan, or, as Higden writes it, Abessa.¹

In the twenty-fifth chapter we have brief notices of Elon (Aylon. Higden; Ahialon, Vulg.), and of some variations of chronology of Josephus and Eusebius, tacitly derived from Marianus Scotus;² also of Abdon or Labdon, in the third year of whose government Troy was taken, 432 years before the building of Rome. He then goes on to remark, from St. Augustine, that the Greeks on their return home from Troy met with many disasters, mentioning particularly the change of the companions of Diomed into birds. This gives Higden an opportunity of bringing together a number of curious stories to the same effect from Varro, Pliny, St. Augustine, Apuleius, and William of Malmesbury. These need not be discussed here, entertaining as they are. He concludes with quotations from St. Augustine and Giraldus,³ which incline to recognize demoniacal agency in these histories.

Higden now passes on (c. xxxvi.) to the affairs of the Trojans after the siege of Troy, and relates the wanderings of Eneas to Sicily and Africa after Martinus Polonus,⁴ but expresses his doubts⁵ about the truth of his meeting with Dido, as Eneas probably lived more than three centuries before Carthage was built, if Justin and

¹ The Vulgate (Jud. xii. 8) has Abesan; Petrus Comestor (Hist. Lib. Jud. c. 13) calls him Abessan.
INTRODUCTION.

others are to be trusted. He then proceeds to relate, after the same Martinus, the conquests of Eneas in Italy, the foundation of Lavinium, and the death of Eneas, who was succeeded by his son Ascanius, the founder of Alba Longa. He left his kingdom to Silvius Posthumus, his half-brother, because his own son Iulus, from whom the Julian family sprang, was of too tender an age. For these events Higden appears mainly to follow Eusebius, Marianus Scotus (cap. Samson), and Martinus Polonus, but there is some error in the references in his MSS. (see notes.)

He then, following Eusebius, makes mention of the events in the time of Sampson, such as the escape of Ulysses from Seylla and the Sirens, and the murder of Pyrrhus, the son of Achilles, by Orestes. He concludes by observing (after Eusebius) that some place Homer's age here, but notes the variations of ancient authors in determining the time when he flourished.

Our author now approaches the fabulous history of Britain. After slightly touching the history of Eli (noticing the variations in chronology between Josephus and the Septuagint), and of Ruth, and of the recovery of Troy by Hector's sons after Eusebius (who however places the event earlier) he proceeds, still following Eusebius, with the succession of the Latin kings. Silvius Posthumus, the third king, son of Eneas, and brother of Ascanius, now begins to reign, whose son Brutus, according to the British accounts, invaded Britain. The Roman account, he observes (with which

---

1 I now believe that Eutropius is an error for Eusebius, whose Canon (s. a. 870) contains part of Higden's account.

2 The word Εγγυπτιορυμ (p. 438), which perplexed me (see notes), is taken from Marianus Scotus (cap. Samson), who intended regnum or rex to be supplied. (In Eusebius, however, whom he miscopies, the name occurs in the column headed Atheniensium [regnum.] s. a. 854.) But Pyrrhus was doubtless king of some part of Northern Greece, perhaps Epirus, as the later kings of Epirus claimed affinity with Achilles. See also Isidore, xv. 1. § 43.
INTRODUCTION.

Eusebius agrees), differs from our own respecting the father of Brutus, and then, after entering minutely into the pedigree and history of the Latin kings, he concludes that Silvius Posthumus cannot be the father of Brutus. He proceeds, however, with the history of Brutus according to Geoffrey of Monmouth, and in due course notices his invasion of Britain, of which he became the first king, after his destruction of the giants. The British history is now slightly interrupted by a notice of Samuel and his chronology according to Josephus; but Higden soon returns to it, and notices, after Geoffrey, the reigns of Locrinus, son of Brutus, and of his wife Guendolena, who murdered him.

In the twenty-eighth chapter we have an account of Saul, and of the length of his reign according to Josephus; also a notice (after Eusebius) of the succession of the Latin kings, and of Codrus, the last king of Athens, which he partly derives from St. Augustine. Higden then reverts to Britain, and, following Geoffrey tacitly, relates that Maddan succeeded his father Locrinus, leaving two sons, Mempricius and Maulus.

With Saul's death terminates the third age of the world, from the birth of Abraham to the reign of David, and Higden notices the unimportant variation of the chronology between Isidore and Josephus.

In bringing the second volume of Higden to a close, I should observe that I have occasionally consulted two MSS. of Trevisa's translation, which were not made use of in the first volume. The older of these (γ. of the notes) is Cotton MS. Tiberius D. vii. in the British Museum. In the last printed catalogue it is said to be wanting, "Desideratur;" but a note in the copy in the Museum

---

1 Hist. Reg. Brit. lib. i. c. 3, et seqq. Alfred of Beverley (p. 10. et seqq.) copies his account, to whom Higden also refers.

2 Lib. ii. c. 6. Geoffrey writes Malim for Maulus; Alfred has Maulim (p. 13.)

3 Some corrections of the text made by their aid in vol. i. will be found in the addenda to the present volume.
INTRODUCTION.

says, "Restored, J. Holmes." It had been seen by T. Smith, who wrote the Catalogue of the Cotton MSS. printed at Oxford in 1696, and afterwards by the Hon. W. Burton in the following century, who annotated the copy in the British Museum. It is likewise mentioned in the Report on the Cotton MSS. after the fire, printed in 1732. The MS. is in quarto, on vellum of 296 leaves, each page containing about 37 lines, and is rubricated and slightly illuminated. It contains moreover the Dialogue of Dominus and Clericus, and Trevisa's Epistle to Lord Berkeley. It is injured by fire, though not very considerably; a few leaves however at the beginning and end are only partially legible. It would seem to be written towards the close of the fourteenth century, or rather a little later. Some extracts from it have been lately printed in Mr. Morris's Specimens of Early English, whose book first made me acquainted with its existence.¹ It differs much from the standard MS. and α in the forms of the pronouns, and preserves in some cases the true text, where they have corrupted it. The other MS. (β of the notes) which has been collated in cases of difficulty is MS. Harl. 1900; it has been sufficiently described in the Harleian Catalogue of 1808. It would appear to belong to the beginning of the fifteenth century.

Cockfield Rectory,
February 13, 1869.

SUMMARY OF CONTENTS.

BOOK THE FIRST—(continued).

CAP. XXXIX.

Great Britain or England. Various designations of the island.

Originally called Albion, from its white rocks. Afterwards denominated Anglia by the Angles, the derivation being uncertain. Considered by some another world in itself. Charlemagne's opinion of its fertility. - - pp. 2-6.

CAP. XL.

England, continued. Its site and dimensions.

England's position defined in reference to Spain, Germany, and France. The channel fifty miles across at Boulogne. The longest day has eighteen hours. England is broadest in the middle. Richborough the first city that attracts the eye of sailors. Britain is in length eight hundred miles, in breadth two hundred, in circumference between three and four thousand. - - - - - - pp. 6-12.

CAP. XLI.

England, continued. The richness of its natural productions.

The climate of England more dry than that of Ireland; not more healthy. Cattle and horses abundant; also various wild animals and birds; freshwater fish in great numbers, particularly pike and eel. Fish used as food for hogs. Whales, porpoises, and seals often taken, many shell-fish also, as the pearl-mussel; others are used in dyeing. Wolves are met with in small quantity. Salt wells and hot springs also occur. Metals abundant, copper, iron, lead, tin, and silver. Marl, chalk, amber, various marbles, white and red clay for earthenware and bricks. Wool, hides, skins, iron, lead, salt, and white metal among its principal exports. England a rich and noble country, sufficient for its own needs, and indispensable to the rest of the world. - - - - pp. 12-20.
Cap. XLII.

She, continued. The marvels therein explained.

Britain contains hot springs, over which Minerva presides, which are splendidly decorated as baths. In Pecum (the Peak of Derbyshire?) are caverns full of mighty winds; and at Cherdhole (Cheddar?) is an endless cave under ground. At Stonehenge are marvellous stones of unknown origin and significance. Britain has several wonderful lakes; one containing sixty inhabited islands, surrounded by sixty rocks, and having sixty rivers flowing into it. Also a lake, which becomes hot or cold according as the bather desires. Other lakes with various miraculous qualities. Petrifying springs near Winchester and Bath. Prophetic fluctuations of the Dee near Chester. No salmon found in Bala lake, though abundant in the Dee. Many bodies of saints preserved in England uncorrupt, as SS. Ethelreda, Edmund king of East Anglia, Elphege, Cuthbert. - - - - pp. 22-30.

Cap. XLIII.

England, continued. The principal divisions of the island.

After the time of Brutus Britain was divided into three parts: Loegria, now England; Cambria, now Wales; and Albania, now Scotland; so named from Locrinus, Camber, and Albanactus, sons of Brutus. Their limits described. Full account of Offa’s dyke, which afterwards artificially separated Wales from England. - - - - pp. 30-34.

Cap. XLIV.

England, continued. The islands adjacent to Britain.

The Isle of Wight described; its dimensions. The dimensions, population, and fertility of the Isle of Anglesey. The Isle of Man and its superstitions. The Isle of Thanet. - pp. 36-42.

Cap. XLV.

England, continued. The Royal Roads.

Immunities attached to ploughs, temples and city roads by Molmutius, king of the Britons. King Belinus, his son, to
prevent ambiguity, defined and repaired four royal roads to be maintained in all their privileges. The Foss road; its course traced. Watling street; its course traced. Erming street; its course traced. Rikenild street; its course traced. pp. 42-47.

CAP. XLVI.

England, continued. The famous rivers.

The Thames, Severn, and Humber divided the ancient kingdoms of Loegria, Cambria, and Northumbria. Course of the Thames described; it was the boundary of the kingdoms of Kent, Essex, Wessex, and Mercia. Origin of the name Sabrina, or Severn. Course and character of the river. Derivation of the name Humber. Its course and affluents. pp. 48-52.

CAP. XLVII.

England, continued. The famous cities and towns.

Enumeration of ancient British towns and their more recent appellations. Description of several of the more important cities and boroughs: London, Canterbury, Winchester, Bath, Gloucester, Shrewsbury, Nottingham, Lincoln, Leicester. pp. 52-62.

CAP. XLVIII.

England, continued. Cities and towns, continued.

Description of York, Edinburgh, Alcluid or Aldborough, Carlisle, Hexham, Lindsey, Lindisfarne or Holy Island, Chester. pp. 62-84.

CAP. XLIX.

England, continued. The counties or shires.

England contains thirty-two provinces or shires, called counties. The nine southern counties anciently governed by the law called West Saxenelaga. They are Kent, Sussex, Surrey, Hampshire, Berkshire, Wiltshire, Somersetshire, Dorsetshire, and Devonshire. The fifteen eastern and northern shires governed by the Deneelaga. They are Essex, Middlesex, Suffolk, Norfolk, Hertfordshire, Huntingdonshire, Northamptonshire, Cambridgeshire, Bedfordshire, Buckinghamshire,

**Cap. L.**

*England, continued.* Different kinds of laws and law terms explained.

Laws of Moluntius; Mercheneclaga; Westsaxenelaga; Dene-laga. Laws of Edward the Confessor. Explanation of various law terms therein contained. - - - pp. 90-96.

**Cap. LII.**

*England, continued.* The separate kingdoms and their limits.

Line of British monarchs unbroken from Brutus to Julius Caesar. The island tributary to Rome from his time to that of Septinius Severus. The island had kings of its own from Severus to Gratian; when the British succession failed, the Romans were sovereigns. The Picts and Scots harassing the island, the Roman soldiers were withdrawn by Magnus Maximus. The Britons invite the Saxons against the Picts. The Saxons conquer both Picts and Britons, set up kings of their own and found the Heptarchy. This lasted till Athelstan's reign, the first king of all Britain. The Danes infested the kingdom for a hundred and seventy years from the time of Ethelwolf; and held the throne thirty years. The Norman Conquest. The kingdoms of the Heptarchy briefly described. Limits and durations of the kingdoms of Kent, of the South Saxons, of the East Saxons, of the East Angles, of the West Saxons, of the Mercians, of the Northumbrians. Northumbria divided into two provinces, Deira and Bernicia, separated by the Tyne. The Mersey separated Mercia from Northumbria. pp. 96-108.
Three archiepiscopal and twenty-eight episcopal sees in Britain in the time of Lucius. The former were London, York, Caerleon. Augustine constituted Canterbury the principal see in place of London. Temporary erection of Lichfield into an archbishopric. York always an archiepiscopal see, but Scotland at length ceased to be subject to its jurisdiction. In king Arthur's time this archbishopric was removed from Caerleon to St. David's. Sampson, the twenty-fourth bishop of St. David's, retired in consequence of the prevalence of the plague to Dol in Brittany; twenty-one archbishops from Sampson to the time of Henry I. Up to this time the Welsh bishops were wholly independent of the authority of any other church. From the time of Boniface, archbishop of Canterbury in the reign of Henry II., the Welsh bishops became subject to that see. Two primates now in England; the archbishop of Canterbury, primate of all England; the archbishop of York, primate of England. From and after the time of the Conqueror various sees, (Dorchester, Lichfield, Thetford, Sherburn, Wells, Cornwall, and Selsey,) were translated to more important cities. The bishop of Rochester is only the chaplain of the archbishop of Canterbury, and has no diocese.

pp. 110-118.

pp. 113-122.

The sees of Dunwich and Elmham founded. The former see suppressed. In the Conqueror's time Elmham transferred to Thetford. William Rufus removed the see of Thetford to Norwich. Henry I. separates Ely from the see of Lincoln.

pp. 122-124.
SUMMARY OF CONTENTS.

Cap. LV.

England, continued. The Midland bishops.
Lichfield the only original see in Mercia. It was in Offa's time an archbishopric. Succession of bishops of Lichfield. Archbishop Theodore constituted three additional sees for Mercia viz., Worcester, Chester, and Lindsey. The see of Dorchester was then transferred from Wessex to Mercia. William the Conqueror removes the see of Lindsey to Lincoln.

pp. 126-130.

Cap. LVII.

England, continued. The Northern bishops.
York the only original see of Northumbria. Early civil and ecclesiastical commotions have disturbed the succession of York. Aidan, bishop of Lindisfarne, in the district of Bernicia. Archbishop Theodore ordains Tunbert to the see of Hexham, Eatas to Lindisfarne, Eadhed to Ripon, Trumwyne to Whithorne in Galloway. These four sees gradually became extinct. Their history traced. Durham takes the place of Hexham and Lindisfarne in the reign of Ethelred II. The see of Carlisle founded by Henry I.

- pp. 130-136.

Cap. LVIII.

England, continued. The different Tribes that peopled the country.
The Britons the first inhabitants of the island. They came over from Armorica to the south of Britain four hundred and thirty-two years before the building of Rome. In Vespasian's time the Picts came from Scythia to the north of Ireland, where
they found the Scots dwelling. These recommended them to settle in the north of Britain about Caithness, and promised them aid against the Britons. The Picts and Scots intermarry. The Picts said by some to be synonymous with the Agathyrsi or with the Goths. The tyrant Maximus, A.D. 383, carried them to Gaul to aid him against Gratian. Carausius, the tyrant (circa 290) gave them a dwelling-place in the south of Scotland, where they have since remained mingled with the Britons. This tract afterwards belonged to Northumbria, but was at length made by Kenneth (Macalpine), king of Scotland (circa 840), part of his own dominions. The Irish Scots afterwards (circa 500) came over with their chief Renda to Scotland, and settled about Argyle. The Saxons or Angles assisted from Germany by the Britons against the Scots and Picts, drive the Britons themselves into Wales. In the time of Egbert, king of the Westsaxons, all the natives of England were called Angles. The Danes next invade the country and ravage it for about two hundred years; they afterwards fail. The Normans next come over with duke William. Last of all, men of Flanders sailed hither in the reign of Henry I., and settled at Haverafordwest. In Higden’s time the Scots lived in Scotland, the Britons in Wales, the Flemings in West Wales, the Normans and Angles mixed in the whole island. The Danes have vanished insensibly, but the Picts were exterminated by fraud by the Scots. - - pp. 142-156.

Cap. LIX.

England, continued. The languages of the natives.

The native dialects are of the same number as the native tribes. The Scotch and Welsh being less mixed with the rest retain their dialects most uncorrupt. The Flemings of West Wales speak English fairly. The English dialects were formerly three, southern, midland, and northern; these originated with the three Germanic tribes who peopled these districts; they became corrupted by Danish and Norman mixtures. The corruption of English is increased by two causes; the first is, that boys construe their lessons in school in French, and are taught to speak French to the neglect of their own language; the second is, that rustics endeavour to ape their betters and to appear as Frenchified as possible. The three English dialects extend east and west across the island, and consequently the inhabitant of Mid-Anglia is better able to understand a North Briton or a South Briton than these can understand each other. The Northumbrian dialect, especially in Yorkshire, is almost un-
intelligible to the southerners, who have little intercourse with their less civilised countrymen of the north, whither the Court seldom repairs. — — — — pp 156-162.

Cap. LX.

England, continued. The manners of the natives.

The Welsh Flemings brave and enterprising, apt for the arts of war and peace, English in feeling, hostile to the Welsh. Their superstitions. The southern English are of a more quiet and mild disposition than the northern; the midlanders intermediate in character. Gluttony, drunkenness, and excess of apparel, are vices especially English. Skill of the English in war; their love of travel, and wide dispersion over the world. Their industry of all kinds. Pope Eugenius' praise and blame of the nation. Higden's invectives against their fastidious and discontented spirit, ever affecting the dress and manners of those above their own station. A prophecy of a holy hermit against their vices. — — — — pp. 164-174.

BOOK THE SECOND.

The History of the World down to the Destruction of the First Temple.

Cap. I.

The Prologue. Man. His likeness to the World.

A description of the countries of the world must be followed by the history of the world's actions. The great world was made for the little world, which is Man, on whom the Creator impressed the likeness of the great world. Man and the world resemble each other in three respects; in their dimensions, in their composition, and in their operations.

(1.) As from the zenith to the nadir the distance is as great as from east to west, so the height of a man from head to foot is as great as the space from the end of one extended arm to that of the other.

(2.) Secondly, in the great and little world the natural disposition is similar; its parts and members correspond to one another, and a dislocation of any part is followed by disturbance in both. The world and man are both framed on a system of adaptation and gradation. Existence, life, and
sensation are common to man and the three kingdoms of nature. They are also composed of the same four elements, fire, water, earth, and air. The very word ἀνθρωπός is, as it were, a tree upturned (ἀντρωπός), his hair being the roots, his arms and legs the branches.

(3.) In their operations both man and the world have much in common. Both develop their powers; both have their childhood, youth, and age. His energies resemble those of the elements and of the planets. As the outer world, especially in its extremities, has its miracles, so has man. In the human face, consisting of few parts, there is such diversity that of the many thousands of faces scarcely any two are alike. Various miraculous and venomous powers found in some tribes of men. Marvellous qualities found in the parts of some men's bodies. The great toe of Pyrrhus; the teeth of the son of Prusias; the eyes of Strabo and Tiberius. The mental powers of others no less marvellous. The memory of Seneca and Cinesas. The manifold capacity of Caesar. Sexual mutations and other peculiarities of physical structure and constitution of various persons. Different kinds of conception in women.

Cap. II.

On human monsters.

The Cyclopes, Sciapodes, and Antipodes. Other monstrosities, as the change of men into beasts; also the natural change of one animal into another.

Cap. III.

Man's unlikeness to the world.

Man's state before the fall; he had special prerogatives above the rest of the world; he was in perfect harmony with himself, flourishing without decay of strength, unchanging and incorruptible, with Paradise for his dwelling-place, and with God for his reward. After the fall his honours were taken from him; and he is compared to the beasts that perish. Nay, he is even inferior to them, for whereas animals have the natural defence of hide, bristles, hair, feathers, or scales, he is naked and helpless, and can of himself only weep. He is weighed down by the anxiety of life and the necessity of death. He, unlike other animals, is the enemy of his own species. He is exposed by a righteous punishment to continual wars from without and to continual wars from within.
1

SUMMARY OF CONTENTS.

Cap. IV.

The creation of Adam.

The First Age of the World.—Adam fell after the mid-day of his creation. His change of state from weal to woe. In his fifteenth year he begat Cain and his sister Calmana; and in his thirtieth Abel and his sister Delbora. Birth of Seth differently reckoned in the Hebrew text and in the Septuagint. Adam is buried in Kirjath Arba, i.e., the City of Four. Brief notices of Seth, Enos, Cainan, Mahalaleel, Jared, Enoch, Methuselah, and Lamech, with the chronological variations of the Hebrew and of the Septuagint. - - pp. 218-224.

Cap. V.

The posterity of Lamech.

Lamech introduces bigamy; he is the father of Jabal, Jubal, Tubalcain, and Noema their sister. The arts of building, music, agriculture, weaving, metallurgy, and sculpture now invented or improved. Lamech accidentally shoots Cain while out hunting. The longevity of the patriarchs not incredible. The corruption of mankind, and the birth of the giants. Adam's prophecy. The construction of the inscribed column of brick and marble, which should be proof against fire or flood. The marble column still extant in Syria. Noah and his family. The construction of the ark. The deluge. Termination of the first age of the world. Its duration variously computed. pp. 214-236.

Cap. VI.

The posterity of Noah.

The Second Age of the World.—Noah leaves the ark. The rainbow. The symbolical significance of its colours. Before the flood was no rain or rainbow, nor use of flesh, fish, or wine. Death of Noah. His sons and their posterity. The genealogy of Shem pursued. Short notices of Arphaxad, Cainan, Salah, Heber, Phaleg, Regau (or Reu), Sarug, Nahor, and Terah, the father of Abraham, with whose birth the second age of the world terminates. Its duration differently estimated in the Hebrew and in the LXX. Observations on the discrepancy. No Greek or barbarian history before Abraham.
SUMMARY OF CONTENTS.

Ionicus, a son of Noah, reigns as far as the Indian ocean. His prophecies. Nimrod, his disciple, founds Babylon and reigns there. The tower of Babel built in the time of Nimrod, who also founds Nineveh, afterwards enlarged by Ninus, and introduces fire worship. - pp. 238-250.

CAP. VII.

Of Noah's children, and the kingdoms founded by their posterity.

Shem's descendants occupied the south countries from the East to Phenicia. Ham's posterity extended from Sidon by the sea to the Straits of Gibraltar. Japhet's children ruled over Mid Asia, from Mount Taurus northward, and over all Europe as far as the British ocean. From the first dispersion of nations the kingdoms of Assyria, Egypt, Scythia, and Scyton commenced about the same time. The kingdoms of Assyria, Persia, Greece, and Rome, which succeeded one another, were the principal empires as regards their progress. The kingdoms which were coeval with Assyria must be treated of first. - pp. 250-258.

CAP. VIII.

On the kingdoms of Scythia, Sicyon, Egypt, Assyria, Persia, Greece, and Rome.

The kingdom of Scythia took its rise in the time of Sarug, the ancestor of Abraham. Thanaus the first king. The river Tanais named after him. This kingdom subdued Asia, and conquered Darius, Cyrus, and Alexander.

The kingdom of Sicyon commenced in the time of Nahor, Abraham's great-grandfather, and lasted under thirty-two kings till the time of Eli. Dionysius, however, places its commencement a little later.

The kingdom of Egypt began likewise in the time of Nahor. Fifteen dynasties before Abraham. Then sixteen dynasties of Thebes. After them eighteen Diospolitan dynasties. From the time of Cambyses Egypt was under seven Persian kings. It had then ten kings of its own, till Artaxerxes Ochus re-conquered it for Persia, which held possession till the time of Alexander. The Lagidse or Ptolemies, of whom Cleopatra, subdued by Augustus, was the last. Egypt thenceforward subject to Rome.
The kingdom of Assyria, the earliest of all, was founded by Belus, the son of Nimrod, and lasted till the reign of Sardanapalns, who died in the reign of Uzziiah, king of Judah. Arbaees then transferred the kingdom of Assyria to the Medes. Assyria, however, had still governors of its own, though not monarchs, as Pul, Tiglath-Pileser, Shalmaneser, Sennacherib, Esarhaddon, Sargon. In the time of the elder Cyrus, who overthrew Astyages, the kingdom of the Medes was transferred to the Persians.

In the time of Hezekiah, king of Judah, arose the great kingdom of the Babylonians and Chaldeans, governed by seven kings, of whom Belshazzar or Nabar was the last. Cyrus slew him and joined his kingdom to his own.

The monarchy of Persia founded by Cyrus. The names of the kings. Alexander annexes Persia to Greece.

The Macedonian kingdom began under Cranus (Caranus) in the time of Uzziiah, king of Judah, and lasted till the reign of Perseus, slain by the Romans. There were other Greek kingdoms at Sicyon, Argos, Sparta, Epirus, all of which fell before the power of Rome.

The kings of Italy, of whom Janus was first, lasted till Tarquin the Proud, six being Latins, fourteen Albans, seven Romans after the foundation of the city. Consuls, tribunes of the people, and dictators successively governed the Roman State down to the time of Julius Cæsar. Thenceforward Emperors ruled. Augustus reduced the world to one monarchy. Philip Senior, the first Christian Emperor. Constantine the Great made Constantinople a second seat of empire, leaving to the Pope the dignity of the Apostolic See. When Charlemagne, king of France, became Emperor of the West, the title of Roman Emperor remained at Constantinople alone. — — — — — — pp. 258-274.

Cap. IX.

The empire of Ninus and Semiramis.

Belus, son of Nimrod and king of Babylon, is succeeded by his son Ninus, who reigned over almost all Asia, except India. Abraham is born in his reign, about 1300 years before the building of Rome. Ninus builds Nineveh, subdues Zoroaster, king of Bactria, and burns his books on magic. After the death of his father Belus, he made an image of him; hence arose idolatry. Baal and Beel, which occur in various combinations, are forms of Bel, the general name for idol. Further remarks on the origin of idolatry and of the heathen gods and superstitions from Alexander Neckham, Isidore, Augustine, and Jerome. Upon the death of Ninus, who was killed by an
SUMMARY OF CONTENTS.

arrow in war, his wife Semiramis reigns, feigning herself to be his son. She conquers Ethiopia and India. She is at last murdered by her own son Ninian. Dress and manners of the Assyrian court. - - - pp. 274–284.

CAP. X.

The History of Abraham.

The Third Age of the World.—Abraham, the son of Terah, was born two hundred and ninety-two years after the flood. He and his father migrate from Ur of the Chaldees to Haran in Mesopotamia. After Terah's death he goes to Shechem, and thence to Pentapolis, and at length descends into Egypt. He teaches the Egyptians arithmetic and astronomy. He returns from Egypt, and settles near Hebron, or Kirjath-Arba, i.e., the City of Four, because the four greatest patriarchs were buried there. He pays tithes to Melchisedech, who is said to be the same as Shem. Some connect the institution of the Jubilee with Abram. His main Hagar becomes the mother of Ishmael and the Saracens. Abraham and his family receive the covenant of circumcision. His name then changed to Abraham; hence the Jews give their sons names when they are circumcised. Destruction of Sodom. History of Lot and his daughters. - - pp. 284–292.

CAP. XI.

History of Isaac and his family. Early history of Greece.

Birth of Isaac; death and burial of Sarah. Abraham marries Hagar, now called Keturah. Isaac marries Rebecca. Cres reigns in Crete; he is one of the Curetes. The appearance of Minerva at the lake Tritonis; she invented spinning and other arts. Rise of the Argive kingdom under Inachus; his son Phoroneus first gave laws to the Greeks; Phgeus, his brother, invented chapels in honour of the gods. Their sister Isis, or Io, teaches the Egyptians agriculture and letters; her sistrum. The birth of Epaphus a fable, as his mother Io was in the time of Isaac, while his father Jupiter lived in the days of Joshua. The flood in Greece in the reign of Ogyges. History of Jacob, son of Isaac by Rebecca. He serves Laban; his artfulness. Joseph, his son, is sold into Egypt to Potiphar, an eunuch. Potiphar becomes priest of Heliopolis. Death and burial of Isaac. Pharaoh's dream. Jacob comes into Egypt. pp. 294–304.
SUMMARY OF CONTENTS.

CAP. XII.

History of the patriarchs concluded. Early history of Greece and Egypt.

Apis, third king of Argos, comes into Egypt; and is there after his death worshipped as Serapis. Apis appears annually in the form of a bull emerging from the Nile. In the reign of Argus, fourth king of Argos, corn began to be cultivated in Greece. Jacob dies, is embalmed, and afterwards buried in Hebron. Legends of Prometheus, Atlas, Triptolemus, and Ceres. Joseph dies, and he and his brethren, as they die, are buried in Hebron. Their bones afterwards translated to Shechem.

pp. 306-314.

CAP. XIII.

History of Moses.

Moses, the son of Amram, was born in the time of the Pharaoh known as Amenophis. Pharaoh's cruelty to the Israelites; their male children cast into the Nile. Moses is saved by Thermuth, the daughter of Pharaoh. Moses brought before the king when an infant; he tramples the king's crown, on which an image of Jove is carved, under foot. His narrow escape from being killed; he then scourges his own tongue with burning coals, and is accordingly supposed to have acted in the matter of the crown in childish simplicity. Moses in process of time leads the Egyptians against the invading Ethiopians, whom he blockades in Saba, the royal city. Tharbis, the king's daughter, surrenders the city to Moses, on condition of his marrying her. Tharbis opposed his return to Egypt; but he gave her a ring of forgetfulness, and so returned. While visiting his brethren in the land of Goshen, he slew an Egyptian who had smitten an Israelite. The deed being known, he fled into the land of Midian, and married Zipporah, daughter of Jethro the priest.


CAP. XIV.

History of Moses concluded. Early history of Greece and Egypt.

Moses and Aaron stand before Pharaoh, who refuses to let Israel go. The plagues of Egypt. The Exodus. The miracles in
the wilderness. Moses receives the law and constructs the tabernacle. The spies are sent into Canaan, and return. The Israelites wander in the desert forty years. Death of Moses. Cæcrops leaves Egypt and builds Athens. Corinth, anciently called Ephyra, built five years earlier. Io, afterwards called Isis, marries Telegonus in Egypt, by whom she has Epaphus. The temple at Delphi built by Erysichthon. Lacedæmon founded. Egypt, formerly known as Aerea, receives its present name. History of Danaus and Egyptus. Legends relating to Bacchus, Mercury, and Hercules.


CAP. XV.

History of Joshua; early history of Egypt, Greece, and Italy. Legends about Jupiter and Saturn.

Joshua succeeds Moses; his acts; he governs Israel twenty-six years. Erectheus; Busiris; Phenix and Cadmus. Rape of Europa. Her children. Agenor, king of Libya, and his family. Rationalistic explanation of the legend of Europa and her brothers. Jupiter reigns in Crete; the Cretans who show his tomb are mis-called liars by the lying Greeks, who seign him to be God of gods. History of Jupiter and Saturn considered. Joshua, before his death, makes a covenant with the people, and confirms it by pouring water on the ground. The heathen ratified covenants with the blood of a pig. The reasons for each, and the difference between them. - pp. 338–346.

CAP. XVI.

Othniel. Early history of Greece and Phenicia.

Chushan, king of Mesopotamia, subdues Israel. Othniel, Caleb's brother, delivers the Israelites, and becomes their judge forty years. The eight years of servitude must be reckoned as part of the forty years. Birth of Apollo, (not the Delphian Apollo, who lived earlier,) in Delos; and of Bacchus in Thebes. Cadmus brings letters to Greece, and Phenix to Phenicia. The latter were written in vermilion. Numerical value of the Greek letters. Demeter and Danaæ lived at this time. Foundation of Corinth. - - pp. 348–350.
SUMMARY OF CONTENTS.

CAP. XVII.

History of Ehud and Shamgar. Notices of many ancient heroes, especially Hercules.

Ehud, a left-handed man, delivers Israel from Eglon, king of Moab. He was the son of Gera, the son of Jamin, or Geminus. Shamgar slays six hundred Philistines with a ploughshare. Notices of various events in the lives of Triptolemus, Orcus, Proserpine, Persens, Helle, Amphion, Pelops, &c. Exploits and labours of the later Hercules. - pp. 352-362.

CAP. XVIII.

Explanations of the mythical narratives of antiquity.

Myths arose principally in the time of Ehud. The fables of Esop. St. Augustine and Isidore explain away the myths of Erichthonius, Geryon, the Gorgons, and others, so as to bring out a historical sense. The different kinds of fables; those of Menander, Esop, Hesiod. The traditions relating to Mercury belong to the time of Ehud. Musical instruments then invented. Introduction of the chorus into Greece. pp. 362-378.

CAP. XIX.

History of Deborah and her contemporaries.

Deborah and Barak judged Israel forty years. Fall of the Argive and rise of the Laurentine monarchy. Mida king of Phrygia. Foundation of Troy. - - - pp. 378-380.

CAP. XX.

History of Gideon and his contemporaries.

SUMMARY OF CONTENTS.

Cap. XXI.

Histories of Abimelech and Tola, and their contemporaries.

Abimelech, son of Gideon by a concubine, slays his brethren, all except one. He judges Israel three years, and is succeeded by Tola, who remains in office twenty-three years. Battle of Lapithæ and Centaurs. Medea goes to Colchis. Faunus reigns in Italy. War of Vesores, king of Egypt, with the Scythians. The Amazons. - - pp. 388-394.

Cap. XXII.

History of Jair, and contemporary events.

Jair and his thirty sons, who rule over thirty cities. After his death Israel became subject to the Philistines and Ammonites. Carthage now founded according to some. The nymph Carmentis introduces the Latin alphabet. Different stages of the Latin language. - - pp. 394-396.

Cap. XXIII.

History of Jephthah and his contemporaries.

Jephthah, the son of a harlot, judged Israel six years. Rise of the Latin kingdom under Latinus. The Erythrean Sibyl now delivers her prophecies concerning Christ. There were ten Sibyls in all. Derivation of the word. Succession of the kings of Athens, one of whom Demophon, aids the Greeks in the Trojan war. The Argonautic expedition. Jason's subsequent expedition to Troy, which he laid waste, and returned home, carrying off Hesione, daughter of Laomedon, king of Troy. - - - - - pp. 398-406.

Cap. XXIV.

History of Ibzan and of the Trojan war.

Ibzan of Bethlehem was judge of Israel seven years. Priam promises to forgive the Greeks all injuries, if his sister Hesione were restored. This being refused, the Trojan war breaks out afresh. The history of that war traced to its close. - - - - - pp. 406-418.
SUMMARY OF CONTENTS.

CAP. XXV.

History of Elon and Abdon, and of the return of the Greeks from the Trojan war.

Elon, of the tribe of Zebulon, judges Israel ten years. Variations of chronologers. Abdon judges Israel eight years. In the third year of his government Troy was taken, 432 years before the building of Rome. The Greeks on their way home met with many troubles. The companions of Diomede were changed into birds, and haunted a temple of Diomede (who had miraculously disappeared, and was held as a god) near Mount Garganus in Apulia. Varro confirms the story by the changes of Ulysses' companions into hogs, and of certain Arcadians into wolves. Augustine heard stories of Italian witches who turned men into beasts by giving them cheese. Apuleius' account of himself. A similar account related by William of Malmebury, in the time of Peter Damian. St. Augustine's story about Præstantius. He and Giraldus incline to recognize demoniacal agency in these histories.  

- - - - pp. 418-430.

CAP. XXVI.

The wanderings of Eneas after the fall of Troy.

Accompanied by Anchises and Ascanius he comes to Sicily, and while intending to sail to Italy is driven by a storm to Africa, where, according to the common account, he meets Dido, who falls in love with him. But there are chronological reasons against the common account, as Eneas seems to have lived three centuries before Carthage was built. Dido burns herself to death on a funeral pile. Eneas comes to Italy, allies himself with Evander, who reigned in the Palatine Mount, and in the end overcomes the Tuscan and Latin, and builds Lavinium, named after his wife, Lavinia, a daughter of king Latinus. Ascanius (or Iulus), son of Eneas by Creusa, succeeds Eneas, who fell in fighting against Mezentius; he leaves Lavinium and builds Alba Longa. He is succeeded by Silvius Posthumus, his half-brother.

In the time of Sampson, who judged Israel twenty years, occurred the events of the Odyssey. Pyrrhus is slain by Orestes. Homer now flourished, according to some. Age of Homer uncertain.  

- - - - pp. 432-440.
SUMMARY OF CONTENTS.

CAP. XXVII.

History of Eli and his contemporaries. Early History of Britain.

Eli presided over Israel forty years, according to Josephus and Isidore, but according to the Septuagint for twenty only. Ruth's history. The sons of Hector recover Troy. Silvius Posthumus begins to reign. Brutus, the son of Posthumus, occupies Britain. Discrepancy between the Roman and British accounts about the father of Brutus. Brutus, whose mother died in childbirth, kills his father when out hunting. Expelled from Italy into Greece, he arrives at length after various wanderings in Britain, destroys the giants, and becomes first monarch of the island, which he calls after his own name. He builds Trinovantum, now called London. He begets three sons, Locrinus, Camber, and Albanactus; and after governing Britain for twenty-four years, dies. The kings of Sicyon come to an end.

Samuel governs Israel twelve years; his institution of the schools of the prophets. Locrinus, son of Brutus, reigns in Britain. His wife, Guendolena, who slew him, reigns after his death for fifteen years. - - - - - pp. 440-446.

CAP. XXVIII.

History of Saul and his contemporaries.

Saul reigns over Israel twenty years according to Josephus. Eneas Silvius, son of Posthumus, reigns over the Latins thirty-one years. Codrus, the last king of Athens, begins to reign. He provokes his own death in order to insure victory to his country. Change of government at Athens.

Maddan, son of Locrinus and Guendolena, reigns in Britain forty years, and begets Mempricius and Maulus. Death of Saul and his sons. The third age of the world now concludes.

pp. 448-450.
ADDENDA ET CORRIGENDA.

Vol. 1.

Introd. p. xii., notes, col. 1, l. 9. In Chester Cathedral an arched monument is still to be seen in the wall of the south aisle near the choir, which corresponds perfectly with the description quoted, and it has been recently supposed by some antiquaries, as I learn, to be the tomb of Higden. The opinion, so far as I can judge, seems to be well founded.

Page xviii., line 13. "There was . . . facts of the case." This sentence must be cancelled, and the first three lines of the note also. Roger Frened was abbot of Chester, not in Higden's time, as my argument required, but about a century earlier.

Page xxv., line 12, for Jerusaelem read Jerusalem.

Page xxxii., note, col. 1, l. 18, and p. 256, note 20, for Auroch read Aurochs.

Page 64, line 1, for omnis read omnis.

Page 190, line 11, for Mogis read Moysi with the MSS. It had escaped me that this is the Latin form of the genitive in the Vulgate, &c.


Page 224, line 3, for speleibatur read sepeliebatur.

Page 335, line 28, for he read he.

Pages 394-430. This metrical description of Wales is published by Mr. T. Wright among the poems of Walter Mapes, Camden Soc., 1841, to whom some old lists of his works ascribe it. Mr. Dimock, however, has shown (Pref. to Gir. Cambr., vol. vi. p. li.) that there is no reason to doubt that Higden is the author. Mr. Wright's text, which I have examined throughout, has not a single various reading of importance.

Vol. 2.

The erroneous and defective references which have been corrected in the introduction or notes are not noticed here.

Page 6, line 5. Solinus, add cap. 22 here and at pp. 10, 14, 22.

Page 10, line 4. After quartodecimo, add cap. 6.

Page 10, line 6. After Giraldus add Top. Hib. i. 3; where also the citation at p. 12, l. 10, occurs.

Page 10, line 7. Orosius, add lib. i. c. 2.

Page 10, line 12. After primo add cap. 1; the same chapter is referred to pp. 12 (ter.), 16, 142, 150.

Page 14, line 15. The true reference is to Plin., lib. xvii. c. 4 (al. 6).

Page 26, line penult. After Itinerario add ii. 10.

Page 38, line 4, insert semicolon after villas, and cancel it after cantredis.

Page 48. After Alfridus add lib. i. p. 8, who has rheuma for stenua.

Page 50, line 14. After quarto add p. 283 (Sav.).
ADDENDA ET CORRIGENDA.

Page 54, line 19. After secundo add p. 234 (Sav.), and p. 254 (Sav.) at p. 58, l. 10.

Page 56, notes, col. 2, line 11, cancel C.D.

Page 58, line 13. See Gulf, Mon., lib. ii. c. 10.

Page 62, line 15. After tertio add p. 258 (Sav.).

Page 64, line 6. Insert in marg. De Edinburgh, and at l. 14, De Aleluid.

Page 66, line 15. After Britonum add lib. iii. c. 17.

Page 70, line 2. The first citation from William of Malmesbury occurs lib. iii. p. 258 (Sav.); the other (l. 17) at p. 273 (Sav.).

Page 74, line 1. After Itinerario add ii. 11. But little of the description of Chester is found in Giraldus; it is probably due to Higden himself.


Page 84, line 5. After Alfridus add lib. vi. p. 97; and lib. vi. passim after Alfridus at p. 100, l. 2; and lib. iii. p. 32, after Alfridus, p. 110, l. 3.

Page 110. After prima, l. 15, add p. 195 (Sav.), (in part).

Page 130. After tertio, l. 17, add p. 299 (Sav.). For the other reference to William (l. 10), which I cannot find in lib. iv., compare Will. Malm. De Pont., lib. i. p. 232 (Sav.); also Bed., lib. ii. c. 20.

Page 132, line 7. After tertio add p. 259 (Sav.).

Page 132, line 11. The early part occurs at Bed. lib. iv. capp. 3, 4; the latter (beginning sed et ipsae down to estitesent) is mostly from c. 12; we should read, however, with Bede and Trevisa, Eugfrid for Oswey. After this Higden begins to speak for himself; but the information is no doubt derived from William of Malmesbury (De Pont. passim).

Page 134, line 5, for post read primo, see note.


Page 146, line ult. After Gaunfridus add lib. v. c. 3.


Page 162, line 4. After tertio add p. 258 (Sav.).

Page 164, line 3. Cancel Giraldus.


Page 172, line 8. After sexto add p. 359 (Sav.).

Page 176, line 7, for assimilantur read assimilatuer.

Page 190, line 14. See Senec. Controv., lib. i. in princ. (t. iii. p. 50, Elz.).


Page 226, line 3. Tabul ; Jubal, the reading of Dj., is correct.

Page 226, lines 6 and 22. See Joseph. Ant. Jud., lib. i. c. 2. But Petrus, whom Higden follows, has more than Josephus about Jubal.

Page 230, lines 7 and 14. See Joseph., u. s., c. 3, § 3 and § 1. (The latter citation occurs in Petrus, cap. 1, whence Higden derives it.)

Page 232, line 6. See Joseph., u. s., c. 2, § 3 (quoted from Marianus, col. 46, by Higden, almost word for word).

Page 236, line 7. The true reference is to Joseph., u. s., lib. 1, c. 3, § 3.

For the other allusions, see Isid., lib. v., c. 39; Hieron. Op., t. viii. col. 71 (Migne); Marianus Scotus, col. 48; Pseudo-Meth., Sig. a. vi. b. (Migne).

Page 237, line 12. Print the words in Roman character, and substitute comma for colon after quarto.
ADDENDA ET CORRIGENDA.

Page 244, lines 21 and 22. See Isid., lib. v. c. 39; Pseudo-Meth., Sig. a. vii.
Page 248. The true reference is to Joseph., u. s., c. 4, § 3.
Page 252, line penult. For Britannicum read Britanicum.
Page 274, line 17. After primo add c. 4.
Page 280, line 14. After octavo add c. 11.
Page 290, line ult. The statement is really derived from Isid., lib. ix. c. 2, § 57.
Page 296, lines 2 and 4. Tritonia and Pallene are preferable readings. So Augustine and Isidore (lib. viii. c. 11, § 75).
Page 296, line 21. For Deebore read Delbore.
Page 310, line 7. The true reference is to Isid. xix. c. 32; but Petrus, c. 86, is Higden's real authority, who has more than Isidore.
Page 314, line 1. After quintus add c. 39.
Page 330, line penult. After tertio add cap. 1.
Page 334, line 16. After primo add cap. 11.
Page 334, note, col. 1, l. 5. For Vers. read Venet.
Page 336, line 12. See Joseph., u. s., lib. i. c. 15; but he does not give the name of Afer's daughter.
Page 338, line 2. After quintus add cap. 39, but Isidore has 27, not 28.
Page 350, line 5. The true reference is to Isid., lib. i. c. 3.
Page 350, line penult. Demetra occurs in Jerome's version of Eusebius, and in Marianus Scotus; it is rare as a form of the ablative. See Pape, s.v.
Page 372, line 16. See Macrobius sup. Somn. Scip., lib. i. c. 2, and c. 1 for what is said of Plato and Cicero in the same extract.
Page 384, line 6. After quintodecimo add cap. 2, § 36.
Page 388, line 15. After quadragesimo tertio add cap. 1; and after secundo, p. 402, line 5, add cap. 7.
Page 396, line 4. The true reference is to Isid., lib. i. c. 4.
Page 398, line 8. After octavo add c. 8.
Page 418, line 8, sqq. Tacitly copied from Marianus Scotus, col. 105.
Page 424. After secundo add § 171, p. 282 (Hardy).
Page 434, line 1. After octavodecimo add cap. 6.

TREVISA'S TEXT, AS EDITED, COLLATED WITH MS. HARL. 1900 (β.) AND MS. COTTON. TIBER. D. VII. (γ.) IN CERTAIN DOUBTFUL PASSAGES.

VOL. I.

Page 13, note 14] in caec, β.; or caes, γ. This reading is correct.
Page 15, note 9] Pat is wanting in β. and γ., and should be cancelled.
ADDENDA ET CORRIGENDA.

Page 21, note 1] β. inserts I only after hat, and omits it before take; γ. is much burnt, but seems to have hat y wryte in ye bygynnyng. This reading at any rate completes the sense.

Page 87, note 10] Read fetherly with a.; vpery, γ.
Page 89, note 9] Read his with β. γ. Cx.
Page 95, note 2] β. and γ. also omit of ye tyme, rightly.
Page 95, note 3] Read languages with β. γ. Cx.
Page 119, note 13] Read to fadly with a. β. γ.
Page 155, note 1] Read wryte is wconder with a. β. γ.
Page 175, note 8] Read pe empere with a. β.; the empery, γ.
Page 187, note 9] osels, β.; osels, γ. This reading is correct.
Page 189, note 1] Read wel faste with a. β. γ.
Page 193, note 6] The words in brackets occur also in β. γ.
Page 197, note 10] Omit in before jilke with γ.; β. however has it.
Page 213, note 2] a faile (i.e. fallen), γ., rightly; a wilde or a wilde, β.
Page 227, note 2] in, β. γ.
Page 251, note 1] γ. omits the sentence in brackets; β contains it.
Page 277, note 7] omit the clause with β. γ. Cx.
Page 303, note 3] seyle, β. γ.
Page 317, note 9] Read of wenches with β. γ.
Page 373, note 6] for chirehe yerde, β. and γ. have chirch hey.
Page 403, note 6] segyes, β.
Page 419, note 15] β. and γ. agree with text.
Page 419, note 16] β. and γ. agree with Cx.

Vol. 2.

For this volume the readings of β. are given in the notes throughout; those of γ. are mentioned here up to p. 211, after which they also are recorded in the notes.

Page 7, note 13] after β. add, and γ.
Page 9, line 1] Read, with γ., elif.
Page 21, note 2] γ. agrees with text.
Page 39, line 20] longe 7n bres, γ.; which adds wel schort after cold, below.
Page 49, note 4] β. and γ. have atayneue, correctly.
Page 83, line 4, lotynge] lutyng, γ.
Page 83, line 14, here is here] orb (erh, β.) ys jar, γ.
Page 83, note 1] β. and γ. agree with the text.
Page 183, note 1] add, and γ.
Page 207, note 7] γ. has seceue.
POLYCHRONICON RANULPHI HIGDEN
MONACHI CESTRENSIS.
POLYCHRONICON RANULPHI HIGDEN
MONACHI CESTRENSIS.

LIBER PRIMUS.

CAP. XXXIX.

De Britannia Majori jam Anglia dìcta.

Post insulas oceani libet Britanniam desribere, eujus terrae gratia luce presens lucubrata est historia; ubi dicetur:

1. De varia insulae nuncupatione.
2. De situ eujus et dimensione.
3. De ejus prerogativis attollendis.
4. De mirabilibus in ea stupendis.
5. De partibus ejus principalibus.
6. De insulis collateralibus.
7. De plateis ejus regalibus.
8. De famosis fluminibus.
10. De provinciis et comitatibus.

---

3] Beda libro primo, B.
4] prerogativis ejus, B.
5] ejus, B.
6] Added from Gale; om. A.B.E.
Trevisa's Translation.

De Britannia. Capitulum tricesimum nonum.

After pe ilondes of oceean now Bretayne schal be descreeued. By cause of Bretayne alle pe travaile of pis storie was bygonne. Pe firste poynt pat mo schal telle is of pe names of pe ilond; panne of pe stede and place of pe lenghe and brede; pe pridde of pe worpynesse of pe lond; pe ferpe of pe 2 mervayles and wondres pat beep here yune; pe fiftte of pe chief parties of pe lond. Pe sixte of ilondes pat beep bisides pat lond; pe seuenpe of pe kynges h'zwe weyes; pe eihtpe of famous ryueres and stremes; pe nyntpe of olde citees and townes; pe tenpe of prouncees and schires; pe elleuenepe of lawes and of pe names of lawes; pe twelfpe of kyngdoms, of boundes, and of markes by twene kyngdoms; pe prittenpe

Anonymous Translation of the Fifteenth Century.

Of Briteyne, otherwise callede Englonde. Capitulum tricesimum nonum.

After the yles of the oceean hit pleasethe vs to describe Bretayne, for cause of whom this presente story and cronicle was compiled. Where hit schalle be seide firste of the diuersite of names of that yle. In the secunde of the site of hit and dimencion. In the thrydde of the prerogatyses of hit to be extollede. In the ijijthe of mervayles in hit to be hade in wondre. In the vthpe of the principalle partes in hit. In the viijthe of yles colateralle to hit. In the viijthe of the kynges hye weyes. In the viijthe of famose fowodes. In the ixthpe of olde citees. In the xthpe of prouncees and of schires. In the xijthpe of lawes and of the hard wordes of hit. In the xijthpe of the realmes and of the merkes of theyme.

1 ilond, Cx., who has various other slight alterations in this chapter.
2 pe] om a.
3 twelfe, a.
Incipit historia.

PRIMITUS hæc insula vocabatur Albion ab albis rupibus circa littora maris a longe apparentibus; tandem a Bruto eam acquirente dicta est Britannia. Deinde a Saxonibus sive Anglis eam conquirentibus vocata est Anglia; sive ab Angola regina, clarissimi ducis Saxonum filia, quæ post multa tempora eam possedit; sive, ut vult Isidorus, Etymolog., quinto decimo, Anglia dicitur ab angulo orbis; vel secundum Bedam, libro primo, beatus Gregorius videns Anglorum pueros Romæ venales, alludens patriæ vocabulo ait: Vere

1 et quando, A.
2 The numbers and divisions of the chapters are not given quite uniformly in the MSS. of the text and versions.
3 Britannia Majori primo nomen fuit Albion, C.D., which omit all the preceding part of the chapter.
4 dicitur, B.
5 praclarissimi, C. (not D.)
6 qui, B.
7 possedit eam, B.
8 ut vult secundum Ysidorum, C.D.
9 de gestis Anglorum added in C.D.
10 Romæ] om. C.D.
of bishopriches \(^1\) and of bishoppes sees; \(\text{pe fourten}^2\) how many manere men hau\(\text{e}\) woned and i-dwelled \(^3\) in \(\text{pat}^4\) lond. \(\text{Pe five}^5\) of longage, \(\text{of}^6\) maneres; and vsage of men of \(\text{pat}^7\) lond. \(\text{De varia}^8\) \(\text{insulae nuncupat}^9\)ione. \(\text{Firste pis ilond}^9\) \(\text{hi}^10\) Albion, as it were \(\text{pe}^11\) white lond, of white rokkes aboute \(\text{pe}^12\) clyues of \(\text{pe}^13\) see \(\text{pat}^14\) were i-sei\(\text{e}^15\) wide. \(\text{Aftirward}^6\) Bruyt conquered pis lond and cleped hit Bretayne after his owne name; \(\text{panne Saxons}^16\) \(\text{oper}^17\) Englische conquered \(\text{pat}^18\) lond, and cleped hit Anglia, \(\text{pat}^20\) is Englonde; \(\text{oper}^19\) it hatte Anglia, and \(\text{hap}^20\) \(\text{pat}^21\) name of a quene \(\text{pat}^22\) owed pis lond \(\text{pat}^23\) hec Angela, and was a noble dukes dou\(\text{ster}^24\) of Saxouns. \(\text{Opere}^26\) as Isidre sa\(\text{p}^28\), Eth. 15, Anglia \(\text{hap}^29\) \(\text{pat}^30\) name, as hit were an angul and a corner of \(\text{pe}^31\) world; \(\text{oper}^32\), as Beda se\(\text{p}^34\), libro primo: Scott \(\text{Gregorie}^35\) se\(\text{ich}^36\); Englische children to sello \(\text{i}^37\) at Rome, and he accorded to \(\text{pe}^38\) name of \(\text{pe}^39\) lond, and

In the xiii\(\text{the}^40\) chapitre of byschopyrches, and of the sectes of peim. In the xiii\(\text{the}^40\) of how mony, what peple, and when that londe was inhabite. In the xv\(\text{the}^40\) of the langage of the inhabitatores of hit, and of the maneres of theymc. Of diversite of names of the yle of Britayne, \(\text{i}^41\) That yle was callede firste Albion, of white hylles apperenge a ferre abowte the brynkes of the see. And at the laste hit was callede Britayne by Brute gettenge hit. After that hit was callede Englonde of the Saxones other Englishe, men conquere\(\text{ng}^42\) hit. Other elles hit was callede Anglia, of Angella quene and do\(\text{h}^43\)ter of the nowble duke of Saxones, which hade that londe in possession by mony yeres. Other elles, after Ysoder, Ethi., xv\(\text{th}^44\) li\(\text{e}^45\), Anglia, which is callede Englonde, toke the name of hit of an angle of the worlde: other elles, after Bede in his firste booke, blesedde Gregory seenge childer of Englonde to be sette furthe to be solde at Rome seide: Now truly thei may be callede Englishe men (Angells or Angellysmen), \(\text{for}^46\) the

---

1. bissop riches, a.
2. have dwelled, Cx.
3. ylond, Cx.
4. fifteen, a.
5. langage, Cx.; longe age, MS. and a.
6. hit, a.; heyte, Cx.
7. fro ferre, Cx.
8. this, Cx.
10. see\(\text{p}^3\), a.
11. to sellynge, a.; (not Cx.)
12. This is marked cap. xl. in Harl. MS.; but the capitulation is here and elsewhere brought into agree-
ment with the Latin text.
13. The words in a parenthesis are inserted in a later hand.

CAP. XL.

De situ ejus et dimensione.


---

1 Terra enim, C.D. 11 The sentence slightly transposed in C.D.
2 So A.B.C.D., Gale; vultu, E. 12 Et om. C.D.
3 resultabat, C.D. 13 ictibus, C.D.
4 Alfridius, B. 14 insultibus, B.
5 So A.B.; Britannia, D.E., Gale. 15 Hæc om. C.D.
6 orbis, B. 16 Germaniae om. C. (not D.)
7 Karolus, B. Gale. 17 Hispaniae, Galliae, B.
8 Circa Galliae litora, B. 18 septentrionalem, A.
9 Britannica, A. 19 mare, B.
10 quasi, C.D.
seide: 1 Sopeliche aungelis, for hir face 2 schyne as aungelis; for pe nobilte of pe loud schone 3 in pe children 4 face. Alfr. De Brytische Anglia is 5 i-cleped pe ower world; and for gret plette of al good pe Grete Charles eleped hit his owne chambe. Solinus. Pe egge 6 of pe Frenshe clif 7 were 8 pe ende of pe world, nere pe ilond of Bretayne is nyh worthy to haue pe name 9 of anober world. 10 Alfr. Pis ilond is i-cleped insula, for hit is in salo, pat is pe see, and is often i-bete wip dyuers cours of wateres and 11 stremites and wip 12 waves of pe see.

De situ eius et dimensione. Capitulum quadragesimum. Plinius, libro secundo, capitulo septuagesimo septimo. This Britayne is acounted an holy 13 lond bothe in oure stories and also in stories of Grees, and is i-sette a£e Germania, Gallia, Fraunce, 15 and Spayne bytwene the north and pe west and pe see bytwene. Pis lond is fifty myle from ehere of theyme dothe J(ifFe grete resplendence lyke to an MS. Harl. angelle; for the nobilte of the londe scheweth in the siȝhte of the childre. That londe of Englonde is callede as that other worlde, whom Grete Charles the kynge callede his chambe for pe habundaunce of plente of alle goode thynges. Solinus. For the costes of Fraunce scholde be as an ende of the worlde, but that Briteyne deswarthe alenomte the name of an other worlde. Alfr. That londe of Englonde is callede an yle, in that hit is trowblede ofte with waters and with pe incurses of enmyes.

Of the site and dimencion of hit. Capitulum quadragesimum. Plinius, libro secundo, capitulo septuagesimo septimo. That londe of Briteyne lythe from the costes of Germany, of Fraunce, and of Speyne, betwene the northe and weste, departede from theyme by the see. That londe is

1 Cx. inserts They ben.
2 name face, MS.
3 schoon, a.
4 So also a. and Cx.
5 So Cx. and ß. ; Anglians, MS.
6 edge, Cx.
7 clyve, a.
8 sholde be, Cx.
9 So Cx.; names, MS.
10 if the ylonde of Brytayn ne were not, which is worthy to have the name, Cx.
11 wip, a., Cx.
12 wip] om. a. (not Cx.)
13 a noble, Cx., and ß., which seems right.
14 sette agaynest, Cx.
15 We should probably read or Fraunce.
Hæc\textsuperscript{1} abest a Gessoriaco Morinorum\textsuperscript{2} gentis littore proximo trajectu milium\textsuperscript{3} quinquaginta. \textit{Beda, libro primo, capitulo undecimo.}\textsuperscript{4} Et quia prope sub ipso septentrionali mundi vertice jacet, lucidas æstate noctes habet; ita ut sepe medio noctis tempore in quæstionem veniat intuentibus, utrum crepusculum adhuc permaneat vespertinum, an jam advenerit\textsuperscript{5} matutinum, utpote nocturno sole non longe sub terris ad orientem per plagas boreales redeunte; unde fit ut plurimæ longitudinis habeat dies in æstate, (sicut eontra noctes\textsuperscript{6} in hieme,) id est horarum xviij.\textsuperscript{7} Et iterum in hieme noctes sunt\textsuperscript{8} horarum\textsuperscript{9} xviij. et dies sex; cum tamen in Armenia, Macedonia,\textsuperscript{10} Italia, cæterisque ejusdem lineæ\textsuperscript{11} regionibus longissima dies sive nox sit solummodo xv. horarum æquinoctialium; brevissima vero dies sive nox novem duntaxat horas compleat. \textit{Plinius.} In Meroe\textsuperscript{12} insula, quæ caput est Æthiopum, sic fit ut longissimus dies sit duodecim\textsuperscript{13} horarum æquinoctialium; Alexandriæ Ægypti\textsuperscript{14} xiiij. horarum; in Italia xv.;\textsuperscript{15} in

\begin{enumerate}
\item \textit{Hoc, B.}
\item \textit{Normannorum, B.; Gellaria Armoricorum, C.; Gessarico Armoricorum, D.}
\item \textit{miliariorum, C.D.}
\item \textit{capitulo xii\textsuperscript{2}} om. A.C.; B.D. omit the reference. It should be primo.
\item \textit{advenerit, A.; ecvenit, B.}
\item So C.D.; longas, A.E.
\item \textit{sicut...xviij.} Seilicet horarum
\item \textit{xviii., et noctes breves, seilicet horarum sex, B.}
\item \textit{sint, E.; habet, D.}
\item \textit{horarum} om. A.
\item \textit{cum...Macedonia} Achaia et, C.D.
\item \textit{ejusdem libet, B.}
\item \textit{Meroe, B.}
\item \textit{duodecim sit, B.}
\item \textit{Ægypti} om. C.D.
\item \textit{horarum} added in B. and Gale.
\end{enumerate}
from the peple of Gesserike and from the brynykes in that 

and for cause that londe lyethe in the northe partes of the worlde, hit hathe liȝhte nyȝhtes in the somer, in so moche that a question is made oftetymes abowte the myddes of the nyȝhte wherjer hit be day or nay for cause of suche liȝhte; for the somne is not ferre vnder the erthe from that cuntre, wherefore that cuntre hathe daies in the somer of a grete lengthe, and longe nyȝhtes in the wyntere; that is to say, the daies be of xvij. howres in somer, and the nyȝhtes in wyntere of xvij. howres, and the day of vij. howres. Sythe in Armenia, Macedonie, Ytaly, and other regions of the same costes, the longeste day other nyȝhte is but oonly of xv. howres equinoctialle, and pe moste schorte day other nyȝhte dothe complete oonly but ix. howres. Plinius. In an yl callede Meroris, whiche is as the hede of men of Ethippe, where hit is that the longeste day is but of xij. howres equinoctialle, and at Alexandriia in Egipte

1 Cx. omits the last four words. A space for two lines left blank in a. The text seems corrupt. 2 lond, a., Cx. 3 hede, Cx. 4 hit, Cx. 5 whether, Cx. 6 equitide oper, a. 7 the, Cx. 8 god, a. 9 in þe, a.
in Italia of fiftene houres; in Bretayne of eyȝtene houres; in pe lond pat hatte Tile alle pe sixe somer monpes is day, and alle pe sixe wynter monpes is nyght. Isidorus, libro quartodecimo. Bretayne is i-sette wyþ yune ocean, as it were wyþ oute pe world, and is i-sette aȝzenst Franunce and Spayne. Giraldus. Bretayne is even longe and larger in pe myddes pan in pe endes. Orosius. Bretayne strehechp in lenge oute of pe soup [into pe north, and in pe soup] est side he hap Franunce, in pe soup Spayne, in pe norþ Norway, and in pe west Hibernia, pat is Irlond. Whan schipmen passip pe next clif of pat lond, pei seeþ a cite pat hatte Rutpinouþ. Beda, libro primo. Pat cite is now i-cleped schortliche of Englsche men Reptacestre. Solinus. Bretayne is eyȝte hondred myle in lenge, and he be i-mete fro pe clif of Tottenys to pe angle of Calidoun. Afr. Pat is from pe Penwythis strete fifte[ne] leges byȝonde Mochel Stowe in Cornwayle anon to Catenesse pat is byȝonde Scotlondre. And Bretayne is more pan two hundred

of xij. howres, and in Italyle of xv. howres, in Briteyne other Englonde of xvij. howres; and the day in somere is continually by vj. monethes in an yle callede Tile, and nyȝhte continually by vj. other monethes. Isidorus, libro quarto decimo. Bretayne is putte betwene the ocean, as with owte the wolde, sette as vn to the prospecte of Speyne. Giraldus. That londe of Englonde is longe; more large in the myddes of hit then in the extremites. Orosius. That londe of Bretayne is extendede by lengthe from the f. 60. a. sowthe in to the northe, hauenge on the este to hit Franunce, on the sowthe Speyne, on the northe Norway, on the weste Yrlonde, nye to the brynkes of whom a cite dothe appere to men sailenge in the see, which is callede Rutipi portus. Beda, libro primo. Whiche cite is callede now of the peple of Englonde Reptacestre. Solinus. Bretayne conteynethe in longitude lxxx vi m only passes, what man that wyllle take the measure of hit from Toteneise vn to the angle of Calidonia. Afr. That is from a place that is callede Penwithstrete, by xv. leukes behynde Mochilleston in Cornewaile, vn to Catenesse: hauenge in latitude moo then ij. e. mï.
in Cornubia usque Catenesse, quae est trans Scotiam. In latitudine autem habet plus quam ducenta milia passuum a Menevia, scilicet que est in extremo Walliae, usque ad Gernemutham in Northfolchia. *Beda.* Exceptis duntaxat prolixioribus diversorum promunctoriorum tractibus, quibus efficitur ut circuitus ejus quadragesies octies septuaginta milia passuum contineat.

**CAP. XLI.**

*De prærogativis insulae attollendis.*

*Giraldus in Topographia.* Ut Gallia Britanniam, sic Britannia Hiberniam vincit serenitate, sed non salubritate. *Beda, libro primo.* Quia haec insula opima est frugiibus et arboribus, alendisque apta pecoribus ac jumentis, vineas etiam quibusdam in locis germanans, sed et avium atque bestiarum diversi generis terra marique ferax, fluviis piscosis atque fontibus praecum copiosis, isicio potissime abundant et anguilla. *Wilhelmus de Pontificibus,* libro tertio. Ita ut rustici projectis piscibus sues pascant. *Beda, libro primo.* Capiuntur ibi sepiissime delphini et vituli marini,

---

10 *hujus* added in A.
11 *attollendis* om. B.
12 *Sicut, C.D.; Uti, Gale.*
13 *Quia* om. C.D., Gale.
14 *optima, C.D.*
15 *et* om. Gale.
16 *maris, B.*
17 *ysicio, MSS.*
18 *de Pontificibus* om. C.D.
19 *etiam, C.; om. D.; sepiissime ibi, B.*
20 *delphines, B.C.D.*
myle brood from Menevia that is in that tertemeste place of Wales anon to Gernemowthe in Norpfolk. Beda. Onliche outake that lengest out schetynge of dyuers forlondes, wip that whiche Britayne is al aboute cyfte and [fourty] side seventy powsand paas.

De prærogativis huius insulae attollendis. Capitulum quadragesimatum primum.

Giraldus in Topographia. As Fraunce passe Bretayne, so Bretayne passe Irland in faire weder and nobilte, but nouzt in helpe. Beda. For is ilond is best and bringep for trees and fruyt and reperen and oper bestes, and wyn growep ere in som place. Pe lond hap plente of foules and of bestes of dyuers manere kynde; pe lond is plentevous and pe see also. Pe lond is noble, copious, and riche of nobil welles and of nobil ryueres wip plente of fische; pare is grete plente of small fische, of samon, and of elys. Willemus de Pontsiebus, libro tertio. So pat cherles in som place fedip sowes with fische. Beda, libro primo. Pare beep ofte i-teke dolphyns, and see calues, and baleynes,

passes from Menevia, which is calle Seynte Daud, whiche MS. Harl. place is in the extemite of Wales, vn to Gernemowthe which is in Norfolke: the circuite of whom concteyneth, after dyuerse auctores, xit tymes viijte and lxxiii of passes.

Of the prærogatifes of that yle to be enhauncede. Capitulum quadragesimatum primum.

Lyke as Fraunce excellethe Britayne, so in lyke wyse Britayne exceedeth Yrlonde in beaute, but not in whollesommesse. Beda, libro primo. For that londe is moste plentuous in cornes and trees to be norischede, whiche is apte to bestes; plentuous of bryddes both in the see and londe of dyuerse kyndes; habundante in waters fulle of fische, specially of pyke and cle. Willemus de Pont, libro tertio. Where fisches be so habundante that churles fede theire swyne with fische. Beda, libro primo. Fysches whiche be callede dolphynes be taken there ofetymes, and porpas,

---

1 tertemeste, a., Cx.
2 in, Cx.
3 Gernemouth, a.; Yarmouthe, Cx.
4 Added from a. and Cx.
5 topicis, MS., and similarly elsewhere.
6 is best to bryngge forth, Cx.
7 ruther, Cx.
8 So a. and Cx.; bat, MS.
9 eles, a.
10 the peple, Cx.
11 their swyne, Cx.
12 So Harl. MS.
13 Yarmouth is written above the word in a later hand.
necnon et balææ, exceptis variorum\(^1\) conchyliorum generibus, in quibus sunt et muscula\(^2\) inclusam continentes margaritam\(^3\) omnis quidem coloris, id est rubicundi, purpurei, jacintini, prasini, et\(^4\) maxime candidi.\(^5\) Sunt et abundantes cochleæ, quibus tinctoria coccinei coloris efficitur, cujus rubor pulcherrimus nullo unquam solis ardore, nulla valet pluviarum injuria pallescere; sed quo vetustior, eo solet esse venustior. Habet et fontes salinarum\(^6\) fontesque\(^7\) calidos, et ex eis fluviós balnearum calidorum\(^8\) omni sætati et\(^9\) sexui per distincta loca cuique accommodos. Aqua enim, secundum Basilium, fervidam qualitatem recipit, cum per certa quædam metalla transcurrit. Hæc etiam insula venis\(^10\) metallorum, æris, ferri, plumbi, stagni,\(^11\) et argentii est\(^12\) fecunda. Plinius, libro sextodecimo, capitulo sexto. In qua etiam insula\(^13\) desub cortice soli inventum est genus terræ, quam malam\(^14\) vocant, in qua tanquam desiccatse pinguedinis nucleo, spissior,\(^15\) cum spargitur, ubertas in agris reperitur. Est et ibi\(^16\) alius genus albae cretæ,\(^17\) quæ respersa fecundat agros usque ad Ixxx.\(^18\) annum. Solinus.\(^19\)

---

\(^1\) variis, C.  
\(^2\) muscelæ, B., Gale.  
\(^3\) margaritas, B.  
\(^4\) et\(^{\text{[}}\) om. A.  
\(^5\) The sentence is slightly altered in C.D.  
\(^6\) et salivarum, Gale; etiam fontes, D.  
\(^7\) fontesque\(^{\text{[}}\) habet et fontes, C.D.  
\(^8\) calidorum, B.  
\(^9\) atque, B.  
\(^10\) habet . . . venas, C.D.  
\(^11\) stagni, MSS. (not Gale).  
\(^12\) est\(^{\text{[}}\) om. C.D.  
\(^13\) insula, om. C.D.  
\(^14\) malam, E.  
\(^15\) et spissior, B.  
\(^16\) ibi\(^{\text{[}}\) om. C.D.  
\(^17\) greter, C. (not D.)  
\(^18\) xv., B.  
\(^19\) Title omitted in B.E.
grete fisches as hit were of whales kynde, and dyuers manere schelfisicha. Among pe schelfisch beepl muskles 2 pat hauep wip ynye hem margery perles of alle manere colour and hewe, of rody and rede, of purpur and of blew, and special-liche and moste of whyte. Pere is also plente of schelcfisicha pat me dycf wip reed fynd; 3 pe redenesse perof is wonder fynd 4 and stable, and steypº neure wip colde ne with hetc, wip wete ne wip drie; but euere pe eldore 5 pe heue is pe 6 fairer. Pere beepl also salt welles and hote welles; per of renneº stremes of hote bathes i-deled 7 in dyuers places, acordynge for man and womman, and for alle manere age, olde and ʒonge. Basilius seº pe water pat] 8 renneº and passeº by veynes of certayn metal takiº in his cours grete hete. Pis ilond is plentuous of veynes of metals, of bras, of ire, of leed, of tyenº, of siluer also. Plinius, libro sexto- decimo, capitulo sexto. In pis ilond vnder pe torº of pe lond is good marl i-founde; pe prifthº of pe fatnesse driºº himself perynº: so pat euereº pe pickereº pe felde is i-marled, pe better corn it wil bere. Pere is also anopºer manere white marle, pat pe lond is pe better foure score ʒereº patº pereº wipº is and other grete fisches, excepte diuser kyndes of schelle fisches, as muselles, in whom margarites be founde of eruy colore, as rede of a purpulle colore, and of the colore of a lacinte, but moste specially white margarities. Also there be schelle fisches habundantly with whom a nowble rede colore is made and diode. The beautious redenessseº of whom may not appaire in eny tymº thro the heete of the somne, neither thro the injury of reyneº, but euery the more hit is werede, and in age, hit is the moore feire in colore. Also in that lounde be welles of salte and hoote waters, and bathes coveniente to every kynde by distincete places, for after the grete clerk Basilius water recevyethe a feruente qualite when hit rennethe by diuere metalles. Also that londe is plentuous in mony veynes of metalles, as of brassèe, of yrne, of leede, of tyenne, and of syluyr. Plinius, libro sexto decimo, capitulo sexto. Also there is founde in that yle vnder the erthe a kynde of erthe, whom men calle marle, whiche caste in to the feldes causethe grete plen- tuouenes of corne. Also there is founde an other kynde of chalke, whiche dispersede in felde makethe them plen- tuus vn to the lxxx. yere folowenge. Solinus. That yle

---

1 whiche, Cx.  
2 muskles, a.  
3 that men dyen ther with fynd, Cx.  
4 fayr, Cx.; fayn, a.  
5 elder, Cx.  
6 peº om. a. (not Cx.)  
7 to deled, a.; departed, Cx.  
8 Added from a. and Cx.
Gignit etiam 1 hæc insula lapidem gagatem, 2 cujus si
decorem 3 requiras, nigro-gemmeus 4 est; si naturam,
aqua ardet, oleo extinguitur; si potestatem, attritu 5
calefactus applicta detinet; 6 si beneficium, hydropicus
eam potantibus confert. 7 Beda. 8 Incensus ab igne ser-
pentes fugat; calefactus applicta detinet, æque 9 ut
succinum. 10 Isidorus, libro quintodecimo. Ibi oves
lanigerae, ferarum et cervorum multitudo, sed pauci
lupi. Ideoque oves ibi 11 tutius sine custodia in 12 caulis
relinquuntur. Ranulphus. In ea quoque sunt urbes 13
multæ speciosæ et opulentæ, flumina magna et piscosa,
nemora pecualia 14 spatioœa, gleba terræ mineris et
salinis copiosa. 15 In ea quippe 16 sunt lapidicæe mar-
moris varii, saxi rufi 17 et albi, mollis et solidi, calcis-
que 18 candidæ. Est etiam 19 ibi 20 argilla alba et rubea
ad componendum vasa fictilia, et tegulis tingendis 21
velut altera Samia multum accommoda; 22 denique

i-marled. **Solinus.** In pis ilond growe\(1\) a stoon \(\textit{pat}\) hatte \(\textit{Trevisa.}\) gagate\(s\) ; \(\text{if} \) me axe\(p\) \(2\) of\(3\) his fairenesse, he is blak as gemmes beep\(; \) [\(\text{zif} \) me axeth his kynde, hit brenche\(p\) in water and quench\(e\)p in oyle].\(4\) \(\text{zif} \) he is i-froted and i-het,\(5\) he holde\(p\) what hym neighe\(p\); \(\text{zif} \) me axe\(p\) his goodnessse, hit helpe\(p\) pe dropsy and hit be i-dronke. \(\textit{Beda.}\) I-tend in pe fire hit fese\(p\) awey serpentes; \(i^6\) hit is hotter,\(7\) hit holde\(p\) what hym neighe\(p\), as succinys, a stoon \(\textit{pat}\) so hatte.\(8\) **Isid., libro quinto-decimo.** Pere beep schepe \(\textit{pat}\) bere\(p\) good wolle, Pere beep meny herces and wylke bestes and fewe wolues; perfere pe schepe beep\(p\) pe more sikerlice wip oute \([\textit{kepynge}]\)\(9\) i-lefte in pe folde.\(10\) In pis ilond also beep many citenc and townes, faire and noble and riche; many grete ryueres and stremes wip grete plente of fishe; many faire wodes\(11\) and grete wip wel\(12\) many bestes tame and wydle. \(\textit{Pe erpe}\) of that lond is copious of metal ore and of salt welles; of quarers\(13\) of marbel of dyuers manere stones, of reed, of whyte; of nes\(s\) he,\(14\) of hard; of chalk\(15\) and of whyte lyme.\(16\) Pere is also white cley and reed ferto make of crokkes\(17\) and stences and open vesel and brent\(18\) tyle to hele\(19\) wip hous and cherches as hit
gendrethe a ston that is callede iette. If thou inquire the \(\textit{MS. Harl.}\) beawte off hit, hit is blacke; if thou inquire the nature, hit brennethe in water, and is extinute with oyle; if thou inquire the vertu of hit, that ston made hoote with rubbenge dothe attracte chaffe to hit. If thou inquire the benefite, hit helde\(the\) moche men hauenge the dropece, drynkenge hit. \(\textit{Beda.}\) That ston made in powdere, and caste in to the fire, expelleth serpentes. **Isidorus, libro quinto-decimo.** There be schepe plentuous in wolle, and moche dere of diuerse kyndes, fewe wulphes, perfere schepe be lefte in more suerte in theire places. \(\textit{R.}\) In that londe be many feire citcs, grete waters and fulle of fishe, and plentuous in wodes, where be also mynes of stones diuerse in colour, redde and white, sofie and harde, and white chalte. Also there is white cleye and redde, where of thei make pottes

---

1 Reference added from a. and Cx.
2 \(\text{yf} \) ye wil knowe, Cx.
3 \(\text{of}\) om. a.
4 Added and restored from b. and Cx.
5 \(\text{chanched},\) Cx.
6 \(\text{zif}, a.
7 \(\text{hatt}, a.
8 \(\text{Cx. (who prints succens) has considerable omissions in the previous sentence.}\)
9 Added from a. and Cx.
10 So a. and Cx.; \(\text{felde, MS.}\)
11 So a. and Cx.; \(\text{wordes, MS.}\)
12 \(\text{welle} \) right, Cx.
13 quareres, a.; \(\text{quareis, Cx.}\)
14 \(\text{soft, Cx.}\)
15 \(\text{chark, a.}\)
16 \(\text{lyn, a.}\)
17 make pottes, crokkes, Cx.
18 \(\text{brand, a.}\)
19 couere, Cx.; and so ofen.

---

VOL. II. B
lanam ejus zelat Flandria, coria et pelles Norman-
nia, ferrum et plumbum Vasconia, mineras et sales
Hibernia, æra ejus nivea universa sitit Europa. Alfrí-
dus. Ceterum Britannia omni materia asfluit, quæ
pretio² ambitiosa seu usu³ necessaria est ferrariis, et
salinis nunquam deficit. Unde et quidam metricus in
laudem⁴ ejus sic prorupit.⁵ Henricus de Prærogativis
Angliae: Versus:⁶

Anglia terra ferax et fertilis angulus orbis,
Anglia plena jocis, gens libera digna⁷ jocari;
Libera gens, cui libera mens et libera lingua,
Sed lingua melior liberiorque⁸ manus.
Anglia, terrarum¹⁰ decus et flos finitimarum,
Est¹¹ contenta sui fertilitate boni.
Externas gentes consumptis rebus egentes,
Quando fames hēdit, recreat et reficit.

¹ coria et pelles, B.
² quæ pretio] quod predicto, C.
(not D.)
³ visu, D. (clerical error.)
⁴ et...lauem] in laudes, C.D.
⁵ scribitur, C.D.
⁶ de...Versus] om, C.D.; A.B.,
Gale omit all the reference.
⁷ plena, B.
⁸ liberaque, B.
⁹ Item Henricus, A. B.
¹⁰ terra, A.
¹¹ Et, Gale.
were in þe other Samia, þat hadde Samos also. Flaundres louver þe wolle of þis londe, and Normandy þe skynnes and þe velles; Gasquyn þe iren and þe leed; Irolond þe ore and þe salt; Europa louver and desirep þe white metal of þis londe. Alfridas Bretayne haþ i-now of alle matiere þat þere nedep begge and selle, oþer þat is nedeful to manis þe þe Þere lakþep neþer salt ne iren. þerfore a versifioure in his metre preyþep þe londe in þis manere: Engelond is good lond, fruitful of þe wolle, but a corner; Engelond ful of payle, freme well wortþy to playe; þre men, þre tongues, herdþe; free beþe al þe leden; here londe is more þre, more better þan herþe tongue. Also Henricus: Engelond hiþ of londe, floure of londes al aboute; þat londe is ful payde wip fruyte and corn of his owne.

Stranγe men þat needep,
Πat londe wel ofte releuep.
Whan hunger greuep,
Πat londe alle suche men seep.

and tylestones. The wolle off wiche londe men of Flaundres louver gretely; and Normandy, the leder of hit and skynnes; Vasconia yre and lede. Whiche Britayne is a londe habundante in metalles, and in pleasure that is necessary to the lyfe of man, in to the lawde of whom a metriacion seithe: Englonde is a plentuous londe, and an angle of the world. That londe is fulle of disporste, wiche peple is worthy to make disporste, the tongue of whom is goode, and the honde more liberaþ. Ìtem Henricus sic. The londe of Britayne is the worschipe and floure of regiones of the costes of the see, wiche londe is contente with þe propre fertilitie of hit selfe, refreschenge other stranγe peple hauenge nede

1 So a, and Cx.; Flaundreþ, MS. ITarl.
2 loueth wel þe wolle, Cx.
3 So a; in, MS.
4 Holand, Cx.
5 felles, Cx.
6 Guyn, Cx.
7 Added from a, and Cx.
8 So a, and Cx.; Gir., MS.
9 So a, and Cx.; manere, MS.
10 lyre, Cx.; bigge, þe.
11 þer, a.
12 ys, a.
13 neure, a, þe.
14 but it is, Cx.; and similarly elsewhere.
15 ledyn, a; lyden, þe; alle þeir thynges, Cx.
16 and better, Cx.
17 Henre, a; Henr, þe; Her., MS. Cx. omits the word.
18 is beauteous (sic) of londe, Cx. Perhaps of lond in the text should be simply cancelled.
19 good, a, þe, and Cx.
20 From this point Trevisa seems to have intended verse.
21 So Cx. and þe; stronge, MS. and a.
22 men sicþe, þe. The text is capriciously altered in Cx. mere or less throughout.
Commoda terra satis mirandae fertilitatis
Prosperitate viget, cum bona pacis habet.
Anglorum portus occasus novit et ortus,
Anglica classis habet quod loca multa juvet;
Et cibus et census magis hic communis habetur,
Nam de more viri sunt ibi magnifici.

Item Alfridus sic:

illa quidem longe celebri splendore beata
Glebis lacte, favis supereminet insula cunctis.
Insula prae dives, quae toto non eget orbe,
Et ejus totus indiget orbis ope;
Insula prae dives, ejus miretur et optet
Delicias Salomon, Octavianus opes.

---

1 occasus, E.
2 Anglia, A.D.
3 multa loca, B.
4 Item Alfridus sic] So A.B.; placed after ope in E.; reference omitted in Gale and D.

5 Glebes, C. (not D.)
6 eget, E.
7 So Gale and the versions; Octavianus, MSS.
Pat lond is good i-now,  
Wonder moche fruyt berep and corn.  
Pat lond is wel at ese,  
As long as men luye in pese.  
Est and west al lond  
Knowep hens ris wel of Engelond.  
Here schippes fondeis,  
And ofte helpep meny londes;  
Pere mete pey(re) money  
Men hauép more comyn alle wey.  
For here pat craftes  
Men wolde gladliche sceue stiftes.  
In londe, in stronge  
Wel wyde men spekep of Engelonde;  
Lond, hony, melk, chese,  
Dis ilond schal bere the prys.  
Ofe alle londes riches pis lond hath nede to noon;  
Alle londes moot seche helpe nedes of pis allone.  
Of likynge pere won  
Wonder myzt Salomon.  
Riches pere pere is an  
Zern wolde Octanian.

To pe helpe of that londe, when hungre reigne the in their MS. Harl.  
That londe is of plentuousencs to be hawe in mer-  
mayle, whiche londe dothe encrease greatly in tyme of pease  
and of prosperite. That londe hath also mony schippes,  
whiche do helpe mony places, for in that be men of grete  
nobilite. Item Alfridus sic. This yle of Englonde is  
plentuous, and to be ennchanced with a lawde celiacle, whiche is  
so habundante in hit selfe that hit hathte not necessite  
to any other yle other place of the worlde. Whiche londe is  
a towe of refute to alle other regiones, the delites of whom  
Salomon desirethe, and Octanian the rychesse.

1 meche, a.  
2 The text must have suffered here. Cx. has: That lond bereh  
fruyt and corne good ynoyergh  
3 So a. and Cx.; at ese, MS.  
4 Eeste and weste in echelond ben  
known well the hauenes of Engelond,  
Cx. who has some other variations.  
For hens in text (hynes, β.) perhaps  
we should write hauenes.  
5 [pey] and, Cx., perhaps rightly;  
bar mete, bar money, β.; beyre is  
probably intended in MS.  
6 [pey] money, a.  
7 So a. and Cx.; money, MS.  
8 And for to lerne men gladly yeue  
yeftytes, Cx.  
9 and, a. β., Cx.  
10 we, β.  
11 price, a.  
12 riche, a. β.  
13 waste, Cx., with other slight  
variations.  
14 wounde, a; wandye, β.  
15 zern desire, Cx.  
16 Octanian, β.
Cap. XLII.

De mirabilibus in ea stupendis.

Solinus. Sunt in Britannia fontes calidi opiparii, ad usus mortalium, quibus fentibus praesul est numen Minervae, in cujus aede perpetui ignes nunquam canescunt in favillas; sed, ubi ignis tabet, vertitur in globos saxeos. Alfridus. Cum Britannia in se plura continet mirabilia, quatuor tamen praeceteris habet miranda. Primum est, quod apud Peccum ventus egreditur de cavernis terre tam valide ut vestes injectas ejiciat. Secundum est, quod apud Stanhenges juxta Sarum lapides mirae magnitudinis in modum portarum elevantur, ita ut portae portis superpositae videantur; nec tamen liquido perfunditur qualiter aut quare ibi sunt constructi. Tertium est apud Cherdhole, ubi concavitas est sub terra, quam cum multi sepe ingressi, terre spatia et ilumina videntes, nusquam ad finem venire potuerunt. Quartum est, quod pluvia videtur de montibus elevari...
De mirabilibus in ea stupendis.  Capitulum quadragesimum secundum.

Solinus. In Brytayne beep hoote welles wel arrayed and i-hişt to pe vse of mankynde. Maistresse of pilke welles is pe grete spirit of Minerua. In hire hous fyure durep alway, pat neure chaungep into askes; but [pere] pe fyure slakıp, it chaungep into stony clottes. Alfr. In Breetayn, beep many wondres; neuerples fourp beep most wonderful. Pe firste is at Pectoun; pere blowep so strong a wynde out of chenes of pe erpe, pat it castep vp azen clopes pat me castep yn. Pe seconde is at Stonhenge by sides Salisbury; pere beep grete stoues and wonder huge, and beep arered an hiʒ as hit were ʒates; [so pat pere semep ʒates] isett vppon oþer ʒates; noþeples hit is nouþ diereliche i-knowe noþer perceyued how and wherfore ʃey beep so arered and so wondelicep ʃey-honged. Pe pride is at Scherdhole; pere is grete holownesse vnder erpe; of men hyre be ʃeyne ʃey and i-seie ryueres and stremes, but nowher konneþ pey fynd non ende. Pe ferpe is pat reyn is y-seie arered vppon pe hilles and anon i-spronge

Of meruailes in hit to be hade in wondre. Capitulum quadragesimum secundum. MS. HARL. 2261.

Solinus. Sythe the yle of Briteyne countyneth the in hit mony thynges to be hade in meruayle, neuertheless iiiij. thynges ar to be hade in meruayle in hit specially afore other thynges. The firste is at Pectun, where the wynde goethe furthe the faste that hit casteth owte clothes caste in to hit. The seconde is at Stanhenges, nye to Salisbury, where stones of a grete magnitude be exalted in to the maner of ʒates, that thei seme as ʒates putte on ʒates, where hit can not be clerely perceyvede how and wherfore the stones were sette there. The thrydde is at Schedhooole, where a hole place is vnder the erthe in to whom mony men hawe entred, seenge waters in hit, cowthe not come to thende of hit in eny wise. The iiiijthe is, that reyne is scene to be eleuate from hilles, and to be diffusede anoon thro the

1 addressed, Cx. 6 Added from a, β, and Cx.
2 endureth, Cx. 7 apperceyued, Cx.
3 [pere] Added from Cx. and β; α. has þe þe; where would seem the truer reading.
4 and in to a.
5 chynes, α. Cx.
et cito per campos\textsuperscript{1} diffundi. Est etiam in ea stagnum sexaginta insulas habitables continens, quod\textsuperscript{2} sexaginta rupibus ambitur, in quarum\textsuperscript{3} qualibet aquila nidificat, et sexaginta\textsuperscript{4} flumina fluunt in illud,\textsuperscript{5} quorum nullum ad mare progreditur præter unum. Est ibi\textsuperscript{6} stagnum muro lapideo et lateritio circumdatum, in quo frequenter lavantur homines; quibus fit lavacrum unicuique, sicut voluerit, frigidum seu\textsuperscript{7} calidum.\textsuperscript{8} Sunt in ea fontes salis longe a mari, quorum aquæ per totam hebdomadam salæ sunt usque ad horam nonam\textsuperscript{9} Sabbati, et tunc dulces usque ad diem Lunæ,\textsuperscript{10} a quibus decoquitur sal candidum et\textsuperscript{11} subtile. Est etiam\textsuperscript{12} in ea stagnum cujus aqua tantam habet efficaciam, ut si totus exercitus\textsuperscript{13} patricie astaret juxta et faciem dirigaret versus\textsuperscript{14} undam,\textsuperscript{15} unda eos\textsuperscript{16} attraheret violenter, vestibus humore madefactis;\textsuperscript{17} similiter et equi traherentur; si autem facies hominum fuerint aversa,\textsuperscript{18} non nocet\textsuperscript{19} unda. Est etiam fons\textsuperscript{20} in quo nec a quo fluit rivus,\textsuperscript{21} et tamen in\textsuperscript{22} eo capiuntur.

\textsuperscript{1} diversa, B.
\textsuperscript{2} quod\textsuperscript{\textdagger} om. C.D.
\textsuperscript{3} quorum\textsuperscript{\textdagger} added from A.C.
\textsuperscript{4} insulas . . . sexaginta\textsuperscript{\textdagger} om. B.
\textsuperscript{5} eo, C.D.
\textsuperscript{6} ibi\textsuperscript{\textdagger} in ea, C.; et ibi, B.; om. D.
\textsuperscript{7} vel, A.
\textsuperscript{8} calidum seu frigidum, B. Sentence slightly transposed in C.D.
\textsuperscript{9} nonum\textsuperscript{\textdagger} om. B.
\textsuperscript{10} Lunæ\textsuperscript{\textdagger} om. E.
\textsuperscript{11} et\textsuperscript{\textdagger} om. A.
\textsuperscript{12} etiam\textsuperscript{\textdagger} om. B.; autem, A.
\textsuperscript{13} populus, A.
\textsuperscript{14} ad, B.
\textsuperscript{15} et . . . undam\textsuperscript{\textdagger} om. D.
\textsuperscript{16} illos, A.B.C., Gale.
\textsuperscript{17} repletis, C.D.
\textsuperscript{18} adversæ, B.
\textsuperscript{19} nocet, C.D.
\textsuperscript{20} fons\textsuperscript{\textdagger} om. E.
\textsuperscript{21} Tunus, C.
\textsuperscript{22} in\textsuperscript{\textdagger} om. A.
aboute in pe feeldes. Also pere is a grete ponde pat con-
teynep pre score ylondes couenable for men to dwelle yeue:
pat pond is i-clipped\(^1\) aboute wip sixe roches; yppon
cueriche roche is an egles nest.\(^2\) And pre score ryueres
rempet into pat pond; and noon of hem alle rempet into
pe see, but oon. Pere is a pond i-closed aboute wip a
wal of tyle and of stoon. In pat pond men waschep and
baepth wel ofte; and cueriche man feleth pe water hoot
or colde, riʒt as he wolde\(^3\) hymself. Pere beęp salt welles
fer fram pēe\(^4\) see, and beeth salte alle ｐe woke longe, forto
Saturday\(^5\) at none; and fresche from Saturday at none for
to Monday. Pe water of pese welles,\(^6\) when hit is i-sode,
torap in to smal salte, faire and white. Also pere is a
pond, pe water jeronof hap moche [wonder]\(^7\) worcyngge;
for pyh al an oost stood by pe pond and torned ｐe\(^8\) face
thiderward, pe water wolde drawe hem violentliche toward
pe pond and wete al her clopes. So schulde hors be drawe
in pe same wise. But\(^9\) ｚif pe face is a weyward\(^10\) from
pe water, [pe water]\(^11\) noyeth nouʒt. Pere is a welle pat no
stroom rempet perfrom,\(^12\) noper ｐerto, and ｚit foure manere
felles and centre nye to theyme. Also there is a water
conteynenge lx. yles inhabitable, which is compassed
abowte with lx. hilles, in everyche of whom an egle makethe
a neste, and lx. waters floo in to hit, of whom there gpethe
noon to the see but oon. Also there is a water compassed
with a walle of ston of tyles, where men be waschen ofte-
tymes, which is to eyuer man after his pleasure either
hoote other colde. Also there be welles of salte in hit,
ferre from the see, the waters of whom be salte by alle
the wecke vn to the howre of none in Saturday, and then the
waters be fresche; of whiche water white salte is made and
subtile. Also there is a grete damme in hit, the water of
whom makethe moiste the clothes of men hauenge their
sighte direcete to hit, and drawevenge themy towards hit, f. 61. b.
thanʒhe hit were a grete hoste, the water is of suche
efficacite; and if the faces of men be turnede from hit, that
water schalle not greve theyme. Also there is a welle in
whom a ryuer is not, neither a ryuer floothe from hit, in

---

\(^1\) i-clipped, Cx.
\(^2\) egle his nest, a.; varied in Cx.
\(^3\) wole, a.; will, Cx.
\(^4\) So MS.; pe, a.
\(^5\) Saturday, a.
\(^6\) þis, a. (not Cx.)
\(^7\) Added from a. and Cx.; the later omits moche.
\(^8\) theyr, Cx.
\(^9\) And, Cx.
\(^10\) be turned away, Cx.
\(^11\) Added from a. and Cx.
\(^12\) fro, Cx.
quatuor genera piscium, et habet\textsuperscript{1} fons\textsuperscript{2} tantum\textsuperscript{3} xx.\textsuperscript{3} pedes in longitudine et xx. in latitudine,\textsuperscript{4} nec tamen est profundus, sed usque ad genua, ripas altas habens\textsuperscript{5} ex omni parte. In regione Wenta est fovea a qua ventus flat incessanter, ita\textsuperscript{6} ut nemo possit subsistere ante eam. Est etiam in ea stagnum, quod facit lignum impositum\textsuperscript{7} durescere in lapidem, si per annum in eo\textsuperscript{8} manserit, unde formantur ligna in cotes. Est in cacumine\textsuperscript{9} montis sepulcrum, cui quilibet accedens et se dimetiens inveniet mensurre suse quan-

\textit{Giraldus in Topographia.} Juxta monasterium Wyn-

burnense,\textsuperscript{14} quod est\textsuperscript{15} non longe a\textsuperscript{16} Bathonia, est ne-

mus fruticosum;\textsuperscript{17} ejus ligna, si in aquam vel in terram vicinam per annum\textsuperscript{18} ceciderint, in saxum con-

vertentur.\textsuperscript{19} \textit{Giraldus\textsuperscript{20} in Itinerario.} Sub civitate Cestriae currit flumen Dee, quod hodie disterminat\textsuperscript{21}

\textsuperscript{1} habet autem, C.D.
\textsuperscript{2} centum, C. (not D.)
\textsuperscript{3} xx.] om. C.
\textsuperscript{4} et . . . latitudine] om. B.
\textsuperscript{5} habetque ripas altas, B.
\textsuperscript{6} ita] om. B.
\textsuperscript{7} impositum] om. C.D.
\textsuperscript{8} si ibi per annum, &c., C.D.
\textsuperscript{9} ejusdam, ins. C.D.
\textsuperscript{10} sua] om. A.
\textsuperscript{11} aliquis] om. C.D.; before vel in B.
\textsuperscript{12} flexerit ibi, B.
\textsuperscript{13} multum, B.
\textsuperscript{14} Wynburnense, B.; Wimburnense, A.
\textsuperscript{15} est] om. B.
\textsuperscript{16} non longe a] prope, C.D.
\textsuperscript{17} fruticosum, Gale.
\textsuperscript{18} per annum] om. B.
\textsuperscript{19} convertatur, B.D.
\textsuperscript{20} Idem, C.D.; Itinere, B.
\textsuperscript{21} dividit, C.D.
fische bep i-take þere yyne. Pat welle is but twenty foot long and twenty foot brood, and nouȝt depe bot to pe kne, i-closed wiþ hîze bankes in eueriche side. In þe contray aboute Wynchestre is a den; 1 out of þat den alwey blowep strong wynd, so þat no man may endure 2 forto stonde to fore þat den. Þere is also a pond þat tornep tre to iren, and hit be þerynye al a þere; and so trecen be i-schape into whetstones. 3 Also þere is in þe eop of an hille a burielles: euerich man þat comep and metep þat buriel, he schal fynde it euene riȝt 4 of his owne mette; 5 and þiþ a pil-gryme knelep 6 perto, anon he schal be al fresche, and of werynesse schal he fede none neye. 8 Giraldu in Topo-graphia. Faste by þe mynistre 9 of Wynburne, þat is nouȝt fer from Bape, is a wode þat berep moche fruyt; yf þe trees of þat wode falle into a water oþer grounde þat þere is nyh, and lyco þere alle aþere, þe trees tornep into stones. Giraldu in Itinerario. 10 Vnder þe cite of Chestre renneþ þat ryuer Dee, þat now to deleþ 11 Engelond and

whom iiiij. kyndes of fisches be taken; which welle hath a MS. HARL. 2261.
oonly xxvi foote in longitude, and xxvii foote in brodenes, which is not depe but to the knees of a man, hauenge hye brynkes to hit on euery side. Also in the cuntre callede Wenta is a diche, from whom the wynde blawethe incessantly, in so moche that a man may not stonde afore hit. Also there is a water in that cuntre that turnethe a tre in to a ston if hit tary in þat water, where trees or woode be fornede in to whetestones. Also there is a beryalle in the toppe of an hille, where euery man com-mynge schalle fynde his measure and quantite; and if a pilgreme, other elles a wary man, boo his knees þer to hit, he schalle not fede ny disease. Giraldu in Topographia. Also there is a woode fulle of frute nyc to the monastery of Wynneburne, not ferre from Bathe; the woode of hit putte in to a water nyc to that place by a yere be turnede in to a ston. Giraldu in Itinerario. Also there rennethe a water vnder the cite of Chestre namede Dee, which di-

1 a den or a cave, Cx. 6 meete, a.; lengthe and mesure, Cx.
2 Cx. here does not substitute dure.
3 westones, a.
4 toppie, Cx.; c and t are almost identical in MSS., and both readings are good.
5 riȝt] om. Cx., who often omits vel in similar passages.
6 Sentence varied in Cx.
7 knoleþ, a.
8 Reference added from a. and Cx.
Angliam a Wallia,\(^1\) quod\(^2\) singulis mensibus, ut asserunt accola\(c\), vada sua solet mutare;\(^3\) et utri finium\(^4\) Anglice seu Cambriac, alveo relict\(o\), magis\(^5\) incubuerit, gentem illam\(^6\) eo anno succumbere et alteram preva-
lere certum habent pronosticum.\(^7\) Iste\(^8\) fluvius Dee\(^9\) de lacu cui nomen Pymbelmere\(^{10}\) originem ducit; et
cum flumen\(^{11}\) salmonibus abundet, nusquam\(^{12}\) tamen in
lacu salmo reperitur. \(^{13}\) Willelmus de Regibus, libro
secundo. Considerandum est quantus\(^{14}\) divinae\(^{15}\) pietatis
fulgor ab initio suscepserit fidei populum Anglorum
illustraverit,\(^{16}\) quod nusquam gentium in una provincia
reperiuntur tot sanctorum post mortem illibata cor-
pora, finalis incorruptionis simulacrum praefertia,\(^{17}\)
sicut patet in beatis Etheldreda, Edmundo rege,
Elphego,\(^{18}\) Cuthberto. Quod\(^{19}\) ideo fieri credo ceelitus,
ut natio extra orbem pene posita ex consideratione talis

\(^{1}\) Transposed in C.D.
\(^{2}\) hoc, C.D.
\(^{3}\) permutare, C.D.
\(^{4}\) So B.C D.; in utri finium, A.;
\(^{5}\) ut si finium, E.; et ut finium, Gale
\(^{6}\) and D. (first hand), which is probably right.
\(^{7}\) magis\] om. C.D.
\(^{8}\) Omitted in C.
\(^{9}\) pronosticum, Gale; pronosticum
\(^{10}\) est, C. (not D.)
\(^{11}\) Hoc, C.D.
\(^{12}\) Dee\] om. C.D.; De, A.

\(^{10}\) Pymbelmere, B.; Pimbelmere, A., Gale; Pimbelmere, D.
\(^{11}\) fluvius, C.D.
\(^{12}\) nusquam, C.D.
\(^{13}\) Willelmus . . . animetur] om. C.D.
\(^{14}\) quantum, B.
\(^{15}\) diem, Gale, absurdly.
\(^{16}\) illustravit, A.
\(^{17}\) preferenda, Gale.
\(^{18}\) Alphego, B.
\(^{19}\) et, A.
Wales; that ryuer euerciche monpe chaungèp his foordes, as men of pe contrey tellep, and leuep ofte pe chanel; but where the water drawe more toward Engelond oper toward Wales, to what side [pat hit be, pat 3ere men of pat side] schal haue the worse ende and be overcome, and men of pe oper side schal haue pe better ende and be at here alone. When pe water so chaungèp his cours, it bodep suche happes. Pis ryuer Dee renmeth and comep out of a lake pat hi3t Pymbilmere. In pe ryuer is grete plente of samoun, neuerpeses in pe lake is neuer samoun 4 i-founde. 

Willelmus de Regibus, libro secundo. Take hede how grete li3t and bri3messe of Goddis myldenesse hap by schyne 5 Englische men, seppe 6 pey torend first to ri3ful 7 byleue. So pat of 8 no men in eo 9 province bep i-founde so meny hool bodyes of men after hir dep in liknesse of euere lastynge lif 10 pat schal be after pe day of dome, as it wel semeth in pese 11 holy seyntes Etheldred, Edmond the kyng, Elphege, and Cuthbert. 12 I trove pat it is i-doo by special grace of God alle my3ti, for pe nacioun pat is i-sette, as it were, wip oute pe worlde, schulde take hede to durynge of bodies wip oute corrupcioun and rotynge, and be pe 13

uidethe Englonde from Wales, which is wonte, as hit is seide, to chaung his furdes in every monethe; and wheuer hit do drawe more nye to the partes of Englonde other cles of Wales, the peple do prenestiente a falle to the peple to whom hit is more nye. Also this water callede Dee hathè the his begynnenge of a water callede Pimbelmere, and this floode of Dee is habundante in sarmones, and vn te this tyme presente a samon was not founde in that water from whom the water of Dee commethe. Willelmus de Regibus, libro secundo. Hit is to be considerate how that divine powere hathè ly3htede the peple of Englonde syth thee toke the feithe of Criste, where so meny seyntes be not founde in eny other province as in that; as of Seynte Edwarde, Seynte Edmund the kyng, Elphegus, Cuthbert, and Seynte Thomas of Cawnterbery, with many other seyntes; which y suppose to be causede by the inspiracion of Godde, that a nacioun as putte with owte the worlde thro pe con-

---

1 wheuer, a., Cx.
2 Added from a. and Cx.
3 oversett, a., Cx.
4 So a. and Cx.; is a samoun, MS.
5 he shewed upon, Cx.
6 So a.; sith, Cx.; sobeliche, MS.
7 right, Cx.
8 So a. and Cx.; if, MS.
9 eo, a.
10 lif] om. a.; everlastingynnes, Cx.
11 vis, a.
12 Cutberd, a., Cx.; the latter adds, and Seynt Edward and many other.
13 So a. and Cx.; beeth, MS.
incorruptae fidentius ad spem resurrectionis animetur.

CAP. XLIII.¹

De partibus insulæ principalibus.

CÆPIT² Britannia³ post Bruti primi⁴ tempora tres habere⁵ partes principales, scilicet, Loegriam, Cambriam, Albaniam,⁶ quæ nunc Scotia dicitur.⁷ Loegria a Locrino,⁸ Bruti primogenito, denominata⁹ hodie vulgato vocabulo Anglia dicitur, cujus limites primo fuerunt fretum Gallicanum ad ortum et¹⁰ austrum. Beda, libro primo, capitulo duodecimo.¹¹ Et ad aquilonem duo maris brachia altrinsecus in terram¹² longo spatio irrumpentia,¹³ quamvis ad se invicem non pertingant;¹⁴ quorum orientalis sinus incipit duobus ferme miliaribus¹⁵ a monasterio Ebbirceurnig¹⁶ ad occidentem urbis¹⁷ de Pemiltoun, et habet in se urbem Guydi;¹⁸ occidentalis vero sinus habet ad dextram¹⁹ sui

¹ Misnumbered 34 both in E. and Cx.
² Insula, B.
⁴ primi] om. B.
⁵ cæpit habere, C.D.
⁶ Albaniam ... dicitur] et Scotiaim, C.D.
⁷ quæ ... dicitur] om. B.
⁸ Logria a Logrino, B.
⁹ dicit, C.D.; om. B.
¹⁰ ad, C.
¹¹ capitulo duodecimo] om. C.; septimo, D. The text is correct.
¹² in terram] om. E.
¹³ irrumpentia, B.
¹⁴ quœmvis pertingant] om. C.D.
¹⁵ miliaribus, B.C.D.
¹⁶ Herbercurnig, C.; Ewircurnig, B.; Ebbureurnig, A.; Abercurnig (i.e. Abercorn), Bede. (The termination in the MSS. may either be -ing, or -nig. See Trevisa.)
¹⁷ urbis] om. C.D.
¹⁸ habet ... Guydi] fluit in illud flumen Twede, C.D.; Gyndi, B.
¹⁹ a dextra, B.
more bolde and stedefast for to triste 1 on pe final arisyng of
deed bodies forto laste euermore after pe day of done.

De partibus Britanniae principalibus. Capitulum quadra-
gesimum tertium.

After pe firste Brutes 2 tyme pe ilond of Bretayne bygan
for to haue [r]e 3 principal parties, pat bep Loegria, and 4
Cambria, pat is Wales, and Albania, pat is now 5 Scotlond.
Loegria had pat name of Locrinus [pat was Brut his sonn
eldest, and hatte Loegria, as hit were Locrinus] 6 his lond;
but now Loegria hatte Englonde. Pe meeres and pe marke 7
were perof somtyme pe Frenshe see bope by est and by
soup. Beda, libro primo, capitulum duodecimo. 8 And by
north tweie armes of pe see pat brekep fer in to pe lond,
epyr a2cest oper. But he 9 recehp nou3t to gidres; pe
est arme of pilke twyne ye bygyneyb aboute a tweie litel
myle fram pe ministre of Ebbercurying 10 in pe west side
of pe citee of Penultoune; in pat arm 11 is 12 a town, pat
hatte Guydy. Pe west arme of pilke twyne hap in pe

sideracion of that corruptele scholde be more bolde in feithe
MS. Harl. 2261. to the hope of the resurreccion.

Of the principalle partes of Britayne. Capitulum
quadragesimum tertium.

The yle of Britayne began to haue iij, principalle partes
in hit after the firste tynmes of Brute, that is to say, Loegria,
which is callede now Englonde, takenge the name of hit
of Locrinus the firste son of Brute, and Wales, and Albania
that is now Scottelande. The merkes of whom were firste
the see of Frawnce at the este and at the weste. Beda, libro
primo, capitulo duodecimo. Also in the northe partes of that
cunte be ij. floodes brekenge vp ciche from other by a
grate space, thathe thei towche not to gedre, the este parte
of whom begynnethe allemoste by the space of ij. mylcs
from a monastery callede Eburcurying, at the weste of a
cite callede Penultone, which hathe in hit a cite callede
Tweda. The oper parte of the weste see begynnethe at

1 truste, a., Cx.
2 Brutes, a. (not Cx.)
3 [r] So MS., a., b., and Cx.; but
the correction is certain.
4 and] om. a. and Cx. (Interline-
ated in MS.)
5 now is, a.
6 Added from a. and Cx., who
has a few deviations.
7 merkes, Cx., which is better.
8 vicesimo, Cx., wrongly.
9 they, Cx.
10 Eburyruryng, Cx.
11 So a. and Cx.; armes, MS.
12 Added from a. and Cx.
urbem minutissimam\(^1\) Alcluid, quod lingua eorum sonat petram Cluit, et ponitur juxta flumen\(^2\) nominis sui Cluit.\(^3\) *Ranulphi*. Volunt tamen quidam Loegriam apud flumen Humbrae terminari, nec ulterior versus boream debere extendi.\(^4\)

Secunda pars Britanniae Albania sive Scotia dicitur, ab Alvanacto Bruti filio sic nominata;\(^5\) extendit se a duobus\(^6\) marinis brachiis praedictis usque ad mare Norguegia\(^7\) versus\(^8\) aquilonem. Pars tamen austrina Albaniae,\(^9\) quae est a fluvio Twydy\(^10\) usque ad mare Scoticum, a Pictis quondam inhabitata, pertinuit aliquando ad regum Northimbrorum\(^11\) Berniciorum;\(^12\) a primis videlicet regum Anglie\(^13\) temporibus usque duum rex Scotorum Kynadius,\(^14\) Alpini filius, Pictos deletet, et sic\(^15\) partem illam regno Scotiae annectet.\(^16\)

Wallia que et Cambria, a Cambro Bruti filio sic dicta,\(^17\) quam ex parte orientali\(^18\) flumen Sabrina\(^19\) quondam sequestrabat a Loegria;\(^20\) hodie tamen flumen Dee apud Cestriam in borea,

---

\(^1\) *urbem minutissimam* om. C.D.  
\(^2\) *flumen* om. B., and space left before Cluit.  
\(^3\) *ponitur ... Cluit* et fluit in illud flumen Sulwach, C.D.  
\(^4\) Slightly altered in C.D.  
\(^5\) *sic nominata* nuncupata, C.D.  
\(^6\) *a duobus* proprie a, C.D.  
\(^7\) *Norwegie*, C.D.  
\(^8\) *versus* ad, C.D.  
\(^9\) *Albaniae* om. C.D.  
\(^10\) *Twydi*, B.; *Teidi*, A.; *Tweeds*, D.  
\(^11\) *Northanhibrorum*, B.; *North-\(\ldots\)
The righth part of Aleclud, a cite which is putte nye to MS. HARL. Cluit, a floode of that name. y Some men wilde Loegria, now callede Englonde, to have an ende at the floode of Humber, and not to be extended forther but to the northe. The second principale parte of Englonde was callede Albania, other Scottelande, takenge the name of hit off Albanactus the son of Brute, which extendeth the hit from the seide ij. waters to the see of Norway toward the northe. Neuerthatse, the sowthe parte of Scottelande, which is from the water of Twyde vn to the Scottes see, was inhabite somme tyme of the Pictes, whiche perteynede somme tyme to pe centre of Northumbrelonde in the firste tymes of kynges of Englonde, vn tyle that Kinadius, kyng of Scottes, son to Alpinus, destroyde the Pictes, and annepte that parte to the realme of Scottelande. The thryde parte of Britayne is callede Wales, callede Cambria of Cambrer the son of Brute, whom the water of Suerne departede somme tyme from Englonde, where now the floode of Dee departeth the hit in the northe at Chestre, and the water other floode callede

1 right, a.
2 Aleclud, a; Alclud, Cx., who has Clintstone, and Clynt below.
3 Reference added from Cx.
4 forther, Cx.
5 Brut his, a; Bruptes, Cx.
6 where as, Cx., who varies the construction.
7 Bremencorum, a; Brenycorn, Cx.
8 Added from a, and Cx.; a, has children for kynges.
9 pat, a, Cx.
10 Wales, Wallia, a, Cx.
11 side of, MS. (not a, or Cx.)
et flumen Vaga apud castrum Strigulense\textsuperscript{1} in austro Walliam ab Anglia secernit. Insuper et rex Offa, ad perpetuam regnorum Angliae et Walliae distinctionem habendam, fecit fossam perlongam,\textsuperscript{2} quae ab austro juxta Bristoliam sub montibus Walliae\textsuperscript{3} jugiter se extendit in boream, fluminaque\textsuperscript{4} Sabrinae et Dee in eorum pene primordiis\textsuperscript{5} transcindit,\textsuperscript{6} et sic usque ad ostium fluminis Dee ultra Cestriam,\textsuperscript{7} juxta castrum de Flynt,\textsuperscript{8} inter collem\textsuperscript{9} Carbonum et monasterium de Basingwerk,\textsuperscript{10} in mare se pretendit.\textsuperscript{11} Hujus fosse famosisissimae\textsuperscript{12} extant adhuc vestigia, quam eum armis praeterger\textsuperscript{3} tempore Sancti Edwardi regis cunctis Cambriensis poenale fuit, procurante hoc comite Haraldo,\textsuperscript{14} sicut\textsuperscript{15} inferius dicitur;\textsuperscript{16} sed hodie\textsuperscript{15} hine inde ultra citraque fossam illam\textsuperscript{17} potissime in provinciis Cestriac, Salopiac, Herfordiae, Walliae cum Anglis passim sunt permixti.

\begin{itemize}
\item \textsuperscript{1} Trigulense, D.
\item \textsuperscript{2} prolongam, D.
\item \textsuperscript{3} Walle, B.
\item \textsuperscript{4} fluviosque, C.D.
\item \textsuperscript{5} primordiis pene, B.
\item \textsuperscript{6} transcindit, A.
\item \textsuperscript{7} Cestre, B.
\item \textsuperscript{8} castra deflinit, D.
\item \textsuperscript{9} sub colle, C.D.
\item \textsuperscript{10} et . . . Basingwerk] om. C.D.; Wasingwerc, B.; Wasingwerc, A.
\item \textsuperscript{11} extendit, C.
\item \textsuperscript{12} famosae, C.D.
\item \textsuperscript{13} transgredi, C.D.
\item \textsuperscript{14} Haroldo, Gale.
\item \textsuperscript{15} sicut . . . hodie] om. C. (not D.); hodie, om. B.
\item \textsuperscript{16} infra dicitur, D.
\item \textsuperscript{17} prædictum, C.D.
\end{itemize}
hatte Vaga, at pe castel of Strygeleum departe of Englonde, and Wales. Also kyng Offa, forto have a distincioon for evermore bytwene pe kyngdoms of Englonde and of Wales, made a longe dieche pat strechepe forp oute of pe soup side by Bristowe vudir pe hilles of Wales norpward, and passepe pe reuers Suenne and Dee almost at pe hedes, and anon to pe moup of pe ryuer Dee byzonde Chestre faste by pe castle, and rennepe forp bytwene Colhille and pe ministre of Basyngevere in to pe see. Pis dieche is zit in many places i-seyn. In Seint Edward his tyme Walsche men schulde not passe at pe dieche wepoun vppon a grete payne, and pat was at erle Harold his procurynge, as hit is i-saide wip yonne. Bot now in ejper side bope of zond half and on pis half pe dieche, and specialliche in pe schires of Chestre, of Schrouysbury, and of Herford in meny places becpe Englishe men [and Walsche men] i-medled to gidres.

Vaga departethe Wales from Englonde in the sowthe at the castelle Strigulense. Also kyng Offa causepe a longe dieche to be made vn to a perpetuale distincioon of the realmes of Englonde and of Wales, whiche extendethe hit f. 62. b from the sowthe nye to Bristolle, vnder the hilles of Wales, in to the northe; whiche diuidethe as the begynnenges of the waters of Suenne and of Dee, and protendethe hit vn to the durre of the floode of Dee behynde Chestre nye to the castelle of Flynte, betwene Coolehille and the monastery of Basingwere. As zitte the stappes of that famose dyche remayne, whiche dieche to passe was a grete payne to Walche men, beenge in armes in the tyme of kyng Edward, that erle Haraldus procurenge that, as hit schalle be expressede afterwarde, but now Walche men bene permixte with Englishe men ouer either dieche, and specially in the provinces of Chestre, of Schroppeschyre, and of Hereforde.
CAP. XLIV.

De insulis Britanniae adjacentibus.

Et praeter insulas Orcadas, quas Claudius Caesar ad Britanniam pertinere fecerat, habet Britannia tres insulas sibi propinquas, quasi tribus Britanniae partibus principalibus correspondentes. Nam Loegria ad austrum adjacet insula Vecta; Wallia ad boream insula Monia, quae Angleseya dicitur; Scotiae ad occasum insula Eubonia, quae Mervania sive Man dicitur. Omnes pene ejusdem sunt quantitatis, de quibus hic per ordinem. Beda, libro primo, capitulo tertio. Insula Vecta, quam Vespasianus a Claudio missus subjugavit, pretinditur ab ortu in occasum xxx. milibus, ab austro in boream xij. milibus, et distat a meridiano Britanniae littore sex milibus in oriente sui parte, et tribus milibus in occidentali. Beda, libro quarto, capitulo quinto decimo. Hujus insulae mensura se-

---

1 Et om. C.D.
2 quasi . . . partibus] tribus partibus utis, B.
3 Slightly transposed and altered in C.D.
4 adiacet ad austrum, B.
5 dicitur] om. E.
6 Mervania, B.—v and n are so similar in the MSS. that it is hard to say what they read. I have followed Petrie’s orthography in the text. See Mon. Hist. Brit., Index. Gale has Mervania here, but Mervania below.
7 fere, C.D.
8 hic] om. C.D.
9 usque ad, C.; ad, D.
10 miliaribus, B.C.D.
12 miliaribus, B.C.D. (twice.)
De insulis Britanniae adjacentibus. Capitulum quadragesimum quartum.

Bretayne haþ pre ilondes pat beþ nygh and longeþ perto alle wip outh pe ylondes Orcades, as hit were answeringe to pe pre cheþ parties of Bretayne. For pe yle of Wight longeþ and lieþ to Loegrin, pat is Engleond; pe ilond Mon, pat hatte Englesie also, longeþ to Wales; and pe ilond Eubonia, pat hatte tweie [opere] names, and hatte Mennia and Man also, longeþ to Scotland. And alle these pre ilondes, Mon, Wight, and Man, beþ almost iþ-lich moche and of pe same quantitie; of pe which pre al arewe now foloweþ our speche. Beda, libro primo, capitulo tertio. Claudius sent Vespasianus, and Vespasianus wan Wighte, and Wighte strecheþ outh pe est in to pe west þrity mylge long, and out of pe souþ in to pe norþ twelue mylge, and is in pe est side sex mylge from pe souþ cleæf of Bretayne, and þre mylge in pe west side. Beda, libro quarto, capitulo quinto.

Of yles adiacente and nye to Bretayne. Capitulum quadragesimum quartum.

And the yles excepte whom Claudius Cesar causeþ to perteye to Bretayne, that londe hathe iij. yles nye to hit as correspondeþ to þre principalle partes of Bretayne: for the yle of Wyþhte lyethe nye to the sowthe parte of Engleond. And at the norþte parte of Wales is an yle which is calleþ Monia other Anglesey, and also the yle of Man at the weste parte of Scotlande, which be allemoste of oon quantitie, of whom hit schalle be seide by ordre. Beda, libro primo, capitulo tertio. That yle of Wyþhte, whom Vespasian sende from Claudius did subiugate, is þrestended from the este in to the weste by xxxvi mylges, beþene from the sowthe in to the norþte by xiiij mylges, and from the side of the sowthe see of Bretayne by vj. mylges in the este parte of hit, and by þre mylges in the weste. Beda, libro quarto capitulo quinto decimo. The measure of that

1 Wîȝt, a.  
2 Anglezie, a., Cx.  
3 MS. has mon before Wales (not ce or Cx.)  
4 So a. and Cx.; Engleond, MS.  
5 opere] Added from a. and Cx.  
6 Mennia, Cx.; see above.  
7 which longeþ, Cx.  
8 Wîȝt, a.  
9 sixe, a.  
10 opere, a.  
11 So Harl. MS.
De insula Monia.

cundum estimationem Anglorum est m. cc. familiarum.  

2 Giraldis in Itinerario, libro secundo.  

Insula Monia, quæ et Angleseya, brevi maris brachio quasi duobus miliaribus separatur a Northwlighta et continentecelxiiij. villas pro tribus cantredis; computatur quasi.xxx. miliaria habens in longum sed xij. in latum; et dicitur cantredus, composito nomine tam Britannica quam Hibernica lingua, tanta terræ portione, quanta centum villas continent.  

In hujus insule laudem proverbialiter solet dici Cambriacam: Mon Mam Kymry, quod Latine sonat Monia mater Cambria; nam, alis terris vietu deficiantibus, haæ gleba pœropollet adeo ut hæc in annona, haæ in pastura totius Cambriae populo et armentis videatur sufficere; unde et illud Virgilii aptari sibi possit: 

Et quantum longis carpunt armenta diebus, 

Exigua tantum gelidus ros nocte reponit.
The whole sentence is omitted in Cx.

2 Added from a, b, and Cx.

3 old dece, Cx.

4 places, MS. (first hand).

5 man, Harl. MS.
In marino brachio, quod hanc insulam a North-walla \(^1\) secernit,\(^2\) est vorago naves attrahens\(^3\) et absorbens instar Scyllæ seu\(^4\) Charybdis, nisi\(^5\) pleno mari subtiliter transnavigetur.\(^6\) Ranulphus. De mirabilibus hujus insulæ vide supra capitulo Wallia.\(^7\) Giraldus in Itinerario. Tertia insula, quæ\(^8\) Eubonia sive Mevania\(^9\) dicitur,\(^10\) inter Hibernicam\(^11\) Ultoniam et Scoticas Galwedias,\(^12\) quasi in umbilico maris, media jacet.\(^13\) Beda, libro secundo, capitulo nono. Hæc duas continet partes, quasi\(^14\) insulas; quarum prior ad austrum et situ amplior et ubertate felicior nongentarum sexaginta familiarum est juxta\(^15\) Anglorum estimationem; secunda trecentarum et ultra spatium tenet.\(^16\) Giraldus in Topographia. De qua quondam insula\(^17\) cui regioni, Hibernia scilicet an\(^18\) Angliae, applicari deberet exorta contentione,\(^19\) quia\(^20\) venenosos vermes advectos admisit, eam Britanniae applicandam

---

\(^1\) Northwallia, Gale.
\(^2\) Slightly abbreviated in C.D.
\(^3\) trahens, D.
\(^4\) et, C.D.
\(^5\) nisi . . . transnavigetur] om. C.
\(^6\) navigaretur, A.
\(^7\) Slightly abbreviated in C.D.
\(^8\) que] om. C.D.
\(^9\) Manavia, B.
\(^10\) sive Man, ins. B.
\(^11\) Hiberniam, E.
\(^12\) Galwedias, D.
\(^13\) adiacet, C.D.
\(^14\) partes quasi] om. C.D.
\(^15\) est juxta] secundum, C.D.
\(^16\) continet, C. (not D.)
\(^17\) insula] om. C.D.
\(^18\) et, C.
\(^19\) tentio, A.
\(^20\) qui, Gale.
In pat arme of pe sec, pat departeth bytwene pis ilond MonTrevisa.

and Norp Wales,\(^1\) is a swelowe\(^2\) pat drawep to schippes\(^3\) pat seilep,\(^4\) and swelowe\(^5\) hem yn, as doop Seylla and Charybdis,\(^6\) pat beep tweie perilous places in pe see of myddel erpe; perfere me may nouʒt seile by pis svolwe\(^6\) but slyly at pe ful see. \(\text{R.}\) Of pe meruailes and wondres of pis ilond Mon,\(^7\) lok\(\text{e}\) in pe chapitres\(^8\) of Wales. \textit{Giraldus in Itinerario}. \(\text{Pe pridded ilond pat hatte bope Euonia and Menana, pat is Man, stondep in pe myddes, as Irische Hilster and pe Scottische Galewey,\(^{10}\)} as it were in pe nancel of pe see. \textit{Beda, libro secundo, capitulo nono}. Pis ilond Man conteynep as hit were tweeie ilondes; pe firste is souward, pe more contray and better corn Lond, and conteynep nyne hundred houstdoles and pe score. Pe seconde conteynep pe space of pre hundred and moo, as Englishe men tell\(\text{ep}\).\(^{11}\) \textit{Giraldus in Topographia}. Som tyme was stryf wherpe pis ilond Man\(^{12}\) schulde ligge to Britayne oper to Irlond, [and]\(^{13}\) for venemous wormes\(^{16}\) pat were i-brouʒt pider leucd pere hit was i-den\(\text{e}\) pat the ilond Man schulde longe to Bretayne. \(\text{R.}\)\(^{18}\) And in pat ilond is
cuntro to theire pasture. Also there is a swalo in that \textit{MS. Harl.} 2261.

\(\text{cuntro}\) to theire pasture. Also there is a swalo in that \textit{MS. Harl.} 2261.

\(^1\) that departeth this lande and North Wales, Cx.
\(^2\) swolwe, a.; swolow, Cx.
\(^3\) draweth schippes to it, Cx.
\(^4\) Cx. inserts by.
\(^5\) Cilla and Carsibis, MS., a., and Cx.
\(^6\) swolowt, a.
\(^7\) So a. and Cx.; Man, MS.
\(^8\) chapitre, a. Sentence varied in Cx.
\(^9\) myddel, a., Cx.
\(^10\) Galwey, a.; Galweye, Cx.
\(^11\) gessi, a.; gesse, Cx.
\(^12\) Man, MS. (clerical error.)
\(^13\) longe, Cx.
\(^14\) Added from a. and Cx.
\(^15\) for as moche as, Cx.
\(^16\) So a. and Cx.; wordes, MS.
\(^17\) togged, Cx.
\(^18\) Reference added from Cx.
censuerunt. *Ranulphus.* In illa insula vigent 1 sortilegia, 2 superstitiones, atque præstigia; nam mulieres ibidem 3 navigaturis ventum vendunt, quasi sub tribus fili nodis inclusum; ita ut, sicut plus de vento habere voluerint, plures nodos evolvant. 4 Ibi frequenter 5 ab indigenis videntur etiam de die homines prius mortui, decapitati sive integri, juxta modum suæ mortis; ut autem alienigenae et adventitii hoc videre possint, ponunt pedes 6 super pedes incolarum, et sic 7 videre 8 poterunt quod incolae vident. *Beda, libro secundo.* Hic insula ab initio fuit a Scotorum gente inhabitata. Thanatos 9 insula juxta Cantiam, a morte 10 serpentum sic dicta, quos dum ipsa nesciat, ejus tamen terra aliunde apportata angues interimit; cujus gleba plurimum ferax 11 uberem creditur benedictionem contraxisse 12 ab adventu 13 Augustini, prothodoctoris Anglorum, ibidem primum 14 applicantis. 15

**Cap. XLV.**

*De plateis regalis.*

*Gaufridus.* 16 Statuit Molmutius 17 rex Britonum vice-sinus tertius et primus eorum legifer, 18 ut aratra columnum, 19 templum deorum, viceque ad civitates ducentes; 20

---

1 in en vigent, D.
2 et, ins. C.D.
3 ibi, C.D.
4 ita . . . evolvent om. C.D.
6 pedem, C.; pedes suis, B.
7 tunc, C.D.
8 videre . . . incola] om. C.D.
9 Thanatos, B.; Thenetos, D.
10 more, E.
11 ferax, B.; ferax et, A.
12 attraxisse, A.
13 beati, ins. B.
14 So A.C.D.; primo, B.; populum (ppm), E.
15 So B.; applicante, A.E., Gale.
16 Gaufridus] om. C.D.
17 Molicientis, B.
18 inter cetera splendoris sui monumenta, added in C.D., which have other slight variations.
19 So MSS. and Gale; and so also below.
20 civitatesque et vic ducentes ad eam, C.D.
sortilege and wiccheart i-vsed. For wommen pere sellip schipmen wynde, as it were i-closed vnder pre knottes of prede, so pat pe more wynd he wol ¹ haue, he wil vnknnette pe mo knottes.² Pere ofte by day men of pe lond see men pat beep deede to forhonde, byheded oper hole, and what³ deep pei deide. Aliens settep here foot vppon feet of men of pe lond [for to see such sightes as the men of that lond don].⁴ Beda, libro secundo. Scottes woned first in pis ilond. Thanatos,⁵ pat is Tenet, and is an ilond bysides Kent, and hap pat name Tanatos of de⁶ of serpentes, for pere beep none, and pe erpe pereof sleep serpentes i-bore⁷ in to oper londes. Pere is nobil corn lond and fruyiful;⁸ me trowep pat⁹ pat ilond was i-halowed and i-blessed of Seynt Austyn, pe firste doctour of Englische men; for pere he aryued first.

De plateis regalibus. Capitulum quadragesimum quintum.

Gaufridus. Molinicius, kync of Britouns,⁹ was pe pridde and twenty of hem, and pe firste pat 3af hem lawe. He ordeyned pat¹⁰ plowʒmen solowes, goddes temples,¹¹ and

R. In whiche yle wyccheartes ys exercisede moche, for MS. H. A. L. 2261.

women per be won to selle wynde to the schippemen commenge to that cuntre, as includede vnder thre knottes of threde, so that thei wylle vnloose the knottes lyke as thei wylle haue the wynde to blawe. Beda, libro secundo. That yle was inhabite firste of the Scottes. Also there is an yle nye to Kente callede Thanatos, namede so of the dethe of serpentes, the erthe of whiche yle broughte in to other cuntres sleethe serpentes; whiche yle is plentious; and mony men say that yle to haue bene blessed by Seynte Austyn, the firste doctor of Englonde londenge there firste.

Of the kynges hie weyes.

Capitulum quadragesimum quintum.

Gaufridus. Molimicius, the xxiiiijth kyng of Briteyne, and the firste maker of lawe of theyme, ordeyne the that ploes of f. 63 b. tillers, the temples of goddes, and the weic leyde to cite

¹ wil, a.; wold, Cx.
² the mo knottes he must vndo, Cx.
³ wot, a.
⁴ Added from Cx., who omits lond by typogr. error; B. has lond, but makes various blunders.
⁵ So a. and Cx.; Thanathos, MS.
⁶ i-bodere, a.
⁷ fruyiful, a.
⁸ hit is supposed that, Cx.; and similarly often.
⁹ Molinicius, a.; and so bel. w; Molinicius, Cx., and Molynicius below.
¹⁰ pat jat, MS. (not a. or Cx.)
¹¹ MS. adds: and hize temples (not a. or Cx.)
immunitate confugii gauderent, ita ut nullus reus ad aliquod istorum trium confugiens pro tuitione ab aliquo invaderetur.\(^1\) Verum quia procedente tempore de viis, cum non essent certis limitibus distinctae, orta esset\(^2\) dissensio, Belinus rex,\(^3\) filius Molmutii\(^4\) predicti, ad subducendum omne\(^5\) ambiguum, quatuor regales vias omni privilegio munitas per insulam strui\(^6\) fecit. Quorum viarum prima et maxima Fossa dicitur, ab austro in boream extensa, que incipit ab angulo Cornubiae apud Totenenesse,\(^7\) et terminatur in fine Scotiae apud Catenesse. *Ranulphus.* Verius tamen secundum alios incipit in Cornubia, tendensque\(^8\) per Devoniam, Somerse, juxta Tettesbury,\(^9\) supra Coteswold,\(^10\) juxta Coventry,\(^11\) usque Leicestre\(^12\) procedit; indeque per vasta plana versus Neuwerk\(^13\) diutius progresdiens apud Lincolniam terminatur.\(^14\) Secunda via principalis dicitur *Watlingstrete,* tendens per transversum prioris viæ,

\(^1\) Slightly abbreviated and transposed in C.D.
\(^2\) est, D.
\(^3\) rex] om. C.D.
\(^4\) Melimicii, B.
\(^5\) esse [esse], B.; omnon, E.
\(^6\) sterni, A.C.D., Gale.
\(^7\) Catenesses B. C.D.add;—"tendensque per Devoniam, Somer-
\(^8\) seta, juxta Teakesbury, supra
\(^9\) Coteswolde, juxta Coventriam,
\(^10\) usque Leycestriam, per Lincoln-
\(^11\) niam usque Berwicum, tandem,'
\(^12\) Watlingstrete.
\(^13\) Watlingstrete, tendens per transversum prioris viæ,
hiʒe weies, pat ledep to citees and townes, schulde have pe fredom of socour; so pat uerciche man pat fleʒ 1 to eny of pe pree for socour for 2 trespas, pat he hadde i-doọ schulde be safe 3 for pursuyt of alle 4 his enemyes. But afterward, for pe weyes were not so sette wip certeyn markes, pe weies were vnceerteyn and strif was bygonne.5 Perforce Belinus pe kynge, pat was pe forsaiʃe Moluncius his sone, for to putte awey al doute and stryf, made foure hiʒe kynge 6 weies i-priuielged [wip al privilege] 7 and fredoni, and pe weies streecchep poruʒ out 8 pe ilond. Pe firste and pe grettest of pe foure weies hadde Fosse, and streecchep out of pe south in to pe norpe, and bygynnef from pe corner of Cornewayle at Totteneys 9 and eneprép in pe ende of Scot-lond at Catenesse. R. Neuerpeles more verreyliche, as ojer men tellep, Fosse bygynnep in Cornewayle,10 and passeprép forby Deuenschire and11 by Somerseete, and forby bysides Tettebury vppon Codeswolde12 bysides Conentre anon to Leycestre, and so forby by wylde pleynes toward Newerk, and endep at Lyncole. The secunde chief kynges hiʒe wey hatte Watlynge strete, and streecchep wprat13 ouer

scholde ioye the immunitie of confute, so that noo man gilty fleenge to eny of these thre scholde not be bowrowede of eny man for his defence. And within a litelle space folowenge there was movede a grete dissencion of the weies, in that there was noo certitude in theyme. Wherefore Belinus kyng, and son to Molimicius, causede iij. hie weyes to be made thro Englonde, defencede and storede with grete privilege to remove alle dubitation. The firste of whom, and the moste, begynnethe in an angle in Cornewaile at Tottle-nese, and is extendede in to the northe, and terminate in the ende of Scottelonde at Katenesse. R. Neuerthelouses that weye begynnethe more truly, after somme men, in Cornewaile, goeŋe by Deuenschire and Somerseete, nye Tewkesbery on Coteswolde, and from that coste to Conentre, and soe vn to Leirecestre, and so furthe thro a grete pleyne, is terminate at Lyncole. The secunde principalle weye is callede Watlingestreete, goeŋe ouerthwarde the firste weye,

1 wente, Cx. 6 though, Cx. 2 or for, Cx. 9 Toton, a. 3 saaf; a. 10 at Totteneys . . . in Corne-wayle] om. Cx. 4 al, a. 11 and] om. a, and Cx. 5 had, Cx. (who has some omis-sions.) 12 Coteswold, a. 6 kynges, Cx. (not a.) 13 wprat, a; thewert, Cx. 7 Added from c. and Cx. (who has pr-uielgeo.)
viz.\textsuperscript{1} ab euro\textsuperscript{2} austro in zephyrum septentrionalem. Incipit enim\textsuperscript{3} a Dovoria,\textsuperscript{4} transiens per medium Cantia\textsuperscript{5} ultra Thamisiam\textsuperscript{6} juxta Londoniam\textsuperscript{7} ad occidentem Westmonasterii,\textsuperscript{8} indeque procedit juxta\textsuperscript{9} Sanctum Albanum ad occidentem per Dunstapulum,\textsuperscript{10} per\textsuperscript{11} Stretfordiam, per\textsuperscript{11} Toucestre,\textsuperscript{12} Wedunam\textsuperscript{13} ad austrum Lilleburne,\textsuperscript{14} per Atheristoun\textsuperscript{15} usque ad montem Gilberti,\textsuperscript{16} qui\textsuperscript{17} m cce Wreken dicitur; deinde transcindit Sabrinam juxta Wrokcestre,\textsuperscript{19} tendit ad Sterettoun,\textsuperscript{20} et inde per medium Walliae usque ad Cardigan in mari Hibernico terminatur.\textsuperscript{21} Tertia via\textsuperscript{22} dicitur Ermingestrete,\textsuperscript{23} tendens stivte.\textsuperscript{24} Et incipit\textsuperscript{a} a Menevia in Westwallia, procedens usque\textsuperscript{b} ad portum Hamonis,\textsuperscript{26} que modo dicitur Southampton.\textsuperscript{27} \textsuperscript{28} Quarta via\textsuperscript{a} dicitur Rikenilclstrete\textsuperscript{29} tendens ab Africo\textsuperscript{30} in boream vulturnalem, et incipit\textsuperscript{a} a Menevia\textsuperscript{24} predicta, tenditque per\textsuperscript{31} Wygorniam, per Wycum,\textsuperscript{32} per Birmyncham,\textsuperscript{33} Lichfield, Derby, Chesterfeld,\textsuperscript{34} Eboracum, usque ad ostium Tynae\textsuperscript{35} fluminis quod Tynmutha\textsuperscript{36} dicitur.\textsuperscript{37}

\textsuperscript{1} per . . . viz.\textsuperscript{]} om. C.D.
\textsuperscript{2} ab, ins. A.
\textsuperscript{3} enim\textsuperscript{]} om. C.D.
\textsuperscript{4} sive\textsuperscript{ } Dunberna\textsuperscript{a}, ins. C.D., omitting\textsuperscript{transiens.}
\textsuperscript{5} Cassio, A.
\textsuperscript{6} Tamesiam, Gale; ultra Thami\textsuperscript{am} [om. C.D.]
\textsuperscript{7} Londoniam, Gale.
\textsuperscript{8} Westmonasterii, E.
\textsuperscript{9} Westmonasterii . . . juxta\textsuperscript{]} per, C.D.
\textsuperscript{10} Donestaple, B.
\textsuperscript{11} per\textsuperscript{]} om. B.D.; et, A.
\textsuperscript{12} Toucestreium, Gale.
\textsuperscript{13} Wedman, Gale; Wedoun, D.
\textsuperscript{14} Lilleburnuam, Gale.
\textsuperscript{15} per Atheristoun\textsuperscript{]} om. C.D.;\nAtherston, B.; Atherseceuam, Gale.
\textsuperscript{16} Monsilberti, B.
\textsuperscript{17} quae, A.
\textsuperscript{18} mans, B.
\textsuperscript{19} Wrocestrum, Gale.
\textsuperscript{20} Strettouam, Gale.
\textsuperscript{21} Sentence slightly altered and abbreviated in C.D
\textsuperscript{22} Ermingestrete, C. (not D.);\nErmingestrete, Gale.
\textsuperscript{23} austral, C.D.
\textsuperscript{24} Manconia, Gale, and so below.
\textsuperscript{25} usque\textsuperscript{]} om. B.
\textsuperscript{26} Amoris, A.
\textsuperscript{27} South Hamptonia, Gale.
\textsuperscript{28} Sentence abbreviated in C.D.
\textsuperscript{29} Rikenildstrete, B.;\nRikenildstrete, C. (not D.)
\textsuperscript{30} Africo, B.
\textsuperscript{31} Hepford, ins. C.D.
\textsuperscript{32} Wicwm, B.D., Gale; Wicwm et Birmingham, A.
\textsuperscript{33} Wyrnyngam, B.; Birmingham, D., Gale.
\textsuperscript{34} Cestifeld, A.
\textsuperscript{35} Town, B.
\textsuperscript{36} Tinemeta, B.; Tymmonthia, A.;\nTynmouth, D., Gale.
\textsuperscript{37} Slightly altered in C.D. A few very trivial variations of orthography in the MSS. are omitted.
Fosse out of pe sop est in to pe norp west, and bygynnep at Douere, and passeb by pe middel of Kent ower Themse bysides Londoun by West Westmystre, and so forpb by Seint Albon in pe west side by Donstaple,1 by Strafterde,2 by Toucetre, by Wedon, by Soupb Lilleburne, by Atherestoun,3 anon to Gilbertys hill, pat now hatte Wrekene, and forpb by Seuarne, and passeb by sides Wrok-cestre, and pane forpb to Strattoun, and forth by pe myddel of Wales anon to Cartigan,4 and endep at pe Irische5 see. Pe pridde way hatte Ermingestrete,6 and streccheb out of pe west northwest in to pe est soupest, and byginnep in Meneuia pat is in Seint Denys7 lord in West Wales, and streccheb forpb anon to Soupb Hamptoun. Pe ferpe hatte Rykeneldes strete, and streccheb out of pe south west in to pe norp est, and bygynnep in Meneuia in West Wales, and streccheb forpb8 by Wrocestre, by Wycombe, by Birmingham,9 by Lichefeld, by Derby, by Chesterfeld, by Yorke, and so forpb anon to Tynemoupe.

that is to say, from the sowthe este in to the northeweste; MS. HARL. begynnenge at Dover, and goenge thro the myddes of Kente vn to Temmyse, nye to Londoun at the weste of Westmynster; goenge from thens to Seynte Albanes at the yweste, by Dunstaple, thro Stratforde, Toucestre, Wedunam, at the sowthe of Lilleburne, thro Atheriston, to the hille of Gilberte, that is calde now Wrekene; and from that hit kyttete ower Seuerne nye to Wrocestre, and so Stratton, and from thens thro the myddes of Wales, and is endede at Cardigan in the see of Yrlande. The thirdee principalle way is calde Emyngestrete, whiche bygynnethe at Seynte Davides in Westewales, goenge to Sowthe Hampton. The iiijthe principalle wey is caldede Rikenilde10 Strete, goenge from Seynte Davides pro Wrocestre, thro Birmicham, Lichefeld, Derbi, Chesterfeld, Yorke, and to the floode of Tyne that is caldede Tynnemowthe.

---

1 Donsteble, a. 2 Streldore, a. 3 Atherystoun, a. 4 Cardigan, a.; Cardykan, Cx. 5 Erisch, a. 6 Ermingestrete, a.; Erimyngestryte, Cx. 7 Davyes, a.; David, Cx. 8 So a.; for, MS.; Cx. has some omissions, and a few slight variations of orthography. 9 Birmingham, a. 10 Bikenilde, Harl. MS.
CAP XLVI.

De famosis fluminibus.

Alfridus. Tria per Britanniam fluunt famosa flumina, per quae ex universis pene nationibus transmarina per totam insulam navigio feruntur commercia; videlicet Thamisia, Sabrina, et Humbrae, quorum alveis per ampla ostia oceani maritimi longum influens et refluens tres insulae principales provincias, quasi tria regna, disterminat; id est, Loegriam, Cambriam, et Northumbriam. Ranulphus. Thamisia videtur composea duorum fluminum quae Thamis et Isa. Thamisia videtur componea a nominibus duorum fluminum, quae Thama et Isa. Thamisia. Thamisia octoginta miliaribus nascens juxta Teokesbury fonticulo fusus fluit per Oxoniam perque Londoniam; per quadraginta miliaria nomen suum retinet, fuitque quondam terminus Cantiorum Ecclesiasticorum. Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro secundo, Thamisia octoginta miliaribus nascens iuxta Thamis et Isa. Thamisia videtur componea a nominibus duorum fluminum, quae Thamis et Isa. Thamisia. Thamisia octoginta miliaribus nascens juxta Teokesbury fonticulo fusus fluit per Oxoniam; perquadraginta miliaria nomen suum retinet, fuitque quondam terminus Cantiorum Ecclesiasticorum. Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro secundo, Thamisia octoginta miliaribus nascens iuxta Teokesbury fonticulo fusus fluit per Oxoniam perque Londoniam, A.B.
De famosis flaminibus.

Capitulum quadragesimum sextum.

Alfridus. Thre famous ryueres renneþ þoruþ Britayne; by þe whiche þe ryuere marshaundis of byþonde see comeþ in schippe into Bretayne wel nyh oute of alle manere naciouns and londes. þe1 pre ryueres beþ Þemse, Seuerne, and Humber. þe see ebbþ and flowþ at þe mouþes of þese2 pre ryuereþ, and deþeþ [þe]3 pre provynces of þe ilondes, as hit were pre kynndoms, for to wynne;4 þe pre parties beþ Logoria, Cambria, and Norhumbria, þat þeþ beþ Wyles, Englonde,5 and Northumberlond. R.6 [Dis]7 name Þemse8 seneþ i-made oo name of tweye names of ryuereþ,9 þat þeþ Tame and Ise. For þe ryuer Tame renneþ bysides Dorchester, and falleþ in Ise; perþore al þe ryuer from þe first heede anon to þe est see hatte Þemse. 'Tame bygynþ bysides Tettebury, þat is þre myle by norþ Malmesbury; þere Þemse springþ of a welle and renneþ estward, and passeþ þe Fosse, and deþeþ Glowestrescoþ and Wiltscroþ, and drawþ wip hym meny oper welles streþmes,10 and wexþ greþ at Grecestre, and passeþ þe þanne toward Bampton,11 and so þorne by Oxenforde, by Walyngforde, by

Of the famose floodes in hit.

Capitulum quadragesesimus sextum.

Alfridus. Thre famose floodes floþ þro Breþyne, to whom and þro whom marshaundis commeth allemonste from alle naciouns and regiones by schippe, whiche be Thamys, Seuerne, and Humber, whiche waters deþeþ þree princiþale provynces as þro realmes, that is to say, Englonde, Wales, and Northumberlond. R. Thamisia, whiche is calleþe Temmys, seneþe to be compownd of iij. waters, whiche be calleþe Thamys and Ise. That streþme calleþe Tame renneþ by Dorchester falleþ þo to Ise, perþore aþe þat water renneþe soo togedeþre is calleþe Tamnyse.
Londoniam. Willelmus¹ de Pontificibus, libro secundo.² Apud Sandieum portum labitur in mare orientale, nomenque suum retinet ultra Londoniam per xl. miliaria, fuitque quondam terminus Cantiorum³ et Estsaxonom,⁴ Westsaxonum,⁵ et Merciorum. Ranulphus. Sabrina fluvius Britanniae⁶ dicitur Habren,⁷ ab Abren, filia Estridis, quam Guendolena regina submersit in ea, sed per corruptionem Latinae linguae⁸ dicitur modo Sabrina. Oritur quoque in medio Walliae, transitque⁹ primo versus orientem usque¹⁰ Salopiam; inde vergit ad austrum usque ad Brugges,¹¹ Wygorniam, Glocestriam,¹² et apud Bristoliam labitur in mare occidentale, fuitque terminus aliquando¹³ Cambriae et Locogriae. Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro quarto.¹⁴ Sabrina est alveus gurgite rapax, arte¹⁵ piscosus, in quo¹⁶ furor¹⁷ voraginis seu potius vertiginis ab imo verrens¹⁸ arenas conglobat in cumulum, ripasque¹⁹

¹ A. adds generally Malmesburyensis in this and similar references.
² Extract transposed and altered in A.B.D.
³ Cantiorum, A.
⁴ etiam Saxonom, B.
⁵ Westsaxonum] om. B.
⁶ Britannice, A., which is better.
⁷ Abren, A.
⁸ [linguae] om. C.D. (reading Latine.)
⁹ transit quoque, C.D.
¹⁰ ad, ins. A.
¹¹ [libro quarto] om. B.
¹² So written at length in A.; Gloucester², E. It is often difficult to say whether the Latin or English form is intended, when the word is contracted. The Latin form has been preferred in the Latin text, when sanctioned by MS. authority. Glavernum, C.; Glovernium, D.
¹³ aliquando] added from A.B., Gale.
¹⁴ [libro quarto] om. B.
¹⁵ fluvius, B.
¹⁶ arte . . quo] in eo, B.
¹⁷ in quo furor] in furor, C.D.
¹⁸ vergens, C. (not D.)
¹⁹ quo] om. C.D.
Redyngge, and by Londoun. *Willemus de Pontificibus, libro secundo.* At pe hauen of Sandwiche it fallep into pe est see, and holdep his name fourty myle byþond Londoun, and departed somtyne bytwene Kent and Essex, Westsex and Mercia; pat is as hit were a greet decl of [myddel] Englend. Seuarn is a ryuer of Bretayne, and hadde Habren [in Britoun, and hap pat name Habren of Habren], pat was Estrildes douþter. Guedolen þe quene drenched þis Habren peryyne; perfore þese Bretouns cleped þe ryuer Habren after þe womman pat was adraynt [perynne], but by corupte Latyn tonge hit hatte Sabryna, Seuarn on Englishe. Seuarn byginnep in þe myddel of Wales, and passeþ first toward þe est anon to Schroesbury, and þan torneþ souþward anon to Brigge-norþ, Wircetre, and Gloucetre, and falleþ in to þe west see besides Brystowe, and departed somtyne bytwene Englend and Wales. *Willemus de Pontificibus, libro quarto.* Seuarn is swift of streme, fische craft is þere yne, woodnesse of sowlwynge and of whirlynge water casteþ vp and gadereþ to hepe grete hepes of gracel. Seuarn is ofte yppe and

*Willemus de Pontificibus, libro secundo.* The water of Thames takenge the originalle of hit nye to Tewkesbury of a lytelle wele, floethe by Oxforde, London, vn to the hauen of Sandwiche, goenge þer in to the este see, retcyngen þe name of hit paste London by xi myles, whiche was somme tyne as a cause terminative of men of Kente, of Este Saxones, West Saxones, and of men of the Marches. Seuern, a floode of Britayne, is callede Habren, of Habren doþter of Estrilde, whom a quene callede Guendolena drownede in hit, but now hit is callede Sabrina, by the corrupcion of the langage of Latyn. That water of Seuern begynnethe in the myddes of Wales, and goethe firste toward the este vn to Schrewisbury, after that hit turneth in to the sowthe to Brugges, Worchesre, and to Glocestre, fallenge in to the see at Bristowe, which was somme tyne a term of Englond and of Wales. *Willemus de Pontificibus, libro quarto.* Seuern is a perellous streme fulle of fische, in whom is such a movenege that hit turneth vp the granvelle from the bothem of the water, and makethe theyrne in a grete hepe

1 Reference added from Cx., who has c. (i.e. capitulo) for libro.
2 in som place, Cx.
3 Added from a. and Cx.
4 Added from a. and Cx., who has Britons.
5 the, Cx.
6 Added from a. and Cx.
7 departeth in somme place, Cx.
8 ofte aryseth, Cx.
suas frequenter transscendit. Ranulphus. Humbra quoque ab Humbro, rege Humorum, in ea submerso nomen sortita est, primo ab australi parte Eboracensium areualiter decurrens, inde provinciam Lindisiensem, quæ olim ad Mercios spectabat, a reliqua plaga Northimbrana disterminat; hanc autem Humbram multum adaugent flumen Trent et Ouse in eam cadens.

CAP. XLVII.

De antiquis urbis.

Beda, libro primo, capitulo primo. Regio Britanniae quondam erat civitatibus nobilissimis viginti octo insignit, præter castella innumerae, quæ et ipsa muris, turribus, portis, et sennis erant instructa firmisimis. Alfridus Civitatum nomina hæc erant: Caerlud, id est, Londonia; Caerbranc, id est, Eboracum; Caerkent, id est, Cantuaria; Caergorangon, id est, Wygornia; Caerlirion, id est, Lairesestria; Caer-
passe the brynkes. Humber ha'p the name of Humber, kynge of Humes, for he was adreynt perynne, and renne first a crook out of pe south side of York, and same departe pe province of Lyndcsey pat longede somtyme to pe Merces from pe ouer contray Norpumberlond. Trent and Owse renne in to Humber, and make the ryuer ful greet. The Merces were men as hit were of myddel Engelond, as it is i-seide wip yune.

De antiquis orbibus. Capitulum quadragesimum septimum.

Beda, libro primo, capitulo primo. The kyngdom of Breetayne [was] somtyme i-hight wip eiste and twenty noble citees, wip oute welle many castelles pat were wip walles, wip toures, wip gate, wip barres, stalworple i-buld. Alfr. These were pe names of pe citees: — Caerlud, pat is, London; Caerkent, pat is, Caunterbury; Caerlirion, pat is, Leycestre; Caergorangon, pat is, Wircestre; Caerlirion pat is, Leycestre.

oftetimes goenge over the brynkes of hit. Also that water MS. Harl. callecde Humbre toke the name of Humber kynge of Humes drownede in hit. Whiche rennethe firste in the maner of a bawe from the sowthe parte of Yorke to the province Lindesience, whiche longede somme tyme to the Mauches, doth diuidc Northumberlond from that other plage; whom the floodes of Trente and of Owse fallenge in to hit cause to be encreasede gretely thro them.

Of the olde Cites in hit. Capitulum quadragesimum septimum.

Beda, libro primo, capitulo primo. The region of Britayne was made nowble somme tyme with xxiiij noble cites, excepte castelles innumerable, whiche were made with sure walles, towres, zates, and lokkes. Alfridus. These were the names of the cites: — Caerlud, London; Caerbran, Yorke; Caerkente, Counterbry; Caergorangon, Worcester; Caerlirion, Leireestre;
clau, id est, Gloucestria; \(^1\) Caercolden, \(^2\) id est, Colcestria; Caerireci, \(^3\) id est, Chichestria, quae olim apud Saxones vocabatur Cissanestria; \(^4\) Caerceri, \(^5\) id est, Cirencestria; Caerguent, \(^6\) id est, Wyntonia; Caergrant, \(^7\) id est, Cantebrugge; \(^8\) Caerleil, \(^9\) id est, Lugubalia; \(^10\) Caerperis, id est, Porcestria; \(^11\) Caerdorm, \(^12\) id est, Dorocestria; Caerludcoit, \(^13\) id est, Lincolnia, \(^14\) sive Lindecolium; \(^15\) Caermerthyn, \(^16\) id est, urbs Merlini; Caersegent, id est, Silecestria, \(^17\) quae super Thamisim non longe a Radingo \(^18\) ponitur; Caerthleon, \(^19\) sive Caerlegion, \(^20\) id est, Urbs Legionum, quae post Legecestria dicebatur, sed modo Cestria dictur; \(^21\) Caerbadun, \(^22\) id est, Bathyonia, quae aliquando urbs Achamanni \(^23\) vocabatur; \(^24\) Caerpaladour, \(^25\) id est, Septonia; \(^26\) quae hodie vocatur \(^27\) Shaftesbury. \(^28\) Ranulphus. Sunt et alia urbis nomina in chronicis reperta ad intelligendum obscuriora, de quibus omnibus hic per ordinem aliqua sunt dicenda. \(^29\)

Willemus de Pontificibus, libro secundo. Londiniae, \(^30\) est civitas super Thamisim flumen \(^31\) posita, opima civium divitiis, \(^32\) negotiatorum commerciis; unde fit ut quando ubique \(^33\) in Anglia sit victualium caristia, \(^34\) ibi minus \(^35\)

\(^1\) Gloucestria, A.B.
\(^2\) Caergolden, Gale.
\(^3\) Caerireci, B.; Caerici, A.; Caeriri, Gale.
\(^4\) Coswesterch, B.; Ciscanestria, Gale.
\(^5\) Caerici, Gale; Caericii, D.
\(^6\) Caerwen, C.; Caurgeant, D.
\(^7\) Caervarant, C.
\(^8\) Cantebrugge, A.; Cantebrigia, D.
\(^9\) Caerleil, B.
\(^10\) Lugubralici, B.
\(^11\) Portcestria, B.; Porcestre, D.
\(^12\) Caerdori (sic), D.
\(^13\) Caerleil, B.
\(^14\) Lindocolium, B.
\(^15\) sive L.; om. B.; Lindocolium, Gale.
\(^16\) Caermerthyn, B.
\(^17\) Silecestria, Gale; Silcestre, A., and so perhaps in the other MSS. (Silcestre). Higden's MSS. more commonly have the Latin form in words of this termination.
\(^18\) Redingo, B.; Redingo, A.
\(^19\) Caerleil, C.; Caerleoun, D.; Caerhylon, B.
\(^20\) Caerlegion, A.
\(^21\) que . . . dicitur] om. C.D.
\(^22\) Caerbadun, C.D.
\(^23\) Achamanni, B.
\(^24\) que . . . vocabatur] om. C.D.
\(^25\) Caerpaladour, Gale.
\(^26\) Septonia, B.
\(^27\) vocatur after Shaftesbury, B.
\(^28\) Shaftisbria, Gale;shaftisburi, A.
\(^29\) This passage is as follows in C.D.: "De istarum urbium maxime et quibusdam alis ad cognoscendum obscuringibus hic per ordinem est dicendum."
\(^30\) London, Gale.
\(^31\) fluentia, C.D.
\(^32\) dicitiarumque, C.D.
\(^33\) ubique] added from A.B.C.D., Gale.
\(^34\) carestia, B.
\(^35\) urbs, B.
Caerclaw, Gloucester; Caercolden, Colchester; Caerrece, Chichester, which was callede somme tyme by the Saxones Cissanches; Caerceri, Cirencester, called now Ciceter; shortly; Caerwent, Winchester; Caergranute, Cambrige; Liggubalia, Caeriel; Caerperis, Forcheste; Caedron, Dorchester; Caerludcoit, Lyncolne; Caermethyn, the cite of Marlyne; Caersegen, Silchester, which is on Thamys ny to Radynge; Caerthleoun, other Caerleoun, that is the cite of legiones, which was callede Legecestre, now callede Chestre; Caerbadon, Bathe, which was callede somme tyme the city of Achamannus; Caerpaladin, which, callede somme tymo Septon, is callede now Shaftesbury. Also there be other names of cites founde in cronicles obscure to the intellecte, of whom we schalle say somme thynge by ordre. Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro secundo. London is a nowble cite sette on Thamys, hauenge in it nowble marçauntes, wherefoare when derthe off vitayles is in Englonde, there thei be moste dere;
De civitate Cantuaria.

De Wintonia.

---

1 venditur, C.D.
2 forsitan, B.
3 Gaufridus] om. C.D.
4 construxit] added from A.B.C.
D., Gale.
5 Trenonatam, B.; Trinovantum, Gale.
6 Slightly abbreviated in C.D.
7 a] om. A.C.D.
8 Lud, ins. C.D.
9 Ranulphus] om. C.D.
10 Tandem, C.D.
11 Londanie, C.D.; Lundine, A.
12 et Francigenae; ins. C.D.
13 sunt, B.
14 quae... Londanie] om. C.D.
15 Rudhudibras, B.; Ruthudibras, D., Gale.
16 Lull, B.
17 regis Leill octavi] Leil, Britonum rex octavus, C.D., which is better.

---

19 Caerwent, A.
20 est] om. B.
21 quae alia—Cantuaria]. Thus in C.D.; —“Quidam tamen adhuc contendunt: Doroberniam esse proripum nomen urbis Doroveriae; nunc nunc Dorovoria que super Gallicanum fretum sita est; accommodum transfretandi portum praebet, et distat a Cantuaria duodecim miliaribus.”—C.D.
22 In C.D. the order of the sections is changed.
23 civitatem, B.
24 construxit, A.B.C.D., Gale.
25 Rudhudibras, B.
26 predictus] om. B.
27 Caerwent, Gale; Caerwent, D.
28 ab Angliis] om. B.; Anglicis, A.
29 est] om. B.
and the cause is peraunent other thro the compendiousneses MS.HARL. of sellers, other elles thro the dispendy of byers. Gaufri- Brute, the firste kyng of Britayne, made that cite of London as the firste and principale cite of Britayne in to the memorye of Troye y-loste, callede hit Trinouantum, that is to saye Newe Troye. After that kyng Lud callede hit after his name, Kaerlud, wherefore the Britones hadde indignacion, as Gildas reheersethe, and at the laste Englishe men callede hit London. Kyng Ruthudibras, the son of kyng Leille, edifiede Cawnterbury, the principale cite in Kente, whom he callede Caerkente, which was callede afterwarde of Englishe men Dorobernia ; for there is an other towe in that centre that is callede Dovernia; other elles Douoria, which is Dover, sette on the bryuke of the see of Fraunce; whiche be a sundre by xiiij. myles of Englishe accomptengc, and Dorobernia was callede at the laste Cawnterbury. Kyngue Ruthudibras aforescide made the cite of Wynchestre, whom he callede Caerwente, which was callede afterwarde Wenta by Englishe men,

1 After England in Cx. thus:—
comply at London it is best cheep by cause of the byars and sellers that ben at London.
2 Bruyt is, MS. (not a, or Cx.)
3 aedeved, Cx.
4 destroyed, Cx.
5 Troyeneweth, Cx.
6 Added from Cx.
7 oyer, a.
8 and, a.
9 teeue, a. (in letters).
10 Sentence varied in Cx.
11 Added from a and Cx., who has Caeruguet.
quodam Wyne Anglo ibidem pontificante,\textsuperscript{1} cui tota Westsaxonica plaga subjecta fuerat.\textsuperscript{2} Idem quoque\textsuperscript{3} rex fecit urbem Paladour, id est, Septoniam, ubi dicunt Britones aquilam quondam prophetasse.\textsuperscript{4}

Bathoniam urbem sive Badonem construxit rex Britonum nonus, Bladud, nigromanticus, filius Leill;\textsuperscript{5} quam ex nomine suo vocavit\textsuperscript{6} Caerbadum,\textsuperscript{7} quæ\textsuperscript{8} post\textsuperscript{9} ab Anglis vocata est Achemannia, id est, urbs Achemannii, et tandem dicta\textsuperscript{10} Bathonia. Wilhelmus de Pontificibus,\textsuperscript{11} libro secundo. In haec urbe calidarum balnearum\textsuperscript{12} latex\textsuperscript{13} emergens auctorem Julium Cæsarem habere\textsuperscript{14} creditur. Ranulphus.\textsuperscript{15} Sed Gaufridus\textsuperscript{16} Monemutensis in suo Britannico libro asserit regem Bladud hujus rei fuisse auctorem. Forsan Willelmus,\textsuperscript{17} qui Britannicum librum\textsuperscript{20} non viderat, ista ex aliorum relatu aut ex propria\textsuperscript{21} conjectura, sicut et quedam alia, minus scripsit exquisite. Proinde videtur magis verisimile quod licet rex Bladud hanc urbem construxerit,\textsuperscript{22} non propter hoc\textsuperscript{23} ipse aut Julius\textsuperscript{24} haec calida balnea construxerit; immo quod aqua originalis transiens per venas sulphureas, quibus natu-

\textsuperscript{1} pontifice, B.
\textsuperscript{2} Abbreviated in C.D.
\textsuperscript{3} quoque\textsuperscript{2} om. B.
\textsuperscript{4} The paragraph ends thus in C.D.: —“quæ nunc Septonia sive Schaftesbury nunucapatur, in provincia Dorsetensi in collis vertice situata, ubi tradunt Britones aquilam quondam vaticiniam edidisse.”
\textsuperscript{5} Bed., B.
\textsuperscript{6} vocavit\textsuperscript{2} om. B.
\textsuperscript{7} Caerbadum, B.C.
\textsuperscript{8} haec, C.D.
\textsuperscript{9} postmodum, A.D.
\textsuperscript{10} est, added in A.B.D., Gale.
\textsuperscript{11} de Pontificibus\textsuperscript{2} om. C.D.
\textsuperscript{12} calidorum balnearum, Gale.
\textsuperscript{13} lacus, C.
\textsuperscript{14} habuisse, C.D.
\textsuperscript{15} Ranulphus\textsuperscript{2} om. C.D.
\textsuperscript{16} Gaufridus, B.
\textsuperscript{17} nigromanticus, ins. C.D.
\textsuperscript{18} artificia, C.
\textsuperscript{19} Malmesburiensis, ins. C.D.
\textsuperscript{20} The remainder of this section is abbreviated in C.D., thus: “nus—quae inspexerat, sed ex aliorum relatu seu ex propria conjectura nonnulla crediderat; in hae re, sicut plerisque alis, deceptus fuerat.” (D. omits crediderat.)
\textsuperscript{21} propria\textsuperscript{2} So A.B., Gale; prima, E.
\textsuperscript{22} construxit, B.
\textsuperscript{23} hoc\textsuperscript{2} om. A.
\textsuperscript{24} Cæsar, ins. B.
oo Wyne\(^1\) an Englische man,\(^2\) pat was bishoppe pere. Al West Saxon was soget to hym: \(\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\) same kyng bulde Paladour, pat is, Septoun, pat now hatte Chestesbury.\(^3\) Britouns tellep pat an egle\(^4\) prophecied pere somtyme.

Bladud, Leil his sone, a nygromancer, was \(\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\) kyng of Bretouns; \(\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\) he bulde Bape, and cleped hit Caerbadoun. Englische men cleped hit afterward Achamanyns\(^5\) citee, but at \(\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\) laste he is i-cleped Bathonia, pat is, Bape. \textit{Willelms de Pontificibus, libro secundo.}\n
In pis citee wellep vp and springep hote bapes, and me wene\(^6\) pat Iulius Cesar made pere suche bates. \(\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\) But Gaufridus Monemetensis, in his Brittische\(^7\) book, scif pat Bladud made pilke bates. Vppon caes? William, \(\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\) hadde nou\(^8\) t i-seie pat Brittishe book, wroot so by tellynge of opere men, opere\(^9\) by his owne gessyng, as he wroot oper pinges somdel vnwiseliche.\(^{10}\) Perfore hit seme p more sopeliche pat Bladud made\(^{11}\) now\(^8\) pe hote bates, nopter Iulius Cesar dede suche a dede, pey Bladud bulde and made pe citee; but hit accordep better to kyndeliche resoun, pat pe water renep vnder\(^{12}\) erpe by or Wynecestre, after an Englische man callede Wyne\(^{MS. Harl. 2261.}\) beenge bischoppe there, to whom alle the weste plage of Saxones was subiecte. Also the same kyng made that cite callede Paladur, and nowe Shaftesbury, where men of Briteyne say an egle to have propheciede somme tyme. Bladud, a nygromancier, and the ix\(^{th}\) kyng of Briteyne, son of kyng Leille, made the cite of Bathe, whom he callede after his propre name Caerbadum, and afterward of Englische men Achamannie, and at laste Bathonia, other elles in Englische Bathe. \textit{Willelms de Pontificibus, libro secundo.}\n
In that cite bates, of whom Iulius Cesar was seide to be auctor. \(\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\) But Gaufridus Monemetensis seithe in his boke of Briteyne that kyngge Bladud was the firste auctor of theyme; and perauncure William, that see not the boke of Briteyne, seide so by the rehersenge of other men, other elles of his propre coniecture, lyke as he did wryte mony other thinges. Neverthelesse, than\(^8\)he kyngge Bladud made that cite of Bathe, the bates scholde seeme to be cause\(^{13}\) that the water ren-

---

1 one Wyne, Cx.
2 MS. adds: \textit{propheciede pere somtyme.} See below.
3 Shaftesbury, Cx.
4 So a. and Cx.; \textit{Englische man, MS.}
5 Achamanynes, Cx. (wrongly, but misled by the identity of e and i in MSS.)
6 Britouns, Cx.; and so below.
7 by cause that, Cx.
8 pat\(^1\) om. Cx., who does not understand the sense of the sentence.
9 or a.
10 not best adusedly, Cx.
11 made hit, MS. (not a. or Cx.)
12 in the, Cx.
13 causede, Harl. MS.
De Glocestria.

Gloucestriam, sive Gloverniam, seu Claudiocestriam construxit Claudius Caesar in nuptiis filiæ suæ, quam copulavit regi Britonum Arvirago. Hæc urbs dicta est primo a Britonibus Caerclaun a Claudio, sed post dicta est Gloucestria, a Glora, duce regionis illius, et ponitur supra Sabrinum mare in confinio Loegriae et Cambriae.

De Salopia.

Salopia urbs est in confinio Cambriae et Angliae, super Sabrinam in vertice collis posita, quæ Anglice vocatur Shrobbesbury a dumis et fruticibus in illo colle aliquando crescentibus dicta, Britannice vero vocabatur Penguern, quod sonat caput abietis; et fuit aliquando caput Powisia, quæ se extendit per transversum medie Walliae usque ad mare Hibernicum.

De Nothyngam.

Nothyngham ponitur super flumen Trent, olim

1 So A.B.; calcesca (for calcesca?).
2 effundat, or some such word, is required to complete the sense.
3 scabredines, B.
4 seu Claudiocestriam] om. C.D.
5 vocatur, C.D.
6 sedere, C.
7 postea, A.; postmodum, D.
8 Gloucestria, A.; Glocestre, D.
9 poniturque, C.D.
10 mare] om. B.
11 Slightly transposed in C.D.
12 inter confinio, C.D.
13 Schrobbishari, A.; Shrobesbury, C.; Shrevesbury, B.; Schrobesbaria, Gale; Schrobbesbury, D.
14 ali quando before in, B.
15 Powise, A.
16 Abbreviated in C.D.
17 Nottingham, A., Gale.
18 Trent, B.
19 olim] om. B.; sed olim, C.D.
veynes of brymstone, and so is i-hatte kyndeliche in pat Trevisa. cours, and springe vp in dyuers places of pe citee. And so pere beep hoohte bathes, pat wascehep of tetes, oper sorees and seabbes. Trevisa. Pey me myzt by craft make hoe bathes for to dure long i-now, pis accordep wel to resoun and to philosophie pat tretep of hote welles and bapes, pat beep in dyuercse londes, pei pe water of pis bathe be more troubly and heuyere of smelle and of sauour pan opere hote bathes pat I have i-seie at Akene in Almayne, and at Egges in Sano. [pe bapes in Egges] bee as feire and as cheere as euy cold welle streem. I hauye assaied, and i-bathed peryynce, Claudius Cesar maried his donyster to Aruiragus, kyng of Britouns. Pis Claudius Cesar bulde Gloucestre in pe weddnyge of his donyster; Britouns cleped pis citee first after Claudius his name, but afterward it was i-cleped Glowe'tre, after oon Glora, pat was duke of pat contray, and stondep vppon Seuarn in pe marche of Engelond and of Wales. Shroversbury is a citee vppon Seuarn in pe marche of Engelond and of Wales, i-sette vppon pe coppe of an hille, and hatte Shroversbury of schrobbes and fruyt pat grewe somtyme on pat hille. Britouns cleped hit somtyme Pengwern, pat is, pe heed of a faire tree. Shroversbury was somtyme pe hede of Powyse, pat streeclep forp thwart ouer pe myddel of Wales anon to pe Irische see. Notyngham stondep vppon Trent, nenge there thro the veynes of sulphur is made hooote natu- rally by that whiche causeth those bathes to be hooote, where seabbes and correuption be healedo offtetymes. Claudius Cesar made that cite callede Gloucestre, other Claudiocestre, in the tym of weddelge of his donyster, whom he mariede to Aruiragus kyng of Britones. That cite was callede firste of Britones Caerclau, by Claudius afterwarde callede Gloucestre, of Glora duke of that region, which is sette ouer the water of Seuern in costes of Engelond and of Wales. Shrewsbury is a cite sette in the toppe of an hille on Seuern, in the costes of Englonde and of Wales, callede somme tyme Schrobbesbury, of busches and trees with frute groenge in that hille somme tyme, which is Sentence varied in Cx. 65. b. callede also Pengwern, whichis soundeth the heede of a fire tre, which was also somme tyme the principalle place of Powysclonde, extendenge hit overtharde the myddes of Wales vn to the see of Yorklond. Notyngham

1 Cx. adds, and sulphure.
2 made hooote, Cx.
3 tetres, Cx.
4 Akene, a.; Alon, Cx.
5 Added from a.; whiche been, Cx.
De Lincolnia.

Lincolnia caput est provincie Lyndisie; primo vocabatur Caerludcoit, deinde Lindecolinium. A quo primo constructa fuerit incertum habetur, nisi forsan rex Lud eam fundaverit; quod etiam nominis interpretatio videtur sonare, nam Britannice Caer sonat civitatem, Coit silex; inde videtur dici Caerludeoit quasi urbs nemorosa. Leicestriam construxit rex Britonum decimus, Leir, filius Bladud, quasi in meditullio Loegrie, super annem Soram et super Fossam viam regalem.

De Leycestria.

Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro tertio. Eboracum urbs est ampla ex utraque parte annis Ouse constructa, Romanae elegantiae preferens indicium, quousque rex Anglie Conquestor Willelmus illam cum adjacente

De Eboraco.

2 Lindsey, A.; Lindseye, B.; vel urbs nemoris Lud, ins. C. Sentence otherwise slightly abbreviated in C.D.
3 Lindesie, D. 9 Slightly transposed and abbreviated in C.D.
2 Lindecolun, B.; Lindecolinum, Gale. 10 Eboracus, B.D., Gale.
4 forsan] forte, B. 11 judicium, Gale.
5 Coith, B. 6 inde] om. A.
and somtyme heet Snotyngham, pat is, pe woning of dennes, for pe Danes dwelled pere somtyme, and were i-longed,\(^1\) as me telle\(\)p, and i-digged\(^2\) dennes and caues vnder hard rokkes and stones.\(^3\) \(\lfloor\) Lyncolne is chief of pe prouince\(^4\) of Lyndesey, and heet somtyme Caelrudecoite, and afterward Lyndecolyn. Hit is vncerteyn who bulde first pis citee, but \(\rfloor\) if it were kyng Lud. And so hit semep by menyng of pe name; for caer is Brittisshe, and is to menyng a citee; coit is a wode. And so hit semep pat Caelrudecoit is to menyng Lud his wode tou\(\)n.\(^5\) Kyng Leyre was Bladud his sone, and bulde Leycestre, as it were in myddel Engelond, vpon pe ryuer \[Sor\] and vpon pe kynges hite \(\rfloor\) weie.\(^6\) The citee of York is a grete citee in eiper side of pe water of Ouse, pat semed as faire as Rome, forto \(\rfloor\) pat\(^8\) the kyng of Engelond William Conquerour hadde wip brennyng of \(\rfloor\) fuyre defouled it and pe contrey is sette on the water of Trente, callee somme tyne MS.\(\text{Harl.}\) Snotyngham, that sowndethe the mansion of dennes, whom the Danes made there of ston as hit is. seide. Lincolne is the chiefe place of the province of Lyndesey, callee firste Caerludcoite, after that Lincolne; the edifi-cacion of whiche cite is not to be hade in certitude withowte that kyngge Ludde made hit, as the interpretacion of the name semethe to sownde, for caer, after the langage of Britones, sowndethe a cite, and coyte, a wode, where-fore Caelrudecoit is seide as the cite fulle of wood of Ludd. Leir, the x\(\text{th}\)e kyngge of Britones, son to kyngge Bladud, made the citee of Leircestre as in the mydelle place of Englonde on the water of Sore, and on the hieweye and diehe of the kyngge.

\[\text{Capitulum quadragesimum octavum.}\]

\textit{Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro tertio.} York is a grete citee in eiper side of pe water of Ouse, pat semed as faire as Rome, forto \(\rfloor\) pat\(^8\) the kyng of Engelond William Conquerour hadde wip brennyng of \(\rfloor\) fuyre defouled it and pe contrey is sette on the water of Trente, callee somme tyne MS.\(\text{Harl.}\) Snotyngham, that sowndethe the mansion of dennes, whom the Danes made there of ston as hit is. seide. Lincolne is the chiefe place of the province of Lyndesey, callee firste Caerludcoite, after that Lincolne; the edifi-cacion of whiche cite is not to be hade in certitude withowte that kyngge Ludde made hit, as the interpretacion of the name semethe to sownde, for caer, after the langage of Britones, sowndethe a cite, and coyte, a wode, where-fore Caelrudecoit is seide as the cite fulle of wood of Ludd. Leir, the x\(\text{th}\)e kyngge of Britones, son to kyngge Bladud, made the citee of Leircestre as in the mydelle place of Englonde on the water of Sore, and on the hieweye and diehe of the kyngge.

\[\text{Capitulum quadragesimum octavum.}\]

\textit{Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro tertio.} The citee of Yorke is large, and edifiçee on either side of Owse, as after the citee of Rome, vn tylle that William Conquerour deformede hit thro

--

\(1\) i-longed, a.; clause omitted in Cx.
\(2\) i-digged\(]\) digged, a.
\(3\) Cx. adds, and dwellyd there.
\(4\) So a. and Cx.; prophecie, MS.
\(5\) So a. and Cx.; \(\text{Lud is wolde his town, MS.}\)
\(6\) Added from Cx., who however has Sos (typ. error ?).
regione incendio deformaret; ita ut, si modo\(^1\) eam viderit peregrinus, ingemiscat; si vetus incola, non agnoeat. *Gaulfridus.* Hanc urbem construxit Ebran-
cus rex Britonum quintus, vocans eam ex\(^2\) nomine suo Caerbrank.\(^3\) Fecit quoque idem rex alias duas urbes insignes,\(^4\) unam in Albania, que dicitur Eden-
burgh;\(^5\) aliam versus Albaniam\(^6\) in finibus Loegriae, que dicitur Alcluid.\(^7\) *Ranulphus.* Est autem Edens
burghum,\(^8\) urbes\(^9\) in Pictorum terra inter flumen Twydi\(^10\) et mare Scoticum posita,\(^11\) que quondam vocabatur\(^12\) castrum puellarum. Posterum\(^13\) tamen dicta est Eden-
burgh\(^14\) ab Edan, rege Pictorum, qui ibidem\(^15\) regnavit tempore Egfridi regis Northimbrorum.\(^16,17\)

Alcuit,\(^18\) urbs quondam insignis, nunc cunctis Angli-
genis\(^19\) pene est ignocita;\(^20\) nam\(^21\) sub tempore Britonum, Pictorum, et Anglorum usque adventum Dacorum urbs erat celebris.\(^22\) Tandem circa annum gratiae dcccclxx. vastantibus Danis\(^23\) partes North-
about ; so pat a pilgrmy worde now wepe, and he seigh 1 it, 2 Caerbranck. 3 Ebrancus, pe fife kynge of Britouns, bulde York, 3 and cleped hit after his owne name Caerbrank. 4 He bulde also tweie oþere noble citees, [one] 5 in Scotlond pat hatte Edynborugh ; 6 and anoter toward Scotlond, in þe endes of Englond, pat hatte Alcluid. 7 Edynborogh is a citee in þe lond of Pictes by-twene þe ryuere of Twyde and þe Scottische see, and heet somtyne þe Castelle of Maydens, and was i-cleped after-ward Edynborgh, 8 of Edan, kynge of Pictes, pat regned þere ymne Egfrides tyrne, kynge of Norhumberlond. Alcluid waþ somtyne a noble citee, and is now wel nyh vnknowe to alle Englische men. [For under þe Britouns and Pictes and Englisshe men] 9 it waþ a noble citee anon to þe comyng of þe Danes ; but afterward aboute þe þere of our Lord eʒte hundred þre score and ten it was destroyed, whan þe Danes destroyed þe cuntrees 10 of Norhumberlond. But in what

brennenge ; and if a man scholde see hit now, considrenge what that citee was a fore tyne, hit scholde move hym to be soory. 2 Gaufriðus. Ebrancus, the vþhe kynge of Britynne, made that citee of Yorke, whom he namede Caerbranc. Also that same kynge made ij other nowble citees; oone waþ in Scottelande, which is callede Edengborouʒh, that other citee waþ in the costes of Englond, toward Scottelonde, which waþ callede Alcluid. ¾ Edengborouʒh is a citee in the londe of Pictes, betweene the water of Twide and the Scottes see, which waþ callede somme tyrne the Castelle of Maidenes, after that it was callede Edynborough, of Edan kynge of Pictes, which reignede there in the tyrne of Egfride kynge of Northumbrelonde. Alcluid waþ somme tyrne a nowble citee, now becenge vnkownen allemoste of alle Englische men, which waþ a nowble citee in the tyrne of Britones, of Pictes, vn to the commenge of Danes in to this londe of Englond ; and at the laste, abowe the yere of grace ixv. Ixxxvi yere, the Danes, destroyenge the costes of Northumbrelonde, destroyed that citee of Alcluid. Of

1 saue, Cx., and so usually.
2 ar he woned out 1 to lyve, Cx.
3 ðeirk, a.
4 Caerbranck, a.
5 Added from Cx.
6 Edynborogh, a.; and so below.
7 Alcluid, a.; Alcluid, Cx.
8 Edynborogh, a.
9 Added from a. and Cx.
10 contrages, a.
imbranæ destructa est et illa.\(^1\) Quo autem in loco Britannie illa fuerat constructa,\(^3\) varii sunt auctores. Nam Beda, libro primo, capitulo duodecimo, dicit illam fuisse constructam ad occidentalem sinum illius marini brachii, quod olim separatam Pictos a Britannis; ubi vallum Severi, sive murus ille famosus, ad occidentem terminatur. Et sic videtur, secundum ipsum,\(^4\) quod non multum distet\(^5\) a Lugubalia,\(^6\) id est, Caerleil;\(^7\) quia et ipsa ad finem illius muri ponitur. Volunt alii historici quod urbs Alcluit\(^8\) sit illa, quæ modo vocatur Aldeburgh,\(^9\) quod sonat villam veterem, quæ ponitur justa flumen Ouse, non longe a Burgebrigge,\(^10\) quæ distat ab Eboraco xv. miliaribus ad occidentem; et hoc videtur probari\(^11\) ex dictis Gaufridi de gestis Britonum, qui scribit\(^12\) Elidurum regem Britonum, dum apud Alcluit\(^13\) causa venatici solatii perendinatum, reperisse fratrem suum Archgallonem in vicino nemore Calaterio\(^14\) aberrantem. Constat autem quod nemus Calaterium,\(^15\) quod Anglice Caltrees\(^16\) dicitur, attingit

\(^1\) urbs, ins. C.
\(^2\) C.D. add : ut purum reliqua vix patescat. After this C.D. read as follows :— "Beda, libro primo, capitulo quatuordecimo primo. Sonat autem Alcluid Briannia,iam idem quam petra eluid; poniturque urbs illa justa flumen nominis illius quod dicitur Clud ad occidentalem sinum illius marini brachii quod olim separatum Pictos a Britannis. Videtur hodie quod fluvius ille dicitus olim Chrid modo vocetur Sal- vach, qui fluit in illud maritimum brachium prædictum, quod ab occidente distinguat hodie Scotos ab Anglis. Habuitque urbs Alcluid non longe a se nemus Caltherium [Calthereum, D.], sicut paret in vita Britannici regis Elidari. Quod quidem nemus vocatur hodie Inglewode, quod non sita Anglorum; ne mus quidem prolixum incepti ad occidentem ab urbe Lugubalia, quæ [quod, D.] est Caerleil, se extendit in immensum versus orientem, habens ab austro murrum illum famosum Romani operis quod Thurlewall dicitur, ab aquilone vero marium brachii prædicti; et sic videtur quod urbs Illa Alcluid sita fuerat in borealibus finibus Anglorum non longe ab urbe Lugubalia. Inde decepti sunt multii; putantes Alcluid, cum non apparet, esse hodie urbem Lugubalicam." loco in Britannia situ fuerit, B. secundum ipse (sic) videtur, B. distat, A. Lugubralia, B. Caruiel, A.; Caraeriel, B. Aeluit, B. Aldburgh, B. Burchbrig, B.; Burghbrigge, A., Gale. \(^3\) Pre, A.
\(^4\) scriptus, A.
\(^5\) urbe Alcluid, Gale.
\(^6\) Collaterium. A. (which has aberrantem), B.
\(^7\) quod . . . Collaterium] Collaterium nemus, B. So A.B., Gale; Saltrees, E.
place of Britayne pat citee Alcluid was i-bulde, auctores TrEVISA. tellep dyuersliche. Beda, libro primo, capitulo duodecimo, seip pat it was i-bulde by west pat arme of pe see pat departed bytwene byl,twone Pictes and Britones somtyme. Bere Seuerus his famous [walle] endep westward: and so it semep by hym, pat [hit] is nouzt fer from Caeriel, for pat cite is i-sette at pe ende of pe wall. Opere writers of stories writep pat pe citee Alcluid is pat citee pat now hatte A[t] deburgh, pat is to menyne, an olde tun, and stondep bppon pe ryuer Ouse, nouzt fer from Borgh-brigge, pat is finden myle westwarde out of York. And hit semep pat he preuemp pat by Gaufridus, in his book of dedes of Britouns. He writep pat Elidurus, kyng of Britouns, was i-logged at pe citee Alcluid, bycause of solas of huntynge, and fronde his breper Archgalon maskyngye in a wode nyh pere beside, hatte Calaterye, but pat wode Calaterye, pat hatte Caltres an Englische, recheep almost to York, and strecheep toward whiche cite be diurne opiniones, after diurne auctores, in MS. HARL. what parte of Britayne that cite was edifiede. For Bede seith, libro primo, capitulo xij, that cite to be edifiede at the weste parte of an arme of the see, whiche departeded somme tyne the Pictes from Britones, where the famose walle was terminate at the weste; and so hit semeth-o after Bede that hit was not ferre from Caeriel, for hit is putte also at the ende of that walle. Also other writers of stories rehearse and wille that the cite of Alcluid be that towne whiche is callede now Aldelburgh, whiche Sovneden the olde town, whiche is sette ny to the flode of Ouse, not ferre from Barbryge, whiche is from Yrke by xv. myles at the weste of hit. And this position semeth to be probable of the cite of Gaufride in his boke of the gestes of Britones, whiche affermeth pat Elidurus, kyng of Britones, taryenge at Alcluid for solace to hunte, founde his breper Archgallo errante in a wode callede Calateryn, whiche woode is callede in Englische Caltrees,

1 departeth, Cx.
2 Added from Cx., who has wille.
3 Added from a. and Cx.
4 that, Cx.
5 Aldburgh, Cx.
6 So a. and Cx.; and, MS.
7 solace and, Cx.
8 Agalon, Cx.
9 in, Cx.
10 Englishe, a.
11 This word is interlineted in red.
pene Eboracum, et inde versus zephyrum extenditur
juxta Aldeburgh\textsuperscript{1} in longum spatio viginti miliarum.
Cujus nemoris plurima pars hodie succesis arbusculis
ad culturam redigitur.\textsuperscript{2} Hic dijudicet prudens lector
quid de Alcluit\textsuperscript{3} sit tenendum.

De urbe Caerliel.

Caerliell\textsuperscript{4} urbs est in finibus Anglorum borealium
versus zephyrum septentrionalem, quae alio nomine
Lugubalia\textsuperscript{5} dicitur, quam\textsuperscript{6} condidit septimus rex
Britonum Leill. \textit{Ranulphus}.\textsuperscript{7} Habetque haec urbs\textsuperscript{8}
in se aliquam partem illius muri famosi, qui trans-

\textsuperscript{1} So A., Gale; and probably also B.E., which may however intend
a Latin form, using contractions.
\textsuperscript{2} After redigitur, Gale adds:
Volunt alii ut Alcluid sit urbs
illa, quae modo vocatur Burgan,
in borealibus finibus Westmer-
lond juxta Comberlond, super
flumen Edene sita, cujus adhuc
miranda apparens vestigia.” See
he versions.

\textsuperscript{3} Alcluid, B.
\textsuperscript{4} So E. apparently (Caerliellit) or
perhaps Caerliellia; Caerliel, A ;
Caerleil, D.

\textsuperscript{5} Luguba, A.; Lugubralia, B.

\textsuperscript{6} hanc, C.D.

\textsuperscript{7} Ranulphus] Added from
A.B.C.D., Gale.

\textsuperscript{8} urbs haec, A.B., Gale.
pe north by Aldeburgh, in length the space of twenty myle. Trevisa.
the moste dele of pat wode is nowe i-prowe adoun, and pe lond i-teleed. Opere wol mene pat Alcluid was pat cithe pat nowe hatte Burgham, in pe norp contray of Westemerland, faste by Comberlon, and stondep vpon pe ryuer Edene. Pe cithe is pere zitt wonderliche i-sene. Here a wys rede dere demep, as hym semep, where Alcluid was i-buld. Pis semep nouzet wel hard to assoille, zif me takep hede pat many townes berep oon name, as Carthago in Affrica and Carthago in Spayne; Newport in Wales and Newport in pe parische of Berkeley; Wottom vnadir Hegge and Wottom-basset; Wilke-warre and Wilke-spayne and Wilke in pe parische of Berkeley. And tweie schire townes eiper hatte Hamphtoun; Southampton and Northampton. So it semep by pe stories, pat oon Alcluid was in Yorkshiere, anoper in Westemerland, and oon faste by in pe riʒ side of pe west arme of pe see, pat departep Engelond and Scotsland; but pat Alcluid was a wele stronge cithe, as Beda seip; and pat cithe stondep faste by a ryuer pat hatte Cluид; and pere is non suche ryuer in Wonderliche, noper in Westmoreland, as men of pe contray tellep. Som men tellep pat pe ryuere Cluид hatte now Sulwache; [Sulwach] is but fyne myle fro Caerlile. Caerleel is a cithe in pe centre of Norp Engelond toward pe norp west, and hap anoper name and hatte Lugubal. Leyle, pe seuenpe kynge of Britounes, bulde Caerleel. In pis cithe is somwhat of pat famous wal pat passep nye to Yorke, and is extendede also nye to Aldeburgh, in longitude by the space of xxiv myles, of whiche woode a grete parte is kytte downe to brene, and for other thynge necessary. Other men wille that Alcluid be that cith which is calledie now Burgham, in the northe partes of Westemerlond, nye to Cumbirlonde, sette on the floode of Eden, of whom mervellous stappes appere zitte. Wherfore y cownselle that a prudent lector inge what weye is to be holden of that cith off Alcluid. Caerlile is a cithe in the northe partes of Englonde, towarde the northeweast, which was calledie otherwise Ligubalia, whom Leif the vjlythe kynge of Britones did make. R. That cith hathe parte of that famous walle

---

1 After Aldeburgh, MS. and a. (not Cx.) add, by a clerical error of repetition, hat is to menynge.
2 y-tylling, Cx.
3 Barcham, Cx.
4 Cx. thus re-writes the sentence: Dame ye now where it is tyuled.
5 Reference added from Cx.
6 Cartago, MSS. and Cx.; and so below.
7 parische, Cx.
8 Egg, Cx.
9 Wilkarwe, Wykipyn, and Wik, a. and Cx.
10 right, Cx.; and so often.
11 Cluид, Cx.
12 Added from a. and Cx.
cindit Northimbriam.\textsuperscript{1} \textit{Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro tertio.} In qua\textsuperscript{2} urbe manet adhuc ex lapideis forniciibus triclinium concameratum, quod nulla unquam tempestatum contumelia aut ignium flamma valuit labefactare. In vicina quoque plaga\textsuperscript{3} apud Cumbirlond\textsuperscript{4} legitur adhuc in fronte triclinii sic inscriptum,\textsuperscript{5} \textit{Marii victorie}. Quod quid sit haesito, nisi forsan pars Cumbrorum olim his locis insederit,\textsuperscript{6} eum fuissent a Mario consule Italia pulsi.\textsuperscript{7} \textit{Ranulphus}.\textsuperscript{8} Sed probabilius videtur, quod ibi fiatmentio de Mario rege Britonum filio Arviragi, qui illis in locis Rodricum\textsuperscript{9} regem Pictorum devicerat, sicut testatur Gufridus in suo Britannico libro, quem Willelmus Malmesburiensis nusquam viderat.\textsuperscript{10}

Hagustaldensis\textsuperscript{11} ecclesia est locus\textsuperscript{12} lxxx. miliaribus\textsuperscript{13} ab Eboraco ad zephyrum borealem\textsuperscript{14} disparatus, ut vult Willelmus\textsuperscript{15} libro tertio de Pontificibus. \textit{Locus ille ab olim ad episcopum Eboracensem pertinuit, ubi quondam fuerunt}\textsuperscript{16} artificiosa ædificia, Romano mere coeleata,\textsuperscript{17} qualia citra Alpes vix uspiam visebantur.\textsuperscript{18} Et vocatur hodie locus ille Hestoldesham.\textsuperscript{19} Beda,
Northumberland. \textit{Willelmus de Pontificibus.}]^{1} In his cite is a pre chambred hous i-made of font\textsuperscript{2} stoones, pat my\textsuperscript{3}t neuere\textsuperscript{3} be destroyed wip tempest of wedir nojer wip brennynge of fuyre. Also in pe contrayaste by in Westmerland, in pe front of a pre chambred place, is i-write in pis manere, \textit{Marii victorie}. What pis writeing is to mene, som dele I doute; but it\textsuperscript{4} were so pat som of pe Combres leie\textsuperscript{5} pere somtyne, whan pe consul Marius hadde i-putte hem out of Itali. R.\textsuperscript{6} But it semep more probable,\textsuperscript{7} pat pat is i-write in mynde of Marius, kyng of Britoums, pat was Aruiragus his sole. Pis Marius outecon in pat place Rodryk, kyng of Pictes,\textsuperscript{8} so seip Gaufridus in his Brittische booke. William Malmebury seih neuere pat book. At Hagus-taldes chich is a place foure score myyle out of York nor-westward; pe place is, as it were, destroyed; so seip Willel-mus, libro tertio de Pontificibus; pat place longede somtyne to pe bissihoprice of York. Pere were somtyne buldes\textsuperscript{9} wip vice\textsuperscript{10} arehes and fontes\textsuperscript{11} in pe manere of Rome. Suche bultynge was nowhere [i-seie]\textsuperscript{12} on pis half Alps, but pere vnnepe. Now pat place hatte Hestoldesham and Heglisham whiche dividethe Northumberlonde. \textit{Willelmus de Ponti-ficibus, libro tertio}. In which cite a threfolde chambre remaynethe zitte, that can not be defilede with fire, other elles with cuy other tempeste, in whom a wryteng is conteynede of the victory of Marius. R. Whiche semethe to be probably that theke mencion is made there of Marius kyng of Britones, son to Aruiragus, which overcome Roderike the kyng of Pictes in those costes, as Gaufride rehersethe in his boke of Brityne, whom William Malmebury hath not seen. The chichre of Hagustaldens is a place beenge from Yorke by lxxx. myles, at the northe weste of hit, whiche place longede somme tyme to the bisshoppe of Yorke, where ryalle edilenge were some tymes, after the edilenge of Rome, which edilenge han not be seen of eny man a this side Alps, but in that place, which is callede nowe Estoldesham. \textit{Beda, libro}

\textsuperscript{1} Added from a. and Cx.
\textsuperscript{2} fonte, Cx.
\textsuperscript{3} neuere mycete, a., Cx.
\textsuperscript{4} but yt yt, Cx.
\textsuperscript{5} leyce, a.
\textsuperscript{6} Reference added from a.
\textsuperscript{7} better, Cx.
\textsuperscript{8} So a. and Cx.; Britoums, MS.
\textsuperscript{9} house, Cx.
\textsuperscript{10} yxe, a.
\textsuperscript{11} routes, Cx., who has large omissions here.
\textsuperscript{12} Added from a.
libro tertio, capitolo primo.¹ Et est locus ille juxta murum longum Romani operis ad boream.² Ranulphus.³ Est autem differentia inter provinciam Lindisfarorum et ecclesiam Lyndyfarnesem.⁴ Nam provincia Lindisfarorum est idem quod Lindeseya,⁵ quæ jacet ad orientem Lincolnie, cujus ipsa caput est;⁶ de qua dicit Beda, libro quarto, capitulo [undeceimo, quod Sexvulphus erat ibidem primus episcopus; sed ecclesia Lindifarnensis secundum Bedam, libro quarto, capitulo vicesimo tertio],⁷ idem est quod illa insula quæ dicitur Halielond,⁸ in fluvio Twydi,⁹ prope Berewycum.¹⁰ Et sic colligitur ex dictis Beclaa, quod in illo famoso marino brachio,¹¹ in quod fluit amnis Twedi,¹² quæ hoclie ab oriente separat Anglos a Scotis, sunt tres insulae; scilicet, Mailros, quod modo dicitur Meuros;¹³ inde superius versus occidentem est Lindifarnensis ecclesia, id est, Halielond.¹⁴ Inde ascendendo ponitur insula Farne, quæ est Farnyelond.¹⁵ Inde ascendendo per duo miliaria ponitur urbs regia super ripam Twydi,¹⁶ quondam dicit Barnburgh, id est, urbs Bebbæ; hodie dicitur Bamburgh, castrum habens fortissimum.

¹ C.D. omits reference to Bede.
² longum] om. C.D.
³ borealem, E.
⁴ Ranulphus] om. C.D.
⁵ etiam, C.D.
⁶ Lindisfororum, A.
⁷ Lindyfarne, A.B.; Lindisfarneam, Gale, D.
⁸ Lindyfarneam, A.; Lindisfarneam, E.
⁹ Lindisæa, A., Gale.
¹⁰ est, C.D.
¹¹ cujus ... est] om. C.D.; est capit, B.
¹² Added from A.B., but thus in C.D.—“undeceimo ibidem fuerat primus episcopus Sexvulphus.” Eclesia autem Lindisfarnensis secundum Bedam, libro quarto, “capitolo vicesimo tertio.” The references are to lib. iv. c. 12 and c. 27.
¹³ Twydi, A.
¹⁴ Beverwicæ, Gale.
¹⁵ brachio marino, A.B.
¹⁶ Twede, C.D.; Twidi, A.; Twidy; B.
¹⁷ hodie, C.
¹⁸ This passage is slightly transposed and abbreviated in C.D.; Meavros, B.
¹⁹ superius ... occidentem] ascendendo per miliarium, C.D.
²⁰ quæ Halielond dicitur, C.D.
²¹ Inde ... Farnyelond] om. B.C.
²² quæ Farnyelond dicitur, C.D.
²³ Inde ... Barnburgh] om. B.C.
²⁴ vero, B.
²⁵ Farnyelond, A.
²⁶ nocem, C.D.
²⁷ proponenter, B.
²⁸ fluminis quæ, ins. C.D.
²⁹ diculator, C.D.
³⁰ id ... Barnburgh] quæ hodie vocatur Barnburgh, C.D.
³¹ quæ, ins. B.
³² Bamburgh, B.
also. Beda, libro tertio, capitulo primo, seip part place [is] \( ^1 \) Trevisa, faste bye pe long wal of pe work of Rome in pe norp half. \( ^2 \)

\( ^1 \) The verb is absent from MSS. and Cx.
\( ^2 \) Reference added from Cx.
also is difference betwene pe province of Lyndefar and [and pe chbre of Lyndefarne; for pe prounyce of Lyndiflar and] \( ^3 \)

Lyndesecie is al oon, and lye by est Lyncolne; and Lyn-
\( ^3 \) Added from a. and Cx

coln is pe heed herof. Of pe whiche seip Beda, libro quarto, capitulo undecimo, pat Sexwulphus was first bishope pere. Bote Beda seip, libro quarto, capitulo vicesimo tertio, pat Lyndefarn \( ^4 \) chbre is an ilond, pat hatte Halyelond, in pe ryuer Twede, \( ^5 \) nyh Berwyk. And so hit is i-gadered of Beda his sawes, [pat Twye renep into the famous arm of] \( ^6 \) pe see pat \( ^7 \) departep Englische men and Scottes in pe est half. And in pe \( ^8 \) arm beep pe ilondes, pat beep Mailros, pat now hatte Mewros; \( ^9 \)

\( ^4 \) Lyndefarn
\( ^5 \) added from a. and Cx

\( ^6 \) Added from a. and Cx

\( ^7 \) that now, Cx.

\( ^8 \) pat, a., Cx.

\( ^9 \) Mewros, a., Cx.

\( ^10 \) Holy ylond, Cx.

\( ^11 \) Bebbes, Cx.

\( ^12 \) Whelde, a.; Thwede, Cx. (who has necQ).
De urbe Qiraldus in Itinerario. Urbs\(^1\) Legionum duplex est, quae Britannice vocatur Caerlegion vel Caerleon; \(^2\) una est in Demetia,\(^3\) id est, Southwallia, quae dicitur Caeruse,\(^4\) ubi Usca flumen cadit in Sabrinum mare juxta Glamorganiam, a Belino rege Britonum quondam constructa; metropolis fuit Demetia.\(^5\) Postmodum tempore Claudii Caesaris dicta est Urbs Legionum,\(^6\) quando ad instantiam Gennissæ\(^7\) reginæ, Vespasiano et Arvirago concordatis, missae sunt aliquæ legiones Romanae in Hiberniam. Urbs haec\(^8\) autentica,\(^9\) ac per Romanos muris coctilibus circumdata, ubi multa adhuc pristinae nobilitatis apparent vestigia; palatia scilicet immensa, turris gigantea, thermæ insignes, templorum reliquiae, et \(^{10}\) loca theatralia egregiis muris partim extantibus pene clausa; et tam intra quam extra murorum ambitum ædificia subterranea, aquarum ductus,\(^{11}\) hypogaeique\(^{12}\) meatus; stuphas quoque videas ibidem miro artificio consertas, lateralibus\(^{13}\) quibusdam angustiis spiraculi vice\(^{14}\) occulte\(^{15}\) calorem exhalantibus. In qua urbe tres olim egregiae fuerant.

---

\(^1\) C.D. begins this section as follows: "Caerleon, sea Caerlegion, seu Caeruse, ubi Usea flumen cadit in Sabrinum mare juxta Glamorganiam, constutulta est a Belino rege Britonum, quae multo tempore Caeruse appellata, metropolis fuit Demetia in South Wallia" (D., however, reading: "Caerleon, seu Caerthlon, seu Caerlegion, seu Caeruse," &c.)

\(^2\) Caerleon, B.

\(^3\) Domosia, B.

\(^4\) Caerusk, B.; Caerult, Gale.

\(^5\) Domotie, B.

\(^6\) Transposed in C.D.

\(^7\) Gennissæ, Gale.

\(^8\) haec antiqua et, ins. C.D.

\(^9\) autentica or autentica, MSS.

\(^10\) et om. C.D.

\(^11\) aqueductus, B.

\(^12\) hypogeique, A.B.; hippogeique. E.

\(^13\) lateralibus, A.

\(^14\) So Gale; viis, MSS,

\(^15\) So A.B.C.D.; occulte, E.
Bamborgh, and hath a wel strong castel. Giral dus in Itinere. Twewe citees þere beþ, eþer hatte Caerlegioun and Caerleoun also; oon is Demecia in Souþ Wales, pat hatte Caeruske also; þere þe ryuer Vseþque 3 falleþ in to Scuarn see, 4 faste by Glammorgon. Bellinus, kyng of Britouns, somtyme bulde þat cite; and somtyme was þe chief cite of Demecia in Souþ Wales. 6 Afterward in Claudius Cesar his tyme hit was i-cleped þe Citee of Legiouns. Whan at þe prayer of Genuis þe queene, Vespasianus 7 and Aruiragus were accorded, and legiouns of Rome were i-sende in to Irlond, þo was Caerleoun a noble citee and of grete anctorite, and by þe Romynys realliche i-walled aboute wip walles of brent 8 tile. Grete nobilite 9 pat was þere in olde tyme is þere þit in meny places i-sene, as þe grete palys, 10 goant 11 his toun, noble bathes, reæfe 12 of þe temples, places of theatres, þat were places hiþ 13 and real to stonde and sytte yyne and byholde aboute. Þe places were realliche i-closed wip real walles þat þit somdel stondeþ wel ynyh cloos. And wip yyne þe walles and wipoute is greet buldyngge vnder erpe, water condites and weies vnder erpe and stunes also þou schalt see wonderliche i-made wip streite side weies of brepyngge, þat wonderliche castþ vp hete. In þis citee were somtyme þe noble chyrches;
ecclesiae, una Julii Martyris, virginum choro venustata; alia\(^1\) beati Aaron\(^2\) praecelto canonicorum ordine nobilitata; tertia vero metropolitana sede\(^3\) totius Cambriae fuit insignita, de\(^4\) qua postmodum usque Meneviam sedes illa est translata. Hoc in loco Amphibalus\(^5\) doctor\(^6\) Albani extitit\(^7\) oriundus. Hie magni Arthuri, si fas sit credere, magnam\(^8\) curiam legati adiere\(^9\) Romani. \textit{Ranulphus}.\(^{10}\) Est et alia Urbs Legionum ejusdem nominis, ubi et praesens\(^{11}\) chronica fuit\(^{12}\) elaborata, sicut per capitales hujus primi libri apices clarius\(^{13}\) patet.\(^{14}\) Urbs quidem in

\(^1\) \textit{alia}\ et altera, C.D.  
\(^2\) \textit{Aaro}, B.  
\(^3\) \textit{sede}\ om. C. (not D.)  
\(^4\) \textit{a}, B.D.  
\(^5\) \textit{Ambhibalus}, E.  
\(^6\) \textit{beati}, B.  
\(^7\) \textit{fierat}, B.  
\(^8\) Slightly transposed in C.D., which have \textit{famosam}.  
\(^9\) \textit{addere}, B.j  
\(^{10}\) \textit{Ranulphus} om. C.D.  
\(^{11}\) \textit{hic}, B.  
\(^{12}\) \textit{fli}, B.  
\(^{13}\) \textit{clarius} om. B.  
\(^{14}\) \textit{ubi}...\textit{patet} om. C. D. omits only \textit{sicut}...\textit{patet}.
oon was of Seynt Julis ρε martir, i-hi\textsuperscript{3} wip a grete\textsuperscript{1} companye of virgyns; ρat ower was of Seynt Aaron, ρat was of ρe ordre of blak chanouns; ρat chirche was wip hym\textsuperscript{2} nobelie i-hi\textsuperscript{3}; ρe priddle chirche was ρe chief modernchirche of al Wales, and ρe chief sete;\textsuperscript{4} but afterward ρe chief see was i-torned out of ρat citee in to Meneuia, pat is, Seynt Dauyes loud in West Wales. In ρis Caerleon [was]\textsuperscript{5} Amphibus i-bore, ρat tau\textsuperscript{3} Seynt Albon. Ρere ρe messangers of Rome come to ρe grete Arthurus curt,\textsuperscript{6} ρif it is leeful for to trowe. Trevisa. \textsuperscript{2}if Gerald\textsuperscript{7} was in doute where\textsuperscript{8} it were leful for to trowe ρis\textsuperscript{9} ower noo, it was nou\textsuperscript{2} ful greete reedynesse to write hit in his bookes; as som men wolde wene. For it is a wonder sweuene i-metle for to write a long storie, to haue enuemore in mynde, and euere haue doute ρif it be amys bylene. \textsuperscript{2}if alle his bookes were suche, what lore were perynue, and nameliche while hit makep non euidenes for neip\textsuperscript{10} side, noiper tellep what hym\textsuperscript{11} menep so\textsuperscript{12} for to seie?\textsuperscript{13} R.\textsuperscript{14} \textsuperscript{2}ere is anoiper Citee of Legiones; \textsuperscript{2}ere ρis cronicle was by\textsuperscript{15} traualled, as it is ecleerliche i-knowe by ρe firste letters of ρe chapitres of ρis firste book;\textsuperscript{16} Trevisa. \textsuperscript{3}is\textsuperscript{17} is to vnderstandynge in ρe Latyn wrytynge and nou\textsuperscript{2} in ρis Englishe wrytynge; for it was nou\textsuperscript{2} ρe same pat made it in Latyn, and torned it into Englishe in ρe same place pat it was i-made first in Latyn. \textsuperscript{2}ere heed letters of ρe chapitres of ρis firste book i-write arewe as the chapitres stondep he spelep ρis Latyn resoun: Presentem\textsuperscript{18} cronicae compilauit frater Ranulphus Cestrensis monachus. \textsuperscript{4}is Latyn resoun is to menyng e an Englishe: Brocher Ranulf,\textsuperscript{19} monk of Chestre, compiled and made ρis present cronicle.\textsuperscript{10} R. \textsuperscript{2}ere Martir, made feire with a company of virgynes. \textsuperscript{2}er other MS.\textsuperscript{2} Harl.\textsuperscript{2}261. was of blesedee Aaron, made nowble with the clere ordre of canons. The thridde chirche was made nowble with the seete of the metropolitan of alle Wales, which was translante afterwarde to Meneuia, which is callede nowe Seyntye Dauid. \textsuperscript{R}. Also there is an other Cite of Legiones,

1 and ther in a grete, Cx. 
2 hem, Cx. 
3 adourned, Cx. 
4 see, Cx. 
5 Added from Cx. 
6 court, a., Cx. 
7 Geraldhus, Cx. 
8 whether, a. 
9 i[s] hit, a., Cx. 
10 neip] noiper, a. 
11 So a. and Cx.; by, MS. 
12 soj. MS. (not Cx.) 
13 The extract from Trevisa is a good deal varied in Cx., where it makes but little sense. 
14 Reference added from Cx. 
15 be, a. 
16 Sentence varied in Cx. 
17 That, Cx. 
18 Ranulf, a.; Ranulphus, Cx. 
19 crowye, a., Cx. The extract from Trevisa is much varied in Cx.
confinio 1 Anglie ad prospectum 2 Cambrize, inter duo marina brachia, 3 Dec et Mercee, 4 situata; quae tempore 5 Britonum caput fuit et metropolis Venedotiae, id est, 6 Norwalliae; 7 cujus 8 fundator ignotur. Nam inuenti fundamenta lapidum 9 enormium videtur potius Romano seu giganteo labore, quam Britannico sudore fundata exitisse. Hae aliquando vocata est 10 Britanniae Caerthleon, 11 Latine Legecestria; nunc autem 12 dicta 13 est Cestria, sive 14 Urbs Legionum; eo quod ibidem hiemarent legiones militares, quas Julius Caesar ad subjugandum Hiberniam, 15 et postmodum 16 Claudius Caesar ad subigendas 17 Orcades insulas inde transmisserat. Urbs itaque ista, quicquid de ea Willelmus Malmesbury 18 ad aliorum relatun summiuerit, omni genere 19 victualium 20 abundat, farris, carnis, 21 piscis, potissime salmonis optimi 22 copiosa; 23 mercimonia varia recipit et refundit. Quippe quae 24 in suis confiniis salinas habet mineras et metallia. In hac 25 urbe per Northimbro 26 et Danos vicissim conquassata, 27 sed tandem per Elfledam 28 Merciorum dominam egregie 29 reparatu et aducta, 30 sunt vias substerraneae, lapideo opere

---

1 confinius, A.
2 in prospecta, C.
3 brachii ... ext. C.; inter duas fluminas, D.
4 Mersee, B.D.
5 partim, B.
6 Northealliae, A.B.
7 sicut alia urbs legionum quandam fuit Demetie. Urbs alia jacet desolata, ista substantia reformata; illius conditor fuit Belinus, ins. C.D.
8 istius, C.D.
9 in muris, ins. C.D.
10 est] om. B.D.
11 Caerleon, C.; Caerleon, B.; Caerleon, D.
12 vero, C.D.
13 dicta] om. C. (not D.); dicta est, om. B.
14 etiam, C.D.
15 miserat, ins. C.D.
16 etiam, C.D.
17 subjugandum, A.
18 de Mal[esbury], B.
19 omnium generum, C (not D.)
20 copia, ins. C. (not D.)
21 carnium, C.D.
22 optima] om. B.
23 copia, B.
24 et, C. (not D.)
25 quoque, ins. C.D.
26 Northumbros, A.; Northumbros, B.
27 quassata, C.D.
28 Elfledam, C.; Elfledam, A.B.
29 D.; Elfledam, Gale.
30 nobiliter, C.D.
31 aucta, C. (not D.)
citee of legiouns, pat is, Chestre, stondep in pe marche of Engelond toward Wales, bytwene tweie armes of pe see pat hatte Dee and Merse. *Pis citee in tyme of Britouns was heed and chief citee of al Venedocia, pat is, Norp.¹ Wales. Pe foundour of pis citee is vñknowe, for who pat seep pe foundementis of pe grete stones wolde raper wene pat it were Romayns work, oþer work of geauntes, þan work i-made by settynge of Bretons. *Pis citee somtyme in Brittische speche heet Caerleon,³ Legecestria in ⁴ Latyn, and hatte now Cestria in Latyn, and Chestre in Englishe, and pe Citee of Legiouns [also. For þere lay a wynter þe legiouns] ⁵ of knŷ¿tes pat Iulius Cesar sente for to wyne Irلονd; and afterward Clawdius Cesar sente legiouns out of þat citee fœr to wyne pe ñondues pat hatte Oreades. What euere William Malmesbury by tellynge of oþere men mette of pis citee, pis citee hap plente of fleshe, of corn, of fleshe, and of fische, and specialliche of pris salmon.⁶ Pat⁷ citee fongeþ grete marchaundise, and sendeþ out also. Also nygh pis citee beep salt welles, metal, and oor. Norphumbs destroyed þis citee somtyne; but afterward Elfleda, lady of Mercia, bulde it aþe and made it wel⁸ more. In þis citee beep weies vnder
callede Chestre, where this cronicle presente was laborede, MS. HARL. 2261. in the coste of Wales betwene ÿ. armes of the sec which be callede Dye and Meresie, which was the chief cite of Northe Wales in the tyme of Britones, the firste founder of whom is not known. For hit scholde sene to a man beholdenge the fundacion of hit that werke to be rather of the labor of gigantes, other Romanes, then of Britones. That cite was callede somme tyme in the langage of Britones, Caerclyon, in Latyn Legecestria, and hit is callede now Chestre, other the Cite of Legiones, in that the legiones of knŷ¿tes tariède þer in wynter, whom Iulius Cesar sente to Yrlonde to subdue hit to hym. This cite labundeth in every kynde of vitelles, thaughe William Malmesbury dreameþ in other wise, as in corne, fleshe, fisch, and specially in salmones, which cite receyveth and sendeth from it diverce marchandise, which hathe nye to hit waters of salte and metalles. That cite, somme tyme destroyde by men of Northumbrelande, but redectifie of Elfleda, lady of the marches, hathe vnder the erthe voltes to be merusailede throu the

¹ in north, Cx.  
² were, Cx. (typ. error.)  
³ Caercklone, a.  
⁴ a, Cx.  
⁵ Added from a, and Cx.  
⁶ pris samoun, a.; pris of samun, Cx.  
⁷ This, Cx.  
⁸ moche, Cx.
mirabiliter testudinatæ, triclinia concamerata, insculpti lapides pergrandes antiquorum nomina præferentes. Numismata quoque,¹ Julii Cæsaris aliorumque illustrium inscriptione insignita, aliquando² sunt effossa. Hæc³ est urbs quam rex⁴ Northimbrorum Ethelfridus⁵ contrivit, occidens juxta eam duo pene milia monachorum Bangorensis monasterii.⁶ Hæc est inquam urbs ad quam venit aliquando rex Edgarus cum septem subregulis;⁷ in cujus urbis laudem metricus quidam sic prorupit:—

Cestria de castro nomen quasi Castria sumpsit,

Incertum cujus hanc manus ediderit.⁸

Hæc Légecestria tunc est dicta, vel⁹ Urbs Legionum,
Anglis et Cambris nunc manet urbs celebris.

In muris pendent lapides¹⁰ velut Herculis actus,

Agger et angetur tutior¹¹ ut maneat.

¹ Numismata quoque] So A. Gale; Hic et numismata, C.D.; numisma, E.
² guanulque, C.D.
³ Ista, C.D.
⁴ Northimbrorum Ethelfridus, B.
⁵ Transposed in C.D.
⁶ de monasterio Bangorensi, C.D.
⁷ Abbreviated in C.D.
⁸ ediderint, C.
⁹ vel] om. A.
¹⁰ lapide, B.
¹¹ tutior] So A.B.C.D.; tutius, E.
werke of ston, and other grete stones conteynenge the names and prynetes of Iulius Cesar, and of other nowble men. That is the cite whom kyng Edgare come somme tym with other vij. litelle kynges; in to the lawde of whom a metricion seythe in this wise. That cite of Chestre toke the name of hit of a castelle callede Cestria, as Castria, the firste founder of whom is not hade in certitude; callede somme tym Legecestria, other elles the cite of legiones; whiche is now a nowble cite, bothe to Englische men and to Walsche men; in the walles of whiche cite stones honge lyke to the actes f. 67. b. of Hercules; where dowble voltes be vnder the erthe; and
Saxula Saxonica superextant addita magnis,

Concava testudo bina latet sub humo.

Mineras\(^1\) profert salinas proxima tellus,

Quas spargit multis gentibus occiduis.

Carnibus et farre, sic piscibus affluit urbs hæc;

Merces et classes advexit\(^2\) unda mare.\(^3\)

Henrici quarti, Godescalli\(^4\) Cæsaris olim,

Regis et Haraldi\(^5\) pulvis habitur ibi.

Mars et Mercurius, Bacchus,\(^6\) Venus, atque Laverna,

Proteus et Pluto regna tenent inibi.

---

\(^1\) Minetas, D.

\(^2\) affluit, E.

\(^3\) Perhaps for mare, which the MSS. and Gale have, we should read maris. This indeed seems to be the reading of D., which has been corrected from mar. to mar.C.

\(^4\) Godescalli, B.

\(^5\) Arahli, A.

\(^6\) et, B.
Saxon small stones
Set upon greet beep attones.
There under grounde
Lotynge double vaut is i-founde.
\[
\text{pat helpeth wip sondes}
\]
Meny men of westene londes.
Fisch, flesche, and corn low
\[
\text{pis cite toun halpe i-now.}
\]
Schippes and chaffare
See water bringe i-now pare.
Godescalle per is,
\[
\text{pat was emperour or pis.}
\]
And ferpe Henry kyng,
\[
\text{pere is here ri\text{t}ene dwellynge.}
\]
Godescallus, and Mercurius, Mars and Venus,
also Lauerna, 9
ITrevisa.


\text{Treuisa.} God woot what pis is to mene, but poetes 12 in here manere of speche feyneth as peuerich kynde crafte and leuynge hadde a dyuersite 14 god, euerich from oper; and so they feynep 15 a god of bataille and of fi\text{t}yngge, and clepep hym Mars; also pey feynep a god of couetise of richesse and marchaundise, and clepep 16 hym Mercurius; and so Bacchus pei clepep god of wyn; Venus, god of fairnesse and of lone; Lauerna, god of peste and of robberie; Proteus 10 god of falshede and of gyle; and Pluto, god of helle. And so hit semep pat pis vers wolde mene pat pese feyned 17 goddes regnepe and beep i-serued in Chestre; Mars wip fi\text{t}ing and kokkyngge; Mercurius wip couetise of richesse and of marchaundysy; Bacchus wip grete drinkyngge; Venus wip loue non\text{t} ful wys; 18 Lauerna wip peste and robberye; Proteus 10

also kyng Henry the iiiij\text{th}, Godescallus somme tyme MS Harl. Cesar, and kyng Haralde were beryede. There Mars, Mercurius, Venus, Proteus, 9 and Pluto have gouernaile.

1 smale, Cx.
2 at ones, a.
3 vauet, a.; vouet, Cx.
4 westren, Cx.
5 ar, a.; er, Cx.
6 erthe is there righten, Cx.
7 i\text{-}halde, a., Cx.
8 Bacchus, MS.; Bachus, a., Cx.
9 Possibly we should read Lauerne; but even so, the metre limps.
10 Protheus, MSS. and Cx.
11 Added from Cx.
12 So a.; portes, MS.
13 So a.; his, MS.
14 diuerse, Cx.; probably rightly.
15 feyned, Cx.
16 called Cx.
17 forsayd, Cx.
18 now\text{t} ful wys] lewdly, Cx.
Ejus gens sequitur multum mores Babylonis,
Quae dum plus poterit, plus solet esse ferox.

CAP. XLIX.

De provinciis et comitatibus.

Alfridus. Notandum quod Anglia continet triginta duas shiras, id est, provincias, quae hodie dicuntur comitatibus, exceptis Cornubia et insulis. Nomina comitatuum sunt ista: Kent, Southsex, Southereie, Hamptonshire, Barroksire, quae sic denominatur a quadam nuda quercu in foresta de Wyndesora, ad quam solebant provinciales convenire in tractibus habendis. Item Wyltshire, que quondam dicebatur provincia Severiana, Somersete, Dorset, Doeveshire, sive Doonia. Hae novem provinciae australis prædictæ, quatenus flumen Thamisire eas secerunt a reliqua Anglia, judicabantur olim illa lege quæ vocatur Westsaxenelaga. Sed Estsex, Midelsex,
wip falsiude and gyle. Pan is Pluto not viscerued, god of Trevisa. helle. ¶

Pere Babilon lore,
More myȝi haj, trupe 1 pe more.

De schiris Angliae, sine provinciis. Capitulum quadragesimum nonum.

Take hede pat² Engelond conteyneth two and pritti schires and provinces, pat now beeþ i-cleped erldouns, outake Cornewaile and ilondes³ Alfridus. These beeþ pe names of pe erldouns and schires: Kent, Soupsex, Soupcray, Hampeschief, Barkeschief, pat haj pat name of a baar ook pat is in pe forest of Wyndesore; for at pat bare ook men of pat schire were i-wont come to gidres and make here tretys, and pere take hir counsell, and rede.⁴ Also Wiltschire, pat biiȝeto⁵ somtyme pe province of Semeran, Somersete, Dorsete, Dueneschief, pat hatte Deuonia in Latyn. Þese nyne south schires, as⁶ Tense departep hem from pe ojer dele of Engelond, were⁷ somtyme i-gouerned and i-rulled by pat lawe pat hatte Westsaxoun⁸ lawe.⁹ Estsex, Myddelsex,

The peple of whom folowe moche men of Babilon in MS. HARRI 2261. condicion of maneres, whiche is moste cruell where that hit may do moste.

Of the schires other provinces of Englonde. Capitulum quadragesimum nonum.

Hit is to be attended that Englonde conteyneth xxxxxij⁰ schires other provinces, Cornewaile excepte and other yles. Alfridus. These bee the names of the schires, Kente, Southesex, Sutheray, Hampeschief, Barrokseschief, takegen that name of hit of a bare oke in the forest of Wyndeshore, where men of that province were wonte to mete for a tretys to be made betweene partes; also Wildeschief, that was callede somme tymo the province of Seuerne, Somerse, Dorsete, Dueneschire. These ix. sowthe provinces aforeside, thanþle Thanys departethe theyme, thei were iuggede somme tymo by the lawe of the Weste Saxones, which is callede Westesaxenelaga. But Estesex,

1 trouth, Cx. The text seems corrupt; possibly crowbe (i.e. crow-eth) may be the true reading.
2 So a; þen, MS.
3 the diondes, Cx.
4 reed, a; adowys, Cx. (who has other slight variations.)
5 heet, Cx.
6 So a; nyne schires be soub, as, MS.
7 which were, Cx., who omit as above.
8 Westsaxen, a.
9 by the West Saxon lawe, Cx.
Southfolk, Northfolk, Herfortshire,\textsuperscript{1} Huntyndonshire, Northamptounshire,\textsuperscript{2} Cantebruggeshire,\textsuperscript{3} Bedforshire, Bukkinghamshire,\textsuperscript{4} Leicestreshire,\textsuperscript{5} Derbyshire, Nottinghamshire, Lincolnshire, \textit{Yorkshire},\textsuperscript{6} Duremshire,\textsuperscript{7} Northumberlond, Caerlielshire cum Cumberlond,\textsuperscript{8} Appelbyshire cum Westinerlond, Lancastreshire, que continent quinque modicas shirias; istae quindecim provinciae predictae orientales et boreales judicabantur eodem lege illa, que vocabatur Denelaga. Sed Oxenfordschire,\textsuperscript{9} Warewykshire,\textsuperscript{10} Gloucestreshire, Wycecastreshire, Herefordshire, Salopshire, Staffordshire, Chestershire,\textsuperscript{11} istae octo shiriae mediterraneae et occidentales judicabantur quindecim provinciae. Est ergo scientiam quod provincia Eboraci solummodo\textsuperscript{13} se extendit hodie ab arco Humbræ\textsuperscript{14} usque ad flumen Teyse.\textsuperscript{15} Et tamen sunt in ea viginti duo hun-dredi, id est, wapentakes.\textsuperscript{16} Hundredus autem Latine, sive cantredus Wallice et Hibernice, continet centum villas. Wapentak\textsuperscript{18} Anglice idem\textsuperscript{19} est quod\textsuperscript{20} arma capere, eo quod in primo adventu novi domini sole-
Southfolk, Norfpolf, Hertfordeschire, Huntyngeudounschire, Norphemptonshire, Cantebryggeschire, Bokynghamschire, Leycestreschire, Derbyschire, Notynghamschire, Lyncolneschire, Zorkschire, Duramsschire, Norhumberlond, Carlellschire wip Comberlond, Appelbyschire wip Westmerlond, Lancastreschire, pat conteynep fyue litel schieres; pese siftene norp and est schieres were somtyme i-gouerned and i-ruled by pat lawe, pat hatte Denelawe. But Oxenfordeschire, Warwykschire, Gloucetreschire, Wircestreschire, Herfordschire, Schropschire, Staffordschire, Chestreschire, pese cijte myddel and west schieres were somtyme i-gouerned and i-ruled by pat lawe pat hatte Mercia in Latyn, and Merceyne lawe in Englisshe. It is to wetynge pat ^orkschire now strecheponlich from pe bowe of the ryuer of Humber anon to pe ryuer of Teyse; and zit in ^orkschire beep two and twenty hondredes. Hundred and candred is al oon; candred is oo word i-made of Walsche and of Irische, and is to menynge, a contray pat conteynep an hundred townes, and is also in Englische i-cleped wepentake; for somtyme in pe comynge of a newe lorde tenauntes were i-wont to zilde...
bant tenentes reddere arma sua pro homagio. Durem-
shire\(^1\) se extendit a fluvio\(^2\) These\(^3\) usque ad flumen
Tyne. Northumberlond proprie sumendo, se extendit
a flumine Tyne\(^4\) usque ad flumen Twyde,\(^5\) quod est
principium Scotiæ. Si igitur plaga Northimbrana, quæ
fuit olim ab Humber usque ad \(7\) Twedam, hodie pro\(^6\)
unica provincia seu comitatu,\(^7\) sicut antiquitus com-
putetur, tune sunt in Anglia solummodo viginti duo
shire. Si autem plaga Northimbrana dividatur in sex
provincias prædictas, quæ sunt Everkshire,\(^8\) Durem-
shire,\(^9\) Northumberlond, Caerlielshire, Appelbyshire,\(^10\)
Lancastreshire,\(^11\) tune sunt in Anglia præter Cor-
nubiam et insulas triginta sex shire,\(^12\) provinciae, sive
comitatus. Quas omnes fecit Willehmus\(^13\) Conquæstor.

\(^1\) Duresmeschire, B.  
\(^2\) flumine, A.  
\(^3\) These, B.; The, A.  
\(^4\) Tyri, B.  
\(^5\) Twede, B.; Twide, A.  
\(^6\) pro] om. B.  
\(^7\) comitatus, B.  
\(^8\) Everwikshire altered to Werwickshire, A.; Everwikshire, B., Wicksford, A.; Everwikshire, B., Gale.  
\(^9\) Duresmeschire, B.  
\(^10\) Appelbischire, A.B.  
\(^11\) Lancastreshire, B.  
\(^12\) shires, E., and so above (once)  
\(^13\) rex, B.
vp hire wypene instede of homage. Duramschire streccchep from pe ryuer Teyse to pe ryuere Tyne. And for to speke propurliche of Norphumberland, Norphumberland streccchep from pe ryuere of Tyne anon to pe ryuere of Twede, pat is pe bygynynge of Scotlond. Pan zif the contray of Norphumberland, pat was somtyme from Humber anon to Twede, be now acounted for oon schire and oon erldom, as it was somtyme, pan bee in Engelond but two and pritty schires, but zif pe contray of Norphumberland be departed in pe sixe forsaide schires, pat bee Euerwykschire, Durameschire, Norphumberland, Carlelschire, Appelbyschire, Lancastreschire, panne bee in Engelond sixe and pritty schires wipoute Cornewayle and also wipoute pe iloundes. Kyng William pe Conquerour made alle pis proinne and schires be descryved and i-mete. Pan were i-founde sixe and pritty schires and an half, and townes two and fifty powsand and foure score; parische chirches fyue and fourty powsand and tweyne; kny‡tes fees sixty powsand and fiftene. Perof men of religioun hap ei‡te and twenty powsand and fiftene kny‡tes fees. But now wodes [be] i-hewe adoun and newe telynge lond i-made moche more pan was ‡oo, and meny townes i-bulde, and so pere bee now in Engelond meny moo hides and townes pan were in pat

theire wepens for an homage in the firste commenge of newe lordes. Duramschire extendethe hit from the floode of Teyse to the floode of Tyne. Northumbrelonde properly extendethe hit from the floode of Tyne to the floode of Twide, which is the begynnenge of Scotlond. And if the plagge of Northumbrelonde, which was somme tyne from Humbre vn to Twide, be accompltede as for oon proinne other schire, as hit was wonte, then there be in Engloude oonly xxxij schires. And if that plagge of Northumbrelonde be diuidede into vj. provinces, which be Euerwikschire, Durameschire, Northumbrelonde, Carilischire, Appelbeschire, Lancastreschire, then there be in Engloude xxxvj schires, except yles perteynenge to that lound, and also Cornewaile. Whiche alle William Conque-

1 Teyse, a. 1
2 in the, Cx. 5
3 is, a. (not Cx.) 7
4 forsaide om. Cx., probably rightly. 8
5 So a. and Cx. (who has these pronuneces) destroyed, MS. 9
6 Text of the following clauses as in a; more than thirty words are repeated without sense in MS. 10
7 and half a schire, a. and Cx. in various places. 11
8 and schire townes, MS. 12
9 Whyrof, Cx. 13
10 Some words repeated in MS. 14
11 Added from a. and Cx. 15
12 tyllenge, a. 16
13 villagges, Cx., who varies the sentence considerably.
describi, et per hydas\textsuperscript{1} seu carucatas dimetiri, et inventi sunt comitatus triginta sex et dimidium; villae vero quinquaginta duo milia et octoginta,\textsuperscript{2} ecclesiae parochiales quadraginta quinque milia duo, feoda militum 60,015, de quibus religiosi habent 28,015\textsuperscript{3} feoda;\textsuperscript{4} sed, hodie, nemoribus succisis novalibusque procisis,\textsuperscript{5} multo plures sunt hidæ et villæ quam tunc erant.

**CAP. L.**

*De legibus legumque vocabulis.*\textsuperscript{6}

Sanci\textsuperscript{7} vit\textsuperscript{7} primum\textsuperscript{8} leges in Britannia Dunwallo Molnutius, cujus leges Molnutinae\textsuperscript{9} dicebantur, usque

\textsuperscript{1} hidæ, A.
\textsuperscript{2} So A.B., Gale, and the versions; 19,015, E.
\textsuperscript{3} de . . . feoda] om. C.D.
\textsuperscript{4} novalibusque procisis] pascuisque edificatis, C.; pascuisque procisis, B.D.
\textsuperscript{5} De legum conditoribus, C.; De legibus et carum interpretationibus, D.
\textsuperscript{6} De legibus legumque vocabulis, D.
\textsuperscript{7} Sanciit, A.; Edidit, C.D., after Britannia.
\textsuperscript{8} primo, A.B.
\textsuperscript{9} Molnutiane, C. (not D.); Molnutiae, B.
TREVISA.1 Hit is wondre why Alfred summeth the schires of Engelond somde as a man pat mette; for Alfred tellep pe som of schires in pis manere: Pere beep in Engelond sixe and pritty schires wipoute Conewayle and wipoute pe ylonde. Why seip he nouȝt in pis manere: Pere beep in Engelond sixe schires wip Conewayle, and pritty oper schires wipoute pe ilondes? Eyper manere summynge is as vredy as oper. For to make a redy somme it schulde be i-write in pis manere: In Engelond beep seuen and pritty schires, and so is Conewayle accounted wip pe opere schires; and pat is skilful. For Conewayle is a schere of Engelond; for, as he seip, Conwaile is in pis Bretayne hym self, as it is aleide2 in pe fourpe chapitre of pis firste book. Pat hit is in oon of pe chief parties of pis Bretayne, pat beep Engelond, Wales, and Scotland. But Conewayle is nouȝt in Wales, for pere is a grete see bytwene; noper in Scotlonde, for pere beep manyd hundred myle bytwene. Pat Conewayle is in Engelond, and is departed in hundredes, and is i-ruled by pe lawe of Engelond, and holdep schire and schire dayes, as opere schires doop.3 If Alfred seip may in pat, he wot nouȝt what he maffeip.

De legibus legumque vocabulis. Capitulum quinquagesimun.

Dunwallo, pat hete Moluntius4 also, made pe4 firste lawes in Bretayne, the whiche lawes were i-cleped Moluntius his lawes, rour, kyng of Engelonde, causeyd to be describeyd, and the hides and carucates of londes to be mesurede; in which londe xxxviij schires were founde and dimid., liij m. and lxxx. townes, and xiv. and v. m. pereche chyrches and twayne, lx. m. fees of knyghtes and xv., of whom religious men have xxvij schires, m. and xv. fees; but now, woodes kynte downe and made arable londe, there be mony moo townes and hides of londe then were in that tyme.

Of lawes and the wordes of lawes. Capitulum quinquagesimun.

Dunwallo Moluntius ordeynede firste lawes in Bretayne, the lawes of whom were callede Moluntius, obscurede and

---

1 The remainder of the chapter appears thus in Cx., who omits Trevisa’s name:—“And whereas a sire is wretan that Conwayll is not sette amonge the schires of Engelond, it may stonde amonge them wel ynowgh. For it is neyther in Wales ne in Scotland, but is

2 The manuscripts Harl. 2261.

3 [Moluntius, Cx., and so below.

4 [C] om. a., Cx.
POLYCHRONICON RANULPHI HIGDEN

ad tempora Willehm Conquestoris satis celebres. Inter quae\(^1\) statuit, ut civitates et templum deorum, viaque ad illa ducentes, ac\(^2\) aratra colonum\(^3\) immunitate confugii gaudent. Deinde Marcia regina Britonum, uxor Gwitelini\(^4\) regis, a qua provincia Merciorum putatur denominata, legem edidit discretionem et justitiam plenam, quae lex Marcia vocabatur.\(^6\) Has duas leges Gildas historicus transkit de Britannico in Latinum, et rex Aluredus postmodum de Latino\(^7\) in Saxonicum, quae Merchenelaga\(^8\) dicebatur.\(^9\) Ipse quoque Aluredus legem Anglice conscriptam superadjecit, quae Westsexenelaga\(^10\) vocabatur.\(^11\) Tandem Danis in hac\(^12\) terra dominantibus, tertia lex emanavit, quae Danelaga\(^13\) dicebatur. Ex his tribus legibus Sanctus Edwardus tertius unam legem communem edidit, quae leges Edwardi usque hodie vocantur.\(^14\) De quibus nonnulla vocabula adhue frequentata cum corum a

---

\(^1\) quis, C. (not D.)
\(^2\) et, C.D.
\(^3\) colonum] So all the MSS. and Gale; also Brompton. So also above, p. 42, but the reading has probably sprang from a compendious mode of writing.
\(^4\) Gucntilini, C.; Gintelini, Gale.
\(^5\) legem, B.
\(^6\) vocatur, C.D.; dicebatur, B.
\(^7\) de Latino] om. C.D.
\(^8\) Merchenelaga, B.C.D.
\(^9\) vocabatur, B.
\(^10\) Westsexenelaga, A.
\(^11\) Ipse . . . vocabatur] om. B.; vocatur, C. (not D.)
\(^12\) hoc] om. C.D.
\(^13\) Deneelaga, A.
\(^14\) usque hodie before leges in B.
and were solcempne⁴ anon to William Conquerour his tyme. Moluntius ordaynede among his lawes, pat cites, temples, and weies pat ledep perto, and plowh men solowes scholud haue priuilege and freedom forto sae alle men pat wolde fie per to socour and refute.⁵ Pan afterward Marcia, quene of Bretouns, pat was Guytelynes pse kynges wyf, of hire pe proiuncate hadde pe name Mercia, as som men trowep. Sche⁶ made a lawe ful of riȝt and ⁴ of wit and resoun, and was i-cleped Merchene lawe. Gildas, pat wroot stories of Bretouns, turnede þese twoew lawes out of Breton speche in to Latyn, and afterward kyng Alredes⁷ turned alle in fere⁸ out of Latyn in to Saxon speche, and ⁷ was i-cleped alle in fere Merchene lawe. Also the same kyng Alredus wroot in Engliche, and putte to anoiper lawe, pat heet West Sexene lawe. Panne afterward Danes were lorde in pis lond, and so com⁹ forp the pridde lawe pat heet Dane lawe. Of þese pre lawes Seynt Edward þe priddle¹⁰ made oon comyn lawe, pat þit hadde¹¹ Seynt Edwardes lawe. I¹² holde hit he worthy¹³ kepede welle vn to the tyme of William Conquerour. MS. HARL. 2261. Amonge whom he made a statute that cites, temples of goddes, weyes ledegen to theyne, and the ploes of tillers of londe, scholde ioy imunite of confute. After that Marcia, qwene of Britones, wise to kyng Gvitelyne, of whom the proiuncte of the marches be trawede to have taken, their name, made a law full of ryȝtenousenes and of descrecion, which was calde the lawe of the Marches. Gildas, the writer of storyes, did translate those ij. lawes from the langlege of Britones in to Latyn. And kyng Alrede did translate hit from Latyn in to the speche of Saxones, which lawe was calde Merchendlag. Also kyng Alrede caste to that lawe written in Engliche whiche was calde Weste Saxon lawe. Then after that, the Dunes reignenge in that londe, the thriddle lawe began, whiche was calde Danelaga. Kyng Edwarde the thriddle made oon commune lawe of those three lawes, whiche he calde vn to this tyme presente the lawes of Seynte Ed-

---

¹ were solcumply (sic) observed vnto, Cx. ² refuge, Cx. ³ He, a. ⁴ and] om. a. and Cx. ⁵ Aluredus, a. and Cx. ⁶ in fere] om. Cx., and also below. ⁷ and]. Here and above the sense requires but. ⁸ Aluredus, a. and Cx. ⁹ com, Cx. ¹⁰ the confessour, Cx. ¹¹ So a. ; hadde, MS. ¹² T] Teke, a. ¹³ it wel don, Cx.
explicationibus\textsuperscript{1} hic\textsuperscript{2} inserere dignum duxi: Mund-bri\textsuperscript{3} che \textsuperscript{3} id est, læsio majestatis; Gallice, blemur de
honur.\textsuperscript{4} Burgbri\textsuperscript{5} che, \textsuperscript{5} id est, læsio libertatis aut se\textsuperscript{5} pti; Gallice, blemure de court ou de clos. Grithbri\textsuperscript{6} che, \textsuperscript{6} id est, fractio pacis. Miskennnigh,\textsuperscript{7} \textsuperscript{7} id est, variatio
loque\textsuperscript{8} le in curia. Sheauwyngh,\textsuperscript{8} \textsuperscript{8} propositio merci-
moni; Gallice, despleyure\textsuperscript{9} de marchaundise. Ham-
soken\textsuperscript{10} vel Hamfare,\textsuperscript{11} \textsuperscript{11} id est, insultus factus in domo.

Forstalling,\textsuperscript{12} \textsuperscript{12} id est, coactio vel ob\textsuperscript{12} sistentia facta in
strata regia. Frithsoken,\textsuperscript{14} \textsuperscript{14} id est, tutatio\textsuperscript{15} in juris-
dictione; Gallice, seurte\textsuperscript{16} en defence. Infangthef\textsuperscript{17}
pelfinde in\textsuperscript{18} ward, \textsuperscript{18} id est, infra suum\textsuperscript{19} capere reum;

Gallice, dedeinz\textsuperscript{20} le soen\textsuperscript{21} attachement de laroun.\textsuperscript{22} Saka,\textsuperscript{23} \textsuperscript{23} id est, jurisdictio; Gallice, courte
justice, forêt ou achesoun.\textsuperscript{24} Soka, \textsuperscript{24} id est, secta curie. Ex
inde dicitur Sokne; sed sokne aliquando dicitur
interpellatio majoris audientiae. Wergelthef, \textsuperscript{25} \textsuperscript{25} id est, solte
de laroun escospace.\textsuperscript{28} Theam,\textsuperscript{29} \textsuperscript{29} id est, laudare
auctorem; Gallice, reuoucher\textsuperscript{30} garant. Et quandoque
dicitur seucla nativorum. Philosophie,\textsuperscript{31} \textsuperscript{31} id est, ferir\textsuperscript{32}
per melle.\textsuperscript{33} Wardwyte, \textsuperscript{33} id est, susisse\textsuperscript{34} de garde.
Blodwyte,\textsuperscript{35} \textsuperscript{35} id est, acerciamentum pro effusione san-

\textsuperscript{1} expositionibus, B., Gale.
\textsuperscript{2} hic\textsuperscript{,} om. C.
\textsuperscript{3} All these words are written in
large characters and underlined
with red in B.
\textsuperscript{4} blesmure de honore, A.B.
\textsuperscript{5} Berbri\textsuperscript{,} che, Brompton.
\textsuperscript{6} Grythbri\textsuperscript{,} che, A., Gale, Br.
\textsuperscript{7} So E. apparently; Mi\textsuperscript{,} skennung,
B.; Mi\textsuperscript{,} skennung, A., Gale, Br.; Mi-
skennung, D.
\textsuperscript{8} Sheauweng, B.; Scheuwinge, Gale;
Seuwing, A.; Scheuing, D.;
Scheuwing, Br.
\textsuperscript{9} depleuer de marchaundis, A.;
despleuer, Gale; despleier, D.; des-
pleynce, Br.
\textsuperscript{10} Hamsoken, A., Gale; Hams-
kin, D.
\textsuperscript{11} Hamfare, A.
\textsuperscript{12} Forstwaeing, Gale; Foristalle,
D.; Forstall, Br.
\textsuperscript{13} in\textsuperscript{,} om. B.
\textsuperscript{14} Frithsoken, A., Gale.
\textsuperscript{15} facia, B.
\textsuperscript{16} surte en defens, A.; suet on de-
fense, B.

\textsuperscript{17} Infangthef, A.
\textsuperscript{18} pelfinioinward, B.; pelfinde
in warde, D.; thelfind, Br. The
true reading is probably Infangen-
hero self finde in warde. See In-
\textsuperscript{19} attachiamentum should be added
from Brompton.
\textsuperscript{20} So A.B.D., Gale; deinz, E.
\textsuperscript{21} sonn, B.; soen, Gale.
\textsuperscript{22} laroun, A., Gale; laroun, D.
\textsuperscript{23} Sake, B.
\textsuperscript{24} achesoun, A.; acheson, Gale;
\textsuperscript{25} juridictum de court ou acheson, D.
\textsuperscript{26} Et deinde, A.; Et in\textsuperscript{,} de, Gale.
\textsuperscript{27} Soken, A. Sentence altered in D.
\textsuperscript{28} solte\textsuperscript{,} om. B.
\textsuperscript{29} escape, B.
\textsuperscript{30} Them, B.
\textsuperscript{31} So B.C.D.; reuouch garant, A.;
revercher garant, Gale; reuene, E.
\textsuperscript{32} Frithente, B.; Fighting, D.;
Fighting, A., Gale; Fightinge, Br.,
which is probably right.
\textsuperscript{33} ferer, A.
\textsuperscript{34} molle, C. (not D.); melle, Br.
\textsuperscript{35} furis, B.
\textsuperscript{36} Blodwite, B.; Blodwit, Gale.
to write here and expound many terms of these laws. Transl.

warde, mony wordes of whiche lawe nede an exposicion, MS. Harl.
as Mundbreche, hurte of maister, in Frensche, Blesmur de
honour; Burbriech, a hurte of liberte, in Frensche, Blesmur
de court, ou de clos; Grythbriche, a brekenge of peace;
Muskenning, dieroute other chaungenge of speche in courte;
Scheauwynge, sette furthe of marchamundise, in Frensche,
dislepir de marchamundise; Hamsokne or Hamfare, that is,
a fray made in an howse; Forstallynge, constreynenge made
in the kynges strete. Frith sokne, suerte in a jurisdictioin,
in Frensche, sute en defence. Infanthef pelfynde inwarde,
that is to say, to take a gilty man within his lordechippe,
in Frensche, dedeys le soen atachemente de laron. Sca, a
jurisdictioin, in Frensche, court justice. Soka, a sute of the
courte, where of Sokne is seyde. But Sokne is seide other-
while an interpellacion of a moore grete audience. Werk-
elthef, that is to say, solte de laron eschamp. Them, that
is, to lawde the auctor; in Frensche, reuoche granute; whiche
is callede otherwhile a sequele of natife men. Blodewitte,
a merciamente for effusion of bloode. Hittewite, amenes for

1 Myndobrech, Cx.
2 of worshippe and of honour, a.
3 in, Cx., everywhere.
4 blescher, Cx., and so below.
5 Barchbruch, Cx.
6 brekyng. Added from a. and Cx.
7 displeix, Cx.
8 suerte, a.
9 Infantthef, a.; which is the more usual form. Cx. has some
omissions here, and further on.
10 laroun eschape, MS. (not a.)
11 Added from a.
12 Sokne, a.
13 Wergelthef, a.
14 laron, a.
15 Cultwyte, Cx.
guinis. Flitwite, id est, emenda proveniens pro contentione. Leyrwyte, id est emenda pro corruptione native. Gultwyte, id est, emenda pro transgressione Scot, id est, symbolum ad opus ballivorum domini. Hidage vel Taillage, id est, tallagium de hidis terrarum. Danegeilt, id est, tallagium datum Danis, id est iij. denarios de qualibet bovata terra. Wapentak et hundrede idem sunt, quia pro corruptio centum villarum solcat reddere arma in adventu domini. Lestage, id est, consuetudo exacta in nundinis et mercatis. Stalage, id est, exactio pro statione in plateis tempore nundinarum.

CAP. LI.

De regnis regnorumque limitibus.

Alfridus. Inconcusa stetit apud Britones insula monarchia, a primo scilicet Bruto usque ad Julium Cæsarem; a quo Julio usque ad Severum hec insula Romanis fuit vectigalis et subacta. Reges tamen habuit ex seipsa a Severo quoque usque ad ultimum municipem Gratianum; deficiente Britonum successione, Romanis in ea regnaverunt. Romanis tandem propter itineris

---

1 Flitwite, Br., which is probably right; Fightwit, D., which has Fightwit however under the other head.
2 e., D.
3 Lethirwite, B.; Letherwithe, Br.
4 id est] Added from B., Gale.
5 proveniens, ins. A.
6 satiro, C.
7 Gilwite, D.; Gilwithe, Br.
8 regis, B.
9 vel Taillage] om. B.
10 tallage, D.
11 taillagium, Gale, tallagium, D.; and so below.
12 Danegeild, A.
13 iij. denarios after terra in B.
14 hundred, A.; hundreddus, C.D., Gale.
15 quasi, C.D.
16 The latter part of this chapter varies verbally, but is the same in substance in C.D.; a few very trivial variations of orthography in the MSS. are not noticed.
17 B. omits reference.
18 Transposed and altered in C.D.
19 quidem, add. C.D.
20 fuit Romanis, B.
21 quoque] om. C.D.
22 Gale adds: viz, a tempore Juli Cæsaris per eccles. annos ferme.
23 tamen, C. (not D.)
trespas. Scot, a gaderynge in work of baylifes. Flittwyte, amendes i-doo for chydynge. Leyrewite, amendes for liggynge by a bond woman. Hydage, taylage of hydes of lond. Danegeld, taylage i-zeue to pe Danes, pat was pe pans of eueriche bouata terre, pat is, of eueriche oxeland. A wepentake and an honred is al oon, for pe contray of an honred townes were i-woned to zilde vppe wepeno in pe comyngue of pe lord. Lastage, custom i-chalanged in chepynges and in feyres. Stalage, custom for stondyng in stretes in feyre tyme.

*De regris regnorumque limitibus. Capitulum quinquagesimum primum.*

The kyngdom of Bretayne stood wipoute departynge hool and alle oon kyngdom to pe Britouns from pe firste Bruyt anon to Iulius Cesar his tyme; [and fro Iulius Cesar his tyme] to Seuerus his tyme pis lond was vnder tribute to pe Romayns. Neuerpeles kynges pey hadde of pe same iloud. From Seuerus anon to pe laste prince Gratian, successoures of Bretonns failede, and Romaynes reigne in Bretayne. [Afterward pe Romanys lefte of pe regnynge in Britayne],

commenge for stryvenge. Leirwite, that is to say, amendes commenge for the corrupcione of a woman natife, Gultewite, an amendes for a transgression. Scot, that is the paymente of a certeyne moncy to the vitilte of the lorde. Hidage other talage, that is to say, tallage of the hides of the londe. Danegelde, a tallage ziffen to the Danes of iiij. Wapentake and hundrede be the same as the precincte of an c. townes, which were wonote to yelde there weppens in the firste commenge of theire lorde. Lestage, that is a thynge required in feyres. Stallage, an exaccion for stondenge in the hie weies in tyme of feyres.

*Of realmes and of the merkes of theyme. Capitulum quinquagesimum primum.*

The monarchy of the yle of Britye was inconcussede from the firste Brute to Iulius Cesar; whiche yle payede a tribute to the Romanes from the tyme of Iulius vn to the tyme of Seuerus; the succession of Britones saylenge Romanes reigne in hit. At the laste, the Romanes

1 So a.; Leyrew, MS.  3 Lastage, a., Cx.
2 So a.; Danageld, MS.; Daneghold, Cx.  6 Added from Cx.
3 euericka, MS.  7 So a. and Cx.; same, MS.
4 townswepewepe, MS.  8 Added from a. and Cx.
longitudinem seu propter inevitabiles aliunde occupations\(^1\) regnare desistentibus, Scoti\(^2\) et Picti Britanniam, omni armato milite per abductionem Maximi tyranni \(^3\) vacatam,\(^4\) diutius affixerunt; quousque Saxones a Britonibus invitati contra Pictos regem Hibernicum Gurmundum eum Pictis suis et \(^5\) ipsos Britones cum Caretico rege suo de Loegria expulsos usque ad \(^6\) Cambriam profugassent.\(^7\) Sicque Saxones\(^8\) victores effecti, prout quaque provincia potentior erat, reges proprios sibi\(^10\) constituientes, terram Angliam\(^11\) in septem regna\(^12\) diviserunt; que tamen postmodum successive in unam monarchiam sub principe Adelstano\(^13\) coierunt.\(^14\) Dani tamen a diebus Adelwolfi,\(^15\) patris Aluredi, usque ad temporae Sancti\(^16\) Edwardi tertii per centum septuaginta circiter annos, terram hane jugiter infestaverunt, sed\(^17\) per triginta annos in ea continue regnaverunt. Post Danos\(^18\) vero Sanctus Edwardus tertius viginti tribus\(^19\) annis et paulo plus,\(^20\) et post eum Haroldus\(^21\) novem mensibus regnum tenuit. Post quos Normanni in ea usque hodie praesederunt. Quod\(^22\) quamdiu tenebunt in posterum, novit ille qui nihil ignorat. Ranulphus.\(^23\) De septem vero regnis predictis eorumque limitibus quando incipe-

\(^1\) tandem, add. C. (not D.)
\(^2\) Here and elsewhere the MSS. vary between Scoti and Scotti.
\(^3\) abductionem . . . tyranni] Maximum tyrannum, C.D.
\(^4\) evacuatam, A.B.
\(^5\) regem . . . ei] auxilio eorumdem Pictorum regisque Gurmundi Hibernici, C.D.
\(^6\) in, B., Gale.
\(^7\) Loegria . . . profugassent] Northumbria et in mediterranea Anglia expulsos usque in Walliam detrassent, C.D.
\(^8\) Sique, B.; Sic, Gale.
\(^9\) Angli, C.D.
\(^10\) sibi] om. B.C.D.
\(^11\) Angliam, A.
\(^12\) successive, ins. C.D.
\(^13\) Athelstano, B.
\(^14\) postmodum . . . coierunt] paulatim defecerunt donec rex Saxonom Adelstanus, euteris particularis in unum contractis, unica gaudentem monarchia, C.D.
\(^15\) Athelwulfi, Gale; Ethelwulfi, D.
\(^16\) regis, Gale.
\(^17\) et, add. C. (not D.)
\(^18\) Post Danos] postmodum, C.D.
\(^19\) 30, C.D.
\(^20\) et paulo plus] om. C.D.
\(^21\) Haroldus, B.D.
\(^22\) Quam, C. (not D.)
\(^23\) C.D. omit reference.
for it was fer from [Rome], oper for greet besynesse pat pey hadde in oper side. Panne Scottes and Pictes by mysledyng of Maximus pe tyrant pursued Bretayne, and werred perynne wip greet strenghe of men of armes longe tyme, for to pe Saxones come at pe prayenge of [pe]\(^1\) Britouns agenst pe Pictes, and putte out Gurmund the Irische kyng wip his Pictes, and pe Britouns also wip here kyng, pat heet Careticus,\(^2\) and drof hem out of Engelond in to Wales. And so pe Saxons were victors, and euerciche province, as he was strengere, made hem kynges; and so pey deled Engelond in seune kyngdoms.\(^3\) Neuerpeles afterward pese seuene kyngdoms euerciche after oper come alle in to oon kyngdom al hool vnder pe prince Adelstone. Neuerpeles pe Danes pursewed pis lond from Athelwolf his tyme, pat was Alrudes\(^4\) fader, to the pridde Seint Edwardes\(^5\) tyme, aboute an hundred zere pre score and ten; but he reigned perynne continualliche pritty zere. After pe Danes pe pridde Seint Edward regned pere yyne pre and twenty zere and a litelwhat\(^6\) more. And after hym Harald helde pe kyngdom nyne monpes. And after hem Normans haued i-regned perynne anon to pis tyme; but how longe they scholde holde he woot [pat]\(^7\) no ping vnknowep. R. Of pe forsaiide kyngdoms seuene, of here merkes, meres, and

levenge to regnue in hit, what for the longitude of trauaile and what for other occupaciones ineuitable, Scottes and Pictes wastede that londe of Britayne with a grete hoste, tylle that the Saxones beenge victores chasede the Pictes and Scottes in to Wales. And then euery province after theire powere made to theyme kynges, diuidenge the grownde of Englonde in to vij. realmes, whiche come alle afterwardes by sucession in to oon monarchye in the tyme of kyngge Athelstan. The Danes trowbled that londe Gretely from the tyme of Athelwulphus, fader to kyngge Alurced, vn to the tymes of Seynte Edwarde the thrydde, by a c. lx. and x. yeres, reignege by xxx\(^1\) yeres continually in hit. Seynte Edwarde the thrydde regnede after the Danes xxiiij\(^a\) yere and more, and Haralde after hym by ix. monethes. After whom Normannes regnede in hit vn to oure tymes, God knowethe how longe that schalle continue. R. Of whiche vij. realmes aforeside, and of the merkes of thaym,  

---  

1 Added from a. and Cx.  
2 Careticus, Cx.  
3 Sentence varied in Cx.  
4 Alrudes. a.  
5 Edward his, a.  
7 Added from a.; construction varied in Cx., who has a few trivial alterations in some of the following sentences.  

---

MONACHI CESTRENSEIS, LIB. I.  

TREVIS.  

MS. HARE.  

2261.  

---

G 2
rint,\(^1\) quantumve \(^2\) duraverint,\(^3\) aliqua breviter hic perstringam. *Alfridus.\(^4\) Primum regnum fuit Cantuariorum, ab australi oceano usque ad flumen\(^5\) Thamisie protensum. In quo primus Hengista\(^6\) sub anno Domini secundum Dionysium cccclv\(^7\) regnare cæpit, et duravit regnum illud per annos\(^8\) cccclvii.\(^9\) sub regulis quindecim; donec, Baldredo\(^10\) expulso, Egbertus\(^11\) rex Westsaxonum illud regnum suo annecteret imperio.\(^12\) Secundum regnum fuit Southsaxonie, habens ab ori ente Cantiam,\(^13\) ab austro mare et\(^14\) Vectam insulam, ab occidente Hampshire,\(^15\) ab aquilone Southreyam;\(^16\) in quo primus Elle, cum tribus filiis suis, tricesimo\(^17\) ab adventu Anglorum anno cæpit regnare. Quod quidem regnum cito post in aliorum jura\(^18\) transivit. Tertium regnum fuit Estsaxoniae, habens ab oriente mare,\(^19\) ab occidente pagum Londonie, ab austro Thamisiam, ab aquilone Southfolk;\(^20\) cujus loci\(^21\) reges a primo Sabberto\(^22\) usque ad tempora Dacorum per decem reges\(^23\) fere sub\(^24\) aliis regibus parebant; frequentius tamen et diutius regibus Mer ciorum\(^25\) subjacebant; donec rex Westsaxonum Egbertus regnum illud suo annecteret imperio. Quartum

\(^{1}\) incipierunt, B.D., Gale.  
\(^{2}\) quantunque, C.D.  
\(^{3}\) duraverunt, B.D., Gale.  
\(^{4}\) *Alfridus* om. C.D.; Alfredus, B.  
\(^{5}\) finem, B.  
\(^{6}\) primum Engistus, B.  
\(^{7}\) lv., B. (error of scribe.)  
\(^{8}\) per annos] om. E.  
\(^{9}\) cccclvii., Gale.  
\(^{10}\) Bladredo, C. (not D.)  
\(^{11}\) Eggebertus, B.  
\(^{12}\) regno, C.D.  
\(^{13}\) Oasian, B.  
\(^{14}\) ad, D.  
\(^{15}\) Hamptonschire, D.  
\(^{16}\) Southiam, B.; Southeram, Gale.  
\(^{17}\) xxx. after Anglorum, B.  
\(^{18}\) So A.B.C.D.; cito post after jura, B.; regna, E.  
\(^{19}\) Gallicam mare, Gale.  
\(^{20}\) Swetfolk, B.  
\(^{21}\) loci] om. C.D.  
\(^{22}\) Suberto, A.B.C.D., Gale.  
\(^{23}\) regulos, C.D.  
\(^{24}\) semper, C.D.  
\(^{25}\) Marceorum, A.
bondes, whan pey bygonne and how longe pey durede here
I schal somwhat schortliche telle. _Alfridus._ Pe firste kyng-
dom was pe kyngdom of Kent, pat streched from pe est
ocean anon to pe ryuer of Temse. _Pere_ reignde pe firste
Hengistus, and bygan to reigne by Denys acontes pe 3ere
of oure Lord foure hundred and fife and fifty. Pat kyngdom
durede pe hundred 3ere pe score and ei3te vnder fiftene
kynges, for to pat Baldred was i-putte out. And 1 Eggebert,
kyng of Westsaxons, ioynde pat kyngdom to his owne. Pe
secounde kyngdom was of Soupsaxon, pat hadde in pe est
side Kent, in pe soup pe see and pe yle of Wiȝi, in pe west
Hampshire, and in pe norp Souperny. _Pere Ella_ regnede
first wiȝ his pre sones, and bygan to reigne pe 3ere after pe
comynge of Angles even pritty; but pat kyngdom wiȝynne
a short tyme passede into opere kyngdoms. _Pere pridde
kyngdom was of Estsaxon, and hadde in pe est side pe
see, and in pe west pe contray of London, in pe soup Temse,
in pe north Sopfolk. Pe kynges of this contray Estsaxon
from pe firste Sabertes tyme anon to pe tyme of Danes, ten
kynges, were somdel sugette to opere kynges; nopeles of-
este and lengeste pey were vnder pe kynges of Mercia forto
pat tyme whan Eggebert kyng, kyng of Wessaxoun, ioynde

when thei began, and how longe thei haue indurede,  
ysoupe. _Alfridus._ The firste realme was
of men of Cawnturbery, protendede from the sowthe ocean
yn to the floode of Thamys, in whom Hengiste roignede
firste in the yere of oure Lorde God, after Dionysius, ccc. Iv.
yere, and that realme durede by ccc. Ixvij. yere vnder
xv. lytelle kynges, vntil, Baldredus 2 expulde, Egbertus
kyng of Westesaxones added that realme to his impire.
The secunde realme was of Sowthesex, hauenge on the este
to hit Kente, of the sowthe the see and the yle of Wiȝhte,
at the weste Hampteschire, at the northe Southerey, in
whom Elle with his thre childer began to reigne firste in
the xxxd yere from the commenge of Englishe men, which
realme wente soone after in to other realmes. The thrydde
realme was of Estesex, hauenge on the este to hit the
see of Fraunce, on the weste the cite of London, on the
sowthe Thamys, on the northe to hit, Southefolke. _The f. 69b_
kynges of whiche place from the firste Seberte yn to the
tyme of Danes, by x. kynges, were obediente to other kynges,
mooste specially to the kynges of pe Marches, yn til that
Egberte, kyng of Westesaxones, subduede hit to his impyre.

1 _And_] So a. and Cx.; of, _MS._  
2 _Baldredus,_ Harl. _MS._
regnum fuit Estanglorum, comprehendens 1 Northfolk et Southfolk, habens 2 ad orientem et aquilonem mare, 3 ad circum 4 Cantebruggeshire, 5 ad occidentem Fossam Sancti Edmundi et Hertfordshire, 6 ad austrum Essex. 7 Et duravit 8 hoc regnum sub duodecim regulis donec, occiso rege Edmundo, Dani utrumque regnum Estanglie 9 et Estsaxonum sibi usurparent. 10 Quibus postmodum 11 Danis 12 aut fugatis 13 aut subactis, rex Edwardus senior ambo illa regna suo annexuit 14 imperio. Quintum regnum fuit Westsaxonum, omnium regnorum durabilius, habens ab oriente Southsaxoniam, ab aquilone Thamisiam, 15 ab austro et occidente 16 oceanum. In quo cepit regnare Cerdicus 17 cum filio suo 18 Kynrico, 10 anno Domini secundum Dionysium dxix 9, ab adventu 20 Anglorum lxxj 9; in quod 21 regnum cætera 22 regna transierunt. 23 Sextum regnum fuit Merciorum ceteris regnis 24 magis spatiosum, cujus limites fuerunt ad occasum flumen 25 Dee, juxta Cestriam, 26 et flumen Sabrine juxta Salopiam usque 27 Bristoliam; ad ortum vero 28 mare orientale; 29 ad

---

1 continens, C.D.; apprehendens, B.  
2 habensque, C.D.  
3 mare] oceanum, C.D.  
4 circumvium, Gale.  
5 Cantebruggesiam, B.  
6 Hertfordshire, B.  
7 Essex, B.; Eotsaxoniam, C.D.  
8 exturr rhet, C.; curririd, D.  
9 Est Anglorum, Gale, C.D.; Est Angl., A.B.  
10 usurparunt, C.D.  
11 tanen, C.D.  
12 Danis postmodum, B.  
13 aut fugatis] affugatis, B.  
14 subjunxit, C.; adjunxit, D.; annexit, B.  
15 flumen Thamisie, C.D.  
16 mare oceanum, C.D. After oceanum Gale adds, viz., usque ad ultinam finem Cornubiae.  
17 Cordicus, Gale.  
18 quo . . . suo] om. B.  
19 Henrico, C. (not D.)  
20 vero, add. C.D.  
21 quod quidentem, D.  
22 certa, B.  
23 paulative (sic) coierunt, C.D.  
24 with other slight variations.)  
25 regnis] om. C.D.  
26 Leucecestriam, C.D.  
27 usque ad, A.  
28 vero] om. C.D.  
29 occidentale, C. (not D.)
pat kyngdom to his owne. Pe fourpe kyngdom was of Trevisa.
Est Angles, and conteynede Norfpolk and Soupfolk, and
hap \(^1\) in pe est side \(^2\) and in pe norp pe see, in pe norp-
west Cantebrigreschire,\(^3\) in pe west Seynt Edmond his diche,
and Hertfordschire, and in pe soupe Essex. Pis kyngdom
durede vnder twelue kynges,\(^4\) forto that tyme whan kyng
Edmond was i-slawe, and pe Danes wrongfulliche took bope
the kyngdoms of Est Angles and of Est Saxon. After-
ward pe Danes were i-putte and i-dryue away, oper i-made
sogett. And pe elder kyng Edward løyynede bope pese kyng-
doms to his owne. Pe fift kyngdom was of Westsaxon,
and durede lengeste of alle pese kyngdoms, and hadde in pe
est \(^5\) side Soupsaxon, in pe norp Tense, in pe soupe and west
pe see of oceean. In \(\text{pat} \) kyngdom reigned Cerdik wip his
sone Kenrik, and bygan to regne pe 3ere of oure Lord five
hundred and nyntene, and after pe comynge of Angles pe
score 3ere and enleuene,\(^6\) so seip Denys. Pe opere kyngdoms
passed into pese kyngdom. Pe sixte kyngdom was of
Mercia, and was grettest of al. Pe merkes and pe meres
perof were in pe west side pe ryuer Dee faste by Chestre,
and Scuerne faste by Schrewesbury \(^7\) and anon to Brestowe; in

The iij\(^{\text{de}}\) realme was of Este Englische men, comprehend-
enge Northefolke and Southefolke, hanenge at the este to
hit and on the northe the see, at the weste the dyche of
Seynte Edmund and Hertfordschire, at the southe
Seyntesex; and this realme durede vnder xij. kynges, vn tyl
Seyntes Edmund slyyne, the Danes vsurpede the realme
of Estenglond, and also of Estesex; whom kyng Ed-
warde the senior put to his realme, the Danes other put
to flíghte other subacte. The vi\(^{\text{de}}\) realme was of West-
saxones, moste durable of alle realmes, hanenge on the este
to hit Sowthesex, on the northe Thamys, on the sowthe
and weste the oceean. In whom Cerdicus began to reigne
with Kymricus his son, after Dionysius, the yere of oure
Lorde God \(v^c\) xix. yere, from the commenge of Englische
men lx\(x\)j. yere. In to whom oper realmes wente. The
sexto realme was of the Marches, more large then other
realmes. The merkes of whom were, at the weste, the
floode of Dee nye to Chestre, and the floode of Scuerne
nye to Shrewesbury vn to Bristowe, at the este the

\(^1\) had, a.
\(^2\) So a.; in west side, MS. (w
being erased.)
\(^3\) Cambruggesh, Cx.
\(^4\) So Cx.; kyngdoms, MS.
\(^5\) So Cx.; west, MS. (first hand).
\(^6\) elevene, a.
\(^7\) Schronesbury, a.
austrum flumen Thamisii usque Londoniam; ab aquilone flumen Humber, descendent occidentali usque ad flumen Merse, quousque juxta cornu Wyraliae descendat in mare occidentale. In hoc pago regnavit primo Penda, filius Wybbæ, anno Domini secundum Dionysium dcxxvi, ab adventu Anglorum clxxvi, stetitque hoc regnum sub regibus xvij. per annos circiter cclxiiij. usque ad ultimum Colwulfum; cui Dani, expulso Burdredo rege, regnum illud tradiderant custodiendum. Verum rex Westsaxonum Edwardus senior, expulsis Danis, regnum Merciorum suo annexit imperio. Erat tamen hoc regnum in sui primordio in tres partes divisum; scilicet in Occidentales Mercios, in Mediterraneos, et in Orientales Mercios. Septimum regnum fuit Northimbrorum; cujus limites fuerunt ab ortu et occasu oceanus; ab austro flumen Humber, descendendo versus occidentem, per fines comitatum Nothingham et Derbeye usque ad flumen de Mersee; ab

---

1 ad aquilonem vero, C.D.
2 descendent occidentali om.
3 Mercia, B., Gale.
4 quousque ad, B.; juxta, om. C.D.
5 Wirralie, A.B.D.; Wirralie, Gale.
6 regnavit regnare cepit, C.D.
7 Wible, A.B.D.
8 185, B.
9 Colwulfum, A.; Colwilfum, D.; Colwulfum, Gale.
10 illud om. C.D.; illum, A.
11 Iterum, C.
12 in om. B.C.
13 in om. C.D.
14 Northamimbrorum, B.
15 Humberie, B.
16 versus occidentem om. A.
17 Notyngham, B.
18 Derbie, B.; Derbi, A.; Derbie, D.
19 de om. C.D.
20 ad, D.
pe est pe est sec, in pe soup Temse anon to Londoun; in pe norp pe ryuer of 1 Humber. And so westward and downward anon to pe ryuer Mersee anon to pe 2 corner 3 of Wyreale; 4 pe Humber fallep in to pe west sec. Penda, Wibbes sone, regned first in pis kyngdom pe 3ere of our Lorde sexe hundred and sixe and twenty, so seip Denys, and from pe comynge of Angles an hundred 3ere pre score and fiftene. Pis kyngdom durede vnder ei7tene kynges aboute a two hundred 3ere, pre score and fiftene,5 anon to pe laste Colwulf; [to pe whiche Colwulf] 6 pe Danes bytook 7 pat kyngdom to kepe, whan Burdred pe kyng was i-putte out. But 7 pe elder Edward pe kyng putte out Danes and ioynede pe kyngdom 8 of Mercia to his owne kyngdom; nopeles at pe bygynnynge pis 9 kyngdom of Mercia was i-deled apre, in West Mercia, in Myddel Mercia, and Est Mercia. Pe senenpe kyngdom was Norphambymbororum, pat is, pe kyngdom of Norphumberlond. Pe meres and pe 10 merkes perof 11 were by west and by est pe see of oceean, by soup pe kyngdom of Humber, and so downward toward pe west by pe endes of pe schieres of Notyngham and of Derby esto 12 see, at the sowthe the floode of Thamys vn to London, on the northe the water of Humbre, goenge after the weste vn to the water of Mercie vn to the ende of Wirhalle, where hit descendethe in to the Weste sec. Penda, the son of Wibbe, reginede firste in those costes, after Dionysius, in the yere of our Lorde xij 12 xvij., and from the commenge of Englische men a e. yere Ixxv., whiche realme contynuede vnder xviiij. kynges abowe ij 12 e. yere lx. and iij., vn to the laste Colwulphus; whiche expulsede, the Danes made Burdredus kynge of hit. That realme was diuidede in to thre partes in the firste begynnenge, that is to say, in to the Weste Marches, in to the Myddelle Marches, and in to the Este Marches. The xijthe realme was of Northumbrelonde, the merkes of whom were, on the este and on the weste, the oceean; on the sowthe, the water of Humbre; descendenge towarde the weste by the costes of the schieres of Notyngham and of Derbye vn to the water

---

**Notes:**

1. *om. a. and Cx.*
2. *pe* om. a.
3. *So Cx.; ryuer, MS.*
4. *Wirhal, Cx.*
5. *about two elxiij., Cx.*
6. Added from *a. and Cx.*
7. *So a. and Cx.; by, MS.*
8. *MS. (not a. or Cx.) adds to hepe.*
9. *pis* MS. (not a. or Cx.)
11. *So a. and Cx.; of pe, MS.*
12. *weste, Harl. MS.*
aquilone autem \(^1\) mare Scotiae, quod Scotiae dicitur Forth, Britannice Werid,\(^2\) Anglice Scotissisee.\(^3\) Hoc autem regnum Northimbrorum \(^4\) primitus \(^5\) divisum fuit in duas provincias; in Deiram \(^6\) ad austrum, et in \(^7\) Berniciam ad aquilonem; que duo regna flumen \(^8\) Tyne \(^9\) tune temporis diviserat.\(^10\) Nam regnum Deirorum a fluvio \(^11\) Humbrie usque ad flumen Tyne \(^12\) extendebatur; regnum vero Berniciorum a flumine Tyne usque ad mare Scotiae predictum \(^13\) porrigebatur, etiam quando Picti ibidem morabantur, sicut patet \(^14\) per Bedam, libro tertio, capitulo secundo,\(^15\) ubi dicit quod \(^16\) Ninian \(^17\) vir sanctus convertit australites.\(^18\) In Bernicia coepit primus \(^19\) regnare Ida, anno gratiae,\(^20\) secundum Dionysium, \(DXLVii\). \(^21\) In Deira vero \(^22\) rex Elle, anno gratiae \(^23\) \(DXLIX\). Quae \(^24\) duo regna sub duobus regibus, ut praemittitur, interdum divisa quandoque sub uno rege redintegrata ecùrrerunt \(^24\) sub Anglis regibus \(^25\) quasi \(^26\) viginti per annos cccxxj. Deum,\(^27\) Osbricto \(^28\) et Elle \(^29\) anno nono regni sui per

---

\(^1\) vero, C.D.; the latter has ad aquilonem.
\(^2\) Werith, C.D.
\(^3\) Scotischsee, A.B.; Scotisse, D.; sicad Scotiae, C.
\(^4\) Northanthimbrorum, B.; om. D
\(^5\) Northimbrorum primitus primo, C. (not D., but omits North.)
\(^6\) in Deiram] Deiram sedicit, C.D.
\(^7\) in] om, C.D.
\(^8\) flumen] om. C. (not D.)
\(^9\) Tire, A.
\(^10\) dividebat, C.D.
\(^11\) flumine, B.
\(^12\) Tire, A.
\(^13\) predictum] ubi nunc est villa Sancti Johannis, C.D.
\(^14\) etiam...patet] C.D. thus: Quod autem austrina pars Albaniae, quae est infra Twedam et mare Scotiae predictum, continens Galwediam et Lodoveiam, tune pertinuit ad regnum Berniciorum et Pictis ibidem commorantibus patet, &c.
\(^15\) primo, C.D. The true reference is to lib. iii. c. 4.
\(^16\) ubi dicit quod] primo; sic scribentem, C.D.
\(^17\) Ninianus, A.
\(^19\) primo; primum, Gale.
\(^20\) gratiae] om. B.
\(^21\) vero] om. C.D.
\(^22\) gratiae] om. B.
\(^23\) Hec, C.D.
\(^24\) concurreunt, B.
\(^25\) regibus Anglis, B.
\(^26\) circiter, C.D.
\(^27\) Dehine, C.D.
\(^28\) Esbricto, B.
\(^29\) So A.D., Gale; Elle, E.
an to pe ryuere of Merce,\(^1\) and by norpe \(\text{pe Scotchishe see, pathatze \text{Forje in Scotisshe, Werid}^2\) in Brittisshe, \(\text{pe Scotchishe see in Engelishe.} \) Dis kyngdom of Norphabetmond was first i-dele in tweie provincies; pat oon was \(\text{pe soup side, and hete Deira;}\) and \(\text{pat ope} \) was \(\text{pe norp side, and hete Brenicia, as it were tweyne kyngdoms. And pe ryuer Tyne departed pese tweyne kyngdoms pat tyme. For} \(\text{pe kyngdom of Deyra tillede}^3\) and stre"te from \(\text{pe ryuer of Humber anon to pe ryuere of Tyne.} \) \(\text{Pe kyngdom of Brenicia tillede from Tyne}^4\) to \(\text{pe Scotchishe see.} \) And whan Pictes wonede perynne, as Beda seip, libro tertio, capitulo secundo, pat Ninian, pat holy man, conuertede men of \(\text{pe soup side.} \) Ida \(\text{pe kyng reigned [pere first and began to reigne]}^5\) \(\text{pe}^6\) of oure Lord fyue hundred and seuen and fowrty, so sel{\text{p}} Dyones.\(^7\) In Deyra reignede kyng \(\text{Elle, pe}^8\) of oure Lord fyue hundred and nynye and fowrty. \(\text{Pese tweyne kyngdoms were ope while, as hit is i-seide, y-dele bytwene tweye kynges, and somtyn} \) al hool vnder oo kyng, and durede as it were vnder twenty Englische kynges \(\text{pe hundred}^9\) \(\text{re}^9\) and oon and twenty. At \(\text{pe laste Osbrutus and Elle were i-slawe} \) in \(\text{pe nynpe}^9\) sel{\text{e} of here

\begin{quote}
of Merce; of the northe, the Scottes see, callede by the langage of theyme Forth, in Briteyne langage Werid, in Englische Scotishes. That realme of Northhumberlond was diuiede at the firste tymne in to ij. provinices, in to Deira at the sowthe, and in to Bernicia at the northe; whiche ij. reignede the water of Tyne diuiede in that tymne. For that realme callede Deira was extendede from the floode of Humbre vn to the water of Tyne. That other parte callede Bernicia was extendede from the water of Tyne to the Scottes see when the Pictes dwellede there, as hit is schewevede by Bede, libro tertio, capitulo secundo, where he seith that Ninian the holy man conuertede the sowutherne Pictes. Hida began to reigne firste in Bernicia, after Dionysius, the yere of grace \(\text{v}^\circ\) \(\text{xlvii}^\text{d};\) and kyngge Elle began to reigne in Deira, after Dionysius, in the yere of grace \(\text{v}^\circ\) \(\text{xlix}^\text{}:)\) whiche realmes continuede otherwhile vnder oon kyng, otherwhile vnder tweyne, as vnder xx\(\text{ii}^\text{}\) kynges as by eee. yere xx\(\text{iii}^\text{}\). At the laste, Osbrutus and Elle slëyne
\end{quote}

\footnotesize

\begin{enumerate}
\item Merce, a., Cx.
\item Weryd, a.; Werid, Cx.
\item and tillede, MS. Sentence varied in Cx.
\item So a. and Cx.; Tyme, MS.
\item Added from a. and Cx.
\item zere, a.
\item Dionys, a.
\item pe kyngj, a., Cx.
\item zere, a.
\end{enumerate}
Danos occisis, Northumbria vacavit sine rege octo annis. Extune Dani regnaverunt in ea triginta sex annis, usque ad monachiam regis Adelstani, qui sub anno Domini DCCCXXVI, subactis Danis, Wallanis et Scotis regibus, solus et primus monachiam Anglice tenuit. Quod autem fluvius de Mersee fuerat aliquotiens terminus et limes Merciorum et Northimbrorum patet dupliciter; primo per significationem vocabuli, nam Merese Anglice sonat terminans mare, quia disterminabat unum regnum ab alio. Item in chronicis Henrici et Alfridi habetur, quod rex Edwardus senior firmavit castrum apud Mancestre in terra Northimbrorum; sed constat quod urbs Mancestre vix distat tribus miliaribus a fluvio de Mersee.

---

1 terra, C.D
2 Et tune, Gale.
3 septem, B.
4 Athelstani, B.; Ethelstani, D.
5 Wallis, Gale.
6 Dania... Scotis] Scotorum et Wallanorum, C.D.
7 omnium, add. C.D. (with slight variations.)
8 a fluvio, B.
9 fuit, Gale.
10 fuerat aliquotiens] fuit, C.D.
11 Northanhunbromrorn, B.
12 dupliciter] om. D.
13 interpretationem, C.D.
14 nam] om. C.D.
15 Mersee, B.
16 quod, E.
17 quia... alio] Latine, C.D.
18 Henrici de Huntynghdon, C.D; Henre et Alfre, A.
19 in terra] om. B.
20 Northanhumbrorn, B.
21 Mancestre, B., Gale; Mancestre, D.
22 flumine, A.B.
23 The latter part of the sentence slightly altered in C.D., which add ejus castri vestigia adhuc exstant.
kyngdom; pe Danes slowe hem; and Norphumberlond was voyde wi)ute kyng ei)te 3ere. Panne afterward pe Danes reigned in Norphumberlond sixe and pritty 3ere anoon to pe oonynge 1 of pe kyngdome of Athelstone; he made sugett pe 2 kynges Danys and Scottische and Walsche, and reigned first al on in Engelond, and helde pe kyngdom of Engelond hool and al oon kyngdom. Pat was pe 3ere of oure Lorde ey)te hundred and seene and twenty. Pat ryuer of Mercie 3 was somtyme pe marke and mere bytwene pe kyngdom of Mercia and pe kyngdom of Norphumberlond. Pat may be i-schewed in tweie maneres; firste by pe propurte of pis word Mersee, pat is as moche to mene, as a se 4 pat is a bound and a mere; for he departep oon kyngdom from anoper. Also it is i-write in cronikes of Henry and of Alfrede, pat kyng Edward pe Eldere fastened a castel at Mamcestre 5 in Norphumberlond; but pat citee Mamcestre is from pe ryuer of Mersee scarsliche pre myle.

by Danes in the ixthe year of their reign, Norphumbrelonde was vacante a kynge viijthe yeres. And from that tyme the Danes reignede in hit xxyvjii yeres, vn to the monarchy off kyng Athelstan, whiche obtenede the monar)hye of all Englonde in the yere of our Lorde viijc xxyvij., subdueue the kynges of Danes, of Wales, and of Scottes. That the water of Mersee was somme tyme the terme other the merke of the marches of Norphumbrelonde, hit may be schewed by ij. maneres; firste by the significacion of the name, for Mersee in Englsche sowndethe as a see terminatiue, for hit distemenute oon realme from an other. Also hit is hade in the cronicles of Henricus and Alfride, that kyng Edwarde the senior sette the castelle at Mamcestre in the londe of Norphumbrelonde, whiche cite is from the water of Mersee but by iiij. myles.
CAP. LII.

De episcopatibus et sedibus.

Alfridus. Sedes archiepiscoporum in Britannia tres fuerunt tempore Lucii, regis Britonum Christiani primi; videlicet apud Londoniam; apud Eboracum; apud Caerusc, Urbem Legionum in Glamorgantia; quibus tunc subjecti fuerant xxviii. episcopi, flamines tunc vocati; videlicet Londoniensii metropolitanus Cornubia et tota Loegria usque ad flumen Humber; Eboracensi vero tota terra Northimbrana ab arcu Humber fluminis cum tota Albania; Urbi Legionum subjacuit tota Cambria, septem tunc episcopis, nunc vero quatuor suffraganeis insignita, quam flumen Sabrine tunc secernebat a Loegria. Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro primo. Sed temporibus Saxonum, quamvis beatus Gregorius privilegium archiepiscopale Londoniae concesserit, Augustinus tamen ab eo missus, sedulitate hospitis sui regis

1 Alfridus] om. B.
2 in Britannica after fuerunt in B.
3 apud] om. B.
4 Sentence altered and transposed in C.D.
5 erant, C.D.
6 reliqua parte Albaniae, C.D.
7 autem, C.; an erasure in D.
8 tunc] om. C.D.
9 de Pontificibus] om. C.D.
10 tempore, C.D.
11 temporibus Saxonum] om. B.
12 licet, C.D.
13 Londoniae, Gale.
14 concesserat, C.D.
15 ab eo missus] om. C.D.
De episcopatibus et sedibus. Capitolium quinquagesimum secundum.

Alfridis. Lucius was the first Cristene kyng of Britons. In his tyme were pre archebisschoppes sees in Bretayne; oon was at Londoun; anoper at York; and pe pridde at Caerrusk, pe Cite of Legiouns in Glomorgan. Dat citee hatte now Caerleon. To pe archebisschoppes sees were suget eythe and twenti bisschoppis, and were i-cleped flamynees. To pe archebisschoppes see of Londoun was sugett Cornwaile and al myddel Engelond anon to Humber; to 2ork al Norphumberlond from pe bowe of Humber wip all Scotlond; to Caerleon all Wales, pere were in Wales seuene bischoppes, and now beep but foure. Po Seuarme departe Engelond and Wales. Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro primo. But in Saxones tyme, pey Seint Gregorie hadde i-graunted Londoun the priuilege of pe archebisshoppes see, neuertheles Seynt Austyn pat was i-sent in to Engelond by Seint Gregorie turnede pe archebisschoppes see out of Londoun vnto Caunterbury, after Seint Gregories day

Of the byschoperyches and seeses. Capitolium quinquagesimum secundum.

Alfridis. There were three sees of archebyschoppes in Englonde in the tyme of Lucius, kyng of Britayne, firste kyng y-baptizede, that is to say, at London, at Yorke, and at Caerhurry, the Cite of Legiones in Glomorgan; to whom xxviiij bischoppes were subiecte, callede flamynees. And to the metropolitan of London alle the entre of Cornewaile and alle Englonde was subiecte vn to the floode of Hembre. Alle Northumbrelonde, from the water of Humbre, with alle Scottelande, was subiecte to tharechybishop of Yorke; and alle Wales was subiecte to the byschoppe of the Cite of Legiones, where that tyme were vij. bischoppes, and now Wales is made noyble with iiij. suffraganes, whom the floode of Seuerne dividede that tyme from Englonde. Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro primo. But thaw;he blessedede Gregory grawntede thro his priuilege the seeet of tharebisschopp to be at London; neuertheles Seynte Austyn, sende from hym in to Englond, after the dethe of Blesseede Gregory caused tharebisschopp seeet to be removede from London to Canterbery, thro helpe of

---

1 the first kyng criuend of the Brytons, Cx.; who has a few other trivial alterations below.
2 Caerrusk, a.
3 Glamorgan, a., Cx.
4 departed, Cx.
5 Added from a.
6 into, a.
7 Doubtless an error for Caerhuse.
Ethelberti, civiumque Cantuariensis caritate captus, metropolitanam\(^1\) sedem\(^2\) post mortem Gregorii ad Cantuariam transtulit, ubi usque hodie permansit; nisi quod medio tempore Offa rex Merciorum, Cantuari\(^{3}\) insensus,\(^{4}\) honorem primatus ab eis tuliit, et Lichfeldensem episcopum Aldulphum, annuente Adriano papa numeribus fortassis inclinato, archiepiscopali pallio pro tempore suo insignivit.\(^{5}\) Quod tamen\(^{6}\) sub Kenulpho rege restitutum est.\(^{7}\) Eboracensis honor\(^{8}\) ab initio usque hodie ibidem duravit, quamvis Albania processu temporis ab ejus subjectione se subtraxerit.\(^{9}\) Giralddus, \textit{in} \textit{Itinerario, libro secundo}.\(^{10}\) Ab Urbe autem Legionum usque ad Meneviam, quae est ad occidentem Demetiae supra Hibernicum\(^{12}\) mare sita, translata est sedes metropolitana, tempore\(^{13}\) Sancti David sub\(^{14}\) Arthuro rege; a cujus tempore usque ad Sampsonem archiepiscopum, sederunt xxiiij. archiepiscopi. Tandem ingruente per Cambriam flava peste, quam ictericiam vocant, Sampson episcopus\(^{15}\)

---

1. \textit{metropolitanatum}, B.  
2. \textit{sedem} om. B.; \textit{tamen}, A.  
3. \textit{Cantuar}, B.  
4. \textit{infestus}, C.D.; \textit{offensus}, B.  
6. \textit{tandem}, C.D.  
7. \textit{Cantuaria}, add. C.D.  
8. \textit{vero honor}, D.  
10. \textit{in}] Added from B. and Gale. The reference is to lib. ii. e. 1. Trevisa's reference is incorrect.  
11. C.D. omit reference, and \textit{autem}.  
12. \textit{Hiberniae}, C.D.  
13. \textit{sub tempore}, A.  
14. \textit{ab}, D.  
15. \textit{archiepiscopus}, C. (not D.)
at pe prayer of kyng Athelberd and pe\textsuperscript{1} cizezens and burgeys\textsuperscript{2} of Cauterbury. \textit{Depe pe erchebishopoppes see hap endured\textsuperscript{3} forto\textsuperscript{4} now. \textit{Sanct pat in pe mene tyme Ofa, kyng of Mercia, was wroop wip men of Cauterbury, and byname hem pat worschippe, and worschipped Aldulf, bishopp of Lichefeld, wip pe archebishopoppes pal by assent of Adrian pe pope vpon cans by 3iftes i-sent. Neuerpeles vnder Kenulph pe kyng it was restored to Cauterbury a\textsuperscript{2}zen. Pe worschippe of pe see of York hap i-dured pere alwey and dureth zit; pey Scotlond be wipdrawe from his subieccion\textsuperscript{5} by passyng of tyme. \textit{Giraldus in Itin., libro primo.} Pe archebishopoppis see was i-torned out of Caerleon in to Meneuia, pat is in pe west side of Demecia, vpon pe Irische see, in Seint Dauyes\textsuperscript{6} tyme vnder kyng Arthur.\textsuperscript{7} From \textit{Seint Dauiyes} tyme to Sampson pe archebishopoppes tyme were in Meneuia archebishopoppis pre and twenty. Afterward fel a pestilence in to al Wales of pe \textit{3elayowe yuel}\textsuperscript{8} pat is i-teleped pe inundys, and \textit{pan} Sampson pe archebishop took wip hym pe palle, and wente

kyinge Ethelberhte and of the citezyns of Cauterbury, where hit remanet to this tyme presente. But that a certeyn season folowenge, kyinge Ofa, contrarius to men of Cauterbury, removede the honor of the primate from theym, thoro the privylege graunted by Adrian the pope, vn to the chirche of Lichefeld, as for his tyme; whiche honor was restorede ageyne in the tyme of kyng Kenulphus. The honor of the chirche off Yorke hathe contynuede there from the begynnenge of hit vn to this tyme presente; that the Scottelonde withdrawede hit from the subieccion of hit in processe of tyme. \textit{Giraldus in Itinerario, libro secundo.} The secte of the metropolitian was translate from the Cite of Legiones vn to Meneuia, at the weste of Sowthe Wales, sette on the see of Yrconde, in the tyme of Seyne Dauid, vnder kyng Arhur; from the tyme of whom vn to the tyme of Sampson the bishopp xij\textsuperscript{9} archebishopoppes were pe. At the lasse an infirmitie reignenge in Wales, whiche was callede the iawndres, Sampson the bishopp, takenge with hym the palle, wente

1 [he] om. a., Cx.
2 burgesses, Cx.
3 i-dured, a.; dured, Cx.
4 vnte, Cx.
5 So Cx; suggestion, MS.
6 Dauidis, Cx. (twice).

\textit{TREVISA.}

\textit{MS. HARL. 2261.}

\textit{VOL. II.}

7 MS. (not Cx.) adds by a clerical error (see below), Meneuia now hatte, and no more.
8 So a. and Cx.; form, MS.
9 vel, a.
sumpto secur¹ pallio Armorican Britanniam adiit, ac sedi² Dolensi præsedid; a quo tempore³ usque ad dies⁴ Henrici primi Anglie⁵ regis sederunt apud Meneviam, que Sancti David dicitur, xxi. episcopi vel propter ignaviam vel propter⁶ paupertatem pallio carentes; semper tamen usque tunc episcopi Walliae a Menevensi fuerunt consecrati, et ipse similiter ab aliis Walliae episcopis tanquam a suffraganeis fuerat consecratus, nulla penitus⁷ alteri ecclesiae facta professione vel subjectione. Cæteri vero succedentes episcopi, regio ur gente mandato, Cantuariae consecrationem accipiunt;⁸ in eujus investiture et subjectionis signum Bonefacius archiepiscopus⁹ Cantuariensis, tempore Henrici secundi¹⁰ crucis legatione fungens, in singulis ecclesiis cathedralibus Cambriae primus omnium Cantuariensium archiepiscoporum¹¹ missam solemniter celebravit. Ranulphus.¹²

Sed¹³ hodie in tota Anglia solummodo duo sunt primates Cantuariensis et Eboracensis; Cantuariensis¹⁴ tredecim in Anglia et quatuor in Wallia episcopi sunt subjecti; Eboracensis vero duo duotaxat habet¹⁵ suffraganeos,
in to Bretayne Armorica,¹ pe oper Bretayne, and was
bisshop of Dolensis. From pat tyne to pe firste kyng
Henries tyne kyng of Englonde were at Mencinia, pat
hatte Scint Dauryes, oon and twenty bisschoppes alle wip
oute palle, whepher it were for vnkunnynge oper for pouert.
Neuerpeles² alwey forto pat tyne pe bisschoppes of Wales
were i-sacred of pe bisshop of Mencinia of Scint Dauryes;
and pe bisshop of Mencinia was i-sacred of pe bisschoppes
of Wales³ as of his owne suffragans,⁴ and made non pro-
fession non oper subscripIan ⁵ to non oper chirche. Ope.
bishoppe pat come afterward were i-sacred at Caunterbury
by compellynge of pe kynges heste. In tokenyng ⁶ of pat
sacrynge and subscripIan Bonefas, archebishop of Caunter-
bury, pat was legat of pe croys, song in euery cathedral
chirche of Wales, solempneliche a masse. He was pe
firste archebishop of Caunterbury pat so dede in Wales,
and pat was i-do in pe secounde kyng Henries tyne. R. But
now beep but tweie primates in al Englonde, of Caunterbury,
and of York. To pat ⁷ primat of Caunterbury
beep sugette prittene bisschoppes in Englonde, and four in
Wales. Pe primat of York hap but tweie suffragans in
to Bretayne Armorique, from whiche tyne vn to the daies
of kyng Henry the first, kyng of Englonde of that name,
xxi⁵ bischoppes kepede residence at Mencinia, wontenge a
palle, other for slavethe, other for pouert. Neuertheles
vn to that tyne the bisschoppes of Wales were wonte to be
consecrate of the bisshop of Mencinia, whiche is callede
Seynte David, and that bisshop of other suffragans of
Wales, noo professiun other subscripcion made to eny other
chirche. But other bischoppes succedenge receyvbye con-
scripcion of the bisscop of Canterbury, thre the com-
mandemente of the kyng. In the inuestiture of whom,
in a signe of subscripIan, Boneficius, archebishop of Can-
terbury, in the tyne of kyng Henrye secunde, firste of
alle bisschoppes of Caunterbury songe masse solenly in
euery cathedrale chirche of Wales. R. But now in this
tyne there be only ij. primates in Englonde, whiche be of
Caunterbury and of Yorke. Caunterbery hathe xiiij. bi-
schoppes in Englonde subiecte to hit, and iiiij. bisschoppes in
Wales. And Yorke hathe but ij. suffraganes subiecte to

¹ Armonica, MS.; Armonyca, Cx.
² Notheles, a.; Notheles, Cx.
³ Wales were, MS. (not Cx.)
⁴ suffragans, Cx.; suffragés, MS.
⁵ So Cx.; suggestiona, MS., and so below (not Cx.)
⁶ tokyn, a., Cx.
⁷ pe, a., Cx.
De episcopis australibus.

scilicet Caerduliensem\(^1\) et Dunelmensem. De quorum omnium successivis sedium\(^2\) institutionibus hic per ordinem aliqua sunt tangenda; ubi est advertendum\(^3\) quod in primitiva Anglorum ecclesia præsules in locis humilibus, tanquam\(^4\) contemplationi et devotioni\(^5\) aptis,\(^6\) sedes suas statuerunt. Sed tempore Willelmi Conquestoris\(^7\) ex canonum decreto edictum est, ut episcopi\(^8\) de villulis ad urbes transirent.\(^9\) Unde factum est ut Dorcestrensis sedes\(^10\) ad Lincolniam migraret, Lichefeldensis\(^11\) ad Cestriam, Thedfordensis\(^12\) ad Northwycum,\(^13\) Shireburnensis\(^14\) ad Sarum,\(^15\) Wellensis ad Bathoniam,\(^16\) Cornubiensis ad Excestriam,\(^17\) Selesiensis\(^18\) ad Cicestriam.

Roffensis itaque presul, qui parochiam non habet, sed capellanus est archiepiscopi Cantuariensis, ab initio sine institutionis per Cantuariensem Augustinum\(^19\) factæ usque ad dies nostros nusquam sedem mutavit; Cicestrensis vero, qui solis Southsaxonibus et\(^20\) Vectæ

---

\(^{1}\) Caerdiliensem, Gale.
\(^{2}\) Slightly altered in C.D.
\(^{3}\) ubi . . . advertendum] Advertendum est tamen ad notitiam dicendorum, C.D.
\(^{4}\) aptis] congruis, C.D.
\(^{5}\) Willelmi Conquestoris] regis Willelmi primi, C.D.
\(^{6}\) episcopi] sedes episcoporum, C.D.
\(^{7}\) migrarent, C.D.

\(^{10}\) sedes] om. C.D., having Dorcestre.
\(^{11}\) Lichefeldæ, D.
\(^{12}\) Thetford, A.; Thedforde, D.
\(^{13}\) Norwicum, B., Gale.; Norwicum, Remesburiensis et, C.D.
\(^{14}\) Shirburne, A.; Remesburiensis et Schireburn, C.D.
\(^{15}\) Salesburiam, C.D.
\(^{16}\) Cridiensis et, add. C.D.
\(^{17}\) So A.B.D., Gale; Excestram, E.
\(^{18}\) Celesiensis, B.; Silesiensis, D.
\(^{19}\) Aug. Cant., B.
\(^{20}\) et] om. B.
Engeloud, pat bee pë bisshoppis of Caerlile and of Duram. Of alle pë[se] 1 sees and of chaunyng of here places now a rewë schal somewhat 2 be schewed: here take hede, pat in pë bygyynyng of holy chireche in Engeloud bisshoppes ordyned hire sees in lowe places and symple, pat were couenable for contemplacion, for bedes, 3 and deuocioun, but in William Conquerours tyme by dome of lawe canoun it was i-ordyned pat bisshoppes schulde come out of smal townes in to grete citees. Perfore it was pat pë see of Dorcheste was i-chaunged to Lynoelne, Lichefeld to Chestre, Thedford to Norýchiche, Shirburne to Salisbury, Welles to Bathe, Cortawayle to Excetre, and Selesey to Chychestre. De episcopis australibus. Pë bisshopp [of Roncheste] 4 hâp non persche 5 chireche, but he is pë archebisshoppes chapelayn of Canterbury. Seppe pat 6 pë? see was first i-ordyned by Seint Austyn, archebishop of Canterbury, 3it hiderto hit chaunged neure his place. 8 Chichestre hâp vnder hym onliche Soupsex and the Ile of Wight, and

it oonly, whiche be suffraganes of Carduliense and of Durem, of the successive institucions of whom somme thynges ar to be seide here by ordre. Where fore hit is to be aduer- tede that bisshoppes, in the primitve chireche of Englonde, were wonte to have thiere sectes in meke places, apie to contemplacion and deuocioun, but hit was commaundede by a decrete of canon, in the tyme of William Conquerour, that the sectes of bisshoppes scholde be translate from townes to cites. Where hit was hade that the sete of Dorcheste was chaungede to Lynoelne, and of Lichefelde to Chestre, of Tedforde to Norwiche, of Shirburne to Excetre, of Selience to Chichestre. Of the bishoppes of the Southe. 5 The bisshopp of Rocheestre, whiche hathe noo persche, but [is] chapelayn of tharchebishop of Cantebury, from the begynenge of the institucion made by Seynte Austyn bishop of Canterbury, chaungede not the sete of hit vn to oure daies. The bisshopp of Chichestre, whiche hathe gonne- 6 a. 7. 1. b. naile oonly of the Sowthe Saxones and the yle of Wiȝhte,

---

1 pëse, a., those, Cx.
2 sumwhat schal, a.
3 prayers, Cx., who varies the sentence.
4 Added from a. and Cx.
5 parysche, a. and Cx., who omits chireche.
6 hit om. Cx.

---

1 pë] om. a.
2 Sentence varied in Cx.
3 This is wrongly numbered Cap. 52 in Harl. MS.; the division of the chapter having being already made conformably to the Latin text.
insulae prae sidet, primo apud Selysei, 1 quod sonat 2 insula vituli marini, tempore Theodori archiepiscopi sedem habuit, et a primo Wylfri do 3 usque ad ultimo Stigandum trecentis triginta tribus annis sub viginti episcopis ibidem duravit. Tandem Stigandus, edicto regis Willelmi 4 Conquestoris, sedem 5 Seleise 6 transtulit ad Cicerestriam. 7

CAP. LIII.

De episcopis occidentalibus.

Willelmus. 8 Memorandum est quod tota 9 West saxonica provincia unicum ab initio usque adventum 10 Theodori habuit episcopum. 11 Primus autem Birinus, largiente rege Westsaxonum Kyngislo 12 sedem statuit apud Dorcestriam, 13 villam 14 humilem, ad austrum Oxonie juxta Walingford, 15 inter collapsus 16 duorum fluminum Thamisie et Thame 17 sitam. Byrino autem defuncto, Kenwalcus 18 rex 19 statuit sedem 20 apud Wyntoniam; sicut et pater suus 21 aliquando 22 pro posuerat, ubi Agil bertus 23 natione Gallus 24 presedit, primus toti provincie Westsaxonice. 25 Ex quo tempore urbs et sedes Doro-

---

1 Silesey, B.; Seise, A.; Celezie, D.
2 interpretatur, C.D.
3 Wilfrido, B., Gale.
4 Willelmi regis, B.
5 Added from A.C.D., Gale.
6 Seleise, B.
7 So D., Gale; Cicerestam, A.E.
8 Willelma, om. C.D.
9 Memorandum . . . . tota] Tota autem, C.D.
10 ad adventum, B., Gale.
11 antistitem, C.D.
12 Kingisulo, A.B.; Kingislo, Gale; Kingulfus, D.
13 So Gale; Dorcestram, A.E.; Dorcestria, B., Gale.
14 villam quidem, D.
15 juxta Walingford] om. C.D.; Walingforth, A.
16 statuit . . . . collapsus] lapsus, B.
17 Yser, Gale.
18 Kenwalcus, B.; Kenewalcus, D.
19 rex] om. B.; Westsaxonum, ins. D.
20 sedem statuit, B.
21 pater suus Kingulfus, D.
22 aliquando fecisse, B., Gale.
23 Gilbertus, Gale.
24 Gallicus, B.
25 Sentence altered and slightly abbreviated in C.D.
hadde his see first in Seleseie in Theodor pe archebishoppes tyme. And pe see1 durede pere pre honderd 3ere and pre and pritty vnder tweenty bisshoppes from pe firste Wilfrede to pe laste Stigande; [but at pe laste Stygand]2 at pe heste of kyng William Conquerour chaunged pe se from Seleseye to Chichestre.

De episcopis occidentalibus. Capitulum quinquagesimum tertium.

Willelmus. Haue mynde pat alle pe prowince of West-saxon hadde alwey oon bischop from pe bygynnynge anoon to Theodores comynge.3 By graunt of Kingislus,4 kyng of West Saxon, pe firste Birinus ordeyned a cee at Dorcheestre, pat is a symple toun by soupe Oxenforde by sides Walyngforde, bytwene pe falnynge to gidres of Temse and of Tame. Whan Birinus was deed, Konwalkus pe kyng ordeyned a see at Wynchestre, as his fader hadde i-po3.5 Pere Gilbert,6 a Frensche man, was first bishopp of al pe prowince of West-saxon. From pat tyme pe7 citie and pe see of Dorcheestre kepede somme tyme residence at Selesey, in the tyme of MS. Haul Theodorus tharchebischop, where hit contynuede vnder xxth bischoppes from the firste, Wilfridus, vn to the laste, Stigandus, by cee.xxxiijth yere. At the laste Stigandus, thro the commandement of William Conqueroure, did translate that seete of Seleseye to Chichestre.

Of the bischoppes of the weste. Capitulum quinquagesimum tertium.

Hit is to be hade in memory that alle the prowince of Weste Saxones had oon bischop from pe begynnenge vn to the tyme of Theodorus. Birinus, the firste bischop in that prowince, sette the seete at Dorchestr, a meke place, thro the graunte of Kyngelfus, kyng of Weste Saxones; whiche seete was at the sowthe of Oxforde, nye to Walyngefore, betwene the metenge of ij. floodes, Tham and Yce. That byschop Byryne dedde, Kewacus kyng ordeyned that seete to be at Wynchestre, lyke as his fader proposede to have doen somme tyme, where Agilbertus, borne in Franmme, hadde gouernaile firste on alle the prowince of Weste Saxones. From whiche tyme the cite and seete of Dor-

---

1 cee, a.
2 Added from a. (not in Cx.); but pat has been changed to at.
3 time, Cx.
4 kyng Islo, MS., Cx.
5 purposed, Cx.
6 Agilbert, Cx.
7 pat pe, MS.; not a. or Cx.
cestriensis pertinuit ad provinciam Merciorum, eo quod urbs illa sita sit infra Thamisiam, qui fluvis distemnнат Mercios ad Westsaxonibus. Post Agilbertum de Wyntonia expulsam præsedit Wyne, natione Anglus; a quo putant quidam urbem Wyntoniae denominatam for Wynecestria, quasi Cestria, id est, urbs Wynæ. Ipso tandem expulso, successit Leutherius nepos Agilberti predicti; post quem Hedda aliquandiu sedem tenuit. Quo defuncto, Theodorus archiepiscopus duos præsules ad provinciam Westsaxonum ordinavit; Danielem apud Wentam, cui subjecti fuerant duo pagi Southrey et Southamphire; Aldelmum quoque ad sedem Shireburne ordinavit, cui tunc subjacerunt sex pagi, Barrocensis, Wyltonensis, Somer-setensis, Dorsetensis, Dovoniensis et Cornubiensis. Deinde, tempore Edwardi senioris ad has duas additae
perray and Southampshire; Aldelyn 8 at Schireborne, to hym were sugettes sixe contrayes, Barrokschire, Wiltschire, Somerse, Dorsete, Deuenschire, and Cornwayle. *Trevisa.*

Afterward me 11 semep by pis lawe 12 pat Westsaxon conteyned Souperay, Southampshire, Barrokschire, Wiltschire, Somerse, Dorsete, Deuenschire, and Cornwayle. 13 *Wilhelmus.* Afterward in elder Edwardes tyme to pe[s]e 14 tweye chestre pertenede to the province of the Marches, in so moche that cite was sette within Thamys, whiche floode departede the Marches from the Weste Saxones. And after Agilberte expulsede from Wynchestre, Wyne, a Englysche man, was byschop þer, of whom somme men frawe that cite to have taken name, for Wynchestre sownde as the cite of Wyne. Whiche expulsed at the laste, Leutherius, neveue to the forseide Agilberte, succeedede þer, after whom Hedea succeedede. Whiche dedde, Theodoras archebischop ordeynede to that province of Weste Saxones ij. byschoppes, ordeynenge Daniel, byschop at Wynchestre, to whom ij. suntrees were subiecte, Sowtherey and Sowthampshires. And Aldelme at the seete of Schirbourn, to whom ij. suntrees were subiecte, Barrokschire, Wiltonshire, Somerse, Dorsete, Deuenschire, and Cornewaille. Vn to whiche ij. sectes other iij. sectes were addede in f. 72. a. the tyme [of] Edward the senior, kynge of Englonde,

1 Agilbert, Cx.
2 Wyne, a.
3 Sentence varied in Cx.
4 when som, MS. (first hand.)
5 þe, a., Cx.
6 i-put, a.
7 sugett, a.
8 Adelin, Cx.
9 Barkshire, Cx.
10 Reference added from Cx.
11 it, a.
12 sawe, a.; it seemeth by this that.
13 Names slightly varied in Cx.
14 þese, a., Cx.
sunt aliae tres edicto Formosi papae; videlicet Welloensis, cui subjacuit Someresete; Cridiensis, cui subjacuit Dovonia; et Cornubiensis, apud Sanctum Petrcolum seu Sanctum Germanum, cui subjacuit Cornubia. Nee multo post sexta sedes posita apud Ramysbury, cui subjacuit pagus Wiltonensis. Postremo edicto Willelmi regis Conquastoris, omnes haec sedes, excepta Wyntonia, de viculis ad urbes sunt translatae; nam Shireburne et Ramesbury transierunt ad Saresbury, cui usque hodie subjacent pagus Barocensis, Wyltonensis et Dorsetensis provinciae; Wellensis quoque sedes transiti ad Bathoniain, cui usque hodie pagus subjacet de Someretec, et Cornubiensis migraverunt ad Excestriam; subjacent 22 Dovonia et Cornubia.

CAP. LIV.

De orientalibus episcopis. 3

Willelmus. 24 Observatum est quod 25 Estsaxones ab initio usque modo semper paruerunt ab episcopo, C.D. 11 et subjacet, A.B.
12 subjacent, A.B.
De orientalibus episcopis, B.
Willehnsus] om. C.D.
Observatum...quod] om. C.D.
West Saxones, B.
semper] om. A.
peruerunt, B.
episcopo, C.D.
De orientalibus episcopis. Capitulum quinquagesimum quartum.

Willelmus. 8 Hit is i-knowe pat pe Estsaxons alwey from pe bygyynnyge for to now were sogettis 9 to pe bisshop of Londoun. But pe province of Est Angles, pat conteyneb

tho the precepte of Formosus the pope, that is to say, at Welles, to whom Somerset was subiecte; of Criddense, to whom Deuenschire was subiecte; and of Cornubience, at Seynte Patroclus other Germanus, to whom alle Cornewaile was subiecte. And within a shorte space folowenge the vieth seete was at Ramysbury, to whom Wiltshire was subiecte. At the laste alle these seetes were remouede from townes to cites, tho commandemente of William Conqueroure, the seete of Wynchestre excepte. For the seetes of Shirborne and of Ramysbury were chaunged to Salisbury, to whom Barokshire, Wiltshire, and the provinces of Dorsette be subiecte. And the seete of Welles was chaunged to Bathe, to whom Somerset is subiecte. The seetes of Criddence and of Cornubience were remouede to Excestre, to whom Deuenschire and Cornewaile be subiecte.

Capitulum quinquagesimum quartum.

Hit is to be attended that the Este Saxones were obediente from the begyynenge vn to this tyme presente to the bishop of London. But a byschop, Felix by name,
Northfolk et Southfolc, 1 præfuit primo 2 apud urbem Domik 3 unicus episcopus Felix quidam Burgundus septendecim annis. Post quem Thomas quinque annis. Post quem Bonefacius septendecim 4 annis. Deinde Bisi per Theodorum institutus, 5 quousque prospera 6 valetudo permetteret, provinciam solus rexit. Post quem duo episcopi, per centum quadraginta tres annos, usque ad tempora Egberti, regis Westsaxonum, 7 provinciam illam rererunt; unus apud Domuc, 8 alter apud 9 Elinham. 10 Post dies 11 tamen Ludcani regis Merciorum mansit tantum una sedes apud Elinham, 12 usque ad quintum annum Willemi Conquestoris; quando Herfastus vicesimus tertius orientalium episcopus sedem suam Helhamensem 13 transtulit ad Thedfordiam. 11 At successor ejus Herebertus Losinga, 15 licentia regis Willemi 16 Rufi, sedem Thedfordensem transtulit ad 17 Norwicium; sedem autem Heliensem, 18 quae luic de prope 19 est, rex Henricus primus nono regni sui anno instituit, subjecta ad hoc 20 provincia Cantebrugge, 21 quae prius fuerat pars episcopatus Lincolniensis; in cujus rei compensationem dedit Henricus rex 22 episcopo Lincolniensi regiam urbem suam 23 de Spaldyng. 24

1 Northfolchiam et Southfolch in w
D.
2 primus, C. (not D.)
3 Donnic, A.C.; Donwie, B.;
4 quindeci, C. (not D.)
5 instructus, C.D.
6 valitudo prospera, B.
7 Est saxonom, Gale.
8 Donniac, A.C., Gale; Donwie,
9 apud, added from D., Gale.
10 Elinham, B.D.
11 Postex, B.
12 Elinham, B.D.
13 Elnaunhensem, A.B., Gale;
Elinhammensem, D.
14 Tedford, Gale.
15 Losinga] om. C.D.
16 Willemi regis, B.
17 ad] om. B.
18 Eliensem, A.B.
19 hie de prope] Lincolniensi, B.;
hue prope, A.
20 hoc, D.
21 Cantebrigia, D.
22 rer] om. C. (not D.)
23 snum] om. C.D.
24 Spaldwik, B.D.
Norfoly and Souffolke, hadde oon bisshope at Deunwiche. 1 Pe bisshope heet Felix, and was of Burgoyne; and was bisshope sexcentene 3ere. After hym Thomas was bisshope fyue 3ere. After hym Bonefas ² sexcentene ³ere. Panne Besy afterward was i-ordeyned by Theodorus, and rulede pe pronoune, while he mytte endure by hym selue allone. After hym anon to Egberthus tyme, kyng of Westsaxonys, an hondred and fyve and forty ³ere.¹² tweie bisshoppes rulede pat pronoune, oon at Donwyke and anoher at Elyngham.⁵ Nopelus after Ludceans tyme, kyng of Mercia, lefte and was onliche⁶ oon seet at Elyngham anon to pe fift 3ere of William Conquerour, whan Herfastus pe pridde and twenty bisshope of Esterne ⁷ chaungede pe ⁸ see from [Elingham to]⁹ Theteford, [and his successor Herebetus Losinga chaungede pe see from Theteford]¹⁰ into Norpwhiche, by leue of kyng William pe Rede. [Pe]¹⁰ see of Ely, pat is nygh perio, pe firste kyng Henry ordeyned pe nynpe 3ere of his reignyng, and made suget perio Cantebriggeshire, pat was raper¹¹ a party of pe bisshoprichie of Lyncolne. And for quytyng pe rofe he ʒaf to pe bisshope of Lyncolne a real ettee pat hatte¹² Spaldynghe.

Borne in Burgouyan, was firste bisshope ad Domnic, a cite of the pronoune of Este Englishe men by xvij. yere; after whom Thomas was v. yere, after hym Bonefaeus xvij. yere; after whom Besy, institute by Theodorus, gouernede that pronoune allone while he was in heale. After whom ij. byshchopes reignede cxliij yere, gouerneng the pronoune vn to the tymes of Egberthe, kyng of Weste Saxones, oon of theym at Domnic, that other at Elyngham, vn to the yθ yere of William Conquerour, when Herfastus, the xxijth⁶ bisshope of the estede, di translate the secte of Hely to Tedforde. And Herebertus Losinga, his successor, remonede that secte from Tedforde to Norwich, thoro licence of William Rufus. Kyng Henry the firste ordeynede that secte of Hely the ixth⁶ yere of his reign, subdued to hit the pronoune of Cantebrighe, which perteneode a fore that tyme to the byshchopryche of Lincolne; in a recompensacion per of he ʒafe to the bisshope of Lincolne the towne of Spaldenge.

¹ Donwyke, a., Cx.
² Bonefaeus, Cx.
³ So a.; xvij., MS.
⁴ Added from the Latin text; absent also in Cx.
⁵ The last clause as in Cx.; MS. and a. have repetitions by clerical error from above.
⁶ Probably we should read: was left onliche. Cx. agrees with text.
⁷ pe Estrene, a., Cx.
⁸ his, a.
⁹ Added from a. (not in Cx.).
¹⁰ pe added from a. and Cx.
¹¹ to fore, Cx.
¹² a good town callipl. Cx.

MS. HARL. 2261.
De episcopis Merciorum. 1

Willelmus. 2 Notandum est hic 3 solerter, quod 4 sicut Merciorum imperium pro tempore fuerat semper amplissimum, ita et in plures episcopatus divisionem; præsertim animositatem regis Offœ, qui quadraginta annis imperans Merciis, transitul ad Lichelfeldiam honorem Cantuaricæ 5 metropolitanum, annuente ad hoc 6 papa Adriano. 7 Igitur provinciæ Merciorum et Lindisfarorum primis annis Christianitatis, tempore regis Wolfarii, 8 unicus fuit episcopus apud Lichelfeldiam; Dyyna 9 primus, Celath secundus, ambo Scoti. 10 Post quos tertius Trunhere, 11 quartus Jarumannus, 12 quintus Ceddæ. Sed tempore 13 Etheldredi 14 fratris Wolfarii, 15 Ceddæ mortuo, substituit Theodorus archiepiscopus 16 Wynfriidum diaconum 17 Ceddæ; quem tamen postmodum ratione cujusdam inobedientiae deposit, substituens 18 Sexwulfum 19 abbatem de Medehamstede, 20 quod nunc de Burgo dicitur. 21 Sed post quartum 22 Sexwulf annum ordinavit Theodorus provinciæ Merciorum.

1 seu Mediterraneorum, add. C.D.
2 Willelmus] om. C.D.
3 hic] quod, A.
4 Notandum...quod] om. C.D.
5 Cantuaricæ] om. C.D.
6 ad hoc] om. C.D.
7 C.D. add—"eo quod Cantuaritis "infestus fuerat quos et vastaverat."
The whole passage is slightly transposed in these MSS.
8 Wiferi, B.; Wifari, A.D.
9 Duina, A.B.D., Gale.
10 ambo Scoti] Arabo Scottus, C. (not D.); ambo Scottici, A.
11 Trunhere, A.D., Gale.
12 Jarumannus, B.
13 regis, add. C.D.
14 Etheldredi, B.D., Gale.
15 Wiferi, B.D., Gale; Wiferi, A.
16 archipresul, C.D.
17 diaconum] qui quondam diaconus fuerat, C.D.
18 substituens] coque deposito substituit Theodorus, C.D.
19 Sexwelfi, D. (which has also Medehamstede), and so below.
20 Medehamstede, D.
21 quod est de burgo, C.D.
22 Post quartum vero, C.D.
De episcopis Merciorum.  Capitulum quinquagesimun quintum.

Willelmus.  Here take hede þat as þe kyngdom of Mercia was alwey grettest for þe tyme, so it was i-deled in mo bisschipriches, and 1 specielliche by grete herte of kyng Offa, þat 2 was forty þere kyng of Mercia.  He chauengd þe archebissophes see from Caunterbury to Lychefeld 3 by assent of Adrian þe pope.  Þan þe prouine of Mercia and of Lindiﬀare 4 in þe ﬁrste bygyynyng of here Cristendom in kyng Wulfrans tyme hadde oon bishopp atte Lichefelde.  þe ﬁrste bissoph þat was þere heet Dwyna; þe secundhe heet Celath; and were bope Scottes.  After hem þe pridd Tuimpere; þe þerpe heet Irminannus; 5 þe ﬁfte Chedde.  But in Ethelfredes 6 tyme, þat was Wulfar his broþer, whanne Chedde was dode, Theodorus þe archebissoph ordeyned 7 Wynfrede, Cheddes dekene.  Neuerpeles he put hym doun 8 after þat, for he was vnbuxum in som poynyt, and 9 ordeynede þere Sexwulf abbot of Medehamstede, þat hatte Burgh.  But after Sexwulf his þerpe þere Theodorus þe archebissoph ordeyned 9 ﬁyve bissophpes in þe prouine of

Of the bissoppes of the Marches.  Willelmus.

Hit is to be aentendede, that like as the impeire of the Marches was moste large, so hit was diuided in to moste bissoppes.  And specially in the tyme of kyng 10 Offa, 11 whiche reigneuenge in the Marches by xl. yere, transferred the honor from Caunterbery to the chirche of Lyneolne, Adrian the pope grawntenenge that pruiilege.  Where there was oon bishopp oonly, at Lichefeld, to the prouine of Marches and of Lyndesfare, in the ﬁrste yeres of Cristiane, in the tyme of kyng Wulfarius; Duina was ﬁrste, Celat the secundhe, bothe Scottes, Trunhere the thrydde, Irumanannus the iijthe, Ceddha the vth.  But Theodorus archebissoph, after the deathe of Seynte Chadde, ordeynede Wynfrede, dekyn of Seynte Chadde, in the tyme of Ethelfrede, brother of Wulfers, which was deposede for cause of a certeyne inobediency, makenge Sexwulphus byschop þer, abbot of Medehamstede, whiche is callede now Petrusborough.  But after the iijthe yere of Sexwulphus, Theodorus, tharchebishop, ordeynede v. byschoppes to

1 and of, MS. (not a. or Cx.)  2 whiche, Cx.  3 Lichefeld, a.  4 Lydefar, Cx.  5 So MS. corruptly; Germuannus, Cx.  6 Ethelfredes, Cx.

1 apud Hymndown, a.; apud Hyndon, Cx.  2 So a.; he, Cx.  3 Added from a. and Cx.  4 Lindesse, MS. (ﬁrst hand.)  5 of Offa, Harl. MS., by a clerical error, it is to be hoped.
Polychronicon Ranulphi Higden

quinque episcopos; scilicet\(^1\) Bosel ad Wygorniam,\(^2\) Cudwynum ad Lichefeldiam, Sexwolfin\(^3\) predictum ad Legecestriam,\(^4\) quæ nunc Cestria\(^5\) dicitur; Ethelwynum ad Lindseyam apud urbem Sedeneynam;\(^6\) Eatam\(^7\) quoque monachum de monasterio Hildæ apud Whiteby\(^8\) sumptum,\(^9\) ordinavit ad Dorecestriam\(^10\) juxta Oxonium, quæ et\(^11\) Dorkinga tunc diceretur.\(^12\)

Et sic sedes\(^13\) Dorecrestensis, quæ tempore Sancti Birini\(^14\) spectabat ad Westsaxonicos, a tempore Theodori archiepiscopi spectabat ad Mercios.\(^15\) Ipse quoque Sexwolfo episcopos,\(^16\) Cantia per regem Merciorum Ethelredum\(^17\) vastata, Puctam Roffensem episcopum de Cantia venientem ordinavit primum Herfordiae episcopum.\(^18\) Sexwolfo tandem defuncto, successit Hedda apud Lichefeld,\(^19\) et\(^20\) Wylfridus de Northumbria diu præfugatus successit apud Legecestriam,\(^21\) quæ modo Cestria dicitur. Post duos tamen annos, defuncto rege Northumbrorum\(^22\) Alfrido, Wylfridus\(^23\) ad propriam sedem Hagustaldensem reudit; et sic Hedda ambas parochias, scilicet Legecestriam et Lichefeld, tenuit.\(^24\) Post quem\(^25\) Albinus\(^26\) et Wor.\(^27\) Post quem tres successerunt; scilicet,\(^28\) Totta apud Legecestriam; Wyttat\(^29\)

\(^{1}\) scilicet\(\) om. C.D.

\(^{2}\) Wygorniam, B.

\(^{3}\) Sexwolfin, B.D.

\(^{4}\) So E., at length; Legecestre, A.;

\(^{5}\) Legecestre, B.

\(^{6}\) So D., at length; Cestre, A.;

\(^{7}\) Ceste\(^{8}\), E.; but Cestria at length just below.

\(^{8}\) Sidenuam, B.; Sidencia, A.D., Gale.

\(^{9}\) Witlebi, A.

\(^{10}\) pud ... sumptum\(\) om. C.D.

\(^{11}\) So A., Gale; Dorecestram, E.

\(^{12}\) tunc Dorkinga, B.; etiam et, A.

\(^{13}\) tunc diceretur\(\) dicitur, C.D.

\(^{14}\) sedes\(\) om. B.

\(^{15}\) Sancti Birini\(\) om. C.D.

\(^{16}\) spectabat ad Mercios\(\) pertinent ad provinciam Merciorum, C.D.

\(^{17}\) episcopus\(\) om. C.D.

\(^{18}\) Ethelredam, D.

\(^{19}\) ordinavit ... episcopum\(\) Herfordensem episcopum fecit, B.

\(^{20}\) So E. and A. (Lichefeld), though they have the Latin form elsewhere; this inconstancy often renders the contractions ambiguous; Lieb. D.

\(^{21}\) " et apud Legecestriam Wilfridus, de Northumbria recenter " expulsus; sed vi hostilitatis insignis. " Gruentem ejectus, Wilfridus ad priorum sedem suam Hagustaldensem reversus " et Wor, C. (and D. nearly.)

\(^{22}\) Legecestriam, B.

\(^{23}\) Wylfridus, B.

\(^{24}\) Et post eum, C.D.

\(^{25}\) Albinus, C.D.

\(^{26}\) Wor] qui et Wor, Gale; qui et Wor vocabatur, C.D.

\(^{27}\) Post ... scilicet\(\) Eoque defuncto, tres facti sunt episcopi, C.D.

\(^{28}\) Witta, C.D.
Mercia. And so he ordyned Bosel at Wircestre, Cudwyn at Trevisa.

Lichefelde, pe forseide Sexwulf at Chestre, Ethelwyn at Lyndesie at pe citee Sidnay. And he took Eata, monk of pe abbay of Hilde at Whitby, and made hym bishop of Dorchestre pat longed to Mercia 2 bysides Oxenforde. Pe pis Dorchestre heet Dorkynge, and so pe see of Dorchester pat [longed to West Saxom in Seynt Bryynes time]. 3 longed to Mercia from Theodorus 4 pe archebissoppes tyne. Also when Ethelberd, 5 kyng of Mercia, hadde destroyed Kent, pe 6 bishop Sexwulf took Pictas, bishop of Rouchestre, pat come out of Kent, and made hym first bishop of Herforde. 7 At pe laste, whan Sexwulf was dede, Hedda was bishop of Lichelfelde after hym; and Wilfrede flemede oute of Northumberlonde was bishop at 8 Chestre. Nopeces after two 9ere Alfred kyng of Norphemberlonde deide, and Wilfrede fornede azen 9 to his owne see of Haungstalden. And so Hedda hyldde 10 hope bishopriches of Lichelfelde and of Ches- tre. After him 11 come Albyne, pat heet Wor also. And

the province of the Marches, that is to say, Bosel at Wir- MS. HARL. cestre, Cudwyne at Lichelfelde, Sexwulphus at Chestre, Ethelred at Lindesey, at a cite calede Sedeneia. Takeyne also Eata, monke of the monastery of Seynte Hilda at Whitby, made hym bysehop at Dorchester, nye to Oxforde, which was calede that tyne Dorkyng. And so the seete of Dorchester, whiche perteneide to the Weste Saxones in the tyne of Seynte Biryne, longede to the Marches from the tyne of Theodorus archebishop. Sexwulphus dedde, Hedda succeeded at Lychefelde; and Wilfrid, chasede from Northumberlonde, succeeded at Legecestre, now namede Chestre; neverthelesse Alfride, the kyng of Northumberlonde, dedde within the space of iij. yere foloces, Wilfride returnede to his propre seete Haungstaldense; and so Hedda was bishop bothe of Lichelfelde and of Chestre. After whom Albiinus other Wor. After whom thre succeeded, that

---

1 Edelwyn, Cx.
2 'pat longed to Mercia' om. a.
3 Added from Cx.
4 Thedorus, a.
5 Ethelred, a.
6 this, b., Cx.
7 Rouchestre Herforde, MS. The former word is very slightly expuncted in a., which would lead us to suspect, as do many other things, that the standard MS. may have been copied from a., or that both are copies of the same MS. The text of b. and Cx. is correct.
8 of, b., Cx.
9 azen, a.
10 hylde, a.
11 hem, MS. (not a., b. or Cx.)

VOL. II.
apud Lichefeld; Eata\(^1\) adhuc in Dorcestria\(^2\) remanente, cujus sedem eo defuncto præsules Lindisienses\(^3\) per trecentos quinquaginta quatuor annos tenuerunt; donec Remigius, licentia regis Willelmi primi, sedem transferret ad Lincolniam.\(^4\) Sed\(^5\) tempore regis Edgari Leofwynus præsul\(^6\) conjunxit ambas parochias Cestrensium et Lindisfarorum,\(^7\) quoad ipse viveret.

**CAP. LVI.**

*De episcopis Northimbranis.*\(^8\)

Willelmus, libro quarto de Pontificibus, capitulo undecimo.\(^9\) Apud Eboracum unica sedes primo fuit pro tota\(^10\) provincia Northimbrana,\(^11\) quam Paulinus primus a Dorobernensi\(^12\) Justo ordinatus septem annis tenuit. Deinde, occiso rege Northimbranorum\(^13\) Edwyno, turbatisque rebus,\(^14\) recessit Paulinus navigio ad partes Cantie unde primo venerat,\(^15\) sumpto secum pallio. **Willelmus, libro tertio.**\(^16\) Sicque cessavit præ-

---

\(^1\) Eatta, B.

\(^2\) apud Dorcestriam, B.; in Dorcestre, D.

\(^3\) Lindeyenses, B.

\(^4\) C.D. add:—"quæ tune caput era Lindesele."

\(^5\) Tamen, C.D.

\(^6\) Lejesture, add, C.D.

\(^7\) The passage is slightly altered in C.D.

\(^8\) Northanhumbranis, B.; Northumbrensibus, D.

\(^9\) libro ... undecimo] om. B., Gale.

\(^10\) per totam, Gale.

\(^11\) Genti Northimbranæ unica sedes primitus fuit apud Eboracum, C.D.

\(^12\) episcopa, add. C.D.

\(^13\) Northimbranorum] om. C.D.

\(^14\) publicis, add. C. (not D.)

\(^15\) unde primo venerat] om. C.D.

\(^16\) C.D. omit reference.
after hym come the  

\[ \text{De episcopis Norhumbraonis, Capitulum quinquagesimum sextum.} \]

\[ \text{Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro quarto, capitulo secundo.} \]

At York was oon see for alle pe province of Norhumberlond, Paulinus halde first pat see, and was i-ordeyned of pe bishop of Caunterbury, and hyde pat see of York seune  

\[ \text{afterward when kyng Edwyn was i-slave, and pinges were destourbed, Paulynus wente jennes by water wey in to Kent, whennes he com first, and toke wip hym pe 9 palle. Willelmus, libro tertio. And so pe bishopriche of York cesede} \]

is to say, Torta at Chestre, Witta at Lichesfela, Eata re- 

\[ \text{Of the Bischopes of Northumberlond. Capitulum quinquagesimum sextum.} \]

\[ \text{Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro quarto, capitulo secundo.} \]

On seete was firste at Yorke, for alle the province of Northumberlond, whom Paulinus occupiede firste by the space of vij. yere. After that Edwynus, kyng of Northumberlond, slyyne, Paulinus toke schippe and saylede to Kente, from whens he come, takerne the palle with hym. Willelmus, libro tertio. And so the bishopperiche of
sulatus Eboracensis xxx. annis, usus vero pallii cessavit 1 ibidem cxv. annis, donec Egbertus episcopus et frater regis terrae 2 auctoritate papali pallium recuperaret. 3 Ranulphus. 4 Regnante interim Sancto Oswaldo præfuit Aidanus Scoticus 5 apud Bernicios; 6 post quem Finanus; post quem Colmannus. Willemus de Pontificio, libro tertio. 7 Quo tandem ad Scotiam indignanter 8 recedente, eo quod 9 illegitima Paschae observatione per Wylfridum fuerat redargutus, 4 tricesimo 10 post recessum Paulini anno Wilfridus ad sedem Eboracensem institutus est. 11 Beda, libro quarto. 12 Sed ipso circa suam consecrationem 14 apud Gallias ditius demorante, 15 ad instigationem quartadecimanorum 16 Cedda de monasterio suo Lestingensi sumptus, annuente rege Oswy, subintrusus est. Quo tandem post triennium per Theodorum archipresulem amoto, et 17 ad provinciam Merciorum assignato, Wilfridus per Theodorum restitutus est; sed et ipse 18 tandem propter quasdam simulitates interim ipsum et regem Oswy 19 exortas, post decimum officii sui annum, cooperante et corrupto Theodoro, a sede sua expulsus est; ordina-

1 vacavit, C.D., slightly transposed.  
2 terrae] om. C.D.  
3 recuperavit, C.D.  
4 Ranulphus . . . redargutus] om.  
C.D.  
5 Scottis, B.; Scotus, Gale.  
6 Bericetios, B.  
7 B. omits reference.  
8 indiginate, A.  
9 quod de, Gale.  
10 ipiari, add. C.D.  
11 Slightly transposed in C.D.  
12 C.D. omit reference.  
13 This passage, as far as Tun bertum apud Hagastablesem, is contracted in C.D. to “Sed ipso post decimum officii sui annum ex pulso, Theodorus Dorobernensis episcopus ex regis Oswy con niventa ordinavit Bosam apud Eboracum.”  
14 consecrationem suam, B.  
15 immorante, B.  
16 quandam dessorum, B.  
17 et] om. B.  
18 ipso, B.  
19 discordias, ins. B.
purity cere, and pe vse of pe palle secede\(^1\) pere an hundred and fyne and fifty \(^2\) cere, for to pat Egbert the bischop, pat was pe kynge broper of pe lond, reconered it by auctorite of pe pope. \(\text{\textit{R.}}\) So among, \(^3\) whan Seint Oswolde regnede, Aidanus,\(^4\) a Scot, was bischop in Brenicia, pat is pe nor-the side of Northumberlond; after hym Fynanus;\(^5\) after hym Salmannus. \textit{Willelmus, ubi supra}. At pe laste he wente to Scoctonde wip grete inlungnaicium, for Wilfrede vndertook hym for he hylde vnlawfulliche Esterday; pritty \(\text{\textit{z}}\)ere after pat Paulinus was agoo\(^6\) from Wilfrede was i-made bischop of York. \textit{Beda, libro quarto}. But \[\text{\textit{while}}\] \(^7\) he dwellede longe in Franence aboute his saerynge, at exitynge of quartadecima-norun, pat were pey pat helde Esterday \(\text{\textit{pe xiiiij}}\(^8\)\) day of pe mone, Chedde was i-take out of his abbay of Lestynge, and wrongfulliche i-put to \(^9\) pe see of York by assent of kyng Osvy. But \(\text{\textit{pre \textit{z}}\)ere afterward Theodorus the archebischop dede hym away, and assignede hym to pe province of Mercia, and restored Wilfrede to pe see of York. But afterwarde Wilfrede, bycause of wretche pat was arered\(^10\) bytwene hym and kyng Egfred, was i-putte oute of his see by help of Theo-
dorus\(^11\) pe archebischop pat was corrupt wip som manere mede;

Yorke seasede xxx\(^i\) yere, and the vse of the palle seasede there by a c. xxvi\(^i\) yere vn tyl pat bischoppe Egberte, brother to the kyngge of that londe,idecreede the palle thro auctorite of the pope. \(\text{\textit{R.}}\) After that, Seynte Oswolde reignenge, Aidanus, a Scotte, hade gouernaile in Bernicia, after whom Finanus,\(^12\) and after hym Colmannus. \textit{Willelmus ubi supra}. Whiche goenge in to Scoctonde, as for indignacion, in that he was reproveyd by Wilfride of vnlawfulle kepenge of Estur, Wilfride was restorede to the seete of Yorke after the departenge of Paulinus, in the xxx\(^i\) yere. \textit{Beda, libro quarto}. But Wilfride taryenge in Franence abowte his consceanse, Seynte Chaddde was taken and made bischoppe per, thro helpe of kyng Osvy; whiche, re-mouede with in the space of thre yere by Theodorus tharchebischop, was made bischop of the Marches, and Wilfride was restorede to hit ageyne. Whiche Wilfride was expulsede with in the space of x. yere foloenge, Theodorus tharchebischoppe cooperante and corrupte, for cause of conten-

\(^{\quad}1\) *cesede, a.*

\(^{\quad}2\) *xxv, yere, Cx.*

\(^{\quad}3\) So among] om. Cx.

\(^{\quad}4\) So Cx.; Aidanus, MS.; Aid-
nus, a.

\(^{\quad}5\) *Finianus, Cx.*

\(^{\quad}6\) *goon, Cx.; ago, B.* The text is a little corrupt, probably \(\text{\textit{York}}\) should be added after from, or from cancel-
celled.

\(^{\quad}7\) Added from a.

\(^{\quad}8\) So Cx.; fourbe, MS. and a.

\(^{\quad}9\) *in to, Cx.*

\(^{\quad}10\) *arered*] om. Cx.

\(^{\quad}11\) So a. and Cx.; Odorus, MS.

\(^{\quad}12\) *Sinanus, Harl. MS.*
vitque tune Theodorus ad regis instantiam Bosam apud Eboraeum, Tumbertum\(^1\) apud Hagustaldensem ecclesiam, Eatam\(^2\) ad\(^3\) Lindisfarnensem ecclesiam,\(^4\) quae est Halyelond,\(^5\) in flumine\(^6\) Twydi; \(^7\) quam sedem \(^8\) Aidanus post\(^9\) fundaverat, Eadhedum\(^10\) vero de Lyn-desy\(^11\) reversum praefecit\(^12\) Ripensi\(^13\) ecclesie, ubi\(^14\) Wyldfridus quondam abbas fuerat. Trunwynum\(^15\) autem\(^16\) destinavit ad terram Pictorum in finibus Anglorum juxta Scotiam, in loco qui Candida Casa,\(^17\) seu Whiterne,\(^18\) dicitur; ubi\(^19\) Sanctus Ninianus Brito\(^20\) primus fundator et doctor extiterat. Sed hæ\(^21\) omnes sedes, excepta Eboracensi, paulatim defecerunt. Nam sedes Candidæ Case, que tune ad Anglos spectabat, aliquot annis sub decem episcopis durabat; \(^22\) donec depopulatione Pictorum\(^23\) a ditione Anglorum omnino deficeret. Hagustaldensis vero et Lyndisfarnensis\(^24\) sedes, que vicissim unica erat sub novem episcopis, nonaginta ferme annis usque adventum Dacorum duravit. Quo in tempore sub Hyngwar\(^25\) et Hubba Ardulphus episcopus diu cum corpore Cuthberti\(^26\) vagabatur, usque ad dies Aluredi regis Westsaxonum,

---

\(^1\) Thunbertum, B.
\(^2\) Eatam, B.
\(^3\) apud, Gale.
\(^4\) ecclesiam] om. C.D.
\(^5\) Haly Elund, A.
\(^6\) fluvio, C.D.
\(^7\) Twyde, B.; Twidi, A.; Teede, D.
\(^8\) Sanctus, ins. C.D. ; adding Scotus.
\(^9\) primo, C.D., Gale ; primus, B.
\(^10\) Cathedum, B.
\(^11\) Lindsey, B.; ad Lindeseium, D.
\(^12\) Theodorus, ins. C.D.
\(^13\) Riponensi, B.
\(^14\) ubi] in qua, C.D.
\(^15\) Trunwynum, A.
\(^16\) vero, C.D.
\(^17\) Candidasæ, B.
\(^18\) Huysterne, C.; Witerne, A.; Witherne, D.
\(^19\) ubi] om. C.D.
\(^20\) Brito] om. B.; natione Brito, D.
\(^21\) hæ] om. C.D.
\(^22\) duravit, B.C.D.
\(^23\) depulbatis Pictis, C.D.
\(^24\) Lindefarnensis, B.
\(^25\) Hungar, B.; Hingar, A., Gale
\(^26\) diu after Cuthberti in A.

(who omits sub.)
pat was i-doo after pat Wilfrede hadde i-be bishopp of York ten ȝere; pan at pe instance of pe kyng Theodorus made Bosam bishopp of York and Cuthbert\(^1\) at Hagustalde schirche, and Eata at Lyndefar chirche pat hatte Hwy Eland \(^2\) in pe ryuer of Twede. Aydanus foundede first pat see, and Theodorus made Eadhedus \(^3\) bishopp of Rypoun pat was i-come aȝen out of Lyndesele; Wilfrede \(^4\) hadde be abbot of Ripoun. Theodorus sende Trunwynns to pe lond of Pictes in pe endes of Englond faste by Scotlond in a place pat hatte Candida Casa and Whyterne\(^5\) also. Pere Seint Ninian, a Bretoun, was first foundour and doctor; but alle pese sees outake York failede litell and litel; for pe see of Candida Casa, and pat is Galeway, pat londede poo to Englond, durede meny ȝeres vnder ten bishoppes for to pat he was oute of power [by destroyenge of pe Pictes. Pe sees of Hagustald and of Lyndefare was bytymes al oon under nyne bishhopis]\(^6\) aboute a foure score ȝere and ten, and durede anon to pe comynge of pe Danes. In pat tym vnder Hungar and Hubba, Ardulf pe bishopp ȝede longe aboute wip Seynt Cuthberd his body anon to kyng Alured his tyme, kyng of West Saxow, whan\(^7\) pe see of Lyndefare was i-sette at Kun-

---

\(^1\) Cumbert, Cx.
\(^2\) Holy Ylond, Cx.
\(^3\) So a. and Cx.; Etheldredus, MS.
\(^4\) Probably we should read where Wilfrede.
\(^5\) So a., Cx.; Whitne, MS.
\(^6\) Added from a. and Cx.
\(^7\) and, Cx.
\(^8\) So Harl. MS.

---
quando sedes Lindisfarnensis apud Kunegestriam, sive Cuningesburgham ponebatur; qui locus hodie dicitur Ubbeford super Twedam. Tandem septimodecimo anno regis Egelredi, filii Edgari, sedes illa usque Dunelmiam translata est, et corpus Cudberti ibidem reconditum per Edmundum episcopum.

Ex tunc omnino defecit sedes Hagustaldensis et Lindisfarnensis. Henricus autem primus nono regni sui anno instituit novam sedem apud Caerliel.

CAP. LVII.

De numero sedium episcopaliwm.

Cantuariensis metropolis habet sub se tredecim episcopos in Anglia, et quatuor in Wallia, videlicet, Roffensem soli Cantiac presidentem; item Londoniensem, qui preest Estsaxonibus, Midelsex, et medietati Hertfortshire; item Cieestrensem soli Southsaxie et Vectre insulae presidentem; Wytoniensem, qui preest Hampteshre et Southreye; Salesburiensem, qui preest Dorsetensibus, Barroshire, et Wylteshre;
negester,1 pat hatte Kunnyngesburgh also; pat place hatte now Vbbeford vpon Twede. At ye laste ye scuene pe zer e of kyng Egbert, kyng Edgarus sonne, pat [see] 2 was i-chaugaung to Durem, and Seint Cuthbertus body was i-do o ye 3 by ye doynge of Edmond the bishop; and from ye see ye see pat hatte Haungustald and Lyndefare fayled alle oute.4 Ye firste kyng Henry pe nynpe zer e of his regnynge 5 made ye newe see at Carlilke.6

Capitulum quinquagesimum septimum.

The archebissop of Canterberie haç vnder hym prittene bischoppes in Engeland, and four in Wales. Pat bisschop Rochestre, he haç vnder hym Kent allone;7 London, he haç vnder hym Essex and Middelseyx and half Hertfordshire; Chichestre, he haç vnder hym Soupsex and pe Ile of Wyʒte; Wyncestre, he haç under hym Hampschire and Sowyerecie; Salysbury haç vnder hym Barrokshire,8 Wilteschire, and Dorsete; Excentre haç vnder hym

Lindisfare was sette at Cungestre or Kunncngesburgh, whiche place is callede now Hubeforde on Twede. And at the laste that sete was removede to Durem, in the xvij. yere of Egelrede kyng, son of kyngge Edgare; and the body of Seynte Cuthberte the bishop was buriende there by Edmunde the bishop. From whiche tyme the secte of the chirches of Haungustaldense failede vtterly; and kyng Henry the firste, in the ixthe yere of his regne, ordeyned a newe secte, Caerlielle.

Capitulum quinquagesimum septimum.

The metropolitian of Caunterbury hathe vnder hym xxiiij. bischoppes in Engeland, and iiij. in Wales, that is to say:—
the bishop of Rochestre, whiche hathe governyale oonly in Kente. Also of London whiche hathe rewe in Esteex, Middelseyx, and of the halfe of Hertfordeschire. Also the bisschop of Chichestre whiche is presidente oonly of Southsex and of the yle of Wyʒthe. The bisschop of Wyncestre, which is presidente in Hampschire and Surry. And of Salisbury pat is presidente of Dorset, Barrokschir,
Excestrensem, qui præest Devoniæ et Cornubie; Bathoniensem, qui præest Somersetensibus; Wygorniensem, qui præest Glovernensibus, Wygornensibus, et dimidii 2 Warwycensibus; Herfordensem, qui præest Herefordensibus et parti 3 Salopshire; 4 Cestrensem, sive Conventrensem et Lichfeldensem, 5 qui præest Cestrie, 6 Staffordie, Derbey, dimidie Warewicie, 7 parti Salopie, 8 parti 9 Lancastreshire, 10 videlicet a flumine de Mersee 11 usque 12 flumen de Rippel; 13 Lincolniensem, qui præest provinciis, que sunt inter Thamisiam et Humbram, videlicet, Lincolnie, Leycestrie, Northamtonie, Huntyntonie, Bedforde, Bokyngham, 14 Oxonie, et dimidie 15 Hertfortshire; 16 Heliensem, 17 qui præest Cantebruggeshire, præter Merlond; 18 Norwicensem, qui præest Merlond, 19 Norforchiae, 20 et Southforchiae. 21 Item Cantuarensis habet in Wallia quatuor suffraganeos, scilicet Landavensem, Menevensem, 22 Bangoriensem, 23 et Sancti Asaph. Eboracum 24 autem metropolis hocie tantum duos habet sub se 25 episcopos, Dunelmensem scilicet 26 et Cardulienne. Ranulphus. 27 Cum igitur duo in Anglia solumnodo 28

1 Devoniæ, Gale. (The MSS. have contractions here and below.)
2 dimidie, Gale.
3 parti om. C.D.
4 de Salopshire, B.
5 Coentre et Lichfeld, A.D.
6 Cestrie] om. B.
7 et, ins. A.; dimidium Warrwicensem, Gale.
8 parti Salopie] om. B.
9 parti et dimidie, C.D.; partim, Gale (twice).
10 Lancastre, A.
11 Merse, B.; D. omits this and the four preceding words.
12 ad, ins. A.D.
13 Rippell, B.; Rapill, A.; Rippul, Gale; Ribbil, D.
14 Bokyngham, Bedford, B.
15 habet, ins. A.

16 altera dimidia pertinet Londoniensi, ins. C.D.
17 Eliensem, B.
18 Merslond, B.; Mershland, C. (not D.)
19 Merslond, B.
20 Norfolchiae, Gale.
21 Soetfolchiae, A. (and Gale, nearly.) There are a few very trivial orthographical and other variations in this part of the chapter in C.D., which have not been noticed.
22 Minevensem, Gale.
23 Bangor., Mener., B.
24 Eboracensis, B.; Eboraci, Gale.
25 sub se habet, B.
26 scilicet] added from B., Gale.
27 Ranulphus] om. C.D.
28 tantummodo, C.D.; solomodo, E.
Deuenschire and Cornwayle; Bape hæp vnder hym Somersete- [schire] 1 alone; Wircestre hathe vnder hym Glowectrece- [schire] 2 Wircestreschire, and half Warwykschire; Herforde hæp vnder hym Herfordschire and som of Schropschire. Chestre is bishop of Couentre [and] 3 of Lichfeld, and hæp vnder hym Chestreschire, Staffordschire, Derbysshire, half Warwikeschire, som of Schropschire, and som of Lancastreschire from pe ryuer of Merce 4 anon to pe ryuer of Rypel. 5 Lyncolne hæp vnder hym pe province pat beþ bytwewen Temse and Humber, pat beþ pe schires of Lyncolne, 6 of Leyceetre, of Northamptoun, of Huntyngdoun, of Bedeford, of Bukyng- ham, 7 of Oxenforde, and half Hertfordschire. Hely hæp vnder hym Cantebriggesschire outeake Merslond. 8 Norp- whiche hæp vnder hym Merslond, Norþfолк, and Souþfолк. 9 Also pe archebishops of Cauunterbury hæp foure suffragans in Wales, pat beþ Landaf, Seint Danyes, Bangor, and Seint Assaph. Pe archebishops of York hæp now but tweie bis- shoppes vnder hym, pat beþ Durem and Carlille. R. 10 And

and Wilteschire. Of Excestre, that is presidente of Deuon- schire and of Cornewaile. And of Bathe, pat is presidente in Somersesteschire. Of Wircestre, which is presidente in Glouchestreschire and Wirchestre, and in the halfe of Warwikeschire. And of Herdeforde, which is presidente in that schire, and in parte of Shropschire. The bishop of Chestre of Couentre and of Lichefolde, which is presidente in Staffordschire, in Derby, and in the halfe of Warwikeschire, and in parte of Shropeschire, and in parte of f. 74. a. Lancastreschire that is from the water of Mersee vn to the floode of Rippelle. And of Lyncolne, which is presidente of the province whiche be betwene Thamys and Humbre, as Lincoln, Leircetre, Northampton, Huntyngdon, Bedeforde, Bukyngham, Oxon, and halfe of Hertfordeschire. And of Hely, that is presidente in Cantebriggschire, Merlonde excepte. Of Norwiche, that is presidente in Merlonde, Northefolke, and Sowthefolke. Also the metropolitian of Cauunterbery hathe iiiij. suffragans in Wales; that is to say, of Landauense, of Bangor, of Meneua, and Assaph. The archebishop of Yorke hathe ij. bishoppes vnder hym only, of Durem and Caerliel. Then sithe pe ber be ij.

1 Added from Cx. (not in a.) 2 Added from a. and Cx. 3 Added from a. and Cx. 4 Mersee, Cx. 5 Rypel, a. 6 of Engelonde, Lyncolne, MS. 7 Bukyngham, a.; Bokyngham, Cx. 8 Merlond, a. and Cx.; and so below. 9 Norfolk and Suffolk, Cx. 10 Reference added from Cx.; who omits the latter part of the sentence.
sunt primates, Cantuariensis, qui dicitur primas totius Anglie, et Eboracensis, qui primas Anglie dicitur; quid unus alteri debeat, et in quibus eis subjacere teneatur, in subsequentiibus circa annum Domini millesimum septuagesimum secundum plenius continetur, ubi coram rege Willelmo primo et Anglie praesulibus, ex mandato Papae inter prefatios primates causa ventilata, decretum est ut Eboracensis in his quae ad cultum catholicum pertinent Cantuariensi subjaceat, ita, videlicet, ut ubicunque in Anglia Cantuariensis concilium cogere voluerit, Eboracensis cum suis suffraganeis adesse teneatur, et ejus canonicis decretis obedire. Obeunte autem Cantuariensi, Eboracensis Doroberniam veniet, electum cum ecteris episcopis in primatem proprium consecrabit. Quod si Eboracensis obierit, successor ejus ad Cantuariensem accedet, et ordinationem ab eo accipiet, faciendo juramentum cum professione de
so beep but tweie primates in Engelond, Canturbery, pat is e-clepde primate of al Engelond, andYork primate of Engelond. What oon of hem schal doo to pat oper, and in what poyn he schal be obedient and vnder hym, it is fully conteyned wip yune aboute pe Zore of our Lord a powsand pre skore and twelue. *Pere to fore pe firste kyng William and pe bisschoppes of Engelond, by maundement of pe pope pe cause was i-handled and i-treted bytwene pe forsaiade primates and ordeyned, and i-demed pat pe primat of York schal be [sugett to pe]1 primat of Canturbery in pinges pat longepe to pe worscheppe of God and to pe bille of holy chiere, so pat in what place enere it 2 be in Engelond pat pe primat of Canturbery3 wil hote and constreyne and gadre4 a coun-sail of clergie, pe primat of York is i-holde wip his suffragans forto be pere, and forto be obedient to pe ordenaunce pat pere is lawefulliche i-ordeyned. Whan pe primat of Canturbery is deed, pe primat of York schal come to Canturbury, and wip opere bisschoppes he schal sacre hym pat is i-chose, and so wip opere bisschoppes he schal sacre his owne primat. Zif pe primat of York is deed his successor schal come to pe primat5 of Canturbury, and he schal take his ordeynance of hym, and do his oop wip profession of lawe-

primates in Englonde, oon of Canturbury, that is called the primat of alle Englonde, that other of York, whiche is called the primat of Englonde, in what thynges oon of theym awe to be subjette to that other, hit schalle be expressed in this processe folowenge, abowie the yere of oure Lorde God a m. IX. and xij. yere, more plenerly. Wherefore a cause was ventilate and movede tho the commaundemente of the pope, afores William firste kynge of Englonde, and diuerse other bisschoppes of that londe; where hit was decrete that archebishop of Yorke scholde be subjette to pe primat of Canturbury in those thynges whiche perteyne to the honor of God; in so moche that archebishop of Yorke with his suffraganes scholde be at the counsell where hit pleasede the primat of Canturbery to assigne hit, and to obey the decretes of canon. And the archebishop of Canturbury dedde, the archebishop of Yorke schal come to Canturbury, and consecrate the man electe in to the primat. And if the archebishop of Yorke dec, his successor shal come to Canturbury to receyve his ordinacon, makeenge an othe

---

1 Added from a. and Cx.
2 euer hat, a. and Cx.; it <i>cure</i>, MS.
3 Engelond, MS. (not a. or Cx.)
4 constrayne to gadre, Cx.
5 bishopp, Cx.
obedientia canonica. Inferius autem, circa annum Domini millesimum centesimum nonagesimum quintum, sub tempore regis Ricardi, ponuntur rationes pro parte et jure utriusque primatis facientes. Necnon et a tempore Conquestus usque ad tempora ultimi Henrici regis, sub diebus Thurstini, Thomae, et aliorum Eboracensium pontificum, quid alter primas alteri fecerit, quomodo quoque alterius manum subterfugerit, plenius edocetur; præsentem vero locum, cum prologi magis quam pleni tractatus vicem gerat, præfatis rationibus onerare nimis foret taediosum.

CAP. LVIII.

A quot et quibus haec terra sit inhabitata gentibus. Hæc insula in primis Britones incolas habuit, qui anno Hely sacerdotis xvii°, tempore regis Latinorum Silvii Posthumi, post Trojam eversam anno xliii°, ante urbem Roman conditam quadringentesimo xxxiiij°, (Bedæ, libro primo,) de tractu Armorico advecti australes insulse partes diu tenuerunt. Contigit postmodum
ful obedienti. Wip yyne, aboute pe 3ere of oure Lord eleuene hundred foure score and fiftene, vnder pe tyme of kyng Richard, beep resouns i-sette pat makep for pe party and for pe riʒt of eyper primate. Also what oone primat dede to pat ope in tyme of Thurstinus, of Thomas, and of opeo bishoppes of York from pe Conquest anon to pe laste kyng Henry his 2 tyme. Also pere it is i-tauʒt how eyper of hem asterte 3 from ope. Pis place is but a forspekyenge, and nouʒt a ful tretis perof. Perfore hit were noyefulle 4 to charge pis place wip alle pilke resouns pat pere beep i-made.

A quot, quando, et quibus inhabitata sit gentibus.
Capitulum quinquagesimum octavum.

Bretounes wonede first in pis ilond pe 3ere of Hely pe preost eiʒtetene; of Siliuus Posthumus, kyng of Latyns, eleuene; after pe takyng of Troye, pe and fourty 3ere; to fore pe byldynge of Rome, foure hundred and two and pritty. 5 Beda, libro primo. Pei come hinder and took hir cours from Armorik, pat now is pe ope Bretayne; pey helde long tyme with profession off obedience canonicalle. But in this pro-
cesse foloenge, abowe the yere of God m 1 c. xc., 6 vnder the tyme of kyngge Richarde the firste, reasons were aggregate for either parte of bothe primates: and also from the tyme of the Conqueste vn to the tymes of *the laste Henry kynge, in the daies of Thurstyn, Thomas, and of other bishoppes of Yorke, what that oon primat did to that other, and how oon of theyme fledde the powere of that other, for to rehearse the reasons of theyme and allegacion, hit were onerable to vs in this tyme.

Of what Peple, how mony, and when, this Yle of Britayne was inhabite.—Capitulum quinquagesimum octavum.

This yle callede Englonde now hade Britones the firste inhabitabors of lit, in pe xviiijthye yere of Hely preste, in the tyme of Siliuus Posthumus kyngge of Latines, pe xliijth yere after the destruction of Troye, by eccc. yere and xxxijth afore the cite of Rome was edifie. Beda, libro primo. Whiche commenge from Armorike occupiede a longe season the sowthe partes of the yle of Britayne. Hyt

---

1 Sentence varied in Cx.  
2 Henries, a.  
3 starte, Cx.  
4 noyeful, a., Cx.  
5 Sentence varied in Cx  
6 m. c. 95, Harl. MS. The Roman and Arabic numerals are used pro-
imiscuously elsewhere.
tempore Vespasiani ducis Romani, gentem Pictorum de Scythia longis navibus oceanum ingressam, circum- agente flatu ventorum, oras boreales Hiberniae intrasse, atque inventa ibi Scotorum gente sedes sibi petivisse, nec impetrare potuisse. Nam cum Hibernia, ut Scoti asserebant, ambas gentas capere non posset, Scoti remiserunt Pictos ad septentriionales partes Britanniae, opem contra Britones adversantes, si insurgerent, promittentes. Uxoresque illis de filiabus suis ea conditione tradiderunt, ut ubi res veniret in dubium, magis de feminea prosapia quam de masculina regem sibi eligerent. Gaiffridus. Tempore autem Vespasiani Caesaris, regnante apud Britannos Mario filio Arviragi, Rodricus quidam rex Pictorum de Scythia veniens caput Albaniam devastare; quem Marius interficiens dedit devicto populo, qui cum Rodrico venerat, borealem partem Albaniae, quae Cathenesia dicitur, ad inhabitandum. Illi vero uxoribus carentes, cum de natione Britonum uxores habere non possent,
pe soup contrayes of pe ilound. Hit byfelle afterwarde in Vespasian tyme, duke of Rome, pait pe Pictes out of Scythia and schipped into oceaan, and were i-dryue aboute wip pe wynde, and entrede in to pe norp costes of Irond, and founde mere Scottes, and prayed for to haue a place to wonye inne, and myȝte none gete. For Irond, as Scottes seide, myȝt nouȝt susteyne bope peple. Scottes sente pe Pictes to the norp side of Bretayne, and behitte hem help aȝenst pe Bretouns that were enemies, yf pey wolde arise, and took hem to wyfes of here douȝtres vppon suche a condicioun; ȝif doute fel who schulde haue ryȝt for to be kyng, he schulde raper chose hem a kyng of pe moder side pan of pe fader side, of pe wommen kyn raper [pan] ȝ of pe men kyn. Gaufridus. In Vespasian pe emperour his tyme, wihan Marius Aruiraugas his son was kyng of Bretouns, ou Rodrik kyng of Pictes come out of Scythia and gan to destroye Scottonde. Pan Marius pe kyng slowe pis Rodorik kyng of Pictes, and ȝaf pe norp party of Scotlond, þat hatte Catenesia, to pe men þat were i-come wip Roderik and were ouercome wip hem, for to won ye. But þese men hadde non wifes, ne none myȝte haue of pe naciouns of Bretouns; þefore pey

happede afterwarde in the tyme of Vespasian duke of Rome, the peple of Pictes to have commen from Scythia, and to haue intrede the oceaan, the wynde helpenge thyme, and so to haue intrede the northe costes of Yrlonde; whiche fyndenge per Scottes desirede a place in that londe whom thei myȝhte inhabite, but thei kouthe not obtayne that desire. For the Scottes seide Yrlonde wolde not sufice bothe peple. Wherefore thei sende the Pictes to the northe partes of Briteye, promysenge helpe to thyme, if that the Britones made eny insurreccio agayne theym; ȝiffenge to thyme theire doȝters to be mariede, in that condiciou, that if there were any dowte thei scholde elect in to theire kyngge oon of the female kynde rather then of the male kynde and bloode. Gaufridus. In the tyme of Vespasian emperoure, Marius son of Aruiraugas reignenge at Britones, Rodriicus a kyngge of Pictes, commenge from Scythia, began to waste Albania, whom Marius did sée, ȝiffenge to the peple deuicte whiche come with Rodriicus the northe parte of Albania to inhabite, which is called Catenesye. Whiche wontenge wifes, and the Britones not

1 Scicia or Scita, MSS., as usual; and so below.
2 So Cx.; and hisȝt, a.; and he hisȝte, MS.
3 So Cx.; himself, MS.
4 they, Cx.
5 Added from a. and Cx.
6 one, Cx.
7 So Cx.; to, MS.
8 by, Cx.
transfretantes Hiberniam Hiberniensem filias sibi copularunt; 
1 eo tamen pacto, ut sanguis maternus in successionibus preterretur. 
2 Giraldus, distinctione prima, capitulō septimo decimo. 
3 Servius tamen4 super Virgilium dicit Pictos esse Agathyrsos, sedesque quondam circa paludes Scythicas habuisse. Et dicuntur Picti quasi stigmatizati seu5 cauteriati, propter abundantiam fleum matis, 
6 quia7 ubi ex crebris stigmatibus cicatrices obducuntur, corpora quasi picta redduntur. Suntque isti populi idem quod Gothi; nam cum Maximus tyrannus de Britannia in Galliam8 cum omni armato terrae9 milite ad occupandum imperium transvectus fuisse, Gratianus et Valentinianus, fratres imperiique consortes, gentem hanc Gothicam, in rebus bellicis fortem et strenuam, beneficiis et blanditiis allectam, a Scythiae finibus in boreales Britanniae partes ad infestandum10 Britones, omni armato milite tunc nudatos, navigio transmissurunt. Sicque de praedonibus accolae effecti,11 usurpatas12 sedes aquilonales13 tenuerunt.14 Gaufridus. Carausius

1 copulaverunt, B. 8 Franciam, C.D.
2 praefarerat, C.D. 9 terrae, B.
3 C.D. omit the reference. The true reference is to Girald. De Instr. Princ. lib. 1. c. 6. (p. 188, Brewer). The Harl. MS. is wrong. 10 infestandos, Gale.
4 tamen] om. C.D. 11 facti, D.
5 vel, B. 12 voluptates, E.
6 fleumatis, A.B.D., Gale. 13 aquilonares, B.
7 qui, E. 14 effecti. . . tenuerunt] facti usurpatas ad sedes aquilonares pervenerunt, C. (not D.)
seillede into Irlond, and toke hem to wythes Irischemen doçters; at pat conuenant, pat the moder blood schulde be putt to fore in succession of heritage. *Giralдуs, capitulо septimodecimo. Nopeles Seruius*² super Virgilium seip pat Pictes beęp Agatirsis,³ pat hadde som wonyng places aboute pe wateres of Scythia, and pei beęp i-cleped Pictes by cause of peyntyngge [and snittyngge]⁴ of wounds pei beęp i-sene on hire bodies, for pey hadde moche flece,⁵ and were ofte boistousliche i-lete blood,⁶ and hadde many wounds i-sene on hire bodies,⁷ so pey seamede as it were men i-peynt wip wounds; jerfore pey were i-cleped Pictus, as it were peynted men. Pese men and the Gotes ben al oon peple; for whan Maximus pe tyraunt was i-went⁸ out of Britayne in to Fraunce for to occuple pe empere; panne Gratianus and Valentinianus, pat were breprep and felawes of pe empere, broȝte pese Gотhes out of Scythia wip greet ȝiftes, wip flaterynge and false⁹ byhestes, in to pe north contray of Britaye; for pey were stalworpe and strong men of armes. And so pese broubre were i-made men of pe¹⁰ loud and of pe¹¹ contray, and wonede in pe northe contrayes, and hilde pere citees and townes. *Gaufridus.*¹² Carusius¹³ pe tyraunt slow¹⁴

willenge to mary with theyme, sayled in to Yrlonde in MS. Harl. 2261. maryenge to theyme the doçthers of men of Yrlonde, in this condicion, that the bloode female seholde be preferrede in succession. *Giralдуs De Papa, capitulо septimo. Neuerthelesse Seruius on Virgille callethe the Pictes Agathyrsi¹⁵ and to haue hade theire habitaciones somme tyme abowe the narras of Scythia whiche were callede Pictes, f. 72. a. for the habundance of flece in theyme. These peple be callede also Gothi, for when Maximus the tyraunte wente from Englonde in to Fraunce with a grete multitude of armde men to occupy the empyre, Gratian and Valentinian, breder and felawes of thempire, toke to theyme the peple callede Gothi, nowbly and stronge in batelle, thoro rewarde and feire speche, from the costes of Scythia in to the northe partes of Briteyne, with a grete multitude of peple, to vexe the Britones; and so that peple, of robbers made inhabitatores, occupiede the northe partes of Briteyne thoro presumpeion. *Gaufridus.*

1 by. Cx.  
2 Sirinus, MS. and Cx.  
3 Agatirsiæ, a.  
4 Added from a. and Cx.  
5 fleeme, Cx.  
6 ofte boxed and lette blood, Cx.  
7 body, a., Cx.  
8 wente, Cx.  
9 fiyre, Cx.  
10 bi] om. a., Cx.  
11 bi] om. a., Cx.  
12 Added from a. and Cx.  
13 So a.; Carusius, MS. (which has Carusius below), and Harl, MS.  
14 slyt, a.  
15 Agatirsiæ, Harl, MS.
tyrannus dolo Pictorum, qui in auxilium Bassiani venerant, ipsum Bassianum interfecit, deditque Pictis locum mansionis in Albania; ubi permixti cum Britonibus per subseuens ævum permanserunt. Ranulphus. At cum Picti boreales prius Albanie partes occupassent, videtur quod locus mansionis, quam Carausius iste dedit Pictis, sit pars australis Albanie, a muro scilicet Romani operis transverso usque ad mare Scoticum protensa; in quo continetur Galwodia et Lodoneya, de quo Beda, libro tertio, capitulo secundo, sic loquitur: "Ninianus, vir sanctus, convertit australes "Pictos," et caetera. Hunc tandem pagum Saxones supervenientes fecerunt pertinere ad provinciam Northimbrorum Berniciorum, donec Kynadius Alpi filius, rex Scotorum, deletis Pictis, illud territum quod est inter Twedam et mare Scoticum, fecerat suo regno pertinere. Beda, libro primo, capitulo primo. Processu vero temporis Scoti, duce Reuda de Hibernia, quae proprie Scotorum patria est, egressi, vel amicitia vel ferro sibimet juxta Pictos sedes statue-

1 venerant] om. E.  
2 ipsum] om. D.  
3 Ranulphius] om. C.D.  
4 Et, C.D.  
5 boreas, B.  
6 iste] om. C.D.  
7 pars] om. B.  
8 transversa, Gale.  
9 qua, C.D.  
10 Ninian, A.B.  
11 Pictos australes, B.  
12 Berniciorum] om. C. (not D.)  
13 deletis, E.  
14 Sentence varied in C.D.  
15 Scoticorum, A. Here (and sometimes elsewhere) E. has the double t.  
16 propria, C., Gale (not D.)  
17 egressi] progressi, C.D.  
18 Pictos] om. E.
Bassianus by help and tresoun of the Pictes that come in help and socour of Bassianus, and afterwarde i-medled wiþ Britounes. R. Pat seethe pat Pikes occupied raper of norþside of Scotland, it semþ þat þe wonynge place þat þis Carausius was hem is seþe side of Scotlande þat streecþ [from þe] þwart ouer wale of Romayn werk to þe Scottische see, and conteynþ Galewey and Lodoway [þat is] Lodway. Þerof Beda, libro tertio, capitulo secundo, spekeþ in þis manere: Nygyn þe holy man converted þe souþ Pictes. Afterward þe Saxons come and made þat contray longe to Breuncþ, þe norþ partie of Norþumberlond, for to Kynadyus, Alpynus his son, kynge of Scotland, put out þe Pictes and made þat contray þat is bytwene Twede and þe Scottisþe see longe to his kyngdom. Beda, libro primo, capitulo primo. Afterward longe tyme the Scottes were i-lad by duke Reuda, and com out of Irlond, þat is þe proþe contray of Scottes, and wiþ loue oper wiþ strengþe made hem a place faste by þe Pictes in þe norþ

Carausius the tyrante did sle Bassian thro the decepcion of the Pictes, whiche come to haue schewede helpe to þe seide Bassian, whiche þafe to the Pictes a place to inhabit in Albania, where þeþ did aþyde afterwarde by continuacion permixte with Britones. R. And when the Pictes hade occupiþe afore tyme the northþe partes of Albania, hit semþeþ that the place of inhabitacion whom Carausius grauntedo to theym was the sowþe parte of Albania, proþtendede from the famoþe walle of Roman werke ouerwarde to the Scottisþe, in whom Galoway is conteyned; of whom Beda spekethe, libro iij, capitulo iiþ, seyenge, Seynte Ronyon converted þe sowþe Pictes. And at the laste the Saxones causeþe that coste to perteyne to the province of Northumberlond, vn til Kinadius the son of Alpinus, kynge of Scottes, destroyenþe the Pictes, made þat territory which is betwene Twede and the Scottisþe to longe to his realme.
Beda, libro primo, capitulo primo. And in processe of tyme the Scottes, takenge to theyme Reuda of Yrlond to theire gouernoure, whiche londe is nye to the Scottes, wente furþe and toke to theyme sectes, what thro marte other faþor, nye to the Pictes, at the northþe parte of an arme of the see,

---

1 i-medled, a.
2 seþe þat Pikes, a., Cx.
3 þerste, Cx.
4 þere þey wonede added in MS. (not in a. or Cx.)
5 Added from a. and Cx.
6 Added from Cx.
7 vnto the tyme that, Cx.
8 Added from a. and Cx.
9 So Harl. MS.
runt, ad septentrionalem seilicet\(^1\) partem sinus maris, qui ab occidente in terram longo spatio\(^2\) irruptens\(^3\) Britones antiquitus secernebat a Pictis.\(^4\) A quo duce Reuda Scoti vocabantur Dalreudini;\(^5\) nam lingua eorum \(da\)l partem significat.\(^6\) Giral dus, distinctione prima. Picti, quia uxores quas de Britonibus habere non poterant de Scotis\(^7\) Hiberniensibus obtinuerant,\(^8\) eos\(^9\) ad cohabitantum allexerunt; terramque maritimam, ubi mare angustum est, que nunc Galwodia dicitur, eis\(^10\) concesserunt. Marianus.\(^11\) Apud Argayl\(^12\) applicuerunt Scoti,\(^13\) qui et Hibernienses, quod sonat Latine marco Scotorum,\(^14\) eo quod Scoti ibidem\(^15\) applicarent\(^16\) ad faciendum damma Britannis; vel quia locus ille proximior est\(^17\) Hibernicis ad applicandum.\(^18\) Beda, libro primo.\(^20\) Et sic Scoti tertiam in Britannia\(^21\) post Britones et Pictos gentem addiderunt. Ranulfus.\(^22\) Tandem Saxones contra\(^23\) Scotos et Pictos a Britonibus invitati, expulsis Britonibus usque in Cambriam,\(^24\) terram paulatim occupantes, et usque ad mare Scoticum fines suos dilatantes,\(^25\) quartam in insula gentem fecerunt.

---

\(^1\) seilicet\) om. Gale.
\(^2\) spatia\) om. C. (not D.)
\(^3\) irruptentis, C.; irruptentes, Gale; erumpens, D.
\(^4\) C.D. add.; \(ubi\) erat et civitas Britonum Alclud.
\(^5\) Darondini, A.; Dareudini, B.
\(^6\) A . . . significat\) om. C.D.; signet, B.
\(^7\) Scoti, A.
\(^8\) obtinuerunt, C.D.
\(^9\) eos\) om. E.
\(^10\) eisdem, C. (not D.)
\(^11\) Mariantus, E.
\(^12\) Aarail, B., Gale.
\(^13\) Scotici, A.
\(^14\) Scotiaorum, A.
\(^15\) ibi, C.D.
\(^16\) applicuerunt, C. (not D.)
\(^17\) est\) om. A.B.
\(^18\) est . . . applicandum\) et affinis est Hibernice, C.D.

---

passage: "Ranulfus. Seu quia " Scoti super Pictos locum illum " occupavere iecum jam diecur. " Extinuatur autem Galwedia ab " illo famoso maris sinu ubi quon- " dam urbs Alcludi feraer, ubi et " Severus vallum fecerat, qui etiam " solebat secernere Britones a Pictis " [usque ad mare Scoticam, quod " Scotice Forth diecur, curren- " que juxta oppidum de Scrivelyn], " usque ad flumen Tae regna Sco- " torum et Anglorum solebat divi- " dere." The words in brackets added from D.

\(^20\) Alfridus, C.D.
\(^21\) in Brit. tertiam, B.
\(^22\) Ranulfus\) om. C.D.
\(^23\) contra\) quasi ad expugnandum, B.
\(^24\) Wallius, C.D.
\(^25\) et . . . dilatantes\) om. A.B.
side of \textit{pat} arme of \textit{pe} see \textit{pat} brekep in to the ilound in \textit{pe} west side, \textit{pat} departed in olde tyme bytwene Britouns and Pictes. Of \textit{pis} duke Reuda \textit{pe} Scottes hadde \textit{pe} name, and were \textit{1} i-cleped Dalreudynes, as it were Re\textit{da}\textsuperscript{2} his part, for in here speche a part is i-cleped \textit{dal}. \textit{Giral}dus, \textit{distinctione prima}. \textit{Pe} Pictes \textit{my}\textsuperscript{3}te have noon\textsuperscript{8} wyfes of Bretonys, but \textit{pey} toke hem wife\textit{es} of\textit{Irish} Scottes, and byhete hem faire forto wonye wip hem, and graunted hem a lond by \textit{pe} see side; \textit{pe} pe see is narwe\textsuperscript{3} \textit{pat} lond now hatte Galwey. \textit{Marian}us. Irish Scottes londede at Argoyl\textsuperscript{4}, \textit{pat} is Scottene Clyf, for Scottes londede per forto harmye\textsuperscript{6} \textit{pe} Britouns, oper for \textit{pat} place is next to Irlond forto come in\textsuperscript{7} to Britayne. \textit{Beda}. And so the Scottes after Bretonys and Pictes made \textit{pe} pridde manere of\textsuperscript{8} peple wonyng in Bretonys. \textit{R.} \textit{Banu}e after \textit{pat} come\textsuperscript{9} Saxouns at \textit{pe} pruyenge of \textit{pe} Britouns, to helpe\textsuperscript{10} a\textsuperscript{2}enst \textit{pe} Scottes and \textit{pe} Pictes; and \textit{pe} Britouns were i-putte out anoon to Wales, and Saxons occupied \textit{pe} lond litel and litel and efte more and more, and\textsuperscript{11} \textit{strait}\textsuperscript{12} anon to \textit{pe} Scottische see; and so Saxons made \textit{pe} which, brekenge yp in to the londe from the weste in a grete space, departede in olde tyme the Britouns from the Pictes; of \textit{whiche} duke, Reuda by name, the Scottes were callede Dalreudini; for \textit{dal} in the langage of theymne signifiethe parte. \textit{Gaufridus},\textsuperscript{13} \textit{distinctione prima}. The Pictes, hauenge not licence to marwe with the do\textsuperscript{2}ters of Britones, mariede with the Scottes of Yrlonde, movenge theym to inhabite that londe with theym, and graunte to theymne the londe in the costes nye to the see, where the see is not brode and large, callede now Galawe. \textit{Marian}us. The Scottes londed, f.\textsuperscript{14} 76. b. otherwise callede men of Yrlonde, at a place callede Argail, which sowndethe in Englishe, the brynke of Scottes, in that the Scottes did londe per to do harme to the Britones, other elies for cause that place was most nye to men of Yrlonde to londe at. \textit{Beda}. And so the Scottes broughte to Englonde the thridde peple, after Britones and Pictes. \textit{R.} \textit{And} at the laste the Saxons desirede to inhabite that londe of the Britones ageyne the Scottes and Pictes, the Britones expulsede in to Wales, occupiede that londe to the

\begin{itemize}
\item \textsuperscript{1} \textit{webe}, MS.
\item \textsuperscript{2} \textit{Reuda}, a.
\item \textsuperscript{3} \textit{no}, a.
\item \textsuperscript{4} \textit{narrowe}, a., Cx.
\item \textsuperscript{5} \textit{Argoyl}, a., Cx.
\item \textsuperscript{6} \textit{doo harme} to, Cx.
\item \textsuperscript{7} \textit{alone} in \textit{Britayne}, a.
\item \textsuperscript{8} \textit{of} \textsuperscript{1} om., a.
\item \textsuperscript{9} \textit{comebe}, a.; \textit{come the}, Cx.
\item \textsuperscript{10} \textit{helpe hem}, Cx.
\item \textsuperscript{11} \textit{and} \textsuperscript{1} om., a. and Cx. (the latter has other omissions.)
\item \textsuperscript{12} \textit{strait}, a.
\item \textsuperscript{13} The true reference is to Giral.
\item De \textit{Inst. Princ.} lib. 1. c. 6.
\end{itemize}
Beda, libro quinto, capitolo nono.\(^1\) Quia Angli seu Saxones a Germania originem duxerunt, hactenus a vicina gente Britonum corrupte Germani\(^2\) nuncupatur. Ranulphus.\(^3\) Veruntamen circa annum Domini octingentesimum Egbertus rex Westsaxonum jussit omnes indigenas vocari Anglos. Alfridus. Dani denuo ducentis ferme annis, a tempore scilicet\(^4\) Egberti usque ad tempora Sancti Edwardi, terram conterentes, quintam in insula gentem fecerunt; sed et\(^5\) illi postmodum defecerunt.\(^6\) Postremo Normanni sub duce Willemo, subjugatis Anglis, terram usque hodie possidentes, sex-tam in insula gentem fecerunt. Sed et Flandrenses,\(^7\) tempore regis Henrici,\(^8\) in magna copia juxta\(^9\) Mailros ad orientalem Angliæ plagam habitationem pro tempore accipientes, septimam in insula gentem fecerunt.\(^10\) Jubente tamen eodem rege\(^11\) ad occidentalem Walliae partem apud Haverford\(^12\) sunt translati. Ranulphus.\(^13\) Sicque\(^14\) Britania, modo\(^15\) deficientibus omnino Danis et Pictis, his quinque\(^16\) nationibus habitatur in presenti, videlicet,\(^17\) Scotis in Albania, Britonibus in Cam-

---

\(^1\) Reference omitted in D.
\(^2\) Germani, Gale; Germani, D.
\(^3\) Reference added from B, Gale.
\(^4\) scilicet, om. C.D.
\(^5\) et\] om. C.D.
\(^6\) evenerant, C.D.
\(^7\) Flandres, A.
\(^8\) Henrici regis prius, A.B.D., Gale.
\(^9\) juxta\] om. E.
\(^10\) Sed . . . fecerunt\] om. C. (not D.)
\(^11\) idem Flandreses, add. C.D.
\(^12\) Haverforth, A.
\(^13\) Ranulphus om. C.D.
\(^14\) Itaque, C.D.
\(^15\) modo\] om. C.D.
\(^16\) Danis Pictis hisque, B.
\(^17\) Added from A., Gale.
fourpe manere men\textsuperscript{1} in pe ilonde of Bretayne. \textit{Beda, libro quinto, capitulo quinti.}\textsuperscript{2} For Saxons and Anglis come out of Germania, \textit{\textsuperscript{3}et som Bretouns pat wonep nygh clepe\textsuperscript{5} hem shortly\textsuperscript{8} Germans.} R. Notheles aboute pe \textit{\textsuperscript{3}ere of oure Lord ey\textsuperscript{7}te houndred, Egbertus, kyng of West Saxon, commandede and het clepe\textsuperscript{4} alle manere men of pe londe\textsuperscript{5} Englishe men. \textit{Alfridus.} \textit{\textsuperscript{9}panne after pat pe Danes pursued pe lond, aboute a two hundred \textit{\textsuperscript{3}ere, pat is to menyngye from pe forseide Egbertes tyme anou to Seint Edwardes tyme, and made pe fifte manere peple in pe ilond, bot pey fai\textsuperscript{6}lede afterward. \textit{At pe laste come Normans vnder duke William his tyme,\textsuperscript{6} and suduwede Englische men, and \textit{\textsuperscript{3}it holdep\textsuperscript{7} pe londe ; and pey made pe sixte peple in pe ilonde. But in pe firste kyng Henries\textsuperscript{8} tymes come many Flemmynges and fenge a wonyng place for a tyme bysides Mailros in pe west side of Engeland, and made pe sevenpe peple in pe ilond. Nopeles by heste of pe same kyng, pey were i-houe penmes and i-putte\textsuperscript{9} to Hauerforde his side, [in pe west side]\textsuperscript{10} of Wales. [R.]}\textsuperscript{11} And so now in Brytayne, Danes and Pictes fai\textsuperscript{6}led al out, and fyue naciosn wonep \textit{\textsuperscript{2}erymyne; pat beep Scottes in Albania, pat is Scotlond, Britouns in Cambray, pat is Wales, but pat Flemmynges wonep \textit{\textsuperscript{2}rynne is in} West Wales, and

Scottisse costes and see, so they brou\textsuperscript{7}hete in to that londe the iiij\textsuperscript{th}e nacion. \textit{Beda, libro quinto, capitulo nono.} And for cause Englische men other Saxones toke theire originalle of Germanye, \textit{\textsuperscript{3}itte thei be caldele shor\textsuperscript{6}ely Germaini of the nye peple of Britones.} R. And abowte the viij\textsuperscript{.} yere of grace Egbertus kyng of Weste Saxones commandede alle the inhabitatores of that londe to be caldele Englishe men. \textit{Alfridus.} After the tymes of Egberte by ij\textsuperscript{.} yere foloenge allemoste, the Danes entrenge in to that yle brou\textsuperscript{8}hete the v\textsuperscript{th}e peple in to hit vn to the tymes of Seynte Edwarde, but thei failede afterwarde. After that the Normannes with William Conqueroure subduenge Englische men to theym, hauenge that londe in possession vn to this tyme, brou\textsuperscript{6}hete the vij\textsuperscript{th}e peple to that yle. But after that men of Flaundres toke to theym an inhabitacion at Mailros, the este plage of Englundle, with a grete multitude, in the tyme of kyng Henr\textsuperscript{7}y the firste, and brou\textsuperscript{9}hete the vij\textsuperscript{th}e peple in to Englundle as for a seleone and tyme. But after that thei were remo\textsuperscript{1}vede

\begin{itemize}
\item \textsuperscript{1} of men, a., Cx.
\item \textsuperscript{2} nono, Cx.
\item \textsuperscript{3} So a. and Cx.; clepe\textsuperscript{9} shortly be, MS.
\item \textsuperscript{4} baddde men to calie, Cx.
\item \textsuperscript{5} So a.; londe of, MS.
\item \textsuperscript{6} his tyme] om. e. and Cx., probably rightly.
\item \textsuperscript{7} kepe they, Cx.
\item \textsuperscript{8} Henry his tyme, a.
\item \textsuperscript{9} put thens and dryuen, Cx.
\item \textsuperscript{10} Added from a. and Cx.
\item \textsuperscript{11} Reference added from Cx.
\item \textsuperscript{12} is in] that is, Cx.
\end{itemize}

1 Slightly altered and transposed in C.D.
2 quoad . . . eventum] om. C.D.
3 defecerunt, B.
4 modo sit agendum] videndum est, C.D.
5 C.D. omits reference; cap. 17°, A. B., Gale. The true reference is to c. 6, as before; C. and D. agree best with Giraldus.
6 aliquando] om. C.D.
7 insula, C.D.
8 omnino, B.; animo, A., Gale.
9 innatus sibi, B.
10 Slightly altered in C.D.; recurrerunt before quibus in B.
11 Convocatosque, E.
12 itaque, C.D.
13 sedebant] sederunt, B.; quibus insidebant, C. (not D.)
14 similiter, C. (not D.) The sentence is slightly varied in these MSS.
15 de, C.D.
Normans and Englischemen [ben] i-medled¹ in alle þe ilond. For it is no doute in stories how and in what manere þe Danes were i-putte away and destroyed out of Bretayne; now it is [to]² declarynge how þe Pictes were destroyed and failled. Giraldus, distinctione prima, capitulo 17. Bretayne was somtyme occupied wip Saxons, and pees was i-made and i-stabled³ wip the Pictes; þanne Scottes⁴ þat come wip the Pictes synde⁵ þat þe Pictes were lasse þan þe Scottes, and ⁶ were nobler of dedes and better men of armes þanne þe Scottes; þanne þe Scottes⁷ turnede to hir kynde⁸ tresouns þat þey vseþ ofte, for in tresoun þey passeþ ⁹ ojer men, and beþ tretours as hit were by kynde. For þey preyed to a feste al þe grete of þe Pictes, and waryed her tyme when þe Pictes were at ese and mery, and hadde wel i-drone, and drewe vp myjhty þat helde vp þe holow benches vnder þe Pictes, and þe Pictes sodenliche an vnware fel oun þe hames into a wonder putfulle,¹⁰ þanne þe Scottes fille on þe Pictes and slowh hem, and lefte noon onlyne;¹¹ and so of þe tweye to Hauerforde, at the weste parte of Wales, thro commannde-mente of þe the same kynge. R. And so by succession of tymes, the Danes faileng in Englonde, and Pictes, now Albania is inhabite with Scottes, Wales with Britones, and men of Flaundres in Weste Wales, Normannes and Englishe men mixte in alle the yle of Briteyne. As in the subtracion of Danes as vn to the maner and chaunce þer of of croniclers make noo mencion, but hit schal be determinate consequently how the Pictes failede. Giraldus, distinctione prima. Briteyne occupiede some tymne with the Saxones, and a stable fidelite made with the Pictes, the Scottes whiche were ioyned to the Pictes seunge the Pictes thauþhe fewe in novembr, nevertheless thei were myþhty men of armes and bolde of herte, desirede the capiteynes of the Pictes and mony other to the feste, whiche vseenge a cautele made the seetes in theire festes to be movable with pynnes of woode; and when the Pictes ²afe attendaunce to surfette and ryette, the Scottes toke aweye the nailes other pynnes, and so the Pictes felle bakwarde, the legges of theyne beenge vpwarde, in to holoo places vnder the seetes, and so thei were alle sleyne. And so of ij, bolde peple, the more bolde

¹ i-medled, a.; ben men medled, Cx.
² Added from a. and Cx.
³ stablysshyd, Cx.
⁴ the (sic) Scottes, a., Cx.
⁵ siȝe, a.; sawe, Cx., who varies the sentence.
⁶ and] om., a.
⁷ Cx. adds, hauyngr therof enuye.
⁸ naturel, Cx.
⁹ tresoun ... apasseþ, a.
¹⁰ Sentence varied in Cx.
¹¹ only, a.; alyne, Cx.

---

MONACHI CESTRENSIS, LIB. 1. 155

Trevisa. MS. Harl. 2261. f. 76. a.
Altera vero gens Scotorum longe impar, ex tali pro-
ditione emolumentum quodammodo consecuta, totam terram illam, quam a nomine suo Scotiam vocave-
runt, usque hodie possident. Quibus eo tempore, diebus videlicet Edgari regis, Kynadius Alpini filius præsidens Pictaviam invasit, Pictos delevit, sexies Saxoniam debellavit, et terram omnem a mari Scotico usque ad flumen Twedæ usurpavit.

CAP. LIX.

De incolarum linguis.

*Ranulphus.* Ut patet ad sensum, quot in hac insula sunt gentes, tot gentium sunt linguae; Scoti tamen et Wallani, uptote cum aliis nationibus imper-mixti, ad purum paene pristinum retinent idioma; nisi forsan Scoti ex convictu Pictorum, cum quibus olim confœderati cohabitant, quippiam contraxerint.

1 modis omnibus, add. C.D.
2 tali om. C.D.
3 emolumenta, C. (not D.)
4 a mari usque ad mare, add. C.D.
5 dixerunt, C.D.
6 in hodie aum dieum obtinenter, C.D.
7 diebus . . . regis om. C.D.
8 Linaldus, B. ; Kinaldus, A.
9 possidens, Gale, absurdly.
10 omnem] dudum Saxonibus sub-
actam, quæ est, C.D.
11 flumen Twedæ] Mailros, que est in ripa Twedæ fluminis, C.D.
12 So Gale ; moribus, E.
13 Ranulphus] om. A.B.D.
14 Ut . . . sensum] om. C.D.
15 in . . . insula] incolarum, B.
16 So E., Gale ; Walliei, B.
17 forte, B.
18 a, C.D.
19 habitabant, B.
peple pe better werryour was \(^1\) hollyche destroyed. Bote pe oere, pat beep pe Scottes, pat beep traytours, wel \(^2\) valliche to pe Pictes, took profi\(z\)t by pat false tresoun; for pei took al pat lond, and holdep it \(\ddot{z}\)it hider to, and clepep hit Scotlond after here \(^3\) owne name. Pat tyne, pat was in kynge Edgar his tyne, Kynadyus Alpynus his son was ledere of Scottes, and werred in Picten londe,\(^4\) and destroyed pe Pictes; he werred sixe sipes in Saxon, and took al pat \(^5\) lond pat is bitwene Twede and pe Scottische see, wip wrong and wip strenge.

*De incolarum linguis. Capitolium quinquagesimum nonum.*

As it is i-knowe how meny manere peple beep in pis ilond, jere beep also so many dyuers\(^6\) longages and tonges; nopeles Walsche men and Scottes, pat beep nou\(z\); i-medled \(^7\) wip oper naciauns, holdep wel nyh \(^8\) hir firste longage and speche; but \(\ddot{z}\)iif the \(^9\) Scottes pat were somtyme confederat and wonede wip

peple was utterly destroyede. That other peple of Scottes hauenge a grete avayle by the deth of theyme, haue that londe in possession whom thei calle Scottande vn to this tyne. And also Kinadius, the son of Alpinus, entrede in to the centre of the Pictes in the tyne of kynge Edgare, and destroyede theyme, [and] \(\ddot{z}\)htenge soore vj. tymes ageyne the Saxones, presnmede all the grownde from the Scottisse vn to the water of Twide departenge now Englonde from Scottelonde.

*Of the langage of the inhabitatores of Englonde.
Capitulum quinquagesimum nonum.*

Hrr may be schewede clerely to the wytte that there were so mony diuersites of langages in that londe as were diuersites of naciones. But Scottes and men of Wales kepe their propre langage, as men impermixte with other naciones; but peranenture Scottes haue taken somme parte

---

1. *werriours were*, Cx.
2. *So Cx.; were wel, MS.*
3. *So a. ß.; theyr, Cx.; his, MS.*
4. *Pictelond, a., Cx.*
5. *pe, a., Cx.*
7. *melled beb, a.*
8. *kepe nuygh yet, Cx.*
9. *yet tho, Cx.*

There is much confusion of numbers generally, and of the pronouns especially, in the MSS. of Trevisa's text.
in sermone.\textsuperscript{1} Flandrenses vero, qui occidua Walliae incolunt, dimissa jam barbarie,\textsuperscript{2} Saxonice satis proloquuntur. Angli quoque, quamquam ab initio tripartitam sortirentur linguam, austrinam scilicet, mediterraneam, et borealem, veluti ex tribus Germanicis populis procedentes, ex commixtione\textsuperscript{3} tamen primo cum Danis, deinde cum Normannis,\textsuperscript{3} corrupta in multis patria\textsuperscript{4} lingua peregrinos jam captant boatus\textsuperscript{5} et garritus. Hæc quidem nativae linguae corruptio provenit hodie multum\textsuperscript{6} ex duobus; quod videlicet pueri in scholis contra morem cæterarum nationum a primo\textsuperscript{7} Normannorum adventu, derelicto proprio vulgari, construere Gallice compelluntur;\textsuperscript{8} item quod filii nobilium ab ipsis cunabulorum crepundis ad Gallicum idioma\textsuperscript{9} informantur. Quibus\textsuperscript{10} profecto\textsuperscript{11}
pe Pictes drawe somwhat after hir speche; but pe Flemmynges pat wonep in pe weste side of Wales hauep i-left her straungue speche and spekep Saxoniche i-now. Also Englishme men, pey hadde from the bygynynge pe manere speche, nor-perne, sow-perne, and middel speche in pe myddel of pe lond, as pey come of pe manere peple of Germania, nopeles by comyxtioun and mellynge firste wip Danes and afterward wip Normans, in meny pe contray longage is apayred, and som vsep straungue wlaftiyng, chiternyng, and garrynge grisbaying. This apayrynge of pe burpe of pe8 tunge is bycause of twelve pinges; oon is for children in scole azenst pe vsga and manere of alle opere nacioons bee compelled for to leue hire owne langage, and for to construe hir lessouns and here pynges in Frenshe, and so pey hauep sep pe Normans come first in to Englond. Also gentil men children bee i-tauzi to speke Frenshe from pe tympe pat pey bee i-rokked in here cradell, and kunne speke and playe wip a childes broche; and vplondisshe men wil likne hym selfe to gentil men, and fondep wip greet besynesse for to speke Frensc, for to be i-tolde of. Trevisa. Dis manere was moche i-vsed to for firste

in their communicacion of the langage of Pictes, with whom thei dwelde some tympe, and were confederate with themy. Men of Flaundres that inhabit the weste partes of Wales leverage the speche of barbre speke after the Saxones. And thanke the men of Englonde hade in the bygynynge a langage tripartite, as of the sowthe partie of Englonde, of the myddelle partie of Englonde, and of the northe partie of Englonde, procede as of thre peple of Germanye, borowe moche in their speche now, as of thero the comtixtion with the Danes and after that with the Normannes. The corrupcion of that natife langage is causede moche of ij. thynges, that is to say, childer sette to schole after the commenge of Normannes in to Englonde were compelled to constru in Frenshe ageyne the consuctude of opere naciones. In so moche that the childer of nowble men, after that thei were taken from the cradelle, were sette to lerne the speche of Frenche men. Wherefore charles seenge that, willenge to be like to them, laborede to speke Frenche with alle their myyste. Where hit is to be hade

1 spoken lyke to Saxons, Cx.
2 [pei] added from a. and Cx.
3 sow-born, norborn, a.
4 many thynges, Cx.
5 So a. and Cx.; strong, MS.
6 whatflyng, Cx.
7 grisbityng, a., Cx.
8 of pe] om. a.; apparynyng of the langage, Cx.
9 sebbe be, a.
10 Sentence much varied in Cx
11 forto, a.
12 Sentence abbreviated and much varied in Cx.
13 So Hart. MS., but perhaps as of should be cancelled.
rurales homines assimilari volentes, ut per hoc spectabiliores videantur, francigenare satagunt omni nisu. Ubi nempe mirandum videtur, quomodo nativa et propria Anglorum lingua, in unica insula coartata, pronunciatione ipsa sit tam diversa; cum tamen Normannica lingua, quae adventitia est, univoca maneat penes cunctos. De predicta quoque lingua Saxonica tripartita, quae in paucis adhuc agrestibus vix remansit, orientales cum occiduis tanquam sub eodem celi climate lineati plus consonant in sermone quam boreales cum austrinis. Inde est quod Mercii sive Mediterranei Angli, tanquam participantes natu-

---

1 in quibus merito genialis lingua remaneret, pro posse zelantes, C.D.  
2 francigenari, Gale.  
3 satagunt] om. B.  
4 Slightly varied in C.D.  
5 nempe] om. B.  
6 est, B.D.  
7 quod, C.D.  
9 Transposed in C.  
10 ipsa] om. C.D.  
11 lingua] om. C.D.  
12 manet, A.  
13 pene penes, E. (not A.B.C.D., Gale.)  
14 silvestribus, C.D.  
15 cum occiduis] om. B.  
16 limitati, C. (not D.)
deth and is sitte sumdel i-chauanged; for Johan Cornwaile, a maister of gramer,3 changed pe lore in gramer scale and construccyon of Fresche in to Englishe; and Richard Pen-criche lerned pe4 manere techynge of hym and of5 opere men of Pencrich; so pat now, pe zere of oure Lorde a powsand pre hundred and foure score and fyue, and of pe secounde kyng Richard after pe conquest nyne, in alle6 pe gramer scoles of Engelond, children leuëp Fresche and construep and lernep an Englishe, and hauëp pryby anauntage in oon side and disanauntage in anoñer side; here anauntage is, pat pey lernep her gramer in lasse tyme ðan children were i-wöned to doo; disanauntage is pat now children of gramer scale connep7 na more Fresche ðan can hir lift heele, and ðat is harme for hem and pey schulle passe þe see and tranaille in straunge landes and in many oþer places. Also gentil men hauëp now moche i-left for to teche here children Fresche.  

B. Hit semeþ a greet wonder how Englishe, [pat is pe burþe tonge of Englishe]8 men and her owne langage and tonge, is so dyuere of sown9 in þis oon ilond, and þe langage of Normandië is comlynge of anoñer londe, and hath oon manere soum among alle men þat specke hit ariʒt in Engeland.10 

Trevisa. Neuerþeles þere is as many dyuers manere Fresche in þe reem of Fraunce as is dyuers manere Englishe in þe reem of Engeland. B. Also of þe forsaiþe Saxon tonge þat is i-deled aprë, and is abide searsliche wip fewe vplondishe

in menuyyle that the propur langage of Englishe men MS. HARL. 

scholde be made so diuerse in oon lytel yle in pronun- 

cion, sythe the langage of Normannes is oon and vnuocate 

almooste amongst theyme alle. But as of the tripartite 

langage of Saxones, whiche remaynethe nowe but amonge 

fewe men, the11 weste men of Englonde sownde and acorde 

more with the men of the este of that londe as vnder the 

same clyme of heuyyn, then the men of the northe with 

men of the sowthe. Wherefore hit is that Englishe men of þe 

Marches of the mydelle partes of Englonde, takeynge as by

1 to fore þe firste moreyn, a.  
2 Sir Johan, Cx.; who greatly 
3 varies the remainder of the extract 
from Trevisa.  
4 gramyre, a.  
5 þat, a.  
6 of] om. a.  
7 in al, a.; and alle, MS.  
8 So a.; comeþ, MS.  
9 Added from a.  
10 soum, a.  

10 Cx. amplifies the sentence thus: 

“And the langage of Normandy is 

comen out of another londe, and 

hath one minor soume among al 

men that speketh it in Englund; 

“for a man of Kente, southern, 

“westen, and northern men 

“Freshe in lyke in soume and 

“speche; but they can not speke 

“theyr Englysh so.” 

11 Cx. amplifies the sentence thus: 

“the the, Harl, MS.  

VOL. II.
ram\textsuperscript{1} extremorum, collaterales lingua\textsuperscript{2} arcticam et antarcticam melius intelligent quam adinvicem se intelligunt\textsuperscript{3} jam\textsuperscript{4} extem. \textit{Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro tertio. Tota\textsuperscript{6} lingua Northimbrorum,\textsuperscript{7} maxime\textsuperscript{8} in Eboraco, ita stridet incondita,\textsuperscript{9} quod nos australes eam vix intelligere possumus; quod puto propter viciniam\textsuperscript{10} barbarorum contigisse, et etiam proper jugem remotionem regum\textsuperscript{11} Anglorum\textsuperscript{12} ab illis partibus, qui magis ad austrum diversati,\textsuperscript{13,14} si quando boreales partes adeunt,\textsuperscript{15} non nisi magno auxiliatorum manu pergunt.\textsuperscript{16} Ranulphus.\textsuperscript{17} Frequentioris autem moræ in austrinis partibus\textsuperscript{18} quam in borealibus causa potest esse gleba feracior,\textsuperscript{19} plebs numerosior, urbes\textsuperscript{20} insigniores, portus accommodationes.

\textsuperscript{1} naturam] om. E.
\textsuperscript{2} lingua\textsuperscript{2} om. C. (not D.)
\textsuperscript{3} So D.; intelligent, A.E., which, as well as Gale, have intelligent above.
\textsuperscript{4} num, B.
\textsuperscript{5} Quod testatur, add. C.D.
\textsuperscript{6} inquit, add. C.D.
\textsuperscript{7} Northumbrorum, B.; Northumbrie, D.
\textsuperscript{8} et maxime, C.D.
\textsuperscript{9} inognita, B.
\textsuperscript{10} vicinatatem, C. (not D.); vicinan, A.
\textsuperscript{11} quondam, add. C.D.
\textsuperscript{12} modo Normannorum, add. C.D.
\textsuperscript{13} sunt versati, B.; conversati, C. (not D.)
\textsuperscript{14} domestico militum contenti numero, add. C.D.
\textsuperscript{15} adierunt, D.
\textsuperscript{16} manu pergunt] comitatu vadunt, C.D.
\textsuperscript{17} Ranulphus] om. A.B.C. The latter part is as follows in C.D.: "Cujus quidem demorationis regum in austrinis partibus causa solet esse quod ad austrum gleba sit feracior, plebs numerosior, aer temperator, urbes insigniores, et plures portus ad necessaria alia unde conveniendo accommodatres, utensilia denique, suppellectilia, et quicquid humano usu congruit prestantius ministrantur."
\textsuperscript{18} partibus austrinis, B.
\textsuperscript{19} ferocior, A.
\textsuperscript{20} et urbes, A.
men is greet wonder; for men of pe est wiþ men of pe west,¹ as it were vndir pe same partie of heuene, acordeþ more in sownynge of speche þan men of þe norþ wiþ men of þe soup; þerfore it is þat Merci, þat beþ men of myddel England, as it were parteners of þe endes, vnderstondeþ bettre þe side langages, norþerne and souþerne, þan norþerne and souþerne vnderstondeþ eþper oper.² Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro tertio. Al þe longage of þe Norþhumbres, and specialliche at York, is so scharp, slitting, and frotyng and vnschape, þat we souþerne men may þat longage vnnep vnderstonde. I trewe þat þat is bycause þat þey beþ nyþ to straunge men and nacionns þat speþe þrongliche,⁴ and also bycause þat þe kyngeþ of England woneþ alwey fær from þat cuntrey; þor þey beþ more i-torned to þe soup contray, and þif þey goþ to þe norþ contray þey goþ wiþ greet [help]⁵ and streugþþ. þe cause þyþ þey beþ more in þe soup contray þan in þe norþ, [is] for hit⁶ may be þetter corne londe, more peþe, more noble citees, and more profitable hauenes.

participacion the nature of boþe extremeties, vnderstonde MS. HARL. the langages collateralle arthike and antharthike better þen the extremites vnderstonde þeyme selþe to geder. Willel- mus de Pontificibus, libro tertio. Alle þe langage of men of Northumbrelonde, and specially in Yorke, sowndethe so þat men of the sowþe cuntre may vmmethe vnderstonde the langage of þeyme, which þyngþe may be causede for the nye langage of men of barbre to þeyme, and also for the grete distaunce of kyngeþ of Englonde from hyt, which vse moste the souþe partes of þat londe, returnenge not in to the costes of the norþe but with a grete multi- tude. Also an other cause may be assignede, for the sowþe partes be more habundante in fertilito then the norþe partes, moo peþe in nowmbre, hauenge also more plesaunþe portes.

¹ west is, MS. (not a.).² Sentence slightly varied in Cx.³ aliens, a. ß.⁴ straungeliche, ß and Cx.; which seems right, but the extract from William is so altered, that Caxton’s critical authority is here very slight.⁵ he, a. ß.⁶ Added from a.⁷ for hit] om. a. ß.; is by cause that ther is, Cx.
CAP. LX.

De incollarum moribus. 1

Giral dus. Significatis superius 2 utcunque Wallanorum et Scotorum moribus, jam de ritibus permixti Anglorum populi erit perorandum. Giral dus in Itinerario. Et quidem gens illa Flandrensis 3 ad occidentem Walliae, quasi Anglica jam convictu 4 est effecta; fortis 5 est et robusta, bellicco conflictu 6 Cambrensis infestissima, lanificiis et 7 mercionuus usitatissima, 8 ad subeundum terrae marisque pericula pro lucro captando promptissima, vicissim pro loco et tempore nunc ad arma nunc ad aratram accommoda. De qua 9 gente mirandum 10 videtur, quod in armis arietum dextris carne nudatis non assis sed elixis 11 futura prosiciunt, 12 præterita, et 13 praesentia; sed 14 loco absentia, quasi quodam spiritu fatidico 15 et arte miranda, pacis et guerræ signa, regni statum, cedens 16 et adulteria, rimularum 17 et notularum indicii certissime 18 declarat. 19 Ranulphus. Reliqua vero gens Anglorum Loegriam

1 De gentis hujus moribus, A.; De gestis et moribus, C.; De gentis hujus terrae moribus, D.; B. omisst title.
2 Digestis in superioribus, C.D.
3 Flandrensis] added in margin in C. in another ink; omitted in D. 4 conventus, B.
5 quasi . . . fortis] apud Roos et Haverford dudum transmissa origine Fladrensis, convictu jam Anglica est effecta gens fortis, &c., C.D.
6 belli conflictu assidue, C.D.
7 et] om. A.E.
8 lanificiis . . . usitatissima] om. C.

1 De qua] Hae autem de, C.D.
2 mirandum] notabile mihi, C.D.
3 elixis, A.; elixis, B.; tam, ins. C.D.
4 quam, ins. C.D.; praesentia et præterita, A.B.
5 etiam, ins. C.
6 sed] om. A.
7 prophetico, C.; raticido, MSS. 8 and Gale.
9 rimularum] rimularum (rimaetum, D.) quarundam, C.D.
11 declarant, C. (not D.)
De gentibus hujus moribus. Capitulum sexagesimum.

Giraldus in Itinerario. For pe maneres and pe doyng of Walsche men and of Scottes beeth to for honde somdel declared, now of pe maneres and of pe doynges of pe medled⁴ peple of Englonde nedep forto telle. But pe Flemynge pat beeth in pe westside of Wales beeth now by turnes as though they were Englishe by cause of compaynaye wip Ennglishe men, and they beeth stalworpe² and stronge to riȝte, and beeth pe moste enemies pat Walsche men hap,³ and vseþ marchaundysye and clopynge, and beeth ful redy to putte hem self to auentures and to perill in pe see and in pe⁴ lond, by cause⁵ of greet wynnyng, and beeth redy for to goo somtyyme to pe plow;² and somtyyme to dedes of armes whan tyme and place axep. Hit semep of pis⁶ men a grete wonder⁷ pat in a boon of a wetheres riȝt schuldrre, whan pe fleeshe is aweye i-sode⁸ and nouȝt i-rosted, pey knoweþ what hap be do, is i-doo, and schal be doo, and as hit were by a spirite of prophecie and a wonderfull craft pey telleþ what me dop in fer contraries, tokens of pees and of werre, pe staat of pe reene,⁹ sleygne of men, and spousbreche; soche pey declareþ certeynliche by schewynge of tokenes and of synes¹⁰ pat beeth in suche a schulder boon. R. But pe Ennglishe men pat woneþ in Englonde, pat beeth i-

Of the maneres of the peple of hit.

Capitulum sexagesimum.

A declaracion made in processe precedent as of pe maneres of men of Wales and of Scottes, we schalle determinate of the rites of the permixte peple of Englonde. Giraldus in Itinerario. And that peple of Flaundres f. 77. a.

which inhabe the weste partes of Wales is made now in disposition like to the peple of Englonde, beenge myȝty and stronge in conflitctes and in batelle, contrarious to Walsche men, vsenge moche wolle and marchaundise, prompte to take on theim perelle of the see either of the londe for lucre, nowc applieng theyme to labour, as for the place and tyme, and soone to batelle. R. That other peple of Ennglishe men inhabente Loegria, as of yles permixte,
inhabitans, utpote insulana, permixta, et a primitivis scatebris longius derivata, proprio motu etiam sine alieno hortatu facile flectitur ad opposita; adeo quoque quietis impatiens, curae aemula, otium nauseat; (Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro tertio;) ut cum hostes externos funditus depresserit, ipsa mutuo se conterat, et more vacui stomachi agat in seipsam. Ranulphus. Gens tamen australis quietior et mitior, borealis vero mobilior et ferocior, gens media participii vicem tenet. Item gens Angligena praeceteris guæ dedita, in victu et vestitu multum sumptuosa; quod quidem vitium a diebus Hardekanuti regis Danici, qui bina bis fercula etiam in coenis jussaret apponi, creditur contrassisse. Gens hæc equo et pede expedita; ad omne genus armorum accommoda; in bellicis congressibus, ubi fraus abfuerit,
medled in pe ilond, pat [bep] fer i-spronge from pe welles pat pey spronge of first, wel liȝtliche wip oute entsyngue of ey oper men, by here owne assent torne to contrary dedes. And so5 vnesy, also ful vnpatient of pees, enemy of besynesse, and whatful of6 slupe, (Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro tertio,) pat whan pey hauep destroyed here enemies al to pe grounde, pane pey fiȝtep wip hem self, and sleep euereiche oper, as a voyde stomak and a clene worcep in hit self. [R.]7 Noplanes men of pe soup beep esier and more mylde; and men of pe north be8 more vnsate, more cruel, and more vnesy; pe myddel men beep somdele partyners wip bope: also pey wone9 hem to glotonye more pan oper men, and beep more costlewe in mete and in drynke10 and in clopyngue. Me trowep11 pat pey took pat vye12 of kynge Hardeknute pat was a Dane, for he sette twyes double messe and also at soper.13 Pese men been speedful bope on hors and on foote, able and redy to alle manere dedes of armes, and beep i-wonden14 to haue the victorie and pe maistrie in euerie

be liȝtely declynede thro theire awne mocion vn to thynges MS. HARL. 2261.

---

1 i-medled or medled is generally melled in a.
2 Added from a.
3 places, Cx., who has a few other slight variations.
4 torno, a.
5 So a. and Cx.; Also, MS.
6 on, a.; ful of, Cx.
7 Reference added from Cx.
8 bep, a.
9 see, Cx.; who has also various slight deviations throughout the extract.
10 and in drynk] om. a. and Cx.
11 Me supposeth, Cx.
12 vse, MS. (not a. or Cx.)
13 souer, a.; atdryner and at soper also, Cx. (but the improvement seems to be his own. See the text.)
14 wonte, Cx.
15 So Harl. MS., but the sentence seems a little corrupt.
16 So Harl. MS.
solet lauream reportare. Gens ista\(^1\) curiosa satis, ut noscat et narret\(^2\) mirabilia quae viderit; regiones colluстрat;\(^3\) in solo proprio vix locupletior, in longinquis magis felix. Nova nancisci melius novit, quam hæreditaria conservare. Hinc est quod late per orbem dispersitur, putans sibi patriam omne solum. Gens denique\(^4\) ad omnem idonea industriam; sed ante factum importuna et præceps, post factum sagacior, facile deserit quod incepit. \textit{Pol., libro sexto}.\(^5\) Proinde est quod Eugenius papa dixit, gentem Anglicam\(^6\) ad quaecunque vellet fore idoneam, et caeteris gentibus preferendam,\(^7\) nisi levitas animi impediret. Et sicut Hannibal negabat posse vinci Romanos nisi in patria propria, \textit{ita et}\(^8\) gens Anglica\(^9\) dum peregrinatur invincibilis est, in sedibus propriis facilius\(^10\) expugnatur. \textit{Ranulphius}.\(^11\) Gens\(^12\) ista\(^13\) que sua sunt fastidiens vituperat propria, commendat aliena; de status sui

---

\(^1\) itaque ista, C.D.
\(^2\) narrat, A.B.; aut narrat, D.
\(^3\) réminiscit, C.D.
\(^4\) quaeque, A.B.; itaque, D.
\(^5\) C.D. om. B.
\(^6\) Anglica, B.
\(^7\) Anglica, D.
\(^8\) et \ldots; preferendam] om. C.D.
\(^9\) facilius\] om. E.
\(^10\) Reference added from B. and Gale.
\(^11\) etiam, add. C.D.
\(^12\) ad aliena nescenda sive experienda valde curiosa, add. C.D. See Harleian translation.
strange, lietliche heritage. Wherefore at what and by, konne i-seie. It is spread so wyde and wene p cat cuerich oper londe is hir owne heritage. These men be able to al manere sleipe and witte, but to fore pe dede bloundrynge and lasty, and more wys after pe dede, and leue ofte lietliche what pey haue bygonne. Polycraticon, libro sexto. Perfore Eugenius pe pope seide pat Englishe men were able to do what euere pey wolde, and to be sette and putte to fore alle opere, here pat liet wip lettep. And as Hannibal saide pat pe Romayns myste nonet be overcome but in hir owne cuntray: so Englishe men moye not be overcome in straunge loundes, but in hir owen cuntray pey beet lietliche overcame. R. These men despise hir owne, and preisep oper menis, and vnepe beep apaid wip hir owne estate; what byfallep and somep oper men, pey wollep glad-

victory in batelles, if treason reigne not amonge them. That peple is curious ynowe that hit may knowe, and telle merveilles thynges goenge to oper regions, vnneneth the ryche and fortunate in theire awne londe, but fortunate specially in ferre costes. For hit can purchase better then kepe the propur inheritaunce of them; wherefore the peple of that londe is dispersede a brode thro alle the world, travenge alle the worlde to be a cuntre to them; a peple apte moche to wylenes and decepcon, but importune a fore the dede, levenge lietly a thyng y-begunne. Poliericon, libro vi. Wherefore hit is that Eugenius the pope seide the peple of Englonde apte to every thyng, and to be preferrede a fore peple of other naciones but for inconstance of them; and like as Hannibal denyede the Romans to be overcome but in theire propre cuntre, soe in lyke wise the f. 77. b. peple of Englonde is invincible in other cuntres, and some denieth in theire owne cuntre. R. The peple of Englonde is fulle curious to knowe straunge thynges by experience, depra-vyng their awne thynges [thei] commendeth other straunge.

1 Added from a. and Cx.
2 So Cx.; strange, MS.
3 by, a.
4 peuy, a.
5 oper] om. a. and Cx.
6 heritage] om. a. and Cx.
7 of, a., Cx.
8 ne were that light wytte, Cx., just after.
9 Hanyba, MS.
10 So Harl. MS. at length.
gradu¹ vix unquam contenta, quod alteri congruit
libenter in se transfigurat; unde fit ut vernaculus quod
armigeri est,² armiger quod militis, miles quod ducis,
dux quod regis est in se repræsentat.³ Immo nonnulli⁴
onme genus circueuntes in nullo⁵ genere sunt, omnem
ordinem attemptantes⁶ nullius ordinis sunt.⁷ Nam
in gestu⁸ sunt histriones, in affatu Cicerones,⁹ in con-
victu nebulones, in questu cauponès, in apparatu sunt
tirones, in lucris Argi, in laboribus Tantali, in curis

¹ de . . . gradu] om. B.
² est] om. A.
³ representant, B.
⁴ Unde nonnulli, A.; Gale, A.,
and E. omit omne.
⁵ novo, Gale, badly.
⁶ acceptantes, Gale, badly.
⁷ omnem . . . sunt] added in margin of C.—(D. has them in text).
⁸ gestic, B.
⁹ Citherones or Citherones, MSS.;
Citherones, Gale (for Citherones ?) which however brings out little or
no sense.
lyche take to hem self; þerfore hit is þat a ðeman\(^1\) arrauiep hym as a squyer, a squyer as a knyȝt, a knyȝt as a duke [and]\(^2\) a duke as a kynge. æit som goop a boute to alle manere staate and beþ in noon astat\(^3\), for þey þat wole take eueriche degree beþ of non degré, for in berynge\(^4\) þey beþ menstrualles and heraudes,\(^5\) in talkyng grete spekeres, in etynge and in drynyng greтовounes, in gaderyng of catel hoksters\(^6\) and tawernes, in aray tormentoures, in wynnynges Argi, in traualue Tantaly, in talkyng hede Dedaly, and in beddes Sardanapally, in chirches mamettes, in courtes ponder, onliche in privilege of clergie and in prouendres\(^7\) þey knowlecheþ hem sylf clerkes. *Trevisa.* In wynnynges þey beþ Argy, in traualue Tantaly, in talkyng hede Dedaly, and in beddes Sardanapally. For to vnderstonde þis resoun ariȝt foure wordes [perof]\(^8\) moste be declared, þat þey þese foure, Argi, Tantaly, Dedaly, and Sardanapally; þerfore take þat Argus in an herde, Argus a schippe, a schipman, and a chapman. But here it is more to purpos þat poetes fenynpe on þat was somtyne a ful of eyȝen in eueriche side\(^9\) and heet Argus, so þat þis Argus myȝte see\(^10\) to þore and byynye, vpwarde and dounwarde, and al aboute in eueriche side, and by a manere likenesse of þis Argus, he þat is war and wys, and kon see and be war in eueriche side is i-cleped Argus, and ful of yȝen as Argus was. þan forto speke to meny such he moshte be i-cleped Argi in þe plural nombre. þan in þat cronyke he seip þat þey beþ Argy in wynnyngge, hit is to mene þat þey beþ ware and seþ aboute in every side where wynnyngge may arise. þat oper word is Tantaly; þerfore take hede þat þe poete fenynpe þat Tantalus was a man and slowh\(^11\) his owne sonne, þerfore he was i-dampe to perpetual penance, as þe poete fenynpe þat Tantalus stondenþ\(^12\) alway in a water vp anon to þe\(^13\) ater

---

\(1\) ðymman, a.
\(2\) Added from a.
\(3\) no stat, a.
\(4\) beryne outward, Cx.
\(5\) herowides, Cx.
\(6\) hucksters, Cx.
\(7\) prebendis, Cx.
\(8\) Added from a.
\(9\) So a ; a side, MS.
\(10\) So Cx. ; i-see, MS.
\(11\) slow, a.
\(12\) stondes, a.
\(13\) þe] om. a.
Dædali, in cubilibus Sardanapali, in templis simulacra, in curis tonitrua, solis\(^1\) privilegiis et prebendis clericos se fatentur. Sed et\(^2\) in cunctis passim Angligenis\(^3\) tanta vestium varietas et apparatus\(^4\) multiformitas inolevit, ut neutri jam generis quilibet pene censeatur.\(^5\) De qua re prophetavit quidam sanctus anachorita temporibus\(^6\) regis Egelfredi\(^7\) in hunc modum. *Henricus, libro sexto.*\(^8\) Angli quia proditioni, ebrietati, et negligentiae domus Dei dediti sunt, primo per Danos, deinde\(^9\) per Normannos, tertio per Scotos, quos vilis-

---

\(^{1}\) *solis* om. Gale.  
\(^{2}\) *etiam*, C.D.  
\(^{3}\) *Angligenis* om. Gale.  
\(^{4}\) *multiplicitas ac*, ins. B.  
\(^{5}\) *censeat*, E.  
\(^{6}\) *tempore*, C.  
\(^{7}\) *Egeldredi*, B.; *Egelredi*, D., Gale.  
\(^{8}\) Added in margin of C.  
\(^{9}\) *secundo*, C.D.
brede\(^1\) of pe neppe lippe, and hap all way cuene at his mouph\(^2\) ripe apples and noble fruyt, ne water comep wip ymhe his moup, he is so i-holde vp; and so he stondep in pat array bytwene mete and drynke, and may neppe ete ne drynke, and is an hongred and apirist pat wo is hym on lyne. By a manere likeness of pis Tantalus pey pat doop riȝt nouȝt,phere\(^3\) moche ping is to doo in every side, beþ i-cleped Tantaly. Hit semep pat pis sawe is to mene, in traualle pey beþ Tantaly, for pey doop riȝt nouȝt perta. Pe pridle word is Dedaly; take hede pe Dedalus was a wel sligh\(^4\) man, and by likness of hym men pat beeþ sliȝe beþ i-cleped Dedaly in pe plural nounbre, so it is to mene as hit semep in pis sawe, in takynge hede and in cry\(^5\) pey beþ Dedaly, peat is fel and sly. The ferpe word is [Sardanapalli; perfore take hede pat].\(^6\) Sardanapalli was a kyng, rex Assyriorum, and was ful vnchnast, and by a manere likenesse of hym pey pat beþ swipe vnchnast beþ i-cleped Sardanapally. R. But among alle Englische i-medled to giders is so grete chaungynge and diuersite [of clopyinge and]\(^7\) of array [and so many manere and dynerse shappes, that wel nyghe is there ony man knownen by his clothynge and his arraye]\(^8\) of what degre he is. Perof profecied an holy anker to kyng Egilred his tyme in pis manere. Henricus, libro sexto. Englishe men for pey wonet hem to dronkelewnesse, to trosun, and to rechelesnesse of Goddes hous, first by Danes and panne by Normans, and at pe pr idle tyme by Scottes, pat pey holdeþ most wreeches and lest woþ of alle, teþ schuldeþ be

laboure, and as Dedalus in cufe, lyke to Sardanapalli in beddes, similacres in temples, thundres in courtes, knowleggenge theym to be clerkes thro onely privilages and benefices other prehendas. But now in these daies suche diuersites of vesture and apparelle be vsede alle moste amonge alle men of Englonde, that thei seme to be as of noo gendre or kynde; of whom an holy heremite did prophepy in the tyme of kyng Egelredus in thys maner. Henricus, libro sexto. For cause that Englishe men be þifen to treason, drunkenesse, and to the negligence of pe bowse of God, thei schulle be punyschede sore, firste by Danes, in the secunde tyme by Normannes, in the thrydde tyme by the Scottes, whom thei aecompte as a peple moste

\(^1\) brede, a.  
\(^2\) mouph] om. a.  
\(^3\) So MS. a. and B.; but where seems to be required. See p. 187.  
\(^4\) subtil and a skye, Cx.; who has very much re-cast the whole extract from Trevisa.  
\(^5\) kygre, a.  
\(^6\) Added from a.  
\(^7\) Added from a.  
\(^8\) Added from Cx., who may have somewhat amplified his text.
simos reputant, erunt conterendi; adeoque\(^1\) tunc varium erit sæculum, ut varietas mentium multimoda vestium variatione\(^2\) designetur.\(^3\) Explicit Liber Primus.

LIBER SECUNDUS.

Prologus Libri Secundi.

CAP. I.

ORDO narrationis historiæ hoc expostulat, ut post descripta mundi\(^4\) loca etiam orbis gesta describantur. Sed si unumquodque propter quid et illud magis, cum propter minorem mundum factus sit major, juxta illud, "Major" inquit\(^5\) "serviet minori," non ab re erit, descripto in præcedentibus majori mundo,\(^6\) ipsum quoque minorem mundum\(^7\) in principio actuum suorum parumper describere; ut qualis quantusve sit agnos-

---

\(^1\) adeo, B.; adeo quia, Gale.
\(^2\) varietate, C. (not D.)
\(^3\) designabitur, D. (on an erasure).
\(^4\) orbis, C.D.
\(^5\) inquit Scriptura, B.
\(^6\) mundo] om. C.D.
\(^7\) mundum] om. C.D.
ouercome; ãan ãe worlde schal be so vnstable and so dyuers Trevisa. and variable ãat ãe vnstabilnesse of poque schal [be]3 by-
tokened by many manere dyuersite of cloppinge.  Explicit
Liber Primus.

Incipit Liber Secundus. Capitolum primum.

After ãat places and contrees beep [rekened and] 2 dis-
cryued of ãe worlde wyde, ãe ordre of ãe tale of ãe story
axep ãat berynge and dedes of ãe worlde be also discreued.
But 3if3 every ping is for somewhat and ãat is more, (Trevisa.
Here is 4 auctorite of philosophre, and 5 is to mene ãat al ping
pat is resonabliche 6 and kyndeliche i-ordeyned for anoper ping
as a mene forto come perto [and forto] 7 save it, is i-or-
deyned for bettre ping and more noble ãan is pat ping ãat
is i-ordeyned 8 perfore; ensample, 9 erenge and soowynge and
dongynde of lond is ordeyned for to haue good corne, [and
good corne] 10 is better ãan al ãe oper deel; also medecyne
is i-ordeyned for hele, and hele is better ãan ãe medecyne; also

vile, in so moche that the worlde schalle be then so vari-
able, that the diuersite of myndes schalle be designate in
the mony folde diuersite of vesture and of apparelle. Explicit Liber Primus.

Incipit Liber Secundus.

Liber Secundus. Capitolum primum.

The ordre of the narracion of stories requirethe that
the gestes of the worlde scholde be describede also after
the places of the worlde schewede and expresseed; then,
sythe the gretter worlde was made for the lesse worlde, as
hit is seide, "The gretter worlde schalle serue the lesse,"
then the descripccion in the precededenge processe of the
grete worlde schalle not be with owte a cause and vtilite.
Wyllenge now to describe the lesse worlde in the begin-
nenenge of his actes, that the qualite or quantite of hit may

1 Added from a.
2 Added from a. and Cx.
3 [if] om. Cx.; badly, not per-
ceiving the extract from Trevisa to
be parenthetical.
4 pis, a., Cx.
5 and] om. Cx.
6 resonable, Cx.
7 Added from a. and Cx.
8 so ordeyneyed, a.; soordeyning, Cx.
9 ensample] om. Cx.
10 Added from a. and Cx.
catur qui tam pusillus in tam magno tam magnifica operatur. Et quidem cunctorum entium opifex, apud quem ideales rerum rationes sunt reconditae, post peractam majoris mundi machinam minorem mundum condi
dit, quem licet majori mundo prætulerit, in eo tamen majoris mundi similitudinem impressit. In tribus namque assimulantur mundus et homo, in dimensione diametrali, in dispositione naturali, in operatione vir
tuali. Et primo quidem quamvis humani corporis longitudo que est a planta pedis usque ad verticem capitis sexies sit major ejus latitudine que est a crate lateris ad cratem, et etiam decies major ejus altitudine que est a dorso usque ad ventrem: veruntamen secundum Plinium, libro septimo, capitulo octavodecimo, quanta est distantia inter cenit capitis

1 recondite, B.  
2 So A.B.; pertulerit, E.  
3 So A.E.; expressit, B.C.D.  
4 autem, B.  
5 et homo, om. E.  
6 licet, C.D.  
7 pedis usque] om. C.D.  
8 capitis] om. C.D.  
9 etiam] om. B.  
11 cenum corrected to cenit in C.; chenit, B., see Ducange, s.v. cenith.
mete and drynke and other thynges beep i-ordeyned for pe lyf, and pe lyf is better and more noble then mete and drynke and alle operé pinges pat beep so i-ordeyned for pe lyf.)

R.—panne, seppé pat pe more worlde is i-made for pe lasse, as holy writte seip, “pe more schal serue pe lasse,” and now pe more world is discreued in oure foure sauntes in pe firste booke, pan it is skilful somdel to descryue pe lasse worlde also from pe bygynnyng of his forme 2 dedes, pat 4 hit my3te be knowe what manere ping hit is and how grete, pat is so litel and doop so grete dedes in pe more worlde, pat is so grete and so huge. And also pe worchere and pe 5 makere of alle pinges pat haf wiþ him schapliche resouns of al manere resouns and 6 pinges, whanne he hadde i-made pe more worlde, pan he made pe lasse; and pey he made him lord of pe grete worlde, 7 hit he prynted on hym pe likenesse of pe gret 7 world. For a man and pe world beþ fiche in pre pinges: in lenghe, in brede, and in dipnesse; 8 in kyndely disposi- sion; and vertues worchynge. 9 And firste pei3 pe lenghe of a manis body, pat is from pe sole of pe foot to pe top of pe heed, be 8 suche sise as pe brede, pat is from pe oon side of pe ribbes to pat oper side, and ten so moche as pe deppesse pat is from pe rugge 11 to pe wombe; notepe Plinius, libro 70, capitulo 18, seip pat as moche space as is bytwene cinit,

be known, whiche beene so litelle worchethe, so grete thynges in so grete a thyng. The maker of alle thynges, anedes whom the ydealle reasons of thynges be hidde, made the lesse worlde after the grete engyne of the worlde made, in whom he impressede the similitude of the grete worlde. For a man and the worlde be assimilate in iij. thynges, in dimension diametralle or diunemrall, in disposi-
cion naturalle, and in operation virtuall. And thynke þe longitude of the body of man, which is from the sōle of the foote vn to the toppe of the hedde, be vj. tymes more then the latitude of hym which is from side to side, and x. tymes more then þe altitude of hyt, which is from the backe to the bely; for 12 after the grete clerk Plinius, libro quinto, capitulo decimo octavo, what distance is betwene

---

1 So Cx. (but with be for beep); pat beep so i-ordeyned, MS. and a.
2 He operé, a.
3 forme, Cx.
4 So Cx.; þan, MS.
5 pat, MS.
6 and[,] om. a.
7 and in dipnesse] om. a.
8 Here ys þe preporeyon of mannyys body. Note in MS.
9 So a; þen, MS.
10 rugge, a.; rugge, Cx.
11 The translator should have written yet.
nostri ad oppositum punctum in coelo, tanta est ab oriente in occidentem, sic fit in corpore humano; quod quantum est homini\(^1\) spatium a vestigio ad verticem, tantum est homini\(^8\) spatium extensis\(^3\) manibus inter extrema longissimorum digitorum. Tradit etiam\(^4\) Plinius ibidem capitulos septimodecimo, quod in trimatu ætatis cujuslibet mensura erit futuræ staturæ dimidia, si vixerit. Ranulphus\(^5\). Secundo, sicut videmus\(^6\) in mundo, ita in homine, quod partes et membra mutuo sibi correspondent, compatiuntur, et vicem suppleunt; nam superioura regunt et influunt, inferioura supportant et serviunt, media recipiunt et refundunt. Et in utroque mundo dum membrum fuerit extra locum suum et intraverit alienum, fit statim perturbatio; sicut quando ær includitur\(^7\) in terræ visceribus, fit terræ motus; quando vero\(^8\) in nubibus, fit tonitus; sic quoque\(^9\) in cor-

---

\(^1\) hominis, C. (not D.)
\(^2\) hominis, C. (not D.); ei, B.
\(^3\) expansis sive extensis, C. (not D.)
\(^4\) enim, B.

\(^5\) Ranulphus\(^\text{[om. C.D.]}\)
\(^6\) vidimus, B.
\(^7\) includerit, E.
\(^8\) vero\(^\text{[om. C.D.]}\)
\(^9\) quoque\(^\text{[om. C.D.]}\)
pat is the point pat is in the welken\(^{1}\) euen a\(^{2}\)sent hem\(^{2}\) in the oper side of the erpe, so moche is out of the est in to the weste; and so hit is in the body of a man pat as moche as is from the sole of the foot to the top of the hede,\(^{3}\) so moche is bytwene his twele lengest fyngres endes, and he streche out his armes and hondes abrood. Also Plinius pere\(^{4}\) ri\(\text{t}\), capitulo 7\(\text{r}\),\(^{5}\) seip pat pe stature and pe mesure of a child when he is pre 3ere olde is euen half mesure of\(^{6}\) his stature pat he schal hane when he is of age, and he lyue\(^{7}\) so longe. De secounde as we seeep in the world so we seeep in a man, pat pe membres and pe parties helpe\(\text{p}\) and stonde\(\text{p}\) euerich oper in stede, and bynene\(^{8}\) his woo. For pe ouer lymes goure\(\text{n}\)ep and 3euep; pe neper lymmes berep and seruep; pe myddel fongep and dele\(\text{p}\) aboute to\(^{9}\) oper lymes. And in eiper\(^{10}\) world if a lyme is oute of his owne place, and i-entred in to ano\(\text{p}\)er place pan his\(^{11}\) owne, anon is grete distourbaunce i-made, as whan pe ayer\(^{12}\) is closed\(^{13}\) wip ymne pe erpe, pan pe erpe schake\(\text{p}\),\(^{14}\) and whan with ymne pe cloudes pan is greet pondrynge; also in the body of a man

---

\(1\) wolkyn, a.; firmament, Cx.
\(2\) hym, Cx., more correctly.
\(3\) heued, a.
\(4\) the, Cx.
\(5\) 17, Cx.
\(6\) and, a., Cx.
\(7\) algyue, a.
\(8\) So a, and Cx.; byneneb, MS.
\(9\) about the, Cx.
\(10\) the eytther, Cx.
\(11\) in his, Cx.
\(12\) eyer, a.
\(13\) enclosed, Cx.
\(14\) quaketh, Cx.
pore humano quando 1 membra dislocantur aut humores corrupuntur, fit dolor et morbus. Insuper cum 2 membra bene fuerint proportionata quoad figuram, colorem, qualitatem, 3 quantitatem, situm, et motum, denotatur 4 bona mentis habitudo. Econtra 5 fit cum membra male 6 fuerint proportionata; 7 inde 8 sententiavit Plato quod qualis animalis effigiem gestat homo, talis animalis sequitur 9 mores et affectus. Præterea sicut in rerum ordine mundanarum supremum inferioris generis tangit infimum superioris; 10 utpote ostria, quae quasi infimum tenent locum in genere animalium, parum excedunt vitam plantarum, eo quod immobilia sint 11 terre 12 hærentia et solum habeant 13 tactum; et ultimum terre tangit infimum aquæ, et supremum

when þe lymes beep awrej thi out of her tyng wynne places, oper ʒif þe humours beep apaired, panne is ache, sekenesse, and sorwe. Also when þe lymes beep wel arrayed, and as they schulde be in schappe, colour and hue, manere, quantite, and gretenes and smalnesse, menynge and place, pan hap þe man good þees and quiete, and is in good heele and reste. Pe contrary falleþ,3 and þe lemes 4 be euel and nouȝt riȝtly [and richeliche]5 arrayed; þerefore Plato ʒaf his doom, and seide suche ordenaunce, disposicion, and schap as a man hap in his kyndeliche [membres and lymes, suche kyndeliche]6 maneres þey foloweþ in7 dedes. Also as it is in þe parties of þe grete world pat þey beep so i-ordeyned and i-sette pat þe ouermeste8 of þe neþer kynde touche þe neþermeste9 of þe ouer10 kynde, as oistres and schelle fische, þat beþ þat it were lowest in bestene11 kynde, passeþ but litel þe perfeccion of lyf of treet and of herbes, for þey move not meu hem but as culpes of þe see waggeþ wiþ þe water, elles þey cleueþ to þe erthe and mové noþer [see]12 ne hire, ne taste, ne smelle, but oniliche þele þan þey beþ i-touched;13 and þe14 taste [of]14 þe erpe toucheþ þe lowest of þe water, and þe ouermeste15 of þe

causede and made by hyt, in lyke wise in the body of man; sorowe and sekenesse be causede when membres be owte of theirne natural, anþer humores be corrupte. And also lyke as a goode habitude of the mynde is signified when the membres be welle proporcionate as vn to figure, colour, qualite, quantite, place, and movenge, and in sentence contrarious when the membres be inproportionate to gedre; wherfore Plato ʒaf sentence that man folowethe the maneres and affectes of that beste, of whom he hath the similite. And lyke as the hieste thyng of a thyng inferiour toweth the laweste place of his superior, in the ordre of worldely thynges; as oistres, whiche holde as the laweste place in the kynde of bestes, excede but a litelle the 1.2 of þe plants in that þei be immovable and drawenge to the erthe, háuenge oonly þe witte of towelenge. And the hieste parte of the erthe toweth the laweste parte of the water, and so ascendenge by degrees

---

1 writhe, Cx.
2 here, a.
3 So a. and Cx.; contray failleþ, MS.
4 lymes, a.
5 Added from a. Not in Cx.
6 Added from a. and Cx.
7 and, a., Cx. The latter varies the sentence.
8 highest, Cx.
9 lowest, Cx.
10 high, Cx.
11 beestes, Cx.
12 Added from a. and Cx.
13 at þe, MS. (not a. or Cx.)
14 Added from a. and Cx.
15 So Cx. (Words are repeated without sense in MS.)
aquae tangit primum aeris, et sic gradatim ascendendo usque ad ultimum orbem: sic quoque supremum in genere corporum quod potest dici, corpus humanum, æqualiter complexionatum attingit infimum proximi generis superioris, quod\(^1\) est anima humana, quæ quasi tenet ultimum gradum in genere intellectualium substantiarum. Atque ideo horizon dicitur et confinium corporeorum et incorporeorum, in qua gradatim ascenditur ab infima potentia usque ad supremam intellectualivam,\(^2\) quæ quando a terrenis affectibus fuerit depurata, attingit quandoque\(^3\) substantias separatas. Insuper et homo habet aliquid commune cum\(^4\) partialibus mundi rebus, quia, secundum Gregorium in homilia\(^5\) de Ascensione, homo\(^6\) habet esse cum lapidibus, vivere cum arboribus, sentire cum animalibus, intelligere cum angelis. Quinetiam in humano corpore apparet terra in carne et ossibus, aqua in sanguine et\(^7\) humoribus, aer in pulmone, ignis in corde. Sed et homo Latine\(^8\) dicitur antropos Græce, quasi arbor

---

\(^1\) qüd, A.  
\(^2\) So A.D.E.; intelligentiam, B.  
\(^3\) quandoque] added in margin of C.  
\(^4\) cum] om. E.  
\(^5\) Omelia, MSS., and so below.  
\(^6\) in . . . homo] om. C.D.  
\(^7\) sanguine et] om. C.D.  
\(^8\) antropos dicitur, B.; Sed et homo Græce dicitur antropos, Latine, quasi arbor eversa, D. This seems to be right, but was manifestly not Trevisa's text.
water toucheþ þe loweste of þe ayer, and so vpward by degrees anon to þe ouermeste hevene: also ¹ þe híðeste in bodiliche kynde, þat may skilfulliche be i-cleped manis body, kyndeliche and perfàtiliche disposed arecheþ to þe lowest of þe nexte ouer-
kynde; þat is manis soule, þat holdeþ þe lowest degre of spiritis and of gostes þat hauþ knowleche and vnderstandinge, and þerforþ he is i-cleped orison, as it were þe next marche in kynde bytwene bodily and goostly pinges. By þe soule me goþ vp from² þe lowest kynde by degrees of knowelche and of konnyngg anon to þe ouermeste knowelche and vnderstondunge, and when þe soule is al elene wip ouþ erpeliche likyngge he recheþ oþerwhile to holly [spirites]³ þat beþ no þyng bodilich. Also man⁴ hæþ somewhat comyn wip þynges þat beþ þeþ parties of þe grete world. For Gregorie in an omelye seþ þat man hæþ beþyng þeþ wip stones, lyuyeþ wip trees and herbes, felynge⁵ wip bestes, knowelche and vnderstondunge wip ångels. Also in manis body semeþ etþe in fleþche and bönnes, water in blóode and in oþer humours, ayer in þe longen,⁶ fuyre in þe herte; and hæþ homœ in Latyn and antropos⁷ in Grewe, þat is as hit were a tree

vn to the laste worlde: so in lyke wise the hiðeste thynge in the kynde of bodies, that may be seide, þe body of man egally complexitynate, attaynyþe the laweþe thynge of the kynde superialle other generalite, whiche is the sawle of man, whiche holdeþe as the loweste place in the kynde or generalite of substauances intellectuale. Wherefore hit is callede orison, and as the coste of thynes corporationale and incorporateur, in whom hit is ascended by degrees from the loweste power to the hiðeste powere intellectiue; whiche, separate somme tyme from substauances terrestrialle, as in affecte attaynythe otherwise substauance separate. Also a man hathæ somme thynes commune with parciaille thynes of þe worlde. For after Seynte Gregory, in an omely in the As-
cencion of oure Lorde God, "A man haþ beþyng þeþ with stones, "Iyveþ with trees, felyngþ with bestes, vnderstondenge with "angelles." Also erhe appereþe in the body of a man in the fleþche and in the bönnes, water in þe blóode and humores, aier in þe longeþ, and þyre in þe herte. But a man in Grewe is callede antropos, as a tre etuered; for a

¹ So MS. a,B; but probably we should read so.
² and from, MS. (not a. or Cx.)
³ Added from a. and Cx.
⁴ So a. and Cx.; men, MS.
⁵ So a. and Cx.; felynges, MS. (first hand.)
⁶ langen, a.
⁷ antropos, a.
eversa. Habet enim caput cum comis instar radicis, et quasi ramos habet brachia cum cruribus. Quoad tertium simile, quod est virtualis operatio, videmus, sicut dicit Gregorius in homilia de Adventu, quod mundus in annis prioribus velut in juventute viguit; ad propagandam prolem robustus fuit, utpote salute corporum viridis, opulentia rerum pinguis; at nunc ipsa senectute sua deprimitur, et quasi ad vicinam mortem crebris molestis urgetur. Ita et homini in juventute viget corpus, roboratur pectus, torosa est cervix; plena sunt brachia; in annis autem senilibus statura curvatur, cervix deprimitur, crebris suspiriis pectus urgetur, anhelitus succiditur; virtus per totum deficit; et etiam, si languor defuerit, plerumque ipsa salus in senibus est aegritude. Praeterea sicut videmus quod in majori mundo duo sunt motus, unus naturalis, quo moventur urbes inferiores ab occidente in orientem, et alius violentus, quo rapiuntur e contra raptu primi mobilis ab oriente in occidentem;
i-torned vp so doun, and hap an heed\(^1\) wip hear as it were\(^2\) a roote, and hap armes and pyghes as it were bowes. Touchynges pe pridde liknesse, pat is virtuous woorhyng, we seepe, as Gregory seip in an omelie of pe Aduent, pat pe world was at pe begynnynge Pryuyngye and strong for to brynyng forp children as it were in \(\text{\textsc{3owpe}},\) and was ful of hele, and so fresche and grene, and by greet richesse it was fatte. But now it\(^3\) is abated, wipelde, and ait\(^4\) were i-dryue toward pe deth wip ofte and meny diseases. So in a manys \(\text{\textsc{3owpe}}\) pe body is pryuyngye, pe brest is strong, the nole is bolde, pe armes beep fulle. But in his elde pe stature bowe\(\text{\textsc{p}}\) and crokepy and stoupe\(\text{\textsc{p}}\) adom, pe bolde nole abat\(\text{\textsc{p}}\), pe brest is i-dryue ofte wip many sighes and soore, pe bre\(\text{\textsc{p}}\) schorte\(\text{\textsc{p}},\) in to alle\(^5\) pe body my\(\text{\textsc{3t}}\) and streng\(\text{\textsc{p}}\) abat\(\text{\textsc{p}}\), and \(\text{\textsc{3if}}\) pey\(^6\) pere were noon ope\(\text{\textsc{r}}\) siknesse in olde men, for pe more deel hele is sikenesse. Also as we seep pat in pe more worlde beep twee contrary meuynges; oon is kyndeliche, by pe whiche pe planetes and pe nepy\(\text{\textsc{p}}\) wolcons moe\(\text{\textsc{p}}\) out of pe west in to pe est; pat ope\(\text{\textsc{r}}\) is violent, by pe whiche pey beep i-rauisched a\(\text{\textsc{3}}\)enward wip the meuyng\(\text{\textsc{e}}\) of pe ouerme\(\text{\textsc{ste}}\) wolken out of pe est in to pe west: so it farep in a man pat the flesche man hathe an hedde with heire, in the maner of a rote of a tre, and armes as bow\(\text{\textsc{3}}\)es. As vnto the thridde similitude, whiche is virtuaille operacion, we see, as Seynte Gregory seythe in an omely of Aduente, that the worlde hathe thryvede in yere ofote as in yowthe to the multiplication of peple, for hit was my\(\text{\textsc{3t}}\)hyte as for healthe of bodi, grene and fette as in plente of thynges. But hit is now as depressede with age, and is constreyndernede as with ry\(\text{\textsc{f}}\)e greuances to a nye deth. Also in lyke wise the body of man encreasche in yowthe, the breste is stronge, the armes be fulle; but the stature is boede dounwe in age, the coppe is depressede, the breste is constreyndernede with myny sighes, the brethe is succedede, and verti failetbe thro alle the body. Also like as we see that pere be ij. movenges in the greatere worlde, oon naturalle, thro whom the worldes inferiali be move\(\text{\textsc{d}}\)e frome the weste in to the este, that other is a moveynge violente, by whom the worldes be rapte thro the rape of the firste mover frome the este in to pe weste: soe hit is in like wise in man, that the flesche

\(1\)\(\text{\textsc{hened}},\) a.
\(2\)\(\text{\textsc{Several words are erroneously repeated in MS., but omitted in a. and Cx.}}\)
\(3\)\(\text{\textsc{he}, a.}}\)
\(4\)\(\text{\textsc{as hit, a, Cx.}}\)
\(5\)\(\text{\textsc{in a, Cx.}}\)
\(6\)\(\text{\textsc{and 3if} \text{\textsc{e}}, a; and though, Cx.}}\)

Probably \(\text{\textsc{3if}}\) should be cancelled.

\(7\)\(\text{\textsc{meuyngye, a.}}\)
sic fit in homine, quod caro concupiscit adversus spiritum et\(^1\) spiritus adversus carmen, et inferiores potentiae militant contra rationem. Ad haec\(^2\) homo cum rebus saeculi nonnullis quasi communia operatur seu patitur;\(^3\) nam torpet quandoque\(^4\) ut terra, fluit ut aqua, cedit ut aer, furit ut ignis, mutatur ut luna, mactat ut Mars, ambit ut Mercurius, degenerat ut Jupiter, sævit ut Saturnus. Cæterum, teste Plinio, libro septimo, capitolo tertio, sicut extrema orbis loca potissime scatent miraculis,\(^5\) sicut patet in India, Æthiopia,\(^6\) Africa, ita et in ipso hominum genere ingeniosa natura fecit sibi miraculosissimam. Nam primum in ipsa humana facie, ubi decem aut\(^7\) paulo plura sunt membra, tanta est diversitas, ut in tot hominum milibus una alteri vix conveniat. In Africa\(^8\) sunt familias quaedam habentes linguas fascinantes, adeo ut earum laudatione intereant commendata,\(^9\) arescant arbores,\(^10\) moriantur inpuberes.

---

\(^1\) et\(\) om. C.D.  \(^6\) et, C.D.
\(^2\) huc, B.  \(^7\) vel, A.D.
\(^3\) seu patitur\(\) om. D.  \(^8\) quoque sunt, C.D.
\(^4\) nam torpet quandoque\(\) denique \(^9\) probata, C.D.
\(^5\) miraculus\(\) om. E.  \(^10\) earum . . . arbores\(\) om. B.
coveyteþ aȝenst þe spirit, and þe spirit aȝenst þe flesche; for þe neþere knowelchesh and wittes fiȝteþ aȝenst [þe] 1 resoun.

And þit a man hæp comoun worcycles and suffrynghe leche 2 to many opere parties of þe more 3 world; for he is slow and hœy as þe erþe, and fletþ away as þe water, and wip-drawþe sodelynche as þe ayer, and hetþeþ as þe fyure, chaungeþ as the mone, fiȝteþ and sleeþ 4 as Mars, coveyteþ as Mercurius, goop oute of kynde as Jupiter, 5 and is cruel as Saturnus. Also Pliniius, libro 7°, capitulo 3°, scieþ þat as þe vter parties of þe grete worlde welþeþ and springeþ ful of myraeces, won-dres, and meruaillles, as in Ynde, in Ethiopia, Blomen 6 londe, and in Affrike; so in mankynde, kynde hæp slilyche and craftiliche i-madþ wonderful werkþes and merþe. For first in a mannys face þere 7 beþeþ tenlymès oþer feþew moo, þer 8 is so grete diuercyteþ, þat among meny powsand men yneeþe is oon i-founde in face i-liche to anoþer. In Affrike beþ þeynëþe 9 þat hænþeþ wyckeþe 10 tonges, so þat þinges þat þey preisþþ þey schenþþe and sleeþ wip hire preysynge. So þat trees þat þey preisþþ waxen drie 11 and children

coveteþe ageyne the sawle, and the sawle ageyne the MS. HARL.

the flesche, and þe powers inferialle labourþe and stryveþ ageyne reason. Also a man is comparate with mony thrynes in the worlde, and suffreþeþ as thynges commun þe with þeyme, for he is slawe otherwhile as þe erthe, brenenge like to þe water, ðiffenge place like to the aier, brennenge as fire, chaung-enge like to the moone, sleenge as Mars, goenge abowte other couetenge like to Mercurius, goenge owte of kynde like Jupiter, beeng woode or cruell like to Saturnus. Also, after Pliniius, libro septimo, capitulo tertio, lyke as the extremalle places of the worlde be moste habundante in miracles, as in Ynde, Ethiope, and Affrike, see in like wise nature hathe made moste meruellous dispoette in þat kynde of men. For now there is suche diuercyteþ in the face of man, where x. members were firste, or fewe moo, that vnethe ij. men be lyke amonge mony ml. Also there be men in Affrike, thro the lawde of whom thynges commendede dye, trees do wedre, and wexe drye: also in Tri-

1 Added from a.
2 suffrynghe liche, a.
3 the body more, MS.
4 So o. and Cx.; fieþe, MS.
5 So o. ; Jubiter, MS.
6 blew men, a.
7 Perhaps we should read where.
8 See p. 173.
9 So Cx.; þat, MS.
10 many, Cx.
11 So Cx. Various words cir-

emonously repeated in MS. (not a.)
Ita et in Triballis et in Illyricis sunt homines qui solo visu interimant diutius conspecta, praesertim si intuentes sunt irati; et hi quidem binas pupillae habent in singulis oculis. Sic enim testatur Varro, quod in quorumdam hominum oculis peperit natura venenum; ne quid uspiam mali sit, quod in homine non reperiatur. Sic etiam aliquae corporum partes nascentur ad aliquam mirabilia ostendenda, sicut Pyrrho regi Epirotarum pollex in dextro pede, cujus tactus contra venenum valuit; quem cum reliquo corpore cremari non posse tradiderunt auctores. Ita Plinius, libro septimo, capitulo septimo decimo, testatur quod quidam gignuntur concreto genitali; aliqui vice dentium concreto osse generantur, sicut patuit in filio Prusii, regis Bithyniae; cujus superior pars dentium sic concreta fuit, ut reliquo corpore combusto illa pars cremari non potuit. Item ibidem, capitolo octavo decimo. Aliqui vivunt concretis toto corpore ossibus et sine medullis; et hi nec sitim sentiunt.
develep. So in Triballis and in Illyricis beep men pat sleep wip hir siȝt what pey beholdeþ and lokeþ on longe, nameliche and pey be greened and wroþ while pey lokeþ so and byholdeþ, and þese hauen in eruriche yȝe fourtie blakkes. Also among vs, Varro seþ, kynde hþp i-gendred and i-brouȝt forþ venym in som mennys eyȝen, so þat non euell is y-founde þat þere nys somwhat i-liche and i-founde in mankynde. So som partes of a manis body beep forseyenge and bodynge of wondres. So Pyrrhus, kynge of Epirotes, hadde a greet too in his riȝt foot, þe touchynge of þat too was a good medicyn eyȝenst venym; and þat too myȝte noȝt be brent [wip þe oper body],7 when þe oper bodyes was i-brent,8 so auctors telleþ. Also Plinius, libro 7o, capitulo 17o,9 seþ þat som men beþ i-gete and i-bore wip gendrynge stones cleuyenge to gidres as it were al oon; som beþ i-bore wip oon boon al10 in stede of teep, and þat boon is hardere and scarpere þan any mannys tooþ. So Prusy, kynge of Bithynia, hade a sone þat hadde a bone in his mouþ instede of his ouer11 teep, oon bone al hool, and þat boon was so harde, þat þe þe þe oper deel of þe body was i-brend þat bone myȝte noȝt brente also. Ibidem, capitulo 18o. Som men lyeþ þat12 eueriche of hem hþp þe bones of his body cleuyenge to gidres as hit were al oon boon, al hool and wip oute marwe;13 þese men been neuer aferst,14 also þey sweetþ neuer more. Trevisa. Som men telleþ þat som man

ballis and in Illyricis be men whiche cause thynges behoden longe to pereche, and specially if the men beholden be wroþe, whiche hauþ ij, appyles in either eie. So in lyke wise the poete Varro rehersethe that nature hathe infuded in to the cien of somme men venom, so þat þer is noone ylle thynge but hit is reperible in man. Also somme partes off men be causeþe for somme meruellous thynges, to be schewed, as a thowmb in the ryȝhte foote of Pyrrhus kynge, the towchenge of whom þate subsidye agyne venom, whþe auctores say not to hauþe þere þ
nec sudorem emittunt. *Item capitulo vicesimo primo.* Aliquī etiam rectos et transversos cancellatim toto corpore nervos habentes prodigiosa virium elatione micuerunt. Aliquī indefesso cursu prévalent, quidam visu prépollent, ut Strabo miles, qui per centum triginta quinque passuum milia classem Punicam vidit e specula. *Item, secundum Plinium, libro undécimo, capitulo quadragesimo nono,* Tiberius Caesar clarius vidit in tenebris quam in luce, ita ut de nocte expergefactus perspicue cuncta videret. *Item libro septimo, capitulo vicesimo septimo.* Nonnulli etiam memoria viguerunt, ut Cyrus, rex Persarum; qui cunctis in exercitu suo militibus nomina reddidit. *Ranulphus.* Et Seneca in primo prologo declamationum testatur de seipso, quod tanta memoria vignet, ut duo milia nominum eo quo erant ordine dicta recitasse ex corde, et etiam plusquam ducentos versus ab aliis
in Irland hap oon boon al hool in oon side instede of all his ribbes; and Thomas \(^1\) Hayward of Berkeley hap in pe molde of his heed, pol and forheed, but oon boon al hool; perfere he may wel sufre grete strokes aboue on his heued,\(^2\) and busche a\(^3\)enst men and horschedes, and breke strong dores wip his heed, and hit\(^3\) gresep hym nou\(^7\). Also Plinius, libro \(^7\), capitulo \(^21\), seip pat som men hadde in to alle pe body sewenes, even i-streij\(^4\), \(^5\) pvwart ouer in \(^6\) a crosse wise, and passynge wonderful in streng\(\text{e}\). Som move dure to renne wip out \([\text{werinesse}; \text{som be passyng clere of sighte, as a knyghte pat highte Strabo stode in}^6\] a weytes place, and sigh pe navey of schippes\(^7\) of Puni \(\text{pat were from hem}^8\) an hondred and fyue and pritty myle.\(^9\) Also Plinius, libro \(\text{xi.}, \text{capitulo} \(^{44}\), seip pat Tiberius Cesar sigh more clereliche in dekenesse \(\text{pan in li}^7\), so pat when he were awaked any\(^3\) he my\(\text{y}^3\) pat see\(^1\) al ping clereliche aboute hym. Also Plinius, libro \(^7\), capitulo \(^27\). Som were wonder my\(\text{fty}^3\) of mynde, as Cyrus kyng of Pers, that to al pe kyn\(\text{y}^3\)tes of his oost \(\text{3af} \) certayne names. And Seneca, libro primo declarationum, seip of hym selfe, pat he was so my\(\text{y}^3\)ty of mynde \(\text{pat he} \) rehersede two powsand names arewe by herte in pe same ordre as pey were i-seide. And pat he rehersede mo \(\text{pan two hondred vers} \text{pat oper men hadde i-\(\text{3}^3\)eue,}^12\) and bygan

---

1 Thonne, a.; Tom., Cx.
2 heed without hurt, Cx. (omitting the rest of the sentence.)
3 hit] om. a.
4 i-straut, a. ; straught, Cx.
5 and, a., Cx.
6 Added from Cx.
7 naveyes and shippes, Cx.
8 him, Cx.
9 myles, Cx.
10 waked in the nyght, Cx.
11 So Cx. ; i-see, MS.
12 yeuen, Cx.

---

MS. HARL.
2261.
datos ab ultimo incipiens usque ad primum repetisset. Item ibidem dicit quod Cineas legatus Pyrrhi regis Epirotarum postero die adventus sui apud Romam omnem senatum et circumfusam plebem propriis nominibus salutaverit. Et quidam alius recitatum a poeta carmen novum suum esse dixit, eo quod carmen illud semel auditum expeditius recitaret quam ille qui composuit. Item Plinius, libro septimo, capitul:o vicesimo septimo. Quidam etiam ingenii vigore claruerunt, ut Julius Caesar, qui legere, scribere, et audire simul solebat; quaternas etiam simul epistolas dictare consuevit. Item libro septimo, capitulo octavo decimo. Quibusdam vires majores sunt in dextra, quibusdam in leva, quibusdam æqualiter in utraque. Item ponderosiora sunt mares feminis, defuncta viventibus, dormantia vigilantibus. Virorum quoque cadavera supina fluctuant, foœminarum vero prona et resupina, ac si pudore parcat natura. Item libro septimo, capitulo septimo decimo. Legimus unum hominem risisse eo quo natus est die, ac manum

---

at pe laste and rehearsed anon to pe firste wip oute eny faile. Also he seip perë pat Cines, Pyrrhus messanger1 kyng of Epirotës, pis Cines pe secounde [day]2 pat he come to Rome, he saluted3 and grette pe senatoure, and spak to euereic peace pe peple pat come aboute hym by his owne name. Anoper seide pat Cines hadde4 a grete makynge of poyesie, for he rehearsed hit at pe firste bygynynge5 more swiftly than he pat hadde i-made it. Also Plinius, libro 7°, capitulo 21°,6 seip som were more noble and wys of witte, as Iulius Cesar, pat was i-woned to rede and write what me7 seide wip good avisement al at ones. Also he vsed to write quayres, and endite letters and pistele al at ones. Also Plinius, libro 7°, capitulo 18°, seip pat som men hauep more strenge in pe riȝt side, and som hauep more in pe lift8 side, and some beep i-liche strong in eiper side.9 Also men beep heuyer pan wommen, and dede men10 bodyes heuyer pan quykke, and sleping pan wakynge heuyer also. Of dede men kareyns rennep foule moistures and humours, and pey ligge vprimt; and of dede wommen kareyns and pey ligge neelunyge and donnriȝt,11 as pe kynde spared seanen. Also libro 7°, capitulo 17°, we redep pat oo man lowh12 pat day pat he was i-bore, and

vn to the firste. Also he rehearsed there, that Cines,13 messanger of kyng Pyrrhus, salutede alle the senat of Rome and alle the peple abowte by thier propre names in the secund day after he commynge to the cite. Also an other man rehersenge the versus of a poete, ascribede the lawde to hym, in that he rehearsed theym more expedientely then the poete whiche made theyme. Also Plinius, libro 7°, capitulo 27°, rehearsed the somme men haue bene nowble of witte, as Iulius Cesar, which was vsed to rede, wyte, here, and to endyte epistoles at oon tyme. Also Plinius rehearsed, libro 7°, capitulo 28°,14 that somme men haue oste strenghete in the ryȝhte honde, somme in the lifte honde,15 and somme men haue egalle strenghetes in either f. 80. a. honde. Also men be moore heuy then women, and dedde thynges more then thynges in lyfe, and thynges slepenge more then thynges wakenge. Also, libro 7°, capitulo 17°, we haue a-redde a man to haue laȝhede in the firste day

---

1 messanger, a. 2 Added from a. and Cx. 3 salewed, Cx. 4 hadde made, Cx. 5 atte firste herynge, Cx. 6 27, a., Cx. 7 men, Cx. (and so generally.) 8 left, a. 9 So a. and Cx. Some words are repeated in MS. 10 mennes, Cx. (with other slight variations above and below.) 11 pis ys a merecyle. Note in MS. 12 louȝ, a. 13 The true reference is to capp. 17. 14 laȝde, Harl. MS.
cujsudam palpantis\(^1\) repulisse. *Item*\(^2\) *capitulo vice-simo*. Et feruntur ali\(q\)ium\(^3\) nunquam risisse, ali\(q\)ium\(^4\) nunquam flesse,\(^5\) ali\(q\)ium nunquam expusisse, ali\(q\)ium nunquam eructasse. *Item*\(^6\) *capitulo quarto*. Et quemadmodum in c\(\ae\)teris animalibus, sic in humano genere gignuntur quandoque utriusque\(^7\) sexus personae, quas Hermaphroditas\(^8\) vocamus, olim androgynos vocatos,\(^9\) et inter prodigia notatos,\(^10\) nunc vero inter delicias computatos.\(^11\) Sed et sexum ipsum mutari vidimus et audivimus. Nam in Africa vidimus puellam ipso\(^12\) nuptiarum die in marem mutari,\(^13\) barbanque et c\(\ae\)tera virilia produxisse, uxoremque cito postmodum\(^14\) duxisse. *Ranulphus*. Item tangit Augustinus de Civitate, libro tertio, capitulo vicesimo nono, quod\(^15\) tradit A. Gellius,\(^16\) libro Atticarum noctium, ex f\(\ae\)minis mutationes fieri in mares non esse fabulosum, sed potius ad litteram verum, unde\(^17\) et ipse A.

---

1 palpantis se, C. D.  
2 Idem, C. D.  
3 multi, B.  
4 ali\(i\), B., and so below (twice).  
5 flevisse, C. (not D.)  
6 Idem, C.  
7 utrius, C. (not D.)  
8 hermaphroditas, MSS.  
9 vocitatos, C.D.  
10 So A.; computatos, B.; vocatos, D.E.  
11 notatos, B.  
12 ipse, B.  
13 vidimus ... mutari\] added in margin of C. Absent from D.  
14 postmodum cito, B.  
15 quod cum, C.  
16 Agellius, MSS.  
17 unde\] om. C.
putte awey a manis hond pat groped and handeled hym. Also, capitulo 20. Men 1 spekep of som men pat neuere lowh, of som pat wepe neuere, of som pat spat 2 neuere, of somme pat bolked 3 neuere. Trevisa. Rogge 4 Bagge was a ful old man at Wotton vnder hegge, in Glowcrethe schire, he spat neuere, he kowhed 5 neuere. Also Seneca, ubi prius, capitulo 49. And as hit is among opere 6 bestes, so hit is in mankynde pat somtyne oon of mankynde is bope man and woman, and such oon is i-cleped hermofrodita, and was somtyne i-cleped androgumus, 7 and aounced among meruyles and wondres; but now among us it is deynte, for it is seelde i-seye. Also we hauep i-seie and i-herde pat some hauep i-changedy 8 hir schap; for we sighe in Affrice a mayde pe same day pat sche scholde haue be i-wedded, i-changedy and i-tornedy into a man, and was i-berded anon, and anoon hadde alle lymes as a man schulde haue, and wedded a wyf with inne a short tyme after. Also Seynte Austyn de civitate Dei, libro 39, capitulo 299, touche 9 pat A. Gellius 9 [libro] Atticarum 10 noctium seip 11 pat women beep somtyne i-torned into men: hit is no made 11 tale, but hit is soop 12 as pe lettre is i-write;

of his natiiute, and to haue put a way the honde of the man towchenge hym. Also, capitulo 20. Somme men be seide to haue not la7hidde in theire lyfe, somme men neuer to haue wepede, somme men neuer to haue spytte. Also, capitulo quarto, lyke as hit is in other bestes, so hit is in the kynde of man, that somme persones be gendred of bothe kyndes, whom we calle hermofroditas, callede somme tyme androdinos, namede as ammonge wondres, now acomptede amonge delites. Also we haue seen and herde peple to haue chaungede theire kynde. For we see a maide in Affrike in the day of here mariage to haue ben chaungede in to a man, and to haue hace a berde and other members of a man, and to haue mariede soone after with a woman. Also Seynte Austyn selthe, De Civitate Dei, libro tertio, capitulo 29, that A. Gellius 9 rehersethe, libro Atticarum noctium, women to haue ben chaungede in to men, and that hit is not a fable but a trawythe. Wherefore A. Gellius 9 dothe

1 Me, a, and also Cx. (contrary to his custom.)
2 spytte, Cx., and so below.
3 balked, Cx.
4 Rogge, Cx. (not a.)
5 coughed, a, Cx.
6 opere, a.
7 androgynus, a. Both in Trevisa
8 changyn wonderly, Cx.
9 Agellins, MS., a, and Harl. MS. and in the Harl. translation we should read androgyneus.
10 atticarum, MS., a, and Cx. (not Harl. MS.) Several proper names have been tacitly corrected throughout the chapter.
11 nagel, Cx.
Gellius refert se vidisse apud urbem Smyrnam puellam mutatam in marem eo die quo nubere debut. Unde et aliquando tale monstrum allatum senatui sub Licinio Crasso et Cassio Longino\(^1\) consulibus jussu aruspicum in desertam insulam deportatum est. Item de gallinis sexum mutantibus in gallos loquitur Titus Livius, et etiam Avicenna, libro octavo de animalibus, quod gallina quaedam vicerat gallum in pugna, quae post victoriam levavit caudam ut gallus; aculeus cornus sibi crevit in tibia, et crista in capite.\(^2\) Item Trogus, libro septimo, capitulo quindicesimo.\(^3\) Caeterum in Aegypto Trogus refert septenos foetus uno partu edi; sed et tunc editis geminis, praecepue si varii sexus fuerint, aut puerperae aut puerperio raram vitam superesse. Item capitulo duodecimo.\(^4\) Sed et aliquoties modico interveniente tempore duo conceptus fiunt, et itidem duo viciim siunt partus et uterque perfectus, sicut patuit in Hercule et ejus fratre\(^5\) Iphicle.\(^6\)

---

\(^1\) \textit{et Longino, C.} \hspace{1cm} \text{libro 7, c. 40, A.B.} \hspace{1cm} \text{The true reference is to Plin. vii. 3.}

\(^2\) All this passage from Ranulphus added in margin of C. A. and B. transpose it after the next two passages, after \textit{Hippicle}. It is absent from D.

\(^3\) \textit{Item ... quindicesimo} Idem capitulo 40, C.; Idem c. 5, D.; Item

\(^4\) C. omits reference. D. has c. 2°. \hspace{1cm} \text{The true reference is to Plin. vii. 9.}

\(^5\) \textit{fratre suo, B.}

\(^6\) \textit{Hippicle, MSS.}
perfore A. Gellius seip, pat in a citee pat l set Smyrna he seith a maide i-turned in to a stoon pe same day pat sehe schulde hane be wedded. Also suche oon was i-brouȝt to Rome to pe senatoure in pe tyme of Licinius 3 and Cassius Longinus, consultus 4 of Rome, and by beste of dyynouns pat toke hede of pe 5 weder and of chitterynge of briddes it was i-bore into a wild ilond. Also Titus Luius spekep of hennes pat were i-turned into kokkes And Anicenna, libro 8° de animalibus, spekep of an hen pat hadde overcome a cok in fîȝtinge, and after pe fîȝtyinge and pe victorie, he reked vp the tyacle as a cok, and had anon i-growe 7 a spore on pe leg and a crest on pe heed as it were a cok. Also capitulo 50°. Trogus seip in Egipt beep seven children i-boren 8 at oon berp; but ȝif tweie twynnes beep i-bore, it is wel seelde 9 pat pe moder and pe firste childe lyvep longe after pe burpe, and nameliche ȝif pat oon is a knaue childe and pe oper a mayde childe. Also capitulo 12°. And soutyme a woman coneyynep twey children and is but a litle tyne bytywene; and so pe children ben afterward i-bore oon after ooper, and beep perfit i-now, as hit was of Hercules and his broper Iphicles.10 And so it ferde 11 of pat woman pat bare

reherse hym seli to haue seen at a cite callede Smyrna, a maide chauenge in to a man in the day of theyre wed-
denge. Wherefore suche a wondre brouȝhte oon tyme to the senate, in the tyme of Licinius Crassus, and Cassius Longinus,12 consultus, which was sende in to a deserte place thro the cownsaille of wiseches. Also Titus Luius spekeþ of hennes chauenge theire kynde in to kokkes, and also, Anicenna, libro octavo de animalibus, that an henne hade the victory of a cokke in fîȝtinge, whiche lyfte the tyacle lyke to a cokke after the victory, spurres groenge in the legge of hit, haunge a combe in the heed. Also the same Anicenna, capitulo 5°. Also Trogus reherseþ a woman in Egipt to haue childe in the day of theyre schip, childer at oon tyne, but oother the moder the childer continuæ not in lyfe longe after. But mony women have ij. childer at oon tyne, and tweyne at another tyne, as hit was schewede in Hercules, and in Iphicles10 his brother. Also somme
Et etiam in illa muliere, quae gemino partu alteram marito\(^1\) alterum adultero similem genuit. Et in illa quae sub septimo mense edito puerperio in secundis post hoc\(^2\) mensibus geminas enixa est. Quasdam autem semper\(^3\) fœminas, quasdam semper mares parere, quasdam hoc\(^4\) alternare manifestum est. Alique etiam semper et ad omnes viros sunt steriles; alique ad aliquos sunt steriles, ab aliis tamen concipiunt. Item\(^5\) capitulo tertio decimo. Quasdam etiam sibi similes semper parere, quasdam similes patri, quasdam similes nulli, quasdam fœminam patri, marem sibi; quasdam antiquioribus parentibus similes producere notum est.\(^6\) Exemplum est de Nieceo nobili pictore\(^7\) apud Byzantium, qui de pulchra matre natus degeneravit in avum\(^8\) Æthiopem. Hugutio, capitulo\(^9\) Molo. Talem ferunt fore fœminarum naturam, ut quales formas conspexerint,\(^10\) dum concipiunt, talem sobolem procreare; nam anima humana in usu venereo formas extra conspectas intus transmittit, et earum species in propriam qualitatem rapit. Sic solent in Hispania obicere\(^11\) generosos equos obtutibus equarum

---

\(^1\) alterum marito\] om. A.  
\(^2\) haec, D.  
\(^3\) super, B.  
\(^4\) haec, D.  
\(^5\) Item\] libro septimo, C.  
\(^6\) Slightly varied in C.D.  
\(^7\) Higden should have written \textit{pycte}. See Plin., vii. 10.  
\(^8\) nuncum, C.D.E.; atrum, B.  
\(^9\) Hugo, A.B. \textit{Hugatia} ... \textit{xiiij}°, added in margin of C. Absent from D.  
\(^10\) mentaliter added in B.  
\(^11\) subjicere, A.
teweie children oon liche to hire housbonde, and pe opere to pe copenere, and of that woman that in the sevenpe monpè after his birpè in the secounde monpè after sehe bare tweeie children. Som wommen berep alway mayde children, and some alway knaue children, and som alway changep and berep somtyne a mayde 2 childe [and] 3 somtyne a knaue childe. Som berep baryen and conceyuep neuree of no man, and som conceyuep [of som men] 4 and [of] 4 som men conceyuep nonz. Also, capitulu 13°. Som berep children liche to [hem self and some liche to pe fader, and som liche to no man. Some berep dousters liche to pe fader 5 and sones 6 liche to hemself. Some berep children liche to] 7 some of 8 hire forfadres. Ensample is of 9 Niceus pe 10 noble peyntour at Byzantium, pat was i-bore of a faire moder and wente out of kynde and hadde on honde [as] 11 a blew man. Hugo, capitulo malo. Me seip that wommen kynde 12 is suche pat pey 13 conceyuep children i-liche to pinges pat pey seeip i-peyn and i-schape; for pe worthynge of the soule while pe body is in getynge of a childe sendep inward likenes and schappes pat pey 14 seeip wip oute, and rauscheip pe ynames perof as hit were to his disposicioun. And so pey useip in Spayne for to brynge

women haue in alle tymes male childer, somme women MS. HARL. at alle tymes female childer, and somme women bothe at diuere tymes. Also somme women be baryen at alle tymes and to alle men, and somme women benenge baryen to somme men conceyve of somme men. Also, capitulu 13°. Somme women haue childer like to theyme, somme like to the fader, and somme like to theire predecessores afore tyme. An exemple may be schewede of Niceus, a nowble peynter at Byzantium, whiche borne of his moder, a feire woman, wente owte of kynde in to a fowl man of Ethi-oppe. Hugo, capitulo Malo. Philosophers say the nature of women to be of suche disposicioun that the bryngye furthe suche childer like to the formas whom thei beholde in the tyme of concepcion, for the sawle of man in the vse veneralle transmittesthe interially formas other similitudes conceyvede exterialy, and takethe, as by rape, the similitudes of theyme in to his propre qualite. Therefore men in

1 copypner, Cx. (who has other slight variations.)
2 maydus, a.
3 Added from a, and Cx.
4 Added from a, and Cx.
5 fadris, b.
6 So B.; some a.
7 Added from a, which is partly corrected from B. and Cx.
8 some of] om. B.
9 of] om. a. and Cx.
10 pe] So a. B. and Cx.; for, MS.
11 Added from a and Cx.
12 So a.; womans kynde, Cx.; kyndynde, MS.
13 he, a.; she, Cx.
14 he, a.; she, Cx.
concipientium, et pulchras columbas depingere in locis ubi columbæ conversantur. Et Quintilianus defendit matronam accusatam de adulterio, eo quod Æthiopem genuisset, allegans talem imaginem tempore conceptus in cubiculo depictam suisse. Et Hippocrates scribit quandam suisse condemnandam, eo quod pulcherrimum puerum utrique parenti dissimilem pepererat, nisi Hippocrates monuisset querere an similis pictura suisset in cubiculo parentum tempore conceptionis. Plinius, libro septimo, capitulo tertio decimo. Idcirco autem in homine plures differentiae sunt, quia animi celebritas et ingenii varietas multiformes notas in ipso hominis conceptu imprimit. In ceteris animantibus animi sunt quasi immobiles, et ideo in illis quique foetus est suo generi similis.
faire hors and gentil, and holde hem to fore pe mares and in hir sitt while pey conceyuep. And pey vse also to paynte faire coloures in places per he colouers beep i-woned to dwelle. And Quintilianus excusep and defendep a woman pat was accused of spousebreche for sehe hadde i-bore a blew man, and he leggep for hir pat suche an ymage was i-peynt in hir bed chamber when sehe conceyued pat childe. And Ypocras wrotp of a woman pat schulde be damente to pe deep, for sehe hadde i-bore a faire childe pat was not liche hir self noper to pe fader; but Ypocras made men assaie, and it was i-founde pat suche an ymage was i-peynt in pe fader and pe moder bedchambre while pat childe was i-conceyued, and so pe moder was i-saued. Plinius, libro 7°, capitulfo 13°. Perfore in a man beep many dyuersites, for swiftnes of poytes and chaungynge of witte in pe concepcion prentip in meny dyners likenesse and schappes. In ojer bestes wit is as it were not chaungerable, perfore among hem al pe brood is liche to pe same kynde.

Speyne vse to sette or putte feire horses to the sichte of the mares when thei vse to gendre, and to peynte in places where dofes vse frescely with feire dofes in picture. And Quintilianus defended a woman accusede of advontery, in that sehe was delauntered of a man of Ethiopp, makenge allegacion suche an ymage to have be made in picture a bowte the bedde in the tyne of here concepcion. Also that grete clerk Ypocras writethe a woman to have been despisede, in that sehe was delauntered of a feire childe, lke neither to the fader neither to the moder, but that Ypocras defendede that woman, in that there was suche an ymage abowte the bedde in the tyne of here concepcion. Plinius, libro septimo, capitulfo tertio decimo. Therefore mony difference be in a man, swiftneses of sawle, variablenesse of witte, impressenye mony similitudes in the concepcion of a man. But the sawles in other bestes be as immovable, and pem fore every concepcion of thyme is like to the kynde of hit.

1 colouers, a., Cx., who adds or dowuus.
2 As in other places this word appears in the MSS. for where.
3 liech, a.; leyed, Cx. (with other slight variations.)
4 As this form occurs in Chaucer it has been allowed to stand.
5 he, a.
6 he] om. a. and Cx. (which is better.)
7 emprayeth, Cx.
8 yliche, a.
9 Quintilianus, Harl. MS.
De monstruosis hominum partibus.¹

Augustinus de Civitate, libro sextodecimo, capitulo septimo. De monstruosis hominum partibus² quæritur utrum ex primo homine an ex Noe credantur propagari, quales dicuntur Cyclopes unum oculum in fronte habentes.³ Quidam autem⁴ utrumque sexum⁵ dicuntur habere, dextram mammam virilem, sinistram⁶ muliebrem, vicissimque⁷ inter se coeundo et gignere et parere. Alibi etiam quinqueannas⁸ fæminas concipere; et octavum a nativitate⁹ annum non excedere. Alii crura sine poplite habere⁰ mira celeritate prestantes, quos Sciopodas¹¹ vocant, eo quod æstivo tempore resupini jacentes umbra pedum se protegent.¹² Ad quod dicitur, quod omnia hominum genera qui dicuntur esse credere non est nescesse; veruntamen qualis ratio redditur apud nos de monstruosis partibus, talis de monstruosis gentibus reddi potest.

¹ Title in D. only.
² partibus, E.
³ C.D. bring in here the reference to Augustine.
⁴ So C.D.; quod quidam, A.E. (without sense); dicuntur before utrum, B.
⁵ sexum, A.
⁶ et sinistrum, C.D.
⁷ quæ] om. E.
⁸ quinquennas, A.; quinquies, B.
⁹ nativitas, B.E.
¹⁰ habere] om. E.; dicuntur habere, B.
¹¹ So.E.; sciopodas, B.; sciopicidas, A.
¹² protegent, B.
Capitulum secundum.

Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro 16o, capitulo 7o. Off broodes, pat beep wonderliche i-schape, me axep 3if pey come of Adam and Noe. Som of hem hatte Cyclopes, and hauep but oon eyxe in pe for heed. Some hap1 eiper schap of man and of womman, and gendrep to gidres and gete, and coneycep and berep child,2 as pe cours comep aboute. For ones he schal gete a childe, and sche3 schal oftsones coneyce and goo with childe, euerich in his tyme as hit goop aboute. Som wommen coneycep at fyue 3ere olde, and lyuep nowt over ci3te yere. Somme hauep pighes with oute hammes, and beep wonderliche swift, an4 hatte Scioptodes;5 for pei liggep neulinge6 and doun ri3t in pe somer tyme, and defendi hem self wp pe schadewe of here feet from pe hete of pe sonne. Herto7 we answerep and seip pat it nedep nowt to thrwe pe parch eep so many manere schape men8 as me spekep of. Nepoles resoun as it is y-3oue of wonder schappe children pat beep among vs, suche resoun me may 3cue of dyuers manere peple pat

Capitulum secundum.

Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro sexto decimo, capitulo MS. Harl 2261. A question may be movede of suche merwylies in nature wheder thei come of Adam or of Noe, as men callede Cyclopes, hauenge oon eie in the forehede. And somme be f. 81. a. seide to haue either kynde as the ry3hte pappe of a man and the lifte of a woman, other while gendrenge to gedre and to coneyve. Also in other places hit is seide women of the age of v. yere to childe, and not to excede the viijthe yere from the naturite of theyme, and somme men have thees with owte a homem of grete swiftenes, whiche peple be callede Scioptode,9 in that thei lyenge in the somer tyme with theire faces wywarde, defende alle theire body thro the schado of theire foote. To the whiche question we say that hit is [not] necessary a man to beleve the kyndes of alle men whiche be seide to be; neuerthelesse the same reason may be assignede of the monstruous peple whiche

1 hauep, a.
2 childer, Cx. (with other slight variations.)
3 he, a, Cx.
4 and, a.
5 Cyclopes, MS., &c.
6 nyelynge, a; neulynge, b.
7 Wherto, Cx.
8 mishappen men, Cx.
9 stropode or scropode, Harl. MS.
Deus enim ubi et quando aliquid\(^1\) oporteat creari novit, sciens universitatis pulchritudinem, qualium partium similitudine aut dissimilitudine contextat. Certe sub nostra ætate in oriente natus est homo in superiori parte\(^2\) duplex usque ad medium ventris, inferius autem simplex. Nec propter hoc diffitebimus eum ab\(^3\) Adam processisse. Igitur hujusmodi\(^4\) monstruosa aut omnino non sunt, aut si sunt homines non sunt, aut si homines sunt\(^5\) ex Adam procul Antipodes. dubio processerunt. Quod vero\(^6\) Antipodas quidam fabulantur existere, id est, homines a contraria parte mundi adversa pedibus nostris calcare vestigia, nulla ratione credibile\(^7\) est. Nec\(^8\) enim hoc\(^9\) ullæ historica cognitio prodit, sed tantum conjectura humana adiuvenit. Quamvis\(^{10}\) enim terra sit rotunda, et intra convexa coeli quodammodo suspensa, non tamen est nuda ex illa parte ubi constat eam aquarum congerie circumcinctam;\(^{11}\) sed et licet terra ibidem esset nuda,

---

\(^1\) aliqua, C.; aliqua, A.D. 
\(^2\) superiori parte\] superioribus, C. D. 
\(^3\) ex, C.D. 
\(^4\) Hujusmodi igitur, B. 
\(^5\) homines non . . . sunt\] om. C.D. 
\(^6\) autem, C.D. 
\(^7\) crelendum, C., credid, D.; ratio plena non notabit, B. 
\(^8\) Neque, C.D.B., which last omits enim. 
\(^9\) hoc, D. 
\(^{10}\) Licet, C.D. 
\(^{11}\) circumcinctam, C.D.
beep wonderliche i-schape. For God knoweth how every thyng he be to create, and how he solde dispose the pulcritude of the vniversite in hit, in similitude of partes either in dissimilitude. In oure tyne and age a childe was borne in the este, dooble in the superior parte vn to the myddles of the bely, and single from that place downnewarde, hitte for alle that we schalle not [haue] difference but that he come of Adam. Therefore wonderfull or monstruous thynges, other thei be not in eny wyse, or if thei be thei ar noo men, or if thei be men withowte eny dowte thei toke their originalle of Adam. And that somme men say, as in fables, men callede Antipodas to be, that is to say, men to be in a contrarious parte of the worlde, and to trede with theire feete aseyne oure stappes; hit is not credible by eny reason, neither the cognicion of eny story dothe not expresse hit to be soo, but that the coniecture of man movethe that thyng. For than the erthe be rownde and connexede with ymne, neverthelesse hit is not bare of pat parte, sithe that hit is circumanmicate with waters, and thanke the erthe were bare per, hit wolde not

1 medled, a 2 come, a., Cx. 3 Text as in a. and Cx.; clauses transposed in MS. 4 synge, Cx. 5 oures, Cx.
non ideo esset consequens quod homines ibi haberet. 

_Ranulphus_. Nisi forte velimus intelligere Antipodas eo modo quo tradit Marcianus in Astrologia sua, dicens quod antipodibus aestatem facit Capricornus et hyemem Cancer, quod utique ultra australarem partem Æthiopiae conjicitur fore, ubi obliqua et pene contraria fiunt vestigia his qui circa insulam Tylæ sub ipso polo arctico morantur. _Isidorus, libro undecimo._

Portentorum creationes quandoque fiunt ad significat.
pe water. And pey he were bare and nouȝt so i-closed, ȝit it folowep nouȝt that men schulde wonye pere. R. But we wolde mene, as Marcianus seip in his Astrologie, pat Capricornus pe goot makep somer to pe Antipodes, and pe Crabbe makip to hem wynter; and pat is acounted byȝonde pe side of Ethiopia, blew men londe; pere men tornoȝ wel nigh here feet towerde men feet pat wonep aboute pe ilond Tyle vnder pe norp sterre. Trevisa. Here take hed pat pe cerce pat pe sonne holdep his cours yyne by the ȝere is i-deled in twelue parties, and eueriche partie perof is i-cleped a signe, and euerich signe hap his owne name. ȝe bpee pe names of pe signes: pe Wether, pe Boole, pe Twynnes, pe Crabbe, pe Leon, pe Mayde, pe Balaunce, pe Scorpioun, pe Archer, pe Goot, pe Seen, pe Fisshe. Also twelue monþes ben 8 in pe ȝere, and eueriche monþe pe sonne entrep in to a signe, as it i-fallep for pe monþe. And so in Marche pey entrep into pe Weper; in Averel 10 in to the Boole; in May in to pe Twynnes; in Iuyn into pe Crabbe; and so forþ arewye by monþes and signes, so pat in Decembre pe sonne is in pe Goot. Janne Marcianus wil mene whan he seip pat pe Goot makep somer [to Antipodes, pat whanne pe sonne is in pe Goot þan hit is somer] 11 wip hem. But in Decembre it is mydwynter monþe; and whanne he seip pat pe Crabbe makep hem wynter, he menep pat whanne pe sonne is in pe Crabbe þan it is wynter wip ham, pat is in Iuyn, pat is mydsom rever pe monþe: and so hit is i-clared 12 what it is to mene, pe Goot makep hem somer, and pe Crabbe wynter. Isidorus, Etymolog., libro xj. Som tyne burþes bpee i-bore wonderliche and 13 wonderliche i-schape for to bodeyneq

followe by a directe consequente that the crite scholde cons-
teyne men in that parte. R. Perauenture but if we under-
stonde Anipodas men so namede in that maner as Mar-
cianus dothe in his Astrology, seyenge that Capricorne
makethe somer to men called Antipode, and Cancer wynter;
whiche thyngye is supposeyd to be caused ouer the sowthe
parte of Ethiopia, for the stappes per be oblike and con-
trarious to theyme whiche dwelle abowe the yle callede
Tyle vnder that pole artike. Isidorus, Eth., libro xj. The
creaciones of wondres be causeyd otherwhile to the

1 haver, a.
2 he, Cx.
3 the cancer, the signe, Cx.
4 mynes, Cx.: (twice.)
5 So Cx. (that); of, MS.
6 a propre name, Cx.
7 scene, a; scene, b; steue, Cx.
8 Added from a, and Cx.
9 (Germ. Schenk) is the true reading.
10 See Glossary.
11 added, Cx., a.
12 and] om. a.
tionem 1 futurorum, et tunc non diu vivunt; ut quod 2 in tempore Xerxis, 3 regis Persarum, 4 vulpes ex equa nata solvi regnum portendebat. Et tempore Alexandri Magni cujusdam monstri superiores partes hominis erant sed mortae, inferiores vero variarum bestiarum sed viventes, significabant repentinam regis interfec-
tionem; nam 5 supervixerant deteriora melioribus. 

Isidorus, libro undecimo, capitulo ultimo. 6 Fiunt 7 quandoque monstruose transformationes hominum in bestias, quod fit magicis carminibus seu 8 herbarum 
eneficiis. 9 Quedam enim recipiunt mutationem per 

ipsam naturam, quedam 10 per corruptionem transseunt

---

1 significaciones, D.  
2 quod] om. C.D.  
3 Xersis, A.E.; Xerxes, B.  
4 Persarum] om. C.D.  
5 enim, C.D.  
6 Item capitulo ultimo, C.D. (E. omits capitulo ultimo.)  
7 fiunt etiam, C.D.  
8 aut, C.  
9 beneficiis, B.  
10 quedam vero, C.D.
and forto 1 comynge 2 of wondres pat schal bifalle, but paune pey lyvep nouȝt [for ymage]. 3 As in Xerxes 1 kyng of Pers his tyme a mare foléd [a fox], 3 and boded pat pe kyngdom schulde be vndoo. 9 And in pe grete kyng Alisaundres 7 tyme was i-brouȝt forþ a beest wonderliche i-schape, [for pe ouer parties of hym were i-schape] 3 as pe parties of a man, but pey were dede, and [pe] 9 neper parties were i-schape as pe parties of dyuers manere bestes, and were onlye, 10 and bode 11 sodyng of pe king, 12 for pe worse parties lyuede lengere pan pe bettre. 13

William Wayte of Berkeley sigh a child wip tweye hedes and tweye nekkes i-bore and i-fulled 14 at Mese in Loreyn, pe þere of oure Lord a powsand þre 15 hundred and sixe and fifti, pat þere pe kyng of Fraunce was i-take at þe batayle of Peyters. 16 Bis child hadde twie armes 16 and tweie legges, as ðer children hauþ, and he hadde pe priddle legge growynge oute aboue þe buttokkes bylynde, and pe priddle arme bytwene þe tweie schuldrus. 17 18

Somtyme is grisliche and wonderliche chaungynge and schapynge of men in to bestes, and is i-doo by wordes ðer by wiecheart. Som haþ and som sone 18 fongep suche chaungynge by þe same kynde, somme by corrupcioun passeþ and chaungeþ in to ðer kynde, and so of calnes significacion of thynges to comme, and then thi lyve not MS. HARL. 2261. longe; as a fox was foolede of a mare in the tyme of Xerxes kyng of Persa. And also þer was suche a wondere in the tyme of Alexander the Conquerour, the superior partes of whom were of a man, but dede, and the partes inferiour were of diuerse bestes, and in lyfe, which signifieth or signifiede the soden deth of kyngye Alexander, for the more vile partes lyvede more longe then the partes more nowbule. 2261.

Isidorus, libro iij., capitulo ultimo. And monstruous transformaciones of men in to bestes be made other-while thro charmes of wicches and wikkeþd operaciones of yerbes. Somme thynges receyve mutation by þeir nature, somme thynges goe in to other kyndes by corrupcioun, as bees of roten calffes, and vernyn callede scarabei of cor-

1 to] om. a.
2 and to kenning, Cx., who has also various slight alterations.
3 longe, a.
4 Excurses, MS., &c.
5 Added from a. and Cx.
6 vndo, a., Cx.
7 Alisaundres his, a.
8 Added from a. and Cx.
9 Added from Cx. (the).
in alias species, ut\textsuperscript{1} de putridis vitulis apes, de putridis equis scarabæi; unde Ovidius:\textsuperscript{2}

"Concava littorei si demas brachia cancri,

"Scorpius\textsuperscript{3} exibit, caudaque minasbetur una."

\textit{Augustinus de Civitate, libro octavodecimo, capitulo sextodecimo.}\textsuperscript{4} Quoad monstrousas hominum transformationes tenendum est, quod démones et mali homines nec possunt naturam aliquam creare, neque\textsuperscript{5} quod creatum est mutare; possunt tamen, Deo permittente, species transfigurare. Ita videlicet ut illud fantasticum hominis, quod cogitando sive somniando varias corporum formas haurit,\textsuperscript{6} sopitis corporis sensibus, etiam\textsuperscript{7} cum corpus non sit, veluti tamen corporatum in alijus animalis effigie appareat sensibus alienis; talisque sibi homo esse\textsuperscript{8} videatur, qualis sibi videri posset in somnis, et etiam\textsuperscript{9} portare onera, quae si vera sunt\textsuperscript{10} onera, portantur a daemonibus;\textsuperscript{11} ut sic, Deo juste judicante,illusio fiat hominibus. \textit{Ranulphus.}

De ista materia vide plenius infra\textsuperscript{12} post bellum Trojanum.

\begin{itemize}
\item[\textsuperscript{1} et, E.]
\item[\textsuperscript{2} Met. x. 369.]
\item[\textsuperscript{3} Coppus, A.]
\item[\textsuperscript{4} 19\textdegree, C. The true reference is to lib. xviii., c. 18. D. omits all the remainder of this chapter.]
\item[\textsuperscript{5} nec, B.]
\item[\textsuperscript{6} capit, Aug.]
\item[\textsuperscript{7} et, B.C.]
\item[\textsuperscript{8} esse\textsuperscript{1} om. B.]
\item[\textsuperscript{9} etiam\textsuperscript{1} om. B., Aug.]
\item[\textsuperscript{10} sint, A. (not Aug.)]
\item[\textsuperscript{11} ab hominibus, B. (not Aug.)]
\item[\textsuperscript{12} infra\textsuperscript{1} om. B.C.]
\end{itemize}
rupte horses, caneres and scorpiones of mules. 

Augustinus, MS. HARL. 2261.

rupte horses, caneres and scorpiones of mules. 

Augustinus, MS. HARL. 2261.

rupte horses, caneres and scorpiones of mules. 

Augustinus, MS. HARL. 2261.

rupte horses, caneres and scorpiones of mules. 

Augustinus, MS. HARL. 2261.
Cap. III.

De dissimilitudine inter hominem atque mundum.¹

²Licet igitur homo³ juxta prædicta conveniat cum mundo et ejus contentis, in nonnullis tamen conditionis⁴ prærogativis a mundo discrepat. Nam licet corpus humanum ab initio fuerit⁵ de limo formatum, suæ tamen animæ ita fuit proportionatum ut in eo esset complexionis æqualitas, organizationis conformitas, staturæ rectitudo, et figure pulchritudo. Et sic foret deinceps corpus animæ obtemperans⁶ sine pugna rebellionis, propagans sine pronitate libidinis, vegetable sine defectione vigoris, immutabile⁷ sine corruptione mortalitatis. Quinetiam conceptus hominis⁸ fieret sine pudore, partus sine dolore, victus sine sudore,⁹ motus membrorum sine errore.¹⁰ Ad hæc datus¹¹ sibi fuit paradisus ad habitaculum, mulier ad consortium,

¹ Title wanting in MSS.
² C.D. needlessly prefix Ranulphus.
³ homo after prædicta, B.
⁴ suæ added in A.B.C.D.
⁵ fuerat, C. (not D.)
⁶ contemporans, D.
⁷ immortalitatis, A.; immortale, B.
⁸ humanus, B.
⁹ labore, C.D.
¹⁰ horrore, C.D.
¹¹ So C.D., correctly; data A.E.; the longer form of the chronicle changing for the worse.
Capitulum tertium.

They man, as it is i-seide, be liche [and] 1 acord to pe world, and to 2 pinges pat ben conteyued perynne; neuerpeles in many poyntes of manis condiucion, of his prerogatif 3 and his worpynesse, he is dynerse and vuliche to the world. For pey mannis body 4 we[re] 5 firste i-made of erth, neuerpeles hit was [so] 6 couenabliche and so acordynge to pe soule, pat in mannis body was euennes of complexioum, acordynge of 7 lenes, riʒtfulnesse of stature, farinesse of schappe. And so schulde pe body afterward be buxom to pe soule wip outhe eny rebelnesse 8 and brynge forp children wip outhe eny synne, and lyue wip outhe eny defeaute of strenghe, and be translated and chaunged in 9 pe blisse of heuene wip outhe deienge and deep. Also he schulde gete and conceypn children wip outhe schame, and a woman schulde bere children wip outhe sorwe and woo, and haue mete and drynke wip outhe sweet 10 and trauaille, sterynge and meuynge in lymes wip outhe eny mysfare. And to al pis paradys was i-ʒeue to 11 mankynde fortto wonye yme.

Capitulum tertium.

Therefore thanʒe he man haue convenience with the worlde, after thynges aforeside, and with the contentes off hit, neuertheless he differrethe from the worlde in mony prerogatifes of his condiucion. But thanʒe the body of man was made in the begynnenge of the erthe, hit was so proporionate to the sawle that equalite of complexion was in hit, conformite of organizacion, rectitude of stature, and peluritude of figure, and so the body scholde be afterwarde obtemperate to the sawle with owte fʒhte of rebellion, vegetable with owte defawte of strenghte, immutabile with owte corrupcion of mortalite. And also the concepcion of men scholde be withowte schame, the byrthe with owte sorowe, lyvenge with owte laboure, the movenge of membres with owte errore. Paradise was ʒifen
lignum vitæ ad edulium, universa creatura ad sola-
tium, et tandem ipse Deus in præmium. Sed heu
cito¹ cecidit tantus signifer, qui mane oriebatur. In
honore quippe constitutus non intellexit; comparatus
est jumentis inhærendo vetitis,² adeo ut ab illo die
corpus corruptum per peccatum aggravet³ animam,
caro concupiscat adversus spiritum, et proni sint
sensus hominis in malum, inimici⁴ hominis⁵ domes-
tici sensus ejus; quinetiam tentatio sit tota vita
hominis super terram, sed et ipsa animæ accidentia
ipsum corpus afficiant et transmutent, sicut e converso⁶
corporis passiones redundant in animæ perturbationem.
Insuper et inest homini assiduitas deficiendi, impossi-
bilitas permanendi,⁷ facilitas cadendi, difficultas resur-
gendi, vilitas nascendi, anxietas vivendi, necessitas
moriendi. Plinius, libro xvij.⁸ capitulo primo.⁹ Et

¹ hodie, B.
² inhærendo vetetis] om. D., which also omits per peccatum below.
³ aggravaret, B.
⁴ quoque, C.D.
⁵ hominis] om. E.
⁶ e contrario, B.C.
⁷ standi, C.D.
⁸ 17°, B.
⁹ 13°, B. The true reference is to lib. vii. c. 1.
and woman forto be manis [telawe],\(^1\) paradys to wonyng
place, pe tree of lyf for mete, and al creatures for solace, at\(^2\) pe laste God hem\(^3\) self to be manis mede. But al\(\)s\(\) pat so noble a banyour fil so sone, pat was erliche i-brout\(\) and i-patte into\(^4\) worschippe: pey\(^5\) knewe nou\(\)t pat pey\(^6\) schulde be liche to bestes, whan he dede pat was forbode. From pat day forpward pe body pat is corupt by synne greuep pe soule. Pe flesche coueytep a\(\)stenp pe soule, and manis wittes tornep and assente\(\)t li\(\)tliche to eucl. A mannes owne meynal wittes beep his owne enemies. So pat at a manis lyf is in temptacion while he lyuep here in erpe, and pe disposicioun of pe soule rulep, meyn-teneth, helpep, and confortep pe body; but a\(\)stenward pe wrenched disposicioun\(^6\) of pe body distourbep pe soule. Also man\(^7\) is eure faiylunge [and] aweyward,\(^8\) he may nou\(\)t stedfastliche abide; he fallep li\(\)tliche, but he may nou\(\)t li\(\)tliche arise; profit of berpe is sorwe\(^9\) and care in\(^10\) lyuyngge; and man moot nedes deie. \textit{Plinius, libro 17°, capitulo 13°.}\(^11\) And pey alle opere pat beep i-made haue schilles,\(^12\)

to man as a inabitation, where he scholde reioyce thynge
afore seide, and a woman was ziifen to be his felowe, the tre
of lyfe to refreschenge, eueri creature to a solace, and at the
laste God was ziifen to hym in to rewarde. But al\(\)s\(\) no\(\)wble a sterre hade soone a falle that spronge fulle tymely,
whiche sette in honor hade not knowlege of hym selfe,
whiche is comparable to brute bestes in drawenge\(^13\) to thynge
prohibitite, in so moche that the corruppe body from that
day laborethe to greve the sawle. For scripture dothe expresse
that the flesche coveteth ageyne the sawle, and the wittes
of a man be prompte to synne, and the propre wittes of a
man be enmyes to hym, so that temptacion is alle the lyfe
of man on the erthe. And also the accidentalle thynge
of the sawle punnysche and transmute the body, soe in
lyke wise the passiones of the body redunde in to the per-
turbacion of the sawle, wherefore assiduite of feyntenesse
longethe to a man, impossibilite of permanence, ly\(\)ghtenes
to falle, difficulte to aryse,\(^14\) disease to lyve, and necessite to
dye. \textit{Plinius, libro 17°, capitulo 13°.} And sythe other

---

\(^1\) Added from a. and Cx.
\(^2\) and atte, Cx.
\(^3\) him, a.
\(^4\) in, a.
\(^5\) he, Cx. (twice.)
\(^6\) So a. and Cx.; dispensacioun, MS.
\(^7\) So a. and Cx.; men, MS.
\(^8\) and aweyward, a.; and wayward, Cx.
\(^9\) So Cx.; profits is (is of, a.) berbe sorwe, MS. and a.
\(^10\) in hym, MS. (not a. or Cx.)
\(^11\) Reference transposed in MS.
\(^12\) shelles, Cx.
\(^13\) a ryeve, MS., and similarly elsewhere.
cum cætera producta aut habeant testas, cortices, coria, villos, setas, pilos, plumas, pennas, aut squamas, homo ipse, tegumento carens, nudus effusus plorat in principio membris devinctus, quadrupedi similis, animante quovis debilius, nihil sciens, nihil aliud de se valens nisi sponte flere. Nulli uspiam vita fragilior, nulli morbus gravior, nulli libido major, nulli rabies acrior. Denique cætera animantia ad se afficiuntur, in suo genere prope degunt, non seviunt nisi ad sui dissimilia et ad sibi contraria solummodo et adversa. Homo tamen in seipso sibi contrarius in sibi proximum grassatur, et cum propinqua defecerint in seipsum seavit. Ranulphus. Ad hoc duplex homini inflectum est infortunium, et hoc quidem juste, unum ab intra, ut qui in vita sua projecit intima sua jam illa non habeat tranquilla, sed bella sibi pariant intestina. Aliud quoque incommodum imminet ab extra, ut qui suo superiori Deo obtemperare noluit, jam suum inferiorem sibi sentiat.

1 et cortices, A. 8 sic] so A.B.; om. C.D.; sibi, E.
2 velles, A. 9 et] om. E.
3 devinctus] originally destitutus, but devinctus written above line in another ink in C.; destitutas, D.
4 animante, B. 10 solummodo] om. C.D.
6 eitam, A. 12 defecerint, C.D.
7 Pinny has probe, which is much better. 13 sevit] om. B.
8 vita sua] vita, B.
11 scilicet Deo, B.
ryndes, skynnes, wolles, leere, bristles, feperes, wynges, oper scales; man is i-bore wiþ outhe any helynge,2 naked and bare, and anon at his berpe he gyffyneth forto wepe; at pe byggynynge liche to a beste, but his lymes falleþ hym, and may nouȝht helpe hym self. But he is feblere þan eny oper beest; he can non helpe, he may nouȝt doo of hym self, bot wepe wiþ alle his myȝt. No beest hap lyf more brutel and vnsiker. Noon hap siknesse more grevous, noon more likynge to doo oper wise þan he schulde. Noon is more cruel. Also oper bestes loueþ everichie oper of þe same kynde, and woneþ to gidres, and beep not cruel but to bestes of oper kynde þat beep contrarye to hym. But man torneþ þat manere doynge vp so down, and is contrarye to hym self and cruel to oper men; and he may not reche for to grewe opere, þan he bycomeþ angry and cruel to hym self. [R.]4 And þat to al þis man hap þweic myslyapes, and þat rysȝfulliche: oon is of hym selue wiþ yyne hym;5 so þat he þat preeþe awayy þees and reste þat6 werþe with yyne hym in his lyynyng, he hap nefþer þees ne reste, but werþe and stryþ wiþ yyne. Anþer myshap man hap wiþ ouþe forþ, so þat he þat wolde not be sogete to God þat is aboue hym, now he feþep his vnderlynges rebel to him. So þat pe

thynges brownþe furthe other haue schelles, barke, skynnes, MS. HARL. 2251. luré, plumes other pennes, or scales; a man entretice in to this worlde bare and nakede, wontenge eny couerenge, wepenge in his begynynge, more feble then eny other beste. For he can not do eny other thynge of him selfe but wepe. The lyfe of noon other thynge is more frayle, replete with moste infirmité, noo beste more leecherous. For alle other bestes luþe to gedre in theire kynde, and lyye to gedre, not cruelle but to bestes of other kyndes and contrarious to theim; but a man is contrarious ofteymes to his kynde and to hym selfe. R. Where fore iþ, infortunys be þiffen to man by ryȝhtenousenes, oon is interialle in that he caste furthe his partes interialle in his lyye, he scholde not haue theim now in tranquilité, but that the partes interialle scholde be to hym a conflicte. That other infortuny is exterialle, that man scholde haue his inferior rebelalante to hym, in that he was inobedient to God his maker, so that

1 feperes, a.
2 helynge or heereynge, Cx.
3 and yf, Cx.
4 Added from Cx.
5 So a. and Cx.; mystweie happes, MS.
6 hym] om. a., Cx.
7 bat] om. Cx.
8 neþer, a.
rebellantem. Ita plane ut relique creaturae, quae sibi concessa fuerant ad solatium fragilitatis, ad sustentaculum recreationis, ad vehiculum imbecillitatis, ad obsequium subjectionis, ad spectaculum admirationis, jam magna ex parte hominis aspectum refugiant, tactum abhorreant, dominium non sufferant, convictum reformident.

CAP. IV.

De creatione Adam.

Formatus itaque Adam homo primus de limo terrae extra paradisum in agro Damasceno sexto die seculi, et in paradisum translatus, peccatoque eodem die commisso dejectus est post meridiem. Sicque cecidit de statu innocentiae ad statum misericie, vir quidem in primordiis suis dulces in domo Dei capere potens cibos, sed vetita volens et prohibita probans cecidit ab alto ad imum, de luce ad limum, de domo ad devium, de fructu ad fletum, de laude ad luctum, de joco ad jurgium, ab amore ad odium, de prosperitate ad poenalitatem, de sospitata ad infirmitatem, de penu ad pensuriam, de gratia ad culpam, de pace [ad rixas, de gaudio] ad poenam, de familia-

---

1 reliqua creatura, D.E. 8 tenebras, D.
2 fuerat concessa, D.E. (but the verbs below in the plural). 9 de risu ad victum, added in C.D.
3 convictum reformident] om. D. 10 de, C.D.
4 Title in E. only. 11 dulcore ad absinthium, added in C.D. The latter MS. has several clerical errors and omissions.
5 igitur, C.D. 12 Added from B.
6 qui, B., om. D.
7 potens capere, B.
creatures pat were i-zeue man to solas of brutenesse, to susteynynge of confort, to bere vp feblinnesse, to seruise and subiectioum, to merour 1 and schewyge of wondres, now for pe moste deel he 2 fleep manyns siȝt, and his felawshippe, and his companye, and hatep his handelynge, and wil nouȝt of his lordschippe, and dredep sore to lyue and dwolle 3 wiȝp hym.

Capitulum quartum.

Adam was i-made of erpe in the filde of Damask pe sixte day of pe world, and i-brouȝt in Paradys, and synned pe same day, and was i-putte out after mydday. And he fel out of pe state of innocencen and of 4 welpe in to pe state 5 of wrechednesse and of woo. Man in his 6 bygynynge myȝte take wel sweete mete in Goddis owne hous, but he desired pat he schulde nouȝt, and he assayed pat was forbode, and fel out of hie in to lowh, out of liȝt in to derkeness and slym, out of his owne londe and contray in to outlawynge, out of hous in to maskynge and wayles 7 contray and lond, out of fruit into wepynge and woo, out of preisynge in to deel and sorwe, out of merpe in to stryf, oute of loue in to hate, out of ioye and welpe in to peyne and tene, out of helpe and grace in to gild and synne, 8 out of pees in to peyne, bestes and other creatures, which were create to the solace MS. HARL. of man, to the sustentacle of recreacion, to the obsequy of subieccion, to the spectacle of admiracion, flee in gretete parte the siȝhte of man, abhorrenge his towchenge, takeynge not hym as theire lorde.

Of the creation of Adam, the firste man.

Capitulum quartum.

Adam the firste man, yformede of the slyche of the erthe, in the filde Damascene with owte Paradise, in the vythe day of the worlde, and translate in to Paradise, was delecte for synne, doen that same day, from Paradise after none. And so Adam felle from the state of innocency to the state of misere, from the lic place to a lave place, from lîȝte to darkenese, from inhabitation to exile, from frute to weypenge, from ioj to peyne, from lufhe to hate, from swetenesse vn to bytternesse, from prosperite to penaunce, from healethe to infrinmite, from grace to blame, from familirite to offense.

---

1 myrour, Cx.
2 Pei, B; a, y.; they, Cx., rightly; but see p. 237 note.
3 So a; dwelle, Cx.; dbye, MS.
4 of bej MS. (not a.)
5 statute, a.
6 So a. and Cx.; woman in his, MS.
7 So a., B, y.; into wepynges and trouble, Cx.; valeyes, MS.
8 So a. and Cx.; sitte, MS.
ritate ad offensam. Methodius. Hic Adam quintodecimo vitae suo anno genuit Cayn et Calmanam sororem ejus. Iterum post hoc quintodecimo anno, quod est trecesimo anno, genuit Adam Abel et Delboram sororem ejus, sed interfecit Abel luxurunt eum parentes ejus centum annis. Ranulphus. Adam secundum Hebreos centesimo trecesimo etatis suo anno genuit Seth, et postmodum vixit ooctingentis annis; sed Septuaginta interpretes et Isidorus, Etymologiarum libro quinto, dixerunt Adam fuisse ducentorum triginta annorum ante nativitatem Seth, et postmodum vixisse septingentis annis; et sic Adam in toto vixit nongentis triginta annis; et mortuus sepultus est in Hebron, quod est Cariatbarbe, quod sonat.

Seth centum quinque annorum genuit Enos, et post vixit ooctingentis annis, sed Septuaginta interpretes dixerunt Seth ducentorum quinque annorum genuisse Enos, et post vixisse decem. quindecim annis.

Enos nonaginta annorum genuit Caynan, et post vixit ooctingentis quindecim annis; sed Septuaginta interpretes dixerunt Enos centum nonaginta annorum genuisse Caynan, et post vixisse septingentis quin-

---

1 C.D. add de prospero ad pernale, de vivido ad mortale. B. addis, after offensam, de dilectione ad inbedietation.

2 Hic itaque, C.D.
3 Cayn, B.
4 suum, D.; and so below.
5 Itev, A.B.
6 hoc, D.
7 xe. annis, B.
8 id, C. (not D.)
9 Adam] om. C.
10 sed . . . Abol] eo (Abel, D.) vero interfecit, C.D.
11 posten, D.
12 Petrus is here inserted in C.D.
13 Etymologiarum] om. C.D.
Adam, the fifth of his life, 1 Cain, and his suster Calmana. 

\[\text{Methodius.}\]

\textit{Methodius.} Adam gate Cayn and Calmana his suster in the xvth the yere of his age; also in the xvieth yere after that, which is the xxxth yere of his age, he gate Abel and Delbora his sustyr, but Abel sleyne, Adam and Eve wailede his deth by an c. yere folowenge. \&c. And, after men of Hebrew, Adam gate Seth in the c. and xxxth yere of his age, and lyvede after viijc. yere. But, after the lxxth interpretores and after Isidorus, \textit{Ethi. libro quinto}, Adam was of ijth and xxxth yere in age afore the natinute of Seth, seyenge Adam to hame lyvede after vijth yere. And sone hade Adam in age ic. yere and xxxth, which dyenge was \textit{f. 83 a.} 1 buryede in Ebron, that is callede Cariatharbe, whiche sowndethe a iij. cite, that is to say, of iijth. patriarches whiche were bereide there, Adam, Abraham, Ysaac, and Iacob. Seth, beenge of a c. and v. yere in age, gate Enos, and lyvede after vijth yere: but after the lxxth interpretores. Seth, beenge of cc. and v. yere, gate Enos, lyvenge after vijth, and also vij. yere. Enos of ce. yere gate Cayman, lyvenge after dece. and xv. yere. But after the lxxth inter-

\[\text{Trevisa.}\]

\[\text{MS. HARR.}\] 2261.

\[\text{Trevisa.}\]

\[\text{Trevisa.}\]

\[\text{Trevisa.}\]

\[\text{Trevisa.}\]
decim annis. RANULPHUS. Iste Enos dicitur specialiter invocasse nomen Domini primo; quia forte primus invenit verba deprecatoria, vel secundum Hebraeos quia fecit imagines ad honorem Dei, vel ad existandum pigritiam humanae memoriae in Deum.

Cainan. Caynan septuaginta annorum genuit Malaleel, et post vixit octingentis quadraginta annis; sed Septuaginta interpretes praeponunt centum annos ad septuaginta, et postmodum subtrahunt centum.

Mahalaleel. Malalaeel sexaginta quinque annorum genuit Jared, et postmodum vixit octingentis triginta annis; sed Septuaginta interpretes praeponunt centum ante sexaginta quinque, et post subtrahunt centum.


Enoch. Enoch sexaginta quinque annorum genuit Mathusale, et postmodum vixit trecentis annis sexaginta quinque, ambulavitque cum Deo, et translatus est; sed Septuaginta interpretes praeponunt centum ad sexaginta quinque. Iste Enoch adinvenit aliquas literas, et aliquos libros scripsit, sicut innuit Judas Apostolus in canonica sua; sub cujus tempore Adam creditur.
So and his for, and yere for and interpretatores, Pat Enos eleped fyrist Goddis name, for vpon caas he fond first wordes of prayenge. Opere, as Hebrewes tellep, he fond first ymage to worshippe of God: forto wake pe sloupe of manis mynde into God Almyžty. Caynan, pre score 3ere olde and ten, gat Malaleel, and lyvede afterwarde eižte honred 3ere and fourty; but pe pre skore and ten puttep an honred 3ere to fore pe 1 seunty, and wip draweþ an honred afterward. Malaleel, fyue and sixty 3ere olde, gat Iareth, and lyvede afterwarde eižte honred 3ere and pritty. But pe seunty settep an honred to fore fyue and sixty, and wip draweþ an honred afterward. Iareth, an honred 3ere olde and two and sixty, gat Enoch,2 and lyuede afterwarde eižte honred 3ere foure score and ten.3 [In] 4 pis seventy acordeþ wip othere. Enoch, fyve and sixty 3ere olde, gat Matussale, and lyued afterward pre honred 3ere, and helde God Almyžty his wy, and was translated and i-brouȝt in paradys, but pe seunty setteth a honred 3ere tofore fyue and sixty. Pis Enoch was fyndere of lettres, and wroot som booke, so seip Seynt Iudas the postle in 5 his pisle.6 Me trowede 7 pat Adam deyde in pretatores, Enos of c. and xc. yere to haue geten Caiman, and to haue lyffede afterwarde vijc and xv. This Enos is seyde to haue caelled to helpe specially and firste the name of Godde; for, as men of Ebrewe say, he made firste ymage to pe honor of God, to excite the slawthe of the memory of man in to the lawde of God. Caiman beenne of lx april yere gat Malaleel, and lyvede after vijc and xl iv yere; but the lxxi interpretores addde an e. yere aforo lxii, and after thei withdrawe an c. yere. Malaleel of lx. and v. yere gat Iareth, and lyvede after vijc and xxxii yere; but the lxxi interpretores putte an c. yere aforo lx. and v. yere, and take after that an c. yere away. Iareth of an clxij. yere gat Enoch, and lyvede after vijc yere; and the lxxi interpretores acorde with other in that. Enoch of lx. and v. yere gat Matussale, and lyvede after iii. yere, and walkeþ with God, and was translate; but the lxxi interpretores putte an c. yere to lxv. This Enoch founde somme letters' firste and did write booke, as Iudas thapostle rehersethe in Canonica sua; in the daies of whom mony men suppose Adam to haue dieþ. And lyke as the vij in

1 So c. and Cx. ; and, MS. 2 Enoch, MS., but Enoch below. The bar seems here and elsewhere to be only redundant. 3 foure score and ten] om. Cx. 4 Added from c. and Cx. 5 apostle, a. 6 pistol, a.; epistle, Cx. 7 troweth, Cx.
mortuus fuisse. Et sicut in generatione Cayn septimius ab Adam, scilicet Lamech, pessimus fuit, sic in generatione Seth septimius ab Adam, scilicet Enoch, optimus fuit.

Mathussale centum octoginta annorum genuit Lamech, et post vixit septingentis duobus annis, hoc est usque ad diluvium secundum veriorem traditionem, et non ultra per quatuordecim annos sicut quidam posuerunt. Sed anno vitae suae nongentesimo sexagesimo nono, quo cepit diluvium, mortuus est.

Lamech centum octoginta duorum annorum genuit Noe, et postmodum vixit quingentis nonaginta annis.

CAP. V.

De posteritate Lamech.

Cain primogenitus Adae genuit Enoch, qui genuit Irad, qui genuit Mauael, qui Mathussal, qui Lamech.
pis Enoch his tyme; and as [in] \(^1\) Cayn his children Lamech \(\text{in}^2\) Trevisa.

seuenthe from Adam was worst; so in Sep his children Enoch
\(\text{seuenthe from Adam was best. Metusale, an hondred }\)
\(\text{olde foure score and seuene, gat Lamech, and lyued afterward}
\(\text{seuen hondred }\)
\(\text{tweyne, }\)
\(\text{that was anoon to Noes flood.}
\(\text{Lamech, an hondred }\)
\(\text{olde foure score and tweyne, gat}
\(\text{Noe, and lyued afterward fyue hondred }\)
\(\text{foure score and}
\(\text{ten.}
\)

\textit{Capitulum quintum.}

Cayn, Adams firste sone, gat Enoch, he gat Irad, he
gat Manuiel, \(^2\) he gat Matusale, he gat Lamech. Pis Lamech

the generacion of Cayn, whiche was Lamech, was moste \(\text{MS. H}^\text{ARL.} 2261.\)
wyeckede in his generacion, soe in lyke wise Enoch, the
\(\text{vii}^\text{th} \text{from Adam, was moste good. Matusale of }\)\(\text{c.}^\text{lxxx.}
\(\text{and }\)
\(\text{vij. yere gat Lamech, lyvenge after }\)
\(\text{vij}^\text{c. and }\)
\(\text{ij. yere,}
\(\text{that is to the grete floode of }\)
\(\text{Noe, and noo longuer, after}
\(\text{the trewe tradicion; by }\)
\(\text{xiiiij. yeres, as somme men putte: but}
\(\text{he diede in the }\)
\(\text{ix}^\text{c. yere }\)
\(\text{lx. and }\)
\(\text{ix., in whiche yere the}
\(\text{grete floode began. Lamech of }\)\(\text{c.}^\text{lxxij. yere gat Noe,}
\(\text{and lyvede afterwarde d.}^\text{xc. and v. yere.}
\)

\textit{Capitulum quintum.}

Cayn the firste son of Adam gate Enoe, whiche gate
Iradius, whiche gate Manuiel; and he gate Matussaile, whiche

\(^1\) Added from \(\beta. \gamma.\)

\(^2\) So a.; \textit{Manuel, MS.}
Hic Lamech acceptis duabus uxoribus Ada et Sella, genuit ex Ada duos filios, Jabel qui fuit pater habitantium in tentoriis, et Tubal qui fuit pater canentium in cithara, et organo. Ex altera uxor, Sella, genuit Tubalcayn, qui fuit faber et malleator, et sororem ejus Noema, que inventit artem texture. 

Isidorus, libro quindecimo, capitulo secundo. Homines primum tanquam nudi et inermes, nec contra bestias aut homines tuti, nec receptacula frigoris aut aestas habentes, naturali solertia oppida ex cogitaverunt; unde et tuguria et casas ex virgultis et arundinibus contexerunt, ut vita eorum foret tutior.

Petrus, capitulo vicesimo septimo. Lamech septimus ab Adam et pessimus primus induxit bigaminam, et sic adulterium contra legem Dei et naturae ac contra Dei decretum.

Josephus. Jabel primus greges ordinavit a characteribus, distinxit hædos ab aghis, seniores a junioribus divisit. Petro, capitulo xxvijo. Tubalcayn inventit

---

took tweie wives, Ada and Sella, and gat tweie sones, on Ada Iabel, pat was fader of hem pat wonede in tentes and in paulyouns. And Tubal pat was fadre of organistres and of harpores. And Lamech gat on Sella Tubalcan, pat was a smyth worchynge wiþ hamer; and his suster Noema, sene was first fyndere of wenynge craft. Iosephus. Caym gadered richesse violentliche by strenghe, and made men be leechhous and peues, and tornede symple lyuyenge [of] men to fyndyngne of mesures and of wyȝtes; he ordeyned merkes and boundes of fildes and of londes, and bulde a citee and walled hit, for he drede ful sore hem pat he hadde i-greued. Isidorus, libro 15°, capitulo 2°. Men were first naked and vn-armed, nouȝt siker aȝenst bestes, nopter aȝenst men, and hadde no place to fonge hem, and to kepe hem fro colde and for hete; pan by besynesse of kynde witte pey bepoȝt hem of buldyngne, perfere pey bulde hem smale cootes and cabans, and waf ham and heled hem wiþ smale twigges and wiþ reed, pat hire lyf myȝte be pe more saaf. Petrus, capitulo 27°. Lamech, pe seuenpe from Adam and most schrewre, was pe firste pat brouȝte yn bygamy, and so spousebreche aȝenst pe lawe of God and of kynde, and aȝenst Godis owne dome. Josephus. Iabel ordeynede firste flockes of bestes, and merkis to knowe oon from anoþer, and departide kydys from
gate Lamech. This Lamech, takerenge to hym ij. wifes, Ada and Sella, gate of Ada Iabel and Tubal, and of his other wife, Sella, Tubalcaym, whiche was a smythe, and Noema, his suster, whiche founde firste the arte of wevyenge. Josephus. Caym gedrenge violently richesse, desirede men to thefte and robbery, chaungenge the simple lyfe of men, founde measures firste, and made a citee, dreedenge men, whom he hurte. Isidorus, libro quinto decimo, capitulo secundo. The firste men, as bare and with owte armore, not sure ageyne men either bestes, hauenge as noo places for coldenesse other hete, made places to thyme by naturalle reason of roddes and reedes, that their life myȝhte be in more suerte. Petrus, capitulo vicesimo septimo. Lamech, the vijth from Adam, and the moste wicked man, inducde firste bigamy, and so adultry, ageyne the lawe of God and of nature, and ageyne the ordinanuce of God, Josephus. Iabel ordeynede firste flockes, diuidenge kydys from lambes with

1 was first fyndere of] fondefirst, Cx.
2 Added from a.
3 dread, Cx.
4 for, a.
5 cabans and keuerd hem with smale, Cx.
6 doom, a.
artem ferrarium et sculpturam; quo fabricante Tubal
sono malleorum delectatus proportiones et consonantias
ex eorum ponderibus invenit,\textsuperscript{1} id\textsuperscript{2} est, exercitator fuit
consonantiarum, non autem inventor instrumentorum
musicalium, quia illa\textsuperscript{3} longe postmodum sunt inventa.

\textit{Ranulphus.} Hie dicunt docti, quod licet Tubal ad
alleviandum tedium pastorale musicam primus exer-
cuerit, non ideo rationem consonantiarum per pondera
primus invenit; sed magis Pythagoras. De quo vide\textsuperscript{4}
infra, libro tertio, de\textsuperscript{5} Pythagora, capitulo undecimo.\textsuperscript{6}

\textit{Petrus, capitulo xcvij.}\textsuperscript{2} Lamech sagittarius, sed
cexecutiens habuit adolescentem ductorem, cum exerceret
venationem pro delectatione et usu pellium; quia non
erat usus carnium ante diluvium.\textsuperscript{7} Casu interfecit
Cayn latentem inter fructecta, aestimans ipsum esse heram.
Et quia ductor suus cum non premunierat, eum similiter
interfecit. Et ideo cum\textsuperscript{8} peccatum Cayn sit punitum

\textsuperscript{1} adinvicit, C.D.
\textsuperscript{2} id...xcvij\textsuperscript{2} abbreviated in C.D.
\textsuperscript{3} illa after postmodum, B.
\textsuperscript{4} videatur, B.; om. A.
\textsuperscript{5} de...undecimo\textsuperscript{5} capitulo de Pit-
tagora, B.
\textsuperscript{6} capitulo undecimo\textsuperscript{6} om. A.
\textsuperscript{7} quia...diluvium\textsuperscript{7} om. C.D.
\textsuperscript{8} tamen, B.
lambren, and zonge from olde. Petrus. Tubalcaim founde firste smythes craft and graunyng, and whan Tubalcaim wonste in his smepe a craft, Tubal hadde grete likynge to hire pe hameres sowne, and he fonde proportiones and acorde of melodye by wyzte in pe hameres, and so pe yve hym moche in pe acorde of melodye, but he was not fyndere of pe instrumentis of musik, for pey were i-fonde longe afterward. R. Here wise men tellep pat pe Tubal vsede firste musyk for to releue hym self while he was an herde, and kepte bestes, for all pat he was not pat fonde pe resoun of acorde in musyk by wyztes, but Pittagornes fonde pat; aperof loke wip ymne, in pe pridde book, of Pittagorases. Petrus, 27°. Lamech, an archer bot somdel blynde, hadde a zongelynge pat hadde hym while he houted for play and likynge, oper for loye of bestes skynmes, for men ete no flesche to bore Noses flood. And hit happe pat he slow Caym, pat loted among pe busses, and wende pat it were a wyld beste; and for his ledere warned hym not, he slow hym also. And perfere sippe pat Caym his synne was i-punsched seuen-

carectes, and the elder from the yonger. Petrus, capitulo 27°. MS. IIARL. 2261. Tubalcaim founde firste the arte of smythes and gravenge, whiche laborenge at the foerger, Tubal hamenge delectacion in the sownde of the malles founde proportiones and consonance of the weightes of theyme; that is to say, Tubal was an exciter of consonances but not the fynder of instrumentes musicalle, for thei were founde by a longe season after that tyme. R. But discrete men say, than the Tubal exercisede firste musike to alleviate the tediosenes pastoralle, nevertheless he was not the firste fynder of the reason of consonance by weightes, but rather Pittagorases, of whom hit schalle be schewedde in the thrudde booke. Petrus, 27° capitulo. Lameche the schoter hade a yonge man to his gouernoure and leder, whiche vsenge to hunte for delectacion and vse of skynmes, for men vsede not flesche afore the grete floode, did slee Cayn lyenge priuely in couere, travenge hit to hauke bene a dere, whiche did slee also his leder, in that he safte not to hym a monicion per of. Therefore, sythe the synne of Cayn was punyschede vij. folde, that is to say, in

---

1 lambren, a.; lambes, Cx.
2 smytheat, a.
3 So a. B. γ.; Tubal quae worbe, MS.; Cx. has omissions here.
4 Smyth, a.
5 Soon, a.
6 in] of, Cx.
7 for his plesir, Cx.
8 one, Cx.
9 happele, a.
10 byterd, Cx.

---
septuplum, id est in\(^1\) septima generatione,\(^2\) peccatum Lamech est punitum septuagesies\(^3\) septies, quia\(^4\) septuaginta et septem animae egressae sunt\(^5\) de Lamech, quae\(^6\) in diluvio perierunt; vel quia tot erant generationes inter Lamech et\(^7\) Christum, qui poenam pro omnibus solvit.

Josephus. Nullus putet falsum quod de tanta antiquorum longevitate legitur, cum ipsi essent religiosi, et pabula haberent opportuniora, et etiam propter gloriosas virtutes quas\(^8\) jugiter scrutabantur, scilicet astrologiam et geometriam, quae nunquam addiscere\(^9\) possent,\(^10\) nisi ad minus sexcentis viverent annis; quo in spatio magnus annus astrorum impletur.\(^11\) Josephus.\(^12\) Usque ad septimam generationem filii Seth fuerunt boni; sed postmodum\(^13\) viri\(^14\) abusi sunt viris, et mulieres mulieribus. Genesis. Ingressique filii Dei ad filias hominum, id est, filii Seth ad filias Cayn, genuerunt gigantes. Petrus, vicesimo nono.\(^15\) Et potuit esse, ut\(^16\) incubi daemones generarent gigantes, in quibus magnitudinis corporum correspondebat immanitas.

\(^1\) in\] So B.; om. E.  
\(^2\) in septimam generationem, C. (not D.)  
\(^3\) septuagesies, E.  
\(^4\) id est, B.  
\(^5\) sunt\] om. C.D.  
\(^6\) quae\] om. C.D.  
\(^7\) inter . . . et\] usque ad, C.D.  
\(^8\) quas ipsi, B.  
\(^9\) addiscere, E.  
\(^10\) possunt, A.  
\(^11\) Slightly varied in C.D.  
\(^12\) Reference added from A.B.C.  
\(^13\) postmodum\] post 700 anno, C.D.  
\(^14\) viri after sunt, B.  
\(^15\) xxix\] om. C.D.  
\(^16\) quod, C.D.; om. B.
fold, "pat is in pe seuenpe generacioun; for Lamech was pe seuenpe from Adam in pat lyne; Lamech his synne was i-punschede seuen and seueny folde; for seuen and seueny children pat come of hym were dede in Noes floode. Opere for so many generaciones were bytwene Lamech and Crist, pat payed a payne for vs alle.\textsuperscript{2} Iosephus. No man schal trowe pat it is false, "pat is i-rad of so longe lyynge of men "pat were somtyme, for "pe lyuede faire lyf, and hadde conenable and elene mete and drynke, and also for blisful vertues "pat "pey vsede, and made hem besy aboute astrologie and geometrie, "pat pey myiteithe neoure lerne but 3if "pey lyuede sixe hundred "ere at "pe leste; for in so longe tyme is pe grete "ere of [pe]\textsuperscript{3} sterres fulfiled. Petrus. Seth his children were good men anon to pe seuenpe generacioun; but afterward men mys vsede men, and women [mysusede women].\textsuperscript{4} Genesis. Godes sones took men douz tres, "pat is to menyne, Seth his sones took Cayn "his douz tres, and gete geantis. Petrus 29. And hit mythe be "pat Incubus,\textsuperscript{5} suche fendes as liep by women in liknesse of men, made geantes be i-gete, in pe whiche geantes gretnesse of herte answerep and acordep to pe hugenesse of body. But after Noes flood the vijthe generacion; the synne of Lamech was punyschede lxxiij tymes vij tymes, for lxxvij. sawles commenge furthe from Lamech were perschede in the grete floode. Other elles so mony generaciones were betwene Lamech and Criste, which redemed mankynde. Iosephus. I move that a man thenke not this to be fals that is redde of the longe lyfe of men in that tyme, sythe thei were religious men, and opportune exhibicion was ziffen to theyme, hauenge glorious vertues, as astrologie and geometry, whom thei serchode besily, whiche thynges they mythe not have lernede witho
twe thei hade lyuede vij yere, for the grete nowmbrace of sterres is fullfillede in that space. Petrus. The childer of Seth were goode vn to the vijthe generacion; but after that men abusede men, and women abusede women. Genesis. The childer of God goenge to the dozthers of men, that is to say the sones of Seth to the dozthers of Cayn, gate gigantes. Petrus. And hit mythe be that spirittes gate gigantes, in whom hugenesse of sawle was correspodente to the hugenesse of theire body. But other gigantes were

\textsuperscript{1} Adam Lamech, a.  
\textsuperscript{2} payed rawsome, Cx., who omits for vs alle.  
\textsuperscript{3} Incubus, a. γ.; Incubi, β., Cx., a preferable reading; but possibly Incubus may be meant for an (English) plural.  
\textsuperscript{4} Added from a.  
\textsuperscript{5} So Cx. and a.  
\textsuperscript{6} lygep, a.
animorum. Sed et post diluvium nati sunt alii gigantes in Hebron, et postmodum¹ fuerunt alii in Thanesæ Egypti, qui dicti sunt Tithanes,² de quorum stirpe fuit Enachim,³ cujus filii habitaverunt in Hebron,⁴ de quibus ortus est Golias.⁵

Josephus. Illis temporibus scientes homines, sicut per Adam predictum fuerat, quod aut aquis aut igne forent perituri,⁶ studia sua et artes quas excogitaverant⁷ scripserunt in duabus columnis, lapidea et lateritia,⁸ ne tolleretur a memoria quod sapienter excogitaverant;¹¹ in marmore¹² quidem contra diluvium aque, in lateritia contra¹³ incendium: E quibus ferunt columnam¹⁴ lapideam diluvium evasisse, et adhuc in Syria permansisse.¹⁴

Genesis. Igitur Noe cum quingentorum esset annorum genuit Sem, Cham, et Japhet, hoc est dicere, cum tantae esset etatis¹⁵ habuit hos tres filios generatos, et post hoc spatio centum annorum confecit¹⁶ arcam de lignis lavigatis, id est, politis, scilicet¹⁷ intus et extra bituminatam, trecentorum cubitorum in longitudine, quinquaginta cubitorum in latitudine, triginta cubitorum in altitudine, id est, a fundo¹⁸ ad tabulatum sub tignis, in qua fecit fenestram, et ostium...
were operè geantes i-borne in Ebron, and afterward were operè in Than, a citie of Egipte, and pilke geantes were i-cleped Tithanes; of hem com Enachym, his children woned in Ebron; of hem com Golius. Iosephus. Pat tyrne men wiste, as Adam hadde i-seide, pat pey schulde be destroyed by fuyr, oper 1 by water, perfore bookes pat pey hadde i-made by grete travaile and studie pey closede hem in twelie greet pileres i-made of marbly and of brend tyle. In a pilere of marbly for water, and in a pyler of tyle for fuyre; flor hit schulde be i-saued in 2 pat manere to helpe [of] 3 mankynde. Me seip pat pe pilere of stone seaped pe flood and is 3ît in Siria. Genesis. Dame when Noe was fyue hundred 7ere 4 olde he gat Sem, Cham, and Iapheth; pat is to menynge, 5 when he was so olde, he hadde þese þre sones i-gete, and he made pe schippe an hundred þere afterward of tymber, i-planed wel smethe, 6 and was i-glewed with ynee. 7 Pe schippe was pre hundred cubite long, and fifty cubite brood, and pritty cubite high from pe cule 8 to pe hahecse vnder pe cebans and housynde. Noe made a wyndow in his schippe, and a dore on

borne in Ebron after the grete floode, and other in Than, 9 MS. HARL. 2261.

—

1 or elys, Cx.
2 in] by, Cx.
3 Added from a. and Cx.
4 þere he, MS. (not a.)
5 to seyne, Cx.
6 smooth, Cx.
7 within and without, Cx.
8 kut, a. and Cx.
9 Can, Harl. MS.
in latere deorsum. Fecit etiam mansiunculas, coenacula, et tristega, consummans canin cubito. 2

Petrus, capitulx tricesimo. 3 Et facta est haec area instar corporis humani, in quo longitudo, scilicet a planta usque ad verticem, sexies major est latitudine, quae extenditur a crate lateris ad cratem; et iterum longitudo decies major est altitudine, quae extenditur a dorso usque ad ventrem. 6 Hugo<ti> de area. Area ista non valebat tot et tanta capere, nisi cubiti illi fuissent geometrici; cubitus enim communis et usualis continet pedem et dimidium, sive sex palmos. Palmus autem extenditur a pollice usque ad extremum digitum. Cubitus vero geometricus continet sex cubitos communes, quod est novem pedes.

Igitur arca perfecta, Noe sexcentesimo anno vitae suae ingressus est in cam primo die secundi mensis, introducens ad se per octo dies quae precepta fuerant introduci, antequam Dominus plueret super terram. Et sic factum est diluvium per annum pene terram occupans.

---

1 in] om. B.
2 Paragraph abbreviated in C.D.
3 capitulx xxx.] om. C.D.
4 scilicet] om. B.
5 est] om. B.
6 Rabanus et, ins. C.D.
7 valuit, C.D.
8 tot et tanta] tanta et tot, B.; tam multa, C.D.
9 usualis et communis, B.
10 enim, B.; quoque, C.D.
11 quod est] scilicet, B.; qui sunt, D.
12 The rest of this chapter is wanting in C.; part is transposed to the beginning of the chapter. See previous note.
13 terram fere, B.
pe side downward, and housyng and cabans wip dyuers flo-
rynghe: pe wyndow was a cubyte highe. *Trevisa.* Here me1
may wondere how pe wyndowe was i-made byncpe in pe side
of the schippe for conyngge [yn]2 of water. *Doctor de Lyra*
meuep pis doute, and [sayth]3 pat pere we hauep fenestre, pat
is a fenestre and a wyndow, pe lettre of hebrew hatte4 lucern,
pat is a lanterne; and som men seip pat pat lanterne was a car-
buncle oper som oper precious stoon, pat schoon and 3af li3t
clere i-now pere it was i-sette. Bot som oper seip pat pat
wyndowe was an hool5 cristal stoon, and feng yn li3t6 and hilde
out water. Meny oper wyndowes were in pe schippe, and so it
needede, for [pe]7 schippe was ful grete and huge, and had yn
ful many bestes. *Petrus,* 30. Pis schip was i-made somdel to
pe liknesse of manis body, in pe whiche pe lenghe from pe sole
of pe foot in to pe top of pe heued8 is suche sixe as pe brede,
pat is from pe myddel of pe side ribbes in pe oper side. Also9
pe lenghe is suche ten as pe deepnese pat strecchepe from pe
rible10 to pe wombe. *Trevisa.* Yf pe man is11 ful schape as
he schulde be, noper to greet noper12 to smal. *Hugo de Arca,*13
Pis schippe my3te nou3t fonge so meny bestes and oper pinges
and so grete, but pe cubites were cubites of gemetrie.14 For
pe comoun cubite pat me vsep conteynep but a foot and an
half, pat is sixe spannes. A spanne strecchepe from pe ende of
pe pome to pe ende of pe myddel fynger, when pe honde is
i-strau3t. But a cubite of gemetrie conteynep sixe comoun
cubites, pat wil be nyne foot long. *Genesis.* Panne whan the

durre in the side downewarde. And also mansiones and MS. HARL.
other chambres, endeuge them in a cubite. *Petrus,* 30.
That schippe was made after similitude of the man, in whom
the longitude, whiche is from the soole of the foote vn to the
toppe of the heide, is in vj. tymes more then the brode-
nesse of hym, which is extended from side to side; and
also the longitude of hym is x. tymes more then the hizhite
whiche is extended from the bak to the bely. *Hugutio de Arca.*
That schippe; my3te not conteyne so many thynges
with owte the cubites were geometricalle, for the commune
cubite and vsualle conteynethe a foote and a dimidia;15 a geo-
metricalle cubite conteynethe vj. commune cubites, whiche
make ix. footes. *Genesis.* Noe enduenge that schippe in the

---

1 men, Cx.
2 Added from a, and Cx.
3 Added from Cx.
4 haub, a. β. γ. and Cx., which
seems right.
5 at hool of, a. and Cx.
6 by whiche light entred, Cx.
7 Added from a. and Cx.
8 heed, Cx.
9 Also in, MS. (not a. or Cx.)
10 rigge, Cx.
11 be of, Cx.
12 a, a.
13 Arm, MS.
14 geometry, Cx.
Aqua nempe diluvii transcendit montes excelsos quindecim cubitis, quia per tantam altitudinem putantur opera hominum födasse aera, scilicet per ignis adorationem, qui tam alte extulit. In hoc anno terminatur prima aetas sæculi, ab Adam usque ad diluvium sub generationibus decem, quae supra tanguntur, habens annos secundum Josephum, libro primo, capitulo quarto, et etiam secundum Hebreos, duo milia sexcentos quinquaginta sex. Sed secundum Septuaginta interpretētēs et Isidorum, libro quinto, duo milia ducentos, quadraginta duos. Sed secundum Hieronymum non plene duo milia; secundum Methodium duo milia. Ipse nempe Methodius 3 omittit annos, si qui superfuerint supra millenarios, quia ipse calculat ætates per chiliades.

1 Aqua . . . extulit] om. A.B.
2 quo, A.B.
3 Methodius] om. A.B.
schippe was i-made, Noe, in pe 3ere of his lyf sex hundred, entrede and 3ede in to [pat] 1 schippe pe firste day of pe seconde monpe, pat is May. 2 And in ei3te dayes he broughte in to pe schippe al pat he was i-hote yn for to bryngle 3 or 4 oure Lordle sent reyne vppon 5 erpe. And so pe flood was i-made, and occupied pe erpe wel nyh al a 3ere. Pe water of pe flood passede fi5tene cubites aboue pe higest hilles. For the workes of mankynde defouled pe ayer so hige, as me trowepe, by worshippynge of fuyre pat smokede and sprancled 6 vp so hige. Pis 3ere endepe 7 the firste age of pe world from Adam to Noe his flood vnder ten generacionus pat we speke of raper. And Iosephus, libro primo, capitul6 quarto. And also the Hebrewes seip pat pis firste age of pe world conteynep two powsands 3ere seuen hundred 8 and sixe and fifty; but pe seuentyn torneres and Isidre also, libro quinto, seip two powsand 3ere seuen hundred and two and fourty. But Ierom seip not fulliche two powsand. And Methodius seip two powsand, for here he leuep pe odde 3eres pat beepe ouer pe powsandes. 9 For pey 10 calclep and aceountep pe ages of pe world by powsendes, and lect pat oper deel abyde.

(Diagrams of the ark as in Higden's text.)

vj c. yere of his life, entrede in to pe firste day of the MS. HARR. secunde monethe, bryngenge to hit by viij 1261 c. yere commandende to be broug3hte to hit, or the reyne begane: after that a floode was made, occupieng the erthe allemoste by a yere. The water of that floode was above the hieste hilles by xv. cubites, by whiche altitude hit is seide the werkes of men to haue corrupte the aier. In whiche yere the firste age of the worlde is terminate, from Adam to the grete floode, vnder x. generaciones, haunenge, after Iosephus, libro 1 c, capitul6 4, and after men of Ebrewe, ij 9 c. vj c. yere. But after the lxx 10 interpretatores, and after Isidorus, libro 510, ij 9 c. xlij 4 yere; after Seynte Ierom not fully ij 11; after Methodius ij 12, but he leveth the yeres, if per be euy ouer m i, for he dothe calcle the ages by ciliades.

(Here follow diagrams of the ark, entitled, Descriptio arce Noe, secundum doctos.)

1 Added from a. and Cx. 2 of Maii, Cx. 3 al that he was warned to bryngle in, Cx. 4 ar. a.; er, Cx. 5 here vppon, a., Cx. 6 sprynkheld, Cx. 7 ended, Cx. 8 hundred 3ere, MS. (not a. or Cx.) 9 So a. and Cx.; powsand, MS. 10 he, b. y. and Cx., which is right, but the strange use of the pronouns has been noticed before both in MS. and a.
CAP. VI.\textsuperscript{1}

*De posteritate Noe.*\textsuperscript{2}

Genesis. Exsiccatis aquis diluvii,\textsuperscript{3} et Noe egresso vicesimo septimo die mensis secundi, id est, Maii,\textsuperscript{4} promisit Dominus Noe quod ultra non fieret diluvium. In cujus fœderis signum posuit arcum suum in nubibus celii. *Petrus.*\textsuperscript{5} Arcus est signum duorum judiciorum, judicii scilicet præteriti per aquam ne\textsuperscript{6} timeatur, et futuri per ignem ut expectetur. Inde est quod arcus\textsuperscript{7} habet duos\textsuperscript{8} colores, exteriorem caeruleum, id est, aqueum, quia\textsuperscript{9} præterit; et ignem interiorem, quia\textsuperscript{10} futurus est. Et tradunt sancti quod per quadraginta annos\textsuperscript{11} ante judicium non videbitur\textsuperscript{12} arcus.

Ranulphus. Secundum sanctos ab Adam usque ad Noe non pluerat, nec Iris appaerat; nec fuit usus

\textsuperscript{1} The division of the chapters is not marked by the original scribe in A., but a later hand has noted Cap. vi. in the margin.
\textsuperscript{2} Title wanting in MSS.
\textsuperscript{3} *diluvii* om. C.D.
\textsuperscript{4} *vicesimo ... Maii* cadem scilicet die qua ingressus est anno revoluto, C.D.
\textsuperscript{5} A.B. add 32. The true reference is to c. 35.
\textsuperscript{6} *ut*, B.
\textsuperscript{7} arcus] om. C.D.
\textsuperscript{8} *duos* om. B.
\textsuperscript{9} *qui*, B.
\textsuperscript{10} *qui*, A.B.
\textsuperscript{11} *per ... annos* 40 annis, C.D.
\textsuperscript{12} *videtur*, B.
Capitulum sextum.

At ye laste whanne pe water of pe flood was wipdrawe and Noe went out of pe schippe pe seuen and twenty day of pe secunde monype, pat is, May; pan oure Lorde byhete Noe pat no suche flood schulde he after pat; and in tokenyng of pe covenant he sette his bowe in pe clowdes, pat is, pe reynbowe. Petrus, 32°. Pe reynbowe is tokenyng of tweye domes, of pe dome pat was i-doo by water; for me schulde nouz't drede hit; and of pe doome pat schal be by fuyre, for me schulde drede hit. Perfore pe bowe hap tweie coloure, pe vtter is watery, for pe dome of water is apassed; pe yynere is furry, for pe dome of fuyre schal be. And holy seyntes tellep pat pe reynbowe schal nouz't be seie fowry zere to foere pe day of dome. Also pei telle pat it roon neuere from Adam to Noes flood. Also noon reynbowe was i-seie at pat tyme, noper fleche ne fische i-et, noper wyn i-dronke. For pat tyme was as hit were springing tyme, and poo was i-now and plente of al heleful pinges, pat was afterward i-chauenged porw synne.

Capitulum sextum.

The waters of that grete floode dryede, and Noe gon MS. HARL. furthe from his schippe the xxvij° day of the secunde monethe, whiche was Maii, God promisede to Noe that the waters scholde sease, in a signe where of he put his bowe in the clowdes of heuyyn. Petrus, 22° capitulo. That bowe is a signe of ij. iuggementes, oon paste by water, whiche scholde not be dredde, and an other iuggemente to comma by fyre whiche scholde be taryede. Therefore hit is that a bowe hadhe ij. coloure, the coloure exteriale as of water, whiche is paste, and a coloure of fire with wynne, whiche is to comma. Also holy men expresse that the bowe schalle not be seen by xl° yere afore the iuggemente. Also they say that there was noo reyne from Adam vn to the grete floode, neiper that bowe did appere, neither the exercise of flesche, fische, either of vynes, was vsede; for that tyme was as the temperate tyme of ver, and habundaunce of hollesomme thynges whiche were chaungedede afterwareds by synne. Wherefore the eiteng of flesche

---

1. flood withdrawe, a. and Cx.
2. and] om. Cx.
3. tokyn, a. Cx.
4. pat, a.
5. tokyn, a.
6. Text as in a. and Cx.; some words repeated without sense in MS.
7. helthful, Cx.
carnis aut piseis aut vineae, sed herbarum et radicum.  
Vixit Noe post diluvium trecentis\(^2\) quinquaginta annis, et sic in toto vixit nongentis quinquaginta annis; et sic\(^3\) mortuus est, relietis post se filii\(^4\) Sem, Chaam, et Japhet,\(^5\) de quibus disseminatum est omne genus hominum.\(^6\) Genesis.\(^7\) Igitur biennio post diluvium Sem centum annorum existens\(^8\) genuit Arfaxad,\(^9\) et vixit postmodum\(^10\) quingentis annis.\(^11\) Arfaxat, pater Chaldeorum secundum Hieronymum, centum triginta annorum genuit Sale, et vixit postmodum trecentis tribus annis, sed secundum Septuaginta interpretes, et secundum Lucam Evangelistam qui secutus est Septuaginta interpretes, Arfaxat centum triginta quinque annorum genuit Caynan,\(^15\) et postmodum vixit trecentis triginta annis.\(^16\)

Caynan\(^17\) centum triginta\(^18\) annorum existens genuit Sale,\(^19\) a quo sunt antiqui Samaritae vel Judaei,\(^20\) et postmodum, secundum Septuaginta interpretes,\(^14\) vixit quadringentis triginta octo annis.

---

\(^1\) R. . . . radicum\] This passage (added in margin of C.) is as follows in A.B.C.:—"Iam dieunt "quod ab Adam usque ad diluvium "non pluerat nec arcus apparerat,* "nee usus carnis, piscis, aut vinea? "fuerat, quia tunc fuit quasi ver- "nalis temperies et copia rerum "salubrium, quae postmodum per "peccatum fuerunt immutata; unde "et post diluvium eius carnium "concessus est homini, qui prius "herbis et radicibus vesechatur."

\(^2\) cc., B.

\(^3\) sic\] om. C.D.

\(^4\) post se filii\] tribus post se filii, A.; tribus filiiis, B.; tribus filiiis suis, C.D.

\(^5\) Japhet, A.B.D.

\(^6\) humanum, A.

\(^7\) Genesis] om. C.D.

\(^8\) secundo anno post diluvium, ins. C.

\(^9\) Arfaxat, A.D.

\(^10\) postmodum\] almost always post in this cap. in C.; postea, D.

\(^11\) annas, D.; correctly; but the MSS. have annis almost always.

\(^12\) et, A.

\(^13\) 239, B.

\(^14\) et . . . interpretes\] om. B.

\(^15\) Chaynnan, A.

\(^16\) Sentence slightly transposed and abbreviated in C.D.

\(^17\) Luca teste, ins. C.D., badly.

\(^18\) 230, D.

\(^19\) By a blunder of the scribe the sentence has been transposed in A., marginal notes being placed to indicate the errors.

\(^20\) vel Judaei\] Ludi, E.; om. A.
Bot after ye flood mankynde hadde leue forto ete fische and Trevisa.
flesche,¹ pat raiper ete herbes and rootes. Noe lyuede after ye
flood þre hundred þere and fiftie, and he leuede in alle nyne hun-
dred wyнтер ² and fiftie, and so deyde, and lefte þre sones [on
lyue] ³ Sem, Cam, and Iapheth, of þe whiche þre com al
manere of mankynde. Genesis. Panne two þere after þe
flood Sem was an hundred þere old, and gat Arphaxath, and
lyuede afterward fyue hundred þere. Arphaxath was fader
of Caldeys, and gate Sale whan he was an hundred þere olde
and fyue and pritty, as Ierom seip; but Iiside, libro sexto
and þe³ Hebrewes seip fyue and pritty þere. He gat Caynan,⁵
and lyuede afterward þre hundred þere and þre; ⁶ [but þe
sevenly, and Luc also pat folweþ hem: Arphaxat whanne he
was an hundred þere and fyue and pritty, he gat Caynan, and
lyuede afterward þre hundred þere and þritty.]⁷ Caynan, an
hundred þere olde and þritty, gat Sale; of hym come þe olde
Samaritans and the Iudees, and lyuede afterward foure hundred
and eiȝte and pritty þere,⁸ so⁹ þe seventy telleþ.

was graunsted to man after that grete floode, vsenge a fore
that tym to cite yerbes and rootes. Noe lyuede after that
floode by ecc. and lᵗ yere, and so he lyvede in alle ixᶜ
and lᵗ yere, whiche dyenge lefte his iij. childer after hym,
Sem, Cham, and Iapheth, of whom alle the kynde of man
was disseminate. Genesis. Sem beenge of a c. yere in
age, in the secunde yere after the grete floode, gate Arphaxat,
and lyuede after vᶜ yere. Arphaxat, the fader of men of
Caldea, after Seynte Ierom, beenge of a c. and xxxviᵗ
yere after Ysoder and men of Hebrewve, when he was of
the age of xxxviᵗ yere, lie gate Sale, and lyuede after
eecc.iij. yere. But after the lxxᵗ interpretatores, and after
Seynte Luke Evangeliste, whiche foloede theynþe, Arphaxat
of a c. and xxxviᵗ yere in age, gate Caynan, and lyuede after
ee. and xxxviᵗ yere. Caynan, hauenge a c. and xxxviᵗ yere in

¹ flæsce and fisce, a, ⁴ he] om. a.
² yere, Cx. ⁵ He gat Caynan] om. a, and Cx.
³ Added from a, and Cx. ⁶ So a, and Cx.; pritty, MS.
⁴ Added from a, and Cx. (the ⁷ eyre] transposed in a.
⁴th has also folowed.) ⁸ so bat, MS. (not a, or Cx.)

2291. MONACHI CESTRENSES, LIB. II. 241
Sale. Sale secundum Hebreos triginta\(^1\) annorum existens genuit Heber, a quo dicti sunt Hebræi; et postmodum vixit quadringentis\(^2\) annis; sed Septuaginta interpretes et Isidorus anteponunt centum ante\(^3\) triginta et post trecentos triginta.\(^4\)

Heber. Heber, a quo dicti sunt\(^5\) Hebræi\(^6\) secundum Hebreos triginta quatuor\(^7\) annorum existens genuit Phaleg,\(^8\) et postmodum vixit quadringentis triginta annis; sed\(^9\) Septuaginta interpretes et Isidorus ponunt centum ante triginta quatuor.\(^10\)

Phaleg. Phaleg\(^11\) secundum Hebreos triginta annorum existens\(^12\) genuit Reu vel\(^13\) Ragau, et postmodum vixit\(^14\) ducentis novem annis; sed Septuaginta interpretes\(^15\) et Isidorus addunt centum ante\(^16\) triginta, et postmodum ponunt\(^17\) ducentos octo.\(^18\) Et vocatus est iste Phaleg,\(^19\) quod interpretatum est\(^20\) divisio, eo quod\(^21\) in diebus\(^22\) ejus, cum terra esset labii unius, linguae confusae sunt turris\(^23\) constructione, et sic gentes per terras sunt divisae.\(^24\)

Ragau vel Reu. Ragau secundum Hebreos triginta duorum annorum existens\(^25\) genuit Sarug, et vixit postmodum ducentis\(^26\) septem annis; sed\(^27\) Septuaginta interpretes et Isidorus ponunt centum annos ante triginta duos,\(^28\) et postmodum\(^29\) ponunt\(^30\) ducentos septem.\(^31\)

---

1 100, D.
2 430, C.; 463, D.
3 *ante* om. B.
4 303, D.; sentence slightly varied in C.D.
5 *dicti sunt* om. C.D.
6 a...Hebraei om. B.
7 *quatuor* om. B.C.
8 So C.D.; Phalech, A.B.E.
9 *quadringentis...sed* 40, B.
10 ponunt...*quatuor* anteponunt cxxiiiij. annos, B.; *ante ponunt* 100 et post 330, C.D.
11 So C.D.; Phalech, A.B.E.
12 *existens* om. C.D.
13 Reu vel om. D.
14 *vixit* added from A.C.D.
15 *interpretes* om. A.
16 *anteponunt centum*, B.
17 ponunt] om. B.
18 sed...*octo* om. C.D.
19 Phalech, A.B.E.
20 *interpretatur*, C.D.
21 eo quod] quia, C.D.
22 tempore, B.
23 in turris, B.
24 Transposed in C.D.
25 existens] om. C.D.
26 trecentis, C.D.
27 *secundum*, B.
28 *anteponunt* 132, B.
29 post, B.
30 ponunt] om. B.
31 107, B.; *sed lxx. et Isidorus ponunt 300 ante 32*, C.D.
Hebrewes seip pat Sale, whan he was pritty zere olde, gat Heber. Of pis Heber pey were i-cleped Hebrewes. And Sale lyuede after he hadde i-gete Heber foure honred zere, but pe seuenty and Isidre acountep 1 pe honred zere afore 2 pe pritty, and pre honred zere after pe pritty. Of [Heber] 3 Hebrewes had 4 pe name. De Hebrewes seip pat Heber foure and pritty zere olde gat Phalech, and lyuede afterward foure honred zere and pritty; but pe seuenty puttep pe honred tofore pe foure and pritty. Hebrewes seip pat Phalech pritty zere olde gat Reu, pat hatte Ragau also, and lyuede afterward two honred zere and nyne; but pe seuenty and Ysidre puttep pe honred tofore pe pritty, and afterwarde two hundred and nyne. Pis hatte 5 Phalech ri3ftulliche, for Phalech is to menyng 6 departynge; for longage was departed in his tyme, pat raper was al oon in pe buldnyge of pe tour Babel. And so men were departed in to dyuers londes. Ragau, two and pritty zere olde, gat Sarug, and lyuede afterward two honred yere and seuene; so seip Hebrewes. But pe seuenty and Isidre seip an honred tofore two and pritty, and afterward two honred and seuene. Hebrewes seip pat Sarug pritty zere olde gat age, gate Sale, of whom the olde Samarites come. Sale, after MS.HARL. 2261.

men of Hebrew, beeng of xxxi yere in age, gate Heber of whom men of Hebrew we toke name, and lyvede after ece. yere; but after the lxxi interpretatores a. c. yere be put afore xxxii yere, and after that ece. and xxxii. Heber, of whom men of Hebrew toke name, hauenge xxxiiij, yere in age, gate Phaleg, and lyvede after ece. and xxxii yere; but the lxxi interpretatores put a c. yere afore xxxiiijyere. Phaleg, after men of Hebrew, of xxxi yere in age, gate Reu or Ragau, and lyvede after ij and ix. yere; but the lxxi interpretatores and Ysoder putte a c. yere afore xxxi yere and cc. and vij. yere after, and he was callede Phaleg, as division by interpretacion, in that the langage were confusede in his daies in the construcceon of the towre of Babel, and so the peple were diuided. Ragau, after men of Hebrew, hauenge xxxij yere in age, gate Sarug, lyvenge after cc. and vij. yere; but the lxxi interpretatores and Ysoder putte an c. yere afore xxxij and after ij vij. yere. Sarug, after men of Hebrew, of xxxi

---

Q 2

1 accompanied, Cx.
2 tofore, a.; bifor, Cx.
3 Added from Cx.
4 have, Cx.
5 heet, Cx.
6 to say, Cx.
Sarug. Sarug secundum Hebraeos triginta annorum existens\(^1\) genuit Nachor, et postmodum vixit ducentis duobus\(^2\) annis, sed Septuaginta interpretes et Isidorus ponunt centum annos ante triginta et postmodum ducentos.

Nachor. Nachor secundum Hebraeos viginti annorum\(^3\) existens\(^4\) genuit Thare, et postmodum\(^5\) vixit annis centum novem; sed Septuaginta interpretes\(^6\) ponunt\(^7\) centum ante viginti novem. Isidorus\(^8\) dicit Nachor fuisse septuaginta novem annorum, quando genuit Thare.

Thare. Thare secundum Hebraeos et secundum Isidorum cum esset\(^9\) annorum septuaginta genuit Abram,\(^10\) Nachor, et\(^11\) Aram; et postmodum vixit centum triginta annis; sed Septuaginta interpretes ponunt centum ante septuaginta annos. Petrus, tricesimo octavo.\(^12\)

Ætas secunda terminatur. Et sic\(^13\) terminatur secunda seculi ætas a diluvio usque ad nativitatem Abraham, per decem generationes proterva; habens secundum Hebraeos, Josephum, et Hieronymum annos ducentos\(^14\) nonaginta duos, sed secundum Septuaginta interpretes et Augustinum sunt\(^15\) anni mille septuaginta duo sub generationibus\(^16\) undecim; sed\(^17\) secundum Isidorum sunt anni nongenti\(^18\) quadraginta duo, secundum Methodium habet chiliadem.

---

\(^1\) *existens* om. C.D.  
\(^2\) *ducentos, C.D.*  
\(^3\) *annorum* om. E.  
\(^4\) *viginti existens* annorum 39, C.D.  
\(^5\) *et postmodum* om. B.  
\(^6\) *interpretes* om. B.  
\(^7\) *præponunt, A.*  
\(^8\) *autem, ins. C.D.*  
\(^9\) *cum esset* om. C.D.  
\(^10\) *Abraham, C.D.*  
\(^11\) *Nachor et* om. B.  
\(^12\) *tricesimo octavo* om. C.D.  
\(^13\) *sic* om. B.  
\(^14\) *mille ducentos, C.D.*  
\(^15\) *sunt* om. B.  
\(^16\) *et generationes, C.D.*  
\(^17\) *sed* om. C.D.  
\(^18\) *nongenti, E.*
Nachor, and lyued afterward two hundred 3ere and twyne; but the seventy and Ysidre puttep an hundred 3ere to fore pritty, and two hundred after. Hebrewes seip pat Nachor nyne and twenty 3ere olde gat Thare, and lyued afterward an hondrede 3ere and nyne; but pe seventy puttep an hundred 3ere to fore nyne and twenty; and Isidre seip pat Nachor was seventy 3ere and nyne, when he gat Thare. [Pe Hebrewes and Isidre seip pat] 3 Thaare seventy 3ere olde gat Abraham, Nachor, and Aram, and lyued afterward an hondred 3ere and pritty, but the seventy puttep the hondred to fore pe seventy 3eres. 5 Trevisa. 2it take hede rediliche of pe seventy: I haue i-seide to fore pat pey were pre score and ten, pat tornede Holy Writte out of Ebrew in to Grewe: hem I clepe pe Seuenty, and so pey bep i-cleped in pis book and of meny holy doctoures; and pey bep specialliche i-cleped pe Seuenty turneris, 6 for pey torned Holy Writte out of Ebrew in to Grewe. 7 Petrus, tricesimo octavo. And so the secunde age of pe world is i-ended, from Noes flood to Habrahams burpe; and conteynep ten generaciouns, and two hundred 3ere foure 8 score and twelve, so seip the Hebrewes, Joseph, and Ierom. But pe seuenty, as 9 Seynt Austyn, acountepe a pow-sand 3ere and two and seventy, and eleuene 10 generaciouns. But Isidre acountepe nyne hondred 3ere, and two and fourty;

yere in age, gate Nachor, and lyvede after ij and ij. yere; MS. HARL. 2261.

---

1 the thrytly, Cx. 2 afterward, Cx. 3 Added from a. and Cx. 4 Aaron, MS.; Aram, Cx. 5 yere, Cx. 6 turneres, a. 7 Cx. omits the extract from Trevisa. 8 So a, and Cx.; and pritty fowre, MS. 9 and, a. and Cx. 10 enleuene, a. and Cx.
Diversitas inter Hebraeos et lxxx. interpretes.

Causa hujus diversitatis est quod Septuaginta interpretes et Augustinus addunt centum annos ad ætatem cujuslibet generationis\(^1\) ab Arphaxat\(^2\) usque ad Nachor. *Beda*. Sicut Noe fuit decimus ab Adam, sic Abram \(^3\) fuit decimus a Noe. Veruntamen Lucas in serie\(^4\) genealogiae sue\(^5\) quando dixit "qui fuit Sale, qui fuit "Caynan, qui fuit Arphaxat," secutus est Septuaginta interpretes, qui unam generationem plusquam Hebræi posuerunt. *Augustinus De Civitate, libro quindicesimo, capitullo tertiodecimo*. Cum aliquid diversum in pluribus translationibus reperitur quod juxta fidem rerum gestarum stare non potest, potius credatur illi linguae unde in aliam fit translatio, *Beda*. Translatio\(^6\) Septuaginta interpretum vel minus soliciete primo edita est, vel postmodum a gentilibus\(^7\) corrupta. *Eusebius*. Ab Adam usque ad Abraham nulla penitus\(^8\) Graeca nec barbara inventur historia. *Methodius*. Centesimo anno tertiae\(^9\) chiliadis\(^10\) natus est\(^11\) Noe filius nomine Ionicus,\(^12\) cui dedit Noe dominationes usque ad mare Eliocora, cui

---

\(^1\) generantis, A.C.; ætatem after generationis, B.
\(^2\) So A.D.; Arfixat, E.
\(^3\) Abraham, A.B.C.D.
\(^4\) suc, added from A.B.C.D.
\(^5\) genealogie, E. (not A.)
\(^6\) vero, ins. B.
\(^7\) gentibus, B.
\(^8\) est nec, ins. C.D.; nec (only), ins. A.B.
\(^9\) tertiae\(^1\) om. B.
\(^10\) cicliadis, C.
\(^11\) est\(^1\) om. E.
\(^12\) Ionicus, E.
and Met[th]odius a powsand. Pe caas of pis dyuersite is, for pe seuenty, and Seynte Austyn also, putte to enriche fader his age from Arphaxath to Nachor an hundred 3ere. Beda. As Noe was pe tenpe from Adam, so Abraham was pe tenpe from Noe. Noepeles Luke followepe seuenty in his genealogic, when he seip, “Qui fuit Sale,” pat is to menyng, “pat was "Sale his sone” and so forp, “pat was Caynan his sone, pat "was Arphaxath his sone.” Bere Luke folowep pe seuenty, pat puttep on generacion moo pan pe Hebrewes puttep. Augustinus de Civitate, libro quintodecimo, capitulo tertio decimo. Whanne in men translacionis is dyuersite i-founde, pat may noupt stonde; jamne pe firste longage, pat pe tornynge and translacion is i-made of, schal be most i-trowed.3 Beda. Pe tornynge and translacion pe seuenty was first noupt ful rediliche i-torned, ober it was afterward apayred by mystelene men. Eusebius. From Adam to Abraham is no storie i-founde in Grewe, nope in strange langage. Methodius. Noe hadde a sone i-bore two powsand 3ere and an hundred after pe begynnynge of pe worlde; pat sone heet Ionicus; Noe 3af hym lordschip anoon to pe see Elichora. To hym God Almyghty 3af witte and wisdom pat he schulde fynde
diversite may be assignsede pat the lxxiv interpretores, MS. HARL. and Seynte Austyn putte a c. yere to the age of every man from Arphaxat to Nachor. Beda. And lyke as Noe was the xthe from Adam, see Abraham was the xthe from Noe; but truly Seynte Luke folowede the lxxiv interpretores in the ordre of his genealogy when he seyde “whiche “was Sale, whiche was Caynan,” whiche putte oon generacion more then men of Hebrewes putte. Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro quinto decimo, capitulo 13°. When a thynge is founde variable and diuerse in mony translaciones, that hit may stonde accordenge to the trawethe of the gestes, then hit is to 3ife moste specialle credence to that langage from whom the translacion is made. Beda. The translacion of the lxxiv interpretores was made insufficently, either hyt was corrupte of peple afterwarde. Eusebius. There is noo storye founde from Adam vn to Abraham in Grewe other in the langage of Barbre. Methodius. Ionicus, the son of Noe, was borne in the c. yere of the thridde ciliade; to whom Noe 3afe mony dominations; and God 3afe to hym a 3ife of sapience that he myghte

1 dyuercete, a.  
2 Augustyn, Cx.  
3 bilened, CX.
etiam dedit Deus donum sapientiae, ut inveniret astronomiam, et quod sicret prædicere quosdam eventus, potissime de or tu et occasu quatuor regnorum principalium; scilicet quod primi de Cham regnaret Assyrii, de quo fuit Belus; postmodum de Sem, Medi, Persæ, et Græci; denuo de Japhet, Romani. Hæc ostendit Ionicus Nemphroti discipulo suo, qui exhinc accensus libidine dominandi regnavit inter filios Cham in Babylone, qui interim obtinuerunt Assyrios et Ægyptios, quousque regnaret Ninus Assyrios. Josephus, libro primo, capitul o quinto. Post obitum Noe in diebus Phalex, cum terra esset labii unius, filii filiorum Noe, ducente et docente eos Nemphrot, filio Chus filii Cham filii Noe, putantes felicitatem non a Deo sed propria virtute sibi provenire, insuper et arbitrant es quod Deus per invidiam eos separare vellet, ut sic divisos eos facilius subjugare posset, timentesque aliud diluvium adventurum, turrim altam ex cocto latere et bitumine colligato ædificabant in campo Sennaar, ubi postmodum constructa est Babylonia. Sed verius eos dispersit Deus, ne dis-

---

2 praecipue, C.D. 11 Phalex, E.
3 primo, B. 12 et] om. B.
4 Seem, B. 13 So C.D.; arbitrabantur, A.E.
5 post, C.D. 14 hac de causa, ins. C.D.
6 Ionicus, some MSS. 15 al iud] om. C.D.
7 Nembroti, D., and similarly 16 adventurum] om. C.D.; venturum, B.
below. 17 Sennar, B.
8 amore, C.D. 18 Verius autem, D.
9 qui primo subjugavit, C.D.
science of astronomye, and he couple\(^1\) telle to forehonde\(^2\) what schulde byfalle\(^3\) and come afterward; and specialliche of pe byggynynge and endyng of pe fourche cheef kyngdoms. And so pey knewe \([\text{pat}]\)\(^4\) firste of Cham pe Assires schulde regne; of Cham com Belus. Afterward of Sem pe Medes, pe Perses, and Grees.\(^5\) Jan of Iapheth pe Romayns. Ioniuchus shewed al pis to his discyle \([\text{Nemproth, perfore}]\)\(^6\) Nemproth had greet desire to reigne, and reigned in Babiloyne amonche Cham his children. Pey get and hild Assiria and Egipt, forto Nynus regned in Assiria vpon pe Assires. \textit{Iosephus, libro primo, capitulo quinto}. After pat Noe was deed in Phalech his tyme, whan\(^7\) al pe men of pe worlde hadde oon longage and tonge, Noe his children by ledynge and by techynge of Nemproth trowed pat good happes and good speede is nouȝt of God Almyȝty, but by manis owne vertues and dedes. Also pey wende pat God Almyȝty wolde departe hem by enuye, pat he myȝte pe more liȝliche make hem suget. Also pey dradde pat anoper flood schulde come, and bulde a wel hiȝe place\(^8\) of brent tyle and glewe instede of morter in pe fecl pat hatte Sennaar; pere Babiloyne was afterward i-bulde, but God Almyȝty departed

fynde astronomy, and to knowe thynges to comme, and specially of the spryngeynge and fallenge of iiiij. realmes, that is to say, men of Assiria scholde [comene] of Cham, of whom Belus come. Afterwarde men of Media, of Persa, and men of Grewes scholde comme of Sem, and the Romanes of Iapheth. Ioniuchus shewede this to Nemproth his discyle, whiche accende in luste of dominacion reignede in Babilon among the childer of Cham, whiche obteynede men of Assiria and of Egipte vn tille that Ninus reignede there. \textit{Iosephus, libro primo, capitulo quinto}. After the dethe of Noe in the daies of Phaleg, when the erthe was of oon langage, Nemproth techenge theyme, son of Chus, the son of Cham other Chuder,\(^9\) the son of Noe, trawenge felicite not to be of God but of theire propre vertu, supposede that God wolde separate theyme that he myȝhte subiecte theym duiide the rather to hym, drenenge an other floode to comme, made to theyme an he towre of sodde, tyle, ston, made sure with pyche, in the fele of Sennar, where Babilon was edifiede afterwarde. R. But truly God dispersede theyme

\begin{itemize}
\item \textit{1} kouȝ, a.
\item \textit{2} befor, Cx.
\item \textit{3} So a. and Cx.; \textit{byfalleȝ}, MS.
\item \textit{4} Added from a. and Cx.; \textit{kneweth}, MS.
\item \textit{5} the Grees, Cx., which is better.
\item \textit{6} Added from a. and Cx.
\item \textit{7} than, Cx.
\item \textit{8} tour, a.
\item \textit{9} The MS. has been corrected, and the reading is somewhat uncertain.
\end{itemize}
sentiones inter se\textsuperscript{1} facerent. Vocatus est autem\textsuperscript{2} locus ille Babel, quod sonat confusio, eo quod linguae adificantium ibidem divino nutu sint\textsuperscript{3} confusae. Ranulphus.\textsuperscript{4} Heber putatur immunis a conspiratione in turris constructione, et ideo\textsuperscript{5} immunis\textsuperscript{6} a linguae confusione. Petrus, capitulo tricesimo quinto.\textsuperscript{7} Igitur Nemphrot robustus venator hominum,\textsuperscript{8} id est, oppressor, expulso Assur de terra illa, cepit regnare inter filios Cham in Babylone civitate, quam fundavit. Hanc tamen postmodum Semiramis regina ampliavit. Deinde Nemphrot transivit ad Persas, et\textsuperscript{9} docuit adorare ignem et colere,\textsuperscript{10} ubi fundavit civitatem Niniven; quam postmodum Ninus et Semiramis\textsuperscript{11} ampliarunt.\textsuperscript{12}

CAP. VII.\textsuperscript{13}

De filiis Noe et de regnis ab eorum posteris fundatis.\textsuperscript{14}

Augustinus De Civitate, libro octavodecimo, capitulo primo.\textsuperscript{15} Gentibus itaque per terras divisis, quibusque suas cupiditates sectantibus, dum id\textsuperscript{16} quod appetebatur nemini sufficiere videbatur, adversus seipsas\textsuperscript{17} dividebantur;\textsuperscript{18} et pars praevalens reliquam opprimebat,
hem for they schulde not make dissencioun and stryf among hem selfe. This Nemproth was Chus his sone; Chus was Cham his sone; and Cham was Noe his [son].\(^1\) Pat place is i-clepèd Babel, pat is to menynge schedyngye; for pere at God Almyyte his heste pe longages and tonges of pe bulders were i-schad and to schift.\(^2\) Heber was i-holde gilteles of conspiraciacum in pe buldinge of pe toure, and perfore he was i-spared as gilteles in pe schedyngye of tonges. Petro\(\text{\textsc{s}},\) tricesimo quinto. Panne Nemproth, a stronge huntere of men, pat is, a tyraunt vppon men, he putte Assur out of pat londe, and byganne to reigne among Cham his children\(^3\) in pe citee of Babiloyne pat he bulde. Nopeles Semiramis pe queue afterward made pis citee wel more. Afterward Nemproth wente to pe men of Pers and tauʒte hem to worschippe pe fuyre, and foundede pere pe citee of\(^4\) Nyneue. Afterward Ninus and Semiramis\(^5\) made pat citee more.

**Capitulum septimum.**

*Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro octavodecimo, capitulo primo.* Whanne men were departe and to schift\(^6\) in to dyuers londes, and euerich folowed his owne likynge and wille, while rather leste thei scholde make dissicion amongetheymselfe, whiche place was callede Babel, sowndenge a confusion, in that the langages of men edifieenge hit were confusede by the wylle of God. But Heber was trawede to be with owte blame from conspiracion in the makenge of that towre, wherefore he was partielesse in the confusion of the langage of theyme. Petro\(\text{\textsc{s}},\) 15\(^{\text{\textsc{e}}}\). There Nemproth the bestuous oppressor of men, expelleunge Assur, began to reigne in the cite of Babilon amonge the childer of Cham, whiche cite he made, whom whene Semiramis made more large. After that Nemproth wente to men of Persa, and tauʒte theyme to worschippe fire, where he made the cite of Nininuen, whom Ninus and Semiramis did ampliate afterwardes.

**Capitulum septimum.**

*Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro decimo octavo, capitulo primo.* This peple diuided in to the worlde, and folowenge the lustes of ambicion, seenge that thynge not to be suffici-annte that was desirede, was diuidede amongetheyme selfe;

---

1 Added from a. and Cx.  
2 skaterd, Cx.  
3 childer, Cx.  
4 of \(\text{\textsc{a}}\) om. a.  
5 Semyramys, MS. (Semyramis, above.)  
6 to schulte or skatred, Cx.
saluti libertatem praefrens, ita ut magnae fieren admirati. qui perire maluerunt quam servire; cum vox naturae sit malle subici quam deleri. Hinc non sine Dei providentia factum est, ut quidam essent regnis præediti, quidam subjici. Isidorus, libro octavo, capitulo secundo. Gentes igitur de Sem, primogenito Noe, descendentes possederunt terram meridianam ab ortu solis usque ad Phœnices, sub linguis viginti septem, patrias quadringentas sex occupantes. Qui vero de Cham descendunt a Sidone per oceanum austri num usque ad Gaditanum fretum tenuunt patrias trecentas nonaginta quatuor sub linguis triginta. Augustinus De Civitate, libro sextodecimo. Qui autem de stirpe Japhet a Tauro monte Ciliciae descendunt versus aquilonem per oceanum septentrionalemedium partem Asiae et omne Europam usque ad oceanum Britannicum, tenuerunt patrias ducentas sub linguis et gentibus quindecim, nomina locis et po-

\[1\] magni, A.  
\[2\] tamen, ins. C. (not D.)  
\[3\] subjecti, B.  
\[4\] Isidorus, libro quarto, C.D. The true reference is to lib. ix. c. 2.  
\[5\] vero, ins. C.  
\[6\] occupantes] om. E.  
\[7\] vero] om. C.D.  
\[8\] austrum, C. (not D.)  
\[9\] Gaditanum, A.  
\[10\] b. 18. c. 1., D. The true reference seems to be lib. xvi. c. 3.  
\[11\] Scieilicæ, B.  
\[12\] descendunt] om. D.E.
And it was desired was i-now to no man. Mankyde was departed azenst hym self, and pe stronger party bare don pat [oper], and tolde more prys of freedom pan of sauacioun and of hele; so pat it was greet wonder of hem, pat hadde leuere be lost and i-spilde pan be vnderlynges and servy. And hit be lore of kynde, better is to be vnderlynge and servaunt pan be put out of lyf. Perfore by Goddes ordenance hit is doo pat som men beep kynges and lordes and some beep sugettis and servauntes. Isidorus, libro octava, capitulo tertio. Pat men pat come of Sem, Noe his [firste] sone, hadde pe souplond from pe rysynge of pe somme anon to pe Fenices, men pat so hatte. [Pese men, hat so hate,] pat come of Sem, occupied foure hundred contrees and sixe vnder seuen and twenty longages. Pey pat come of Cham heilde pe londe by pe soup oceean anon to pe see Gaditan, pre hundred contrayes foure score and fourtene vnder pritty longages and tongues. Augustinus, libro sexto. Pey that come of Iapheth heilde pe lond from pe hil pat hatte mons Taurus in Cilicia norward toward pe norp oceean, pe haluendel of Asia, and al Europa anon to pe Brittische see, pat is pe Englishe see, pre hundred contrayes vnder fiftene longages and tongues, and lefte eche lond and

and the stronger parte oppresede the parte more feble, MS. Harl. preferrenge liberte to theirse sawle healethe, to be hade in grete mernayle, wyllenge raper to die then to be subiecte; sythe nature willethe rather to be subiecte then to be destroyede: whiche thynge was not done with owte the prouidence of God, that somme scholde be gouernours in realnes and somme subiectes. Isidorus, libro octavo, capitulo tertio. Therefore peple descendenge from Sem, the firste son of Noe, hade in possession the londe meridien, whiche was from the rysenge of the son to the Feniciannes vnder xxvij langages, occupiengene cccc. and vj. contrees. And men that come of Cham occupied ccc. xc. contrees and iiij., vnder xxxv langages, from Sydon by the sowthe oceaan vn to the see Gaditan. Augustinus, libro sexto. And men that come of Iapheth occupiende from the mounte callede Taurus towarde the north, and halfe parte of Asia, and alle Europa vn to the see of Britayne, conteynenge cc. contrees, vnder xv. langages, leverenge to the places to

---

1 Added from a. b. y. and Cx. 2 Possibly but should be cancelled; it is found however in a. b. y., as well as in MS. 3 Added from a. and Cx. 4 servauntes, Cx. 5 by, a. and Cx. 6 to] om. a. and Cx. 7 Added from a. and Cx. 8 Added from a. and (partly) Cx. 9 contrayes and sixe] MS. (first hand.) 10 to half dele, Cx. 11 oceaan, a.
Nomina locorum unde derivantur.

Diversa nomina pro diversis conditionibus.

pulis\(^1\) relinquentes; de quibus plurima sunt immutata aut a regibus locorum, aut ab ipsis locis, aut\(^2\) ab incolarum moribus. Cætera autem permanent, ut\(^3\) fuerunt. Ita etiam\(^4\) ut\(^5\) Hodie rationabiliter appareat unde fuerunt\(^6\) derivata, sicut ex Assur Assyrii, ex Heber Hebraei. De quibusdam vero ratio non apparent, sicut illud quod dicunt Ægyptios\(^7\) pertinere ad Mesraim.\(^8\) Æthiopes ad Chus. \textit{Josephus}, \textit{libro primo}, \textit{capitulo quinto}.\(^9\) A Chus usque\(^10\) nunc Æthiopes dicti sunt Chusei, a Mesraim\(^11\) Ægyptii dicti sunt Mesrei. Sicque\(^12\) gente per terras divisa aliqui nomina locis imposuerunt; aliqui, ut Graeci, ad libitum nomina mutaverunt, aut propter scripturae decorem, aut propter\(^13\) legentium delectationem, aut ut\(^14\) antiquorum gloriām suam propriaèm facerent. \textit{Hugutio}, \textit{capitulo}\(^15\) Phrygia.\(^16\) 

Sæpe etiam pro qualitate negotii varia imponuntur nomina; ut cum Trojanos volumus designare timidos, vocamus\(^17\) eos Phrygios; si generosos, vocamus\(^18\) eos Dardanos; si fortes, dicimus eos Trojanos; si audaces, vocamus\(^19\) eos Hectores.\(^20\) \textit{Isidorus}, \textit{libro nono}, \textit{capitulo secundo}. Gentes orientales in gutture verba collidunt,

\(1\) locis et populis] gentibus et reguis, C.D.
\(2\) aut\(^{[}\)] om. A.
\(3\) permanent, ut\(^{[}\)] permanentia, B.
\(4\) etiam\(^{[}\)] om. A.B.C.; ut etiam, D., which is better.
\(5\) jam, ins. C.
\(6\) fuerunt, B.
\(7\) So D.; \textit{Egyptiones}, A.E.
\(8\) mensuram, B.
\(9\) \(2^{[}\)] B. The true reference is to lib. i. c. 6.
\(10\) sic\(^{[}\)] C.D.
\(11\) a Mesraim\(^{[}\)] added from C.D.
\(12\) quia sic, A.B.
\(13\) propter\(^{[}\)] om. A.
\(14\) ut\(^{[}\)] om. A.
\(15\) de, C. Reference omitted in D.
\(16\) Frigia, MSS. Other slight errors in spelling proper names have been tacitly corrected in this and the following chapter.
\(17\) dicimus, C.D.
\(18\) dicimus, B.C.; eos, om. B.D.
\(19\) dicimus, C.D.
\(20\) Hectores, D.
\(21\) 14, C. Extract from Isidore omitted in D. The true reference is to lib. ix. c. 1.
puppe his name; of the whiche meny beep now i-changed oper
of kynges of londes, oper of the same londes, oper of manerese\(^1\)
of men of londes. Oper thinges stonde\(p\), as it were;\(^2\) so pat
\(\ddot{\text{i}}\)t it is sene of whom pey come; as pe Assures come of
Assur, and the Hebrewes come of Heber. Of som is no resoun
i-knowe, as pat pat me seip \(p\)at pe Egipcians perteynep
to Mesraim and Ethiopiues to Chus. \textit{Iosephus, libro primo,}
\textit{capitulo quintu}. Of Chus forto now pe Ethiopes beep i-cleped
Cusey\(^3\) and pe Egipcius Mesre\(i\). And so, when men were
to schift into dyuers londes, som chaunged names as hem
likede, as the Greens, oper for fairenesse of wrytinge, oper for
likyng of rederees, oper forto make her owne [selfe the]\(^4\)
noblete of hir forfadres. \textit{Hugo, capitulo Frigia.}\(^5\) Ofte names
beep i-sette for a manere of doyngue.\(^6\) As whan we wolde mene
pat pe\(^7\) Troians beep feerful, we cleped hem Frigios; and
\(\ddot{\text{i}}\)f we wolde mene pat pey bep gentil and noble, we clepe\(p\)
hem Dardans; \(\ddot{\text{i}}\)f we wil mene pat pey bep stronge, we clepe\(p\)
hem Troians; \(\ddot{\text{i}}\)f hardy, we clepe\(p\) hem Hector\(e\).\(^8\) \textit{Isidorus,}
\textit{libro 14\(o\), capitulo secundo}. Men of the est sownep her

the peple names. Of whom mony thynges be chaunged MS.\(\text{Harl.}\)
now, other of kynges of those places, other of the places,
other elles thro the maneres of the inhabitatores of theym.
Other thynges be permanente as thei were, as men of As-
siria toke their name of Assur, men of Hebrewwe of Heber.
\textit{Ozee,\(^9\) libro primo, capitulo quinto}. Men of Ethiope be
callede \(v\)n to this tyme Chusei, of Chus, and men of Egipte\(\)
Mesrei, of Mesra. Soe this peple, diuided by regions and
cuntrees, some men hate \(\ddot{\text{i}}\)fien names to places, somme men
haue \(\ddot{\text{i}}\)fien names to them after theire pleasure, like to
men off Grewe. Somme men haue chaungede the names
for feirenesse of scripture, other for the delectacion of men
redenge, other elles that thei my\(\ddot{\text{y}}\)hte ascribe to theym
the lawde of olde men as theire propre lawde. \textit{Hugutio,}
\textit{capitulo Frigia}. Diverse names be assignede ofte for
the qualite of labores, as callenge men of Troy Frigios,
when we wille calle theyme afrayede, callenge theyme
Dardanos when thei be gentille, and Troianes when we
wille calle theyme my\(\ddot{\text{y}}\)ty, and Hector\(e\) when we calle
theyme bolde. \textit{Isidorus, libro decimo quarto, capitulo se-
cundo}. Peple of the este sownde the worde in the throte.

---

\(^1\) So a, and Cx.; \textit{manere, MS.}
\(^2\) \textit{stande as they were, Cx.}
\(^3\) \textit{Chusei, a.}
\(^4\) Added from Cx.
\(^5\) \textit{Frisia, MS. and a.}
\(^6\) Dyverce names after dyverce con-
dyeyoans in margin of MS. and a.
\(^7\) So a. and Cx.; \textit{he\(i, MS.\)}
\(^8\) So a. and Cx.; \textit{Ector, MS.}
\(^9\) So Harl. MS. for \textit{Josephus.}
Regna quatuor primeva, Assyriorum, Egyptiorum, Scytharum, Sicyoniorum.

Regna quatuor principalia demum effecta, Assyriorum, Persarum, Graecorum, Romanorum.

Sed a principio dispersionis gentium quamquam regna Assyriorum in oriente, Egyptiorum in meridie, Scytharum in aquilone, Sicyoniorum in occidente, id est, in Graecia, fuerunt quasi coeva quoad initium, Augustinus, libro octavodecimo, capitulo primo, regna tamen Assyriorum, Medorum, seu Persarum, Graecorum, et Romanorum consequenter sibi succedentia fuerunt principalia inter caetera quoad progressum; quorum tamen primum et ultimum clariora fuere et durabiliora. Caetera quoque regna sive reges velut appendices istorum dixerim; Atheniensium quoque gesta majora fuere fama quam ipsa, teste Salustio et Varrone, et hoc propter scriptorum et philosophorum ibidem praeclera ingenia, qui gesta ipsa laudibus nimirum extulerunt. Ranulphus. At quia tractatus generalis quatuor regnorum principalium praedictorum, a principio videlicet regni Assyriorum usque ad finem regni Romanorum vastum vendicat procursum, idcirco de
words in ye prose as Hebrewes and Siries; 1 men of myddel londes in ye roof of ye moup, as Greees and Asyans; men of ye west breke here words bytwene ye teep, as Spaynarde 2 and Romayns. Augustinus de Civitate, libro sextodecimo, capitulo octavodecimo. 3 But sipe pat men were first to schift 4 into dyverse londes, pey pe kyngdoms of Assiries 5 in pe est, of Egipcians in pe soup, and of Sithes 6 in pe norp, pat is in pe 7 Greees, begunne as it were at ones: Augustinus, libro octavodecimo, capitulo primo:—nopeles the kyngdoms [of] 8 Assiries, of Medes, pat is of Perses, of Greees, of Romayns, folowede eche after oper, and were principal among oper. Nopeles pe firste and pe laste were more noble, and durede lengere. 9 Oper kyngdoms [and kynges longede to pease kyngdoms—]. 10 Also berynge and dedes of men of Athenyes beep gretter in los and in fame tan pey bep in dede; so seip Salustius and Varro 11 also. And pat is for 12 writers and philoso- feres of Athenes were solempne of witt, and preysede pe dedes hugeliche and ouermesure. B. And for pe tretysis 13 ful and general of pe forsnaide foure cheef kyngdoms, from pe begynnynge of pe kyngdom of Assiries to pe ende of pe kyngdom of Romayns, axepe longe writyne and proces; perfure

as men of Hebrewe and of Siria, peple of the myddel MS. HARL. 2261. cuntre breke theire worde in the hier parte of the movthe, as men of Greee and of Asia, men and peple of the weste breke theire worde amonge the teithe, as men of Rome and of Speyne. Augustinus de Civitate, libro octavo decimo, capitulo primo. Neuertheless the realmes of Assiria, Media, or of Persia, of Grekes and of Romanes, by succes- sion were realmes moste principalle amonge other realmes, as vn to progresste, the firste of whom and the laste were moste elere and dureable. And other realmes and kynges were as dependenge to theyme; for the gestes of kynges of Athenes were made more glorious in fame than thei were in travthe, and that was causede by the actes of philoso- phers and of other discrete men inhabitenge that study, exaltenge the gestes with grete lawde. B. And for cause that a generalle tracte of the iiiij. principalle realmes afore seide, from the begynnynge of that realme of Assiria vn to the ende of the reigne of the Romanes, dothe require a large f. 78. b.

1 Syres, a. 7 ye om. a. 2 Spaynold, Cx. 8 Added from a. 3 Cx. prints octodecimo (at length, and so below.) 9 lengere pan, MS. (not a, or Cx.) 4 firste skatred, Cx. 10 Added from a, and Cx. 5 Assyricus, Cx. 11 Pierro, MS. and a. 6 Sbyes, a; Shites, Cx. 12 for that, Cx. 7 vol. ii. 13 tretys is, MSS. and Cx.
tribus regnis primævis, regno Assyriorum quasi coævis, primitus est agendum. ¹

CAP. VIII.

De regnis Scytharum, Egyptiorum, Assyriorum, Persarum, Graecorum, et Romanorum. ²

§ 1. Regnum Scytharum incipit. ³

¹ REGNUM Scytharum in aquilone, quod ratione temporis et ætatis secundum post Assyrios vendicat ordinem, incepit tempore Sarg proavi Abrahae sub Thanao primo ipsorum rege, a quo fluvius Thanay videtur denominari, qui ad orbis boream dividit Asiam ab Europa. Hoc quidem regnum nulli hominum unquam cessit, quin etiam Asiam ter conquistavit, Darium regem Persarum fugavit, Cyrum regem occidit, Zephironem Alexandri magni ducem delevit. Petrus, capitulo sexagesimo. ¹³ Aliud quoque regnum in occidente fuit Sicyoniorum, id est, Arcadie, que pars est Graeciae in Europa, currens sub Agilao primo per annos nongentos septuaginta unum sub regibus

¹ tractandum, C.D.
² Title wanting in MSS.
³ A.B.C.D. omit title of the section; and so below; incepit, E., here and below.
⁴ Willelmus, ins. C.D.
⁵ itaque, ins. C.D.
⁶ Scitatarum, A.
⁷ Sarg, E.
⁸ illorum, A.B.; sorum, C.D.
⁹ flumen, C.D.
¹⁰ denominatur, C.D.
¹¹ quidem] om. B.
¹² quin] om. B.
¹⁴ fuit] om. B.
¹⁵ Cicionorum, A.; Scicioniorum, B.; Sicioniorum, D.; Scicionorum, E.; and similarly below.
¹⁶ sub Agilao a Gilao, B. Ægia-leus is the true form of the name of the first mythic king of Sicyon.
of pre firste kyngdoms, as it were of same age wip Trevisa. pe kyngdom of Assiries, firste we schal write.

**Capitulum octavum.**

The kyngdom of Sithes in north by cause of age and of tyme axep pe seconde place in orde, and is sette after pe kyngdom of Assiries, and bygan in Sarug his tyme vnder Thanaus pe firste kyng pat was pere. Sarug was Abraham his fader graunsire. Hit semep pat pe ryver Thanays ha$p pe name of pis kyng Thanaus; pe whiche ryuer in pe norpside of pe world departep betwene Asya and Europa. Pis kyngdom was neuere overcome, but pries he conquerede Asia and overcome Darius, kyng of Perses, and slowh Cyrus pe kyng, and dede awey Zephiro, pat was pe grete Alisaundre his ledere. *Petrus, capitulo sexagesimo.* Also anoper kyngdom was in west, and was pe kyngdom of Scicions, pat is of Arcadia, a partie of Grees in Europa, and durede vnder Agilaus firste hundred three score and enlevene. Agilaus is a lorde, as it were a kyng oper an emperoure. Afterwarde processe, perfore we wylle procede and determinate of the MS. Harl. 2261.

Of the inception of realmes. **Capitulum octavum.**

The realme of Scitia, other the reigne of kynges in hit, whiche chalangethe the secunde place and orde after men of Assiria, began in the tyme of Sarug, grawntefader to Thare the fader of Abraham, requirenge that place bothe by the reason of tyme and of age, vnder Thanaus, firste kyng of theyme, of whom that floode callede Thanyay semethe to haue taken name, whiche diuidethe Asia from Europa in the northe partes of the worlde. That realme was not getten by conqueste of any man, but men in hit conquerede iij. tymes Asia, causeunge Darius kynge of Persia to fle; sleeenge also Cirus the kyng, and destroyenge Zephiro, duke of grete Alexander. *Petrus, capitulo sexagesimo.* There was an other realme in the weste of men of Scitia, that is to say of Archadia, whiche is a parte of Greece in Europa, rennenge other contynuenge vnder the firste Agilaus by ix$e yere lxxj., vnder xxxj$ kynges, from

---

1 pre] So MS., a. β. γ.
2 Scythes, a.
3 her, a.

4 Either for Sicyou or Sicyonians.
5 este, MS. originally; but the correction may be by the first hand.
triginta uno, ab anno vicesimo quarto Nachor avi Abrahae usque ad Zeuxippum, qui regnavit septimodecimo anno Hely sacerdotis. Inde quaedam regio in Arcadia quondam vocabatur Agealea, quae tamen postmodum dicta est Peloponnesus, ubi fuit unum de Graeciae regnum. Ranulphus, Vult tamen Dionysius quod regnum Sicyoniorum inceperit quinquagesimo anno Thare, vicesimo videlicet anno ante nativitatem Abrahae, in quo regnavit primus Cecrops per annos quadranginta quinque.

§ 2. Regnum Aegyptiorum incipit.

Aliud regnum quasi coreum predictis fuit regnum Aegyptiorum in meridie, quod tempore Nachor avi Abrahae incepit, habens quindecim dynastias, quae dicuntur summæ potestates, a primo Mineo vel Zenes, usque ad tempora Abrahae. Deinde Thebei tuerunt sexdecim dynastias. Tandem Diapolitani, qui dicebantur Pharaones, tuerunt octodecim dynastias. Sicque duravit hoc regnum Aegyptiorum usque ad tempus

---

1 sub, D., and similarly in some other places.
2 Zeuxippum, MSS.
3 dicebatur, C.
4 Agealia, A.D. The true form is Aegaleia.
5 Peloponensis, MSS.
6 So, A.B.; Graecis, E.
7 Graeciae regnum, C.D.
8 Ranulphus, MSS.
9 quia, B.
10 primo, ins. C.D.
11 scilicet, C.D.
12 primus] om. D.
13 Cicros, MSS.
14 quadranginta quinque] om. B.
15 etiam, ins. C.D.
16 vicinium istis, B.
17 tempore] xlv. anno, B.
18 Zenes, A.
19 Pharaones, E.
20 Deinde . . . dynastias] Deinde 16 dynastias tuerunt Diapolitani, qui dicebantur Pharaones, C.D. Higden should have written Diopolitani.
pis kyngdom durede, vnnder oon and pritty kings,1 from pe foure and twenty yere of Nachor Abraham his grauntsire anon to Zeuxippus,2 pat regineade pe yere of Hely pe preost sventene. Perfore oon kyngdom in Arendia somtyne heet Agealea. Nopeles afterward hit heet Peloponensis; yere was oon of pe kyngdom of Grees. [R.] 3 Nopeles Denys scip pat pe kyndom of Sceicins bygan pe yere of Thare fifty; pat was twenty yere of Abraham was i-bore; Thare was Abraham his fader. In pis kyngdom pe firste kyng was Cecrops,4 and reginede fyue and fifty yere. Anopey kyngdom as hit were in pe same age with pe5 forscide kyngdoms was 6 pe kyngdom of Egipt in pe soup, and bygan in Nachor his tyme, Abraham7 his grauntsire. Pis kyngdom hadde fiftene grete lordschippes, and ecleped hem Dynastias, from pe firste Mineus, o per Zones,8 to Abrahams tyne. Afterward Thebei, men of Thebes, hylde sixtene9 grete lordschippes, and ecleped hem Dynastias.10 Pan Diapolitani, pat were i-ecleped Pharaones, pat were kynges of Egipt, hylde ei^tetene grete lordschippes and ecleped hem Dynastias. Dynastia is grete lordschipp, and power durynge in a proniuce to chese11 kyng o per emperoure. And so pis kyngdom of Egipt durede anon to pe tyne of Cambys12 pat was the xxiiijthe yere of Nachor, grauntefader to Abraham, vu MS. H . ARL. to Zeuxippus2 whiche reginede in the xvijthe yere of Hely the preste. Where of a region in Arcadia was called somme tyne Agialia, whiche was callede afterwande Peloponensis, where oon realme of Greece was. R. Neuerethellose Dionisius wille that pe regine of men of Scitia began in the 1th yere of Thare, that was afore the natuite of Abraham by xxith yere, in whom Cierops reginede firste by xlv. yeres. Also the realme of men of Egipte in the [sowthe] was coegalle vu to theyme whiche began in the tyne of Nachor, grauntefader to Abraham, haunge xv. lyse potestates from the firste Mineus other Zones vu to the tymes of Abraham. After that men callede Thebei occupiede and did holde xvij. lyse potestates. At the laste Diapolitanes, whiche were callede Pharaones, holded xvij. lyse potestates, and so the realme of men of Egipte durede vu to the times of Cambises, son of Cirus kyngye of Persia, to

---

1 So a. and Cx.; kyngdoms, MS.
2 Zeuxippus, MSS. and Cx.
3 Reference added from a. and Cx.
4 Cierops, MS.; Cierops, a.
5 Pope, a. Cx.
6 pat was, MS. (not a. or Cx.)
7 Abrahams, a.
8 soones, Cx.
9 xixth, Cx.
10 Dynastias, MS., and similarly below.
11 that chose, Cx.
12 Cambis, MS. and a.
Cambysis, filii Cyri regis Persarum, cui pater adhuc vivens regnum Assyriorum jam tunc ad Medos translatum concesserat, et eum Nabugodonozor cognomina-verat; cujus quoque princeps Holofernes Ægyptum subjugavit. Et extunc sub septem regibus Persarum Ægyptus mansit.

Post quos recessit Ægyptus a Persis, habens decem proprios reges; quousque Oechus, qui et Artaxerxes, rex Persarum duodecimus, expulso usque ad Æthiopiam Nectanebo, rege Ægypti ultimo, regnum Ægypti recuperaret. Quod quidem regnum extunc sub tribus regibus Persarum mansit usque ad septimum annum Alexandri Magni. Ex quo tempore regnum Ægypti et Persarum cessit ditioni Græcorum per annos trecentos sub regibus tredecim, qui dicebantur Lagidæ sive Ptolemæi usque ad tempora Julii Cæsaris, sive, ut quibusdam placet, usque ad quingentos annum Augusti Cæsaris, qui superavit Cleopatram filiam Dionysii Ptolemæi ultimi Lagidæ. Ex quo tempore Ægyptus cessit Romanis. Sique a principio omnes reges Ægypti usque ad Alexandrum fuerunt.
Cyrus his son. Cyrus was kyng of Pers, and 3afe while he lyuede pe kyngdom of Assyria pat was soo i-torned to pe Medes to his son Cambys[es], and cleped him Nabugodonosor also, and his prince Olofernus,1 and sodued Egipt. And Egipt was vnder seuene kynges of Pers, and after wente from the Perses, and hadde ten kynges of her owne forto Ochus, pat heet Artaxerxes2 also, pe twelffe kyng of Perses, put out Nactanabo,3 the lest kyng of Egipt, anon to Ethiopia, and wan pe kyngdom of Egipt. Afterward pe kyngdom durede vnder pe kynges 4 anon to the seuenpe 3ere of pe grete Alisaundre, 5 after 6 pe kyngdoms of Egipt and of Perse was 7 vnder pe Grees pe hundred 3ere vnder prittene kynges, 8 pat were i-cleped Lagides and Ptholomeus9 anon to Iulius Cesar his tyme; ojer, as som men menej, anon to pe fifteenpe 3ere of Augustus Cesar that ouercome Cleopatra,10 Denys his do3hter. Denys was Ptholomeus and last Lagid. Egipt from that 10 tyme fel to 11 Romanys,12 and so al pe kynges of Egipt from the firste begynnynge anon to Alisundre were four score and eleuene. Pe kynges of Egipt were first i-cleped whom his fader 3afe, beenge in lyfe, the realme of Assiria, MS. HARL. 2261.

1 So a.; Olofernus, MS.
2 Artaxerxes, MS.; Artaxerxes, a.
3 So a. and Cx., Nactabono, MS.
4 So Cx.; bey kyndons, a.; pe kyng Donis, MS.
5 Alexander, a.
6 Added from a. and Cx.
7 So MS., a. β. γ.; were, Cx. Perhaps his own correction.
8 Ptholomeus, Cx. (i.e. Ptolemes.)
9 Cleopatra, a.
10 So Cx.; the, MS.
11 So a. and Cx.; in to, MS.
12 be Romanys, a.
Regnum Beli antiquissimum.

Durat.usque ad Sardanapalam.

Arbaces regnum ad Medos transfert.

§ 3. Incipit regnum Assyriorum.  

Augustinus De Civitate Dei, libro sextodecimo, capitulo octavodecimo.  

Quartum regnum sed tempore primum fuit Assyriorum in oriente sub Belo Nemprotoide, incipiens vicesimo quinto anno Sarug proavi Abraham, quod toti Asiae excepta India dominabatur. Petrus, capitulo sexagesimo.  

Et duravit per annos mille trecentos duo sub regibus triginta septem usque ad ultimum Sardanapalam, qui obit septimo anno Oziae regis Juda. Deinde Arbaces sive Arbaccus propositus et interfector regis transtulit monachiam Assyriorum ad Medos, quod intelligendum est spe sed nondum re.  

Ranulphus. Nam apud Assyrios post Sardana-

---

1 nonaginta, quorum primi dicebantur Diastenes, postmodum Pharaones, tandem Lagidae sive Ptolemaei. Josephus, libro octavo, capitulo tertio.  

Reges Ægypti ab infantia alii reor nominibus appellari, sed ad imperium ascendentes vocabantur Pharaones, quod lingua Ægyptiaca sonat rex; sic etiam reges Alexandriæ ad regnum pervenientes vocabantur Ptolemæi, et reges Romanorum diecuntur Cæsares; sed post socerum Salomonis nullum legi apud Ægyptios Pharaonem vocatum.

10 etiam om. C.D.

11 vocantes, C.

12 The reference to Augustin is brought in here in C.D., and the passage is abbreviated.

13 A.B.C.D. om. title of the section.

14 The true reference is to e. 17.

15 regnum, ins. B.

16 quod toti totique, C.D.

17 140, B.

18 Sardanapallum, MSS.

19 sive Arbaccus om. C.D.

20 propositus, D.

21 usque, ins. B.

22 in, ins. A.C. (not D.)

23 Slightly transposed in C.D.
Dyastenes, and Pharaones, and at pe last Lagides and Ptholomeus,1 *Iosephus, libro octavo, capitulo tertio.* Pe kynges of Egypt hadde in her childhode oþer names, but whanne they were i-made kynges pey were i-cleped Pharaones. For a kyng is i-cleped Pharaoh in pe longage of Egypt. Pe kynges of Alexandria were i-cleped Ptholomeies, when pey were i-made2 kynges; and pe kynges of Romaynes were i-cleped Cesars. Salomon wedded a kynges douȝter of Egypt; [I rede of no kyng after hym of Egypt]3 pat was i-cleped Pharaoh. *Augustinus, libro sextodecimo, capitulo octavo-decimo.* Pe fourpe kyngdom, but pe eldest of tyme, is pe kyngdom of Assiries; and bygan in pe est vnder Belus Nemproth pe fyue and twenty4 þere of Sarug pat was Abrahams fader5 grauntesire. Dis kyngdom had londschippe of al Asia outake Inde. *Petrus sexagesimo.* And it durede a powsand þere pre hundred and tweyne, vnder seene and pritty kynges anon to pe [last]6 Sardanapallus pe kyng, pat dyede in7 þe seuene þere of Ozias, kyng of Iuda. Pat Arbacon, pat heet Abbacus8 also, pe kynges styward and his traytoure, for he slowh hym and tornede pe kyngdom of Assiries to pe Medes, pat is to vndirstondynge in hope and nouȝt in dede. [R.]9 For after Sardanapallus from pe

tines, after that Pharaones, at the laste Lagide or Ptolomei. *MS. HARL. 2261.*

---

1 Ptolomees, a.
2 made, a.
3 Added from a. and Cx.
4 So a. and Cx.; tritty, MS.
5 fader, a.
6 Added from a. and Cx.
7 in] om. a. and Cx.
8 Abaccus, a.
9 Added from a. and Cx.
Reges Assyriorum post Sardanapulum non monarcharum eorum nominia.

Regnum Babylonis tempore Ezechiel exortum. Regnum nominum.

palum, a septimo anno Ozize regis Juda usque ad Manassen regem Juda, per annos circiter centum et duodecim, septem fuerunt reges potentes, quamvis non monarchae, quorum nominis sunt Arbaces, Phull, Tegla-Falasar, Salmanazar, Senacherib, Assaradon, Sargon. Volunt tamen quidam ut post mortem Sardanapali, a septimo anno Ozize usque ad vicesimum primum annum transmigrationis Judaice, monarchia orientis siterit apud Medos per annos ducentos sexaginta sub regibus octo, a primo silicet Arbace usque ad ultimum Astyagen; qui fuit avunculus Darii et avus Cyri; quem Astyagen Cyrus subvertens transtulit regnum Medorum ad monarchiam Persarum, relictum ibi Astyagi regno Hyrcanorum. Veruntamen tempore Senecherib regis Assyriorum et Ezechiel regis Juda surrexit magnum regnum Babyloniorum et Chaldeorum, currens sub regibus septem, qui sunt Merodak seu Baladak, Nabugodonosor, Nabogodonosor secundus, Evilmerodac, Regusar, Labofardac, Balthazar, qui et Nabar; quem occidens Cyrus junctus Dario avunculo suo transtulit.
seuenpe sere of Ozius kyng of Iuda to Manasses kyng of Iuda, aboute an hondred sere and twelue, the Assiries hadde seuen my小巧ty kynges, pery [he]\(^1\) hadde nouzt pe kyngdom al hool, of pe whiche pese beep pe names: Arbaces, Phull, Teglafalasar, Salmanasar, Senacheryb, Assaradon, Sargon. Nopeles som wil mene pat after Sardanapallus his de, from pe seuenpe sere of Ozius pe kyng to pe sere of\(^2\) transmygracioun of Iewes oon and pritty, pe hool kyngdom of pe est stood with pe Medes two hondred sere and pritty vnder eyyte kynges, from pe firste Arbaces anon to Astyages pat was Darius em\(^3\) and Cyrus the grauntsire. Cyrus ouertorned\(^4\) pis Astyages, and tornde pe kyngdom of Medes to pe hool kyngdom of Perses, and lefte pe kyngdom of Hirecans to Astyages. Nopeles in Senacheryb kyng of Assiries his tyme, and in Ezechias his tyme kyng of Iuda, com vpppe pe\(^4\) grete kyngdom of pe Bableyyns and Caldeys, and durede vnder seuen kynges,\(^5\) pat beep Meredak,\(^6\) pat hatte Baladak also; Nabugodonosor, Euilmederok,\(^7\) Rugusar,\(^8\) Labofardok,\(^9\) Balthasar, pat heet Nabar also. Hym slowh Cyrus i-socied to his emo\(^5\) Darius,

by 2261.

---

\(^1\) Added from a.
\(^2\) of pe, a.
\(^3\) eem, a; vncle, Cx., and so below.
\(^4\) to pe, MS. (not a, or Cx.)
\(^5\) So Cx.: kyngdoms, MS. and a.
\(^6\) Here and below the orthography of the proper names has been left unaltered.
\(^7\) Euilmerodar, a.
\(^8\) Regusar, a.
\(^9\) Labofardak, a.
\(^10\) a yere, Harl. MS.; similarly a passede below.
regnum ad Persas et Medos \(^1\) sub anno transmigrationis Judaicæ\(^2\) tricesimo primo; et \(^3\) sic fluxerunt anni ducenti \(^4\) sexaginta a septimo anno Oziæ regis Juda, quo cepit deficere monarchia Assyriorum usque ad tricesimum primum annum transmigrationis quando incepit monarchia Persarum.

\(\S\) 4. Regnum Persarum.

\(^5\) Deinde monarchia Persarum ab anno tricesimo primo transmigrationis \(^6\) usque ad septimum annum Alexandri Magni,\(^7\) hoc est, a primo Cyro usque \(^8\) ultimum Darium filium Arsamis,\(^9\) duravit per annos ducentos triginta quinque\(^{10}\) sub regibus tredecim, qui sunt, secundum Giraldum, Cyrus primus; \(^{11}\) Cambyses secundus, quem pater suus Cyrus cognominaverat Nabugodonozor, et se vivente\(^{12}\) Nineven cum regno Assyriorum tradiderat annis duodecim, qui sub quo etiam historia Judith contigit; tertius Ermeides\(^{13}\) magus; quartus Darius,\(^{14}\) filius Hystaspis;\(^{15}\) quintus Xerxes; sextus Artaxerxes;\(^{16}\) septimus Xerxes;\(^{17}\) octavus Sogdianus;\(^{18}\) nonus Darius\(^{19}\)

---

\(^1\) et Medos] om. E.
\(^2\) Judaicæ] om. C.D., which have slight transpositions.
\(^3\) R, ins. C.D.
\(^4\) trescenti, B.
\(^5\) Willelmus, ins. C.D.
\(^6\) quando ... transmigrationis] om. B.
\(^7\) Magni] om. B.
\(^8\) ad, ins. B.
\(^9\) Arsanni, or Arsani, MSS., and so below. Possibly Higden himself wrote the erroneous form.
\(^10\) 239 annis, C. (not D.)
\(^11\) licet elit primum Darium annum cum Cyrœ esse primum, ins. C.D.
\(^12\) se vivente et, C.D. (the latter omits et altogether.)
\(^13\) Ermeides] Ermoides, B.; Emeridius, C.D.
\(^14\) Carius, C.D.
\(^15\) Itapsis, MSS.
\(^16\) qui et Longimanus, sub quo Esdras et Neemias fuerunt, ins. B.C.D.; qui et Longimannus dicitur est, sub quo Esdras et Neemias fuerunt, A. The versions also vary.
\(^17\) septimus Xerxes] om. E.
\(^18\) Fogolianus, MSS.
\(^19\) Sarius, B.
and tornde his kyngdome \[to pe kyngdome\]\(^1\) of Perse and of Medes pe 3ere of pe transmygracion of Iewes oon and pritty. And so passede two hundred 3ere and sixty from pe seuenpe 3ere of Ezechias\(^2\) kyng of Iuda. In pe whiche 3ere bygan to faille pe hole kyngdome of Assiries anon to pe 3ere of pe transmygracion oon and pritty. Doe bygan pe hool kyngdome of Pers.\(^3\) [Pan pe hole kyngdome of Perse,]\(^4\) from pe 3ere of pe transmygracion oon and pritty anon to pe seuenpe 3ere of pe grete Alexandre, pat was from pe firste Cyrus to pe laste Darius Arsanius his sone, durede two hundred 3ere and fyue and pritty vnder prittene kynges; pat was Cyrus pe firste, Cambyses pe seconde. His fader Cyrus 3af hym anooper name, and cleped hym Nabugodonosor, and 3af hym Nynuye wip pe kyngdome of Assiries, whyle he was hym self alyve.\(^5\) Vnder hym byfel pe storie of Judith. Pe pridd Ermendes Magus; pe ferpe Darius Tapsis his sone; pe sffe Excorses; pe sixte Athar Excorses,\(^6\) pat heet Longimanus\(^7\) also. Vnder hym were Esdras and Neemyas. Pe seuenpe Excorses; the e3pe Fogodian; pe nynpe Darius Nothus. Nothus is a bastard, or he pat is i-gete of a worpy fader and i-bore of an vnworpy moder. Pe tenpe

\[\text{\textcopyright TREvisa.}\]

\[\text{\textcopyright 2261.}\]

\[\text{\textcopyright MS. HARL.}\]

vncle, translate that realme to men of Persia and of Media \[\text{\textcopyright MS. HARL.}\] in the xxxju\(^1\) yere of the transmigracon of the Iewes. And so cc. and xlu\(^1\) yere apassede from pe vijthe yere of Oztas kyng of Iuda, in whiche tym the monarchye of men of Assiria began to byfele, vn to the xxxju\(^1\) yere of the transmigracon of Iewes, when the monarchy of men of Parthia began. And so the monarchy of men of Persia indurde from the xxxju\(^1\) yere of the transmigracon vn to the vijthe yere of grete Alexander, which was from the firste Ciruse vn to the laste Darius, son of Arsanius, by cc. and xxxv\(^1\) yere, vnder xij. kynges. Whiche be, after Geraldus, Ciruse; after hym Cambises, whom his fader namede Nabugodonozor, and 3afe to hym in his lyfe Ninuuen with the realme of Assiria, by xij. yere afore his dethe, vnder whom the memory of that woman Judith happede. The thrydde was callede grete Erneides. The iiiijthe Darius, son of Xtapsis. The vthe Xerses; the vthe Artaxerses, which was namede otherwise Longimanus,\(^7\) in the tym of whom Esdras and Neemias floreschede. The vijthe Perses. Fogodianus the viijthe. Darius Nothus the ixthe.\(^8\)

\(^1\) Added from a.  
\(^2\) So Trevisa for Oztias.  
\(^3\) Peers, a. (Peers, above.)  
\(^4\) Added from a. and Cx.  
\(^5\) qnyue, a.  
\(^6\) Artaxerses, a.  
\(^7\) Logimannus, a.; Longimianus, Harl. MS.  
\(^8\) the ixthe Nothus the ixthe, Harl. MS.
Nothus; decimus Artaxerxes, qui et Assuerus, sub quo Hester fuit; undecimus Ochus; duodecimus Arsames; tertius decimus Darius, filius Arsamis; quem devincens Alexander Magnus transtulit regnum Persarum ad monarchiam Macedonum apud Graecos.

§ 5. Regnum Graecorum.

Hoc tamen regnum Macedonum prius inceperat sub primo Crano quartodecimo anno Oziae regis Juda; et sic duravit per annos sexcentos triginta sex usque ad ultimum, Persium, quem occiderunt Romani nono anno Oniae pontificis, qui et Menelaus. Erant tamen in Graecia alia regna successive instituta; quorum primum fuit apud Arcadiam, id est Sicyonios, et inde translatum ad Peloponenses sicut supra dicitur. Aliud regnum Graecorum fuit apud Argivos, et inde translatum ad Mycenas. Aliud fuit apud Athenienses, aliud apud Lacedaemones, id est Spartanos, aliud apud Epirum sive Thraciam, aliud apud Macedoniam; quae omnia, sicut cætera terrarum regna, a regno Romano sunt absorpta, et eidem concorporata in hunc modum.

1 Artaxerxes, A.D.; Artexerxes, E.
2 historia, ins. B.
3 Arsanus, MSS., and Arsan below.
4 interficiens, C.D.
5 Hoc cum, and the sentence beginning at apud Graecos, in C. (not D., which inserts in marg. Willemus.)
6 quarto, D.
7 626, C.D.
8 So MSS. Higden should have written Persea.
9 Ἰ, ins. C.D.
10 etiam nihilominus, ins. C.D.
11 dicitur] om. E.
12 Graccorum] om. C.D.
13 Meccenas, A.E.; Messenas, D.
14 apud] om. B.
15 Traccian, E.D.(as usual); Arancium, B.; Franciam, C.
16 tandem, ins. C.D.
17 sunt after concorporata, B.
Artharexercers, ut hebet Assuerus also; vnnder hym was Hester. Pe enleuenpe Ochus; pe twelfpe Arsanius; pe prittenpe Darius Arsanius his son. Pe grete Alexandre overcome hym, and tornedpe kyngdom of Perses to pe hole kyngdom of Macedonies 1 and 2 of Grees. Nopeles pis3 kyngdom of Macedons bygan raper vnnder pe firste Cranaus pe fourtenpe zere of Ozias kyng of Iuda, and so durede sexe honerd zere and sixe and pritty anon to pe laste Persius. Pe Romayns slowh hym pe nynpe zere of Onias pe bischopp, pat heet Mencelus also. Nopeles perse were ojer kyngdoms in Grees, eueriche after ojer i-ordeyned; of pe whiche pe firste was in Arcadia at pe Scicions, pat peple, and was i-torned pens to pe Peloponenses, as it is i-selde tofore. Anoper kyngdom of Grees was among pe Argyues, and was i-torned pennes to pe Macens.4 Anoper was at Athenyss, pat citee; anoper among pe Lacedemonis, pese were pe Sportans. Anoper at Epirus, pat is T[n]jperacina. Anoper at Macedonia. Pe kyngdom5 of Rome swolowede vp alle pese kyngdoms [as he dede ojer kyngdoms]6 of londes, and made hem [alle]7 longe to pe kyngdom of Rome. In pis manere pe kyngdom of Rome8

Artaxerses other Assuerus pe xith, vnnder whom Hester was. Ochus the xijthe. Arsanius the xijthe. Darius the son of Arsanius the xijthe. Whom Alexander overcomenenge, did translate the realme of men of Persia vn to the monarchye of men of Macedony among the Grekes, whiche realme began afore vnnder Cranaus in the xijthe yere of Ozias kyng of Iuda; and so that realme induced by xij6 and xxxvij7 yere, vn to the laste, Persius, whom the Romanes did swe in the ixthe yere of Onias the bischopp, other Mencelus. After that other realmes were made in Greece by succession; the firste was at Archadia, after that tymye translate to men of Peloponense, as hit is expressede afore. An other realme of the Grekes was at Argiuos, whiche was translate from pens to Mecenas. An other was at Athenes, an other at Lacedemonia. An other realme at Epira other Tracia; an other at Macedonia. Whiche realmes were made subiecte to the realme of Rome, and concorporate to hit, as other realmes were in this maner. The realme of Romanes, begynenenge vnnder Iamus the firste

1 Macedons, a. 2 at pe Grees, a. 3 So a. and Cx. Nopeles perse were ojer kyngdoms, but pis, MS. 4 Mecens, a. and Cx. 5 kyng, Cx. 6 Added from a. and Cx. 7 Added from a. and Cx. 8 Text as in Cx.: words erroneously repeated in MS.
§ 6. Regnum Romanorum.

1 Regnum Romanorum sub Jano primo 2 rege Italie 3 exortum usque ad 4 annum septimum Darii filii Arsamis regis Persarum, 5 quem occidit Alexander Magnus, currit per annos octingentos 6 octoginta sub regibus viginti septem; quorum sex primi fuerunt Latini, et quatuordecim sequentes Albani, reliqui septem 7 post urbem conditam 8 Romani. Ex quibus Romulus fuit primus, et Tarquiniius Superbus fuit ultimus. Denuo, 9 expulsis ab 10 urbe regibus, duo consules annuatim sunt 11 creati; deinde tribuni plebis et dictatores rem publicam tractabant usque ad Julium Cæsarem per annos quadringentos sexaginta tres. 12 Post haec, omissa nomine regio, monarchæ, Cæsares, imperatores, et Augusti primatum tenuerunt. Quorum primus fuit Julius 13 ex consule et dictatore factus imperator, cujus successor et nepos Octavianus 14 Augustus regna totius orbis in unam redigit monarchiam. 15 Tandem Philippus imperator vicesimus octavus primus 16 Christianus est effectus. Deinde Constantinus Magnus sedem impe-

1 Willelmus, ins. C.D. 9 Denuo} Post haec, C.D.
2 primo] om. E. 10 ex, A.
3 Italie] sexto anno Delboræ judicis Israel, C.D. 11 sunt] om. C.D.
5 regis Persarum] om. C.D. 13 Cæsar, ins. B.
6 septingentos, B. 14 Octavianus, MSS.
7 septem] om. D. 15 mundi redigit in monarchiam, B.
8 conditam, ins. C.D. ; primo, B.
bygan vnder Ianus pe firste kyng of Italy, and durede anon to pe seuenpe ʒere of Darius Arsanius his son, kyng of Perses. 2 Hym slowh pe grete Alexander. And so pe grete\(^1\) kyngdom of Rome durede at pat cours eiʒte hondred ʒere and foure score, vnder seuen\(^2\) and twenty kynges. [Of pe whiche seuen and twenty kynges]\(^4\) sice pe firste\(^5\) were Latyns. Pe fourtene\(^6\) pat were\(^7\) after were Albans. Pe oþere seene pat come after pat pe citee was i-bulde were Romayns, of pe whiche Romulus was pe firste and Tarquinius pe proude was pe laste. Afterward kynges were i-put\(^8\) out of pe citee, and were from ʒere to ʒere tweie consulles i-chose. After consul tribunes plebis\(^9\) and dictatores\(^10\) rulede the comounte anon to Iulius Cesar his tyme, foure hondred ʒere pre score and foure. Afterward he\(^11\) lift pe name of kynges, and eleped here cheef lordes Cesares, empoureurs, and Augustes; of pe whiche Iulius Cesar was pe firste of a consul and dictator i-made empe- rour; his successour and ne was Ocatuianus\(^12\) Augustus, and brouʒte alle pe kyngdoms of pe world in to oon kyngdom al hool. Panne Philippe pe eiʒte and twenty pe empeour was pe firste empeour pat was Cristene.\(^13\) Panne pe grete

\(^1\) grete\] om. a. \\
\(^2\) eiʒte, MS. and a. (not Cx). \\
\(^3\) twey, a. \\
\(^4\) Added from a. and Cx. \\
\(^5\) The same order of words in a. and Cx. \\
\(^6\) So Cx.; fourtene, MS. \\
\(^7\) came, Cx. \\
\(^8\) put, a. \\
\(^9\) plebes, MS., Cx. \\
\(^10\) doctores, MS. a. and Cx. \\
\(^11\) they, Cx. \\
\(^12\) So Cx.; Ocatuianus, a.; Oceceau, MS. \\
\(^13\) cristened, Cx.
rialem apud Constantinopolim constituit, dignitatem
tamen sedis apostolice apud Romam successoribus Beati
Petri reliquit.\textsuperscript{1} Translato tandem imperio ad Karolum
Magnum regem Francorum, Pipini regis filium, nomen
imperiale solummodo apud Constantinopolim mansit.\textsuperscript{3}

\textbf{CAP. IX.}

\textit{De Nini et Semiramidis imperio.}\textsuperscript{4}

\textit{Augustinus de Civitate, libro octavodecimo.} In die-
bus Sarug, Belus Nemprotides, rex Babylonis, intravit
Assyriam, sed parum ibi conquisivit. At,\textsuperscript{5} cum per
sexaginta quinque annos regnasset, mortuus est. Cui
successit Ninus filius suus tricesimo anno Thare,\textsuperscript{6}
patris\textsuperscript{7} Abrahae, regnare incipiens, regnavitque fere\textsuperscript{8}
toti Asiae, excepta India, quinquaginta tribus annis.
In cujus regni\textsuperscript{9} anno quadragesimo tertio\textsuperscript{10} natus
est Abraham, anno ante urbem Romam conditam
m. et pene ccc.\textsuperscript{11} \textit{Orosius, libro primo.} Anno ante
urbem conditam m.ccc\textsuperscript{9}. Ninus rex Assyriorum pro-
pagandae dominationis libidine arma foris extulit,
cruentamque vitam quinquaginta annis per totam

\textsuperscript{1} reliquit, A.; reliquus, C.D.
\textsuperscript{2} solomodo, E. (not A.)
\textsuperscript{3} In the preceding chapter a few
trivial errors of orthography in the
proper names have been tacitly cor-
rected; all the more serious errors
are recorded.
\textsuperscript{4} Title wanting in MSS.
\textsuperscript{5} Cunque, C.D.
\textsuperscript{6} Dionysius (in marg.) C.D.
\textsuperscript{7} avii, C.D.
\textsuperscript{8} So D.; fere after Asiae in A.E.
\textsuperscript{9} regni] om. C.D.
\textsuperscript{10} anno ultimo, C.D.
\textsuperscript{11} anno...ccc.] om. C.D.
Constantyn made Constantynople\(^1\) pe chief ciete of pe emperere, and lefte Rome forto be chief see of pe pope to Seint Petre his successours. Whanne pe emperere was translated and i-torned to pe grete Charles, kyng of Fraunce, Pipinus pe kynges sone, panne pe name of pe emperour [was] lefte\(^2\) allone at Constantynople.

**Capitulum nonum.**

_Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro octavodecimo._ In Sarug his tyme Belus, Nemprotides his sonne, kyng of Babylone, wente into Assyria, and wan it afterward wip yyne a schort tyme; and whan he hadde i-reigned fine and sixty \(\text{\footnotesize} 3\/_2\)ere \(\text{\footnotesize} 3\)ere he deide. And his sone Nynus regnede after hym, and bygyn to reigne \(\text{\footnotesize} 3\)ere of Thare Abrahams fader etene pritty, and was kyng wel nygh of al Asia outake Inde \(\text{\footnotesize} 3\)ere \(\text{\footnotesize} 3\)ere \(\text{\footnotesize} 3\)ere. In \(\text{\footnotesize} 3\/_2\)ere of his kyngdom \(\text{\footnotesize} 3\)ere \(\text{\footnotesize} 3\)ere \(\text{\footnotesize} 3\)ere the sonne of Abraham was i-bore, to foere pe buldinge of pe ciete of Rome nyh a powsand \(\text{\footnotesize} 3\)ere and pre hondred. _Orosius, libro primo._ De \(\text{\footnotesize} 3\)/ere to foere pe buldynges of pe ciete of Rome a powsand and \(\text{\footnotesize} 3\)/ere hondred, Nynus kyng of Assiriens for courtise to make hym greet lordschipe\(^4\) bare out armour, and lynede tyne ordeine the seete imperiale at Constantinople, leverage the dignite of the seete apostolicalle at Rome to the successors of Seint Petre. At the laste, the empyre translate to grete Charles kyng of Fraunce, son to kyngge Pipinus, the name imperiale remaynede oonly at Constantinople.

**Capitulum nonum.**

_Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro decimo octavo._ Belus Nemprotides kyng of Babilon, entrede in to Assyria, in the daies of Sarug, conquerenge but Iytel \(\text{\footnotesize} 3\/_2\)ere \(\text{\footnotesize} 3\)/ere whiche diede after that he hade reignede \(\text{\footnotesize} 1\)ix. yere. Whom Nynus his son succeede, begynenge to reigne in the \(\text{\footnotesize} 3\)/ere \(\text{\footnotesize} 3\)/ere \(\text{\footnotesize} 3\)/ere \(\text{\footnotesize} 3\)/ere of Thare fader to Abraham, reigne in alle Asia, Ynde excepte, \(\text{\footnotesize} 3\)/ere \(\text{\footnotesize} 3\)/ere; in the \(\text{\footnotesize} 3\)/ere \(\text{\footnotesize} 3\)/ere \(\text{\footnotesize} 3\)/ere \(\text{\footnotesize} 3\)/ere \(\text{\footnotesize} 3\)/ere of whom Abraham was borne, by a \(\text{\footnotesize} 3\)/ere allemoste and eec. afoere the edifiacion of the ciete of Rome. _Orosius, libro primo._ In the \(\text{\footnotesize} 3\)/ere and eec. yere afoere the edifieng of the ciete of Rome, Nynus kyngge of Assyria, movede thro the luste of domination,

---

\(^1\) Constantynoble, MS., a. \(\beta\), \(\gamma\), here and below. (not Cx.) or Cx.) The verb is wanting in all, and in \(\beta\) and \(\gamma\).

\(^2\) lefte after banne in MS. (not a.)

\(^3\) mynce, a.

\(^4\) his lordshippe grete, Cx.
Asiam bellis\(^1\) egit.\(^2\) A meridie atque mari\(^3\) Rubro surgens sub ultimo septentrione Euxinum Pontum vastando perdomuit. Sythicam\(^4\) barbariem adhuc tunc imbellem et innocentem vires suas nosse; et non jam lacte pecudum (ut prius) sed sanguine hominum vivere, dum vicit, edocuit. Novissime\(^5\) Zoroasten, Bactrianorum regem magicaque artis inventorem, interficit. Postremo, dum deficientem a se urbem quandam obsideret, ictu sagittse interiit.\(^6\) Petrus, capitulo tricesimo sexto.\(^7\) Ninus, filius Beli, mortuo patre obtinuit Assyriam; et civitatem Niniven, a nomine suo sic nuncupatam, caput\(^8\) regni sui fecit, ac\(^9\) trium dierum itinere ampliavit; nam prius Nemphri fundaverat.\(^{10}\) Devicit etiam Chaam, qui et Zoroastes, regem Bactriæ;\(^{11}\) qui\(^{12}\) iussim septem liberales artes\(^{13}\) in quatuordecim columnis, septeam æneis et septem lateritiis, contra utrumque diluvium conscripsit. Cujus etiam\(^{14}\) libros Ninus combussit. Isidorus, Etymolog., libro octavo.\(^{15}\) Scripsit\(^{16}\) Aristoteles de Zoroaste, quod vicies centum milia versuum in arte magica\(^{17}\) com-

---

\(^{1}\) bellando, A. (second hand).
\(^{2}\) excerpt, B.
\(^{3}\) So A.B.C.D. ; atque a mari, E.
\(^{4}\) Schilicam or Seilicam, MSS.
\(^{5}\) So A. ; Novissim, E.
\(^{6}\) Orosius ... interii] om. D. ; add, in marg. C.
\(^{7}\) The true reference is to Hist. Libr. Gen., c. 39.
\(^{8}\) caput after sui, B.
\(^{9}\) et, A.
\(^{10}\) illam, A.
\(^{11}\) nam...fundaverat] om. C.D.
\(^{12}\) qui...Bactria] qui adhuc vi-
vens regnabat in Bactria, qui etiam dicebatur Zoroastes, magicae artis
inventor, C.D. Zoroastes is the classical form.
\(^{13}\) etiam, ins. C.D.
\(^{14}\) rege...artes] om. B.
\(^{15}\) etiam] om. B.E.
\(^{16}\) 18, D. The true reference is
to lib. viii. c. 9.
\(^{17}\) Scripsit quidem, C.D.
\(^{18}\) magicae, A.
crue lyf fifty 3ere in al Asia in werre and in bataille, and aroose out of þe souyp and from þe reed see, and destroyed in þe norþ vpon þe see þat hatte Eusinum þat strecheþ þrom the ryver Thanay to þe endes of Hiberia 1 and 2 Armenia. And so þis kyng Nynus ouer come men of Scitia barbarica, pat were þit no warriours, but stil ke men and syþ, 3 and made hem knowe strengþe, and tante hem to lyue by manis blood þat lyvede toforhonde by 4 melke of bestes; and at þe laste he slow Zoroastes 5 kyng of Bactrians þat was fyndere of wyche-craft, but at þe laste dede, while he bysegede a citee þat was tornede from hym, he was i-hit wip an arewe, and so he was i-slawe. Petrus, 36°. Nynus Belus his sone, whom his fader was dede, [hadde] 6 Assiria and þe citee Ninyue i-nempe þy name, and made þat citee Ninyue [chef of his kyngdom, and made the citee] 7 huger and more by þre iornyes. For Nemproth hadde toforhonde i-founded þat citee, and slow also Cham, þat hete Zoroastes 8 also, kyng of Bactria, þat wroote þe seuen 8 science in fourtene pileres, in seuen of bras and seuen of brenþ 9 tyle, forto sone hem aþenst eþer flood, 10 but Nynus brende his bookes. Isidorus, libro 8°. Aristotil of Zoroastes he wroote þat he made twenty hondred powsand vers of wyche-crafte, and Democritus made

gedrede an hoste, ledenge a cruelle lyfe by 1i þere, thro MS. Harl. alle Asia, in batelles, begynnenge from the merqilien and the redde see, made tame the cruelle peple of Scitia; sleenge also at the laste Zoroastes, kyng of Bactria, and the firste fynder of wieche-crafte. And at the laste Ninus was slyene with an arrow at the sege of a cite. Petrus, 16° capitulio. Ninus, the son of Belus, after the dethe of his fader opteynde Assiria, and the cite of Ninuen, calde so after his name, and made hit the principalle place of his realme, makeenge that cite more large by the iourneye of þre daies, whom Nemproth founded firste, onerecommenge Cham and Zoroastes kyng off Bactria, whiche did write aegyene either grete floode vij. artes liberalle in xiiiij. pyllors, vij. of brasse and vij. of tylestones. The bookes of whom Ninus brennte also. Isidorus libro octavo. The grete elerke Aristotille wrytethe of Zoroastes, that he made xxii tymes a e.m 1 versus of wieche craffe, whiche

1 Hiberia, MS.
2 an, a.
3 pesible, Cx.
4 with, Cx.
5 So a. and Cx.; Zorastes, MS., but Zoroastes below (once).
6 Added from a. and Cx.
7 Added from a.; so also in Cx. (nearly).
8 So a. and Cx. (who has sciences below); seeunche, MS.
9 brand, Cx.
10 augenste fire and water, Cx.

2 Ypocrates or Ipocrates, MSS. 13 spec., A.E.
3 26, A.; 16, B.; 38, C.D. The true reference is to c. 40. 14 quod..., dicitur] om. C.D.
4 quibuscumque, B. 15 filii] om. D.
5 ipsum, C. (not D.) 16 confixisset, B.D.
6 reli om. C.D. 17 refugium, A.B.C.D.
7 derivatur, C.D. 18 intricatus, B.
pat craft more afterward in Ypocratis\textsuperscript{1} tyme. \textit{Petrus,} MS. Harl. 2261. 

\textit{tricesimo sexto capitulo.} Ydoles toke begynnenge of pis Nynus in this maner. Belus fader to Ninus dedde, Ninus made an ymage to the similitude of his fader in to the solace of his sorwe. To whom he \textit{capi} so grete reuerence that he sparede gilty men fleence to hit. Thro exemple of whom other nowble men made ymages of theire frendes; and lyke as other ydoles toke begynnenge of the ydole of Belus, soe a generelle name of ydoles is derinate of the name of hym, after diuersite of speches. For men calle somme ydoles Beel, somme Baal, somme Baalim, specifienge somme names, as somme men Beelzabub, somme men Beelphegor. \textit{Alexander in Mythologia.} Alle figumentes toke begynnenge allemoste of ydolatry, for when Sirophanes of Eygpte hade made an ymage of his son for grete sorowe, worshippede moche of his seruauntes, ordeyned hit to be a refute of gilty men fleence to hit. Whiche inquirenge a remedy of hevynessse founde a grete place of sorowe, for olde errore began to be diffudede thro the worshippenge

\textsuperscript{1} Ypocratis, a.; Ypocras, Cx. 
\textsuperscript{2} Mawmetrie first, a. 
\textsuperscript{3} So Cx.; tyme, MS, and a. 
\textsuperscript{4} Added from a. and Cx. 
\textsuperscript{5} mawmett, a. 
\textsuperscript{6} mawmett, a. (not Cx.) 
\textsuperscript{7} Mitologia, MS., a.; Mytholog., Cx. 
\textsuperscript{8} he cited, Cx., which is better. (\$ and \& agree with MS. and a.) 
\textsuperscript{9} he, Cx. 
\textsuperscript{10} grete, Cx.
in idolorum cultura cœpit diffundi. Nee tamen eosdem ritus cuncti recipiendos\(^1\) statuerunt.\(^2\) Nam philosophi unum Deum colunt; quem pro\(^3\) multiplici dispositione, qua variis modis mundum regit, variis vocabulis appellant; utpote\(^4\) Vitumnus, quia vitam prestat; Sentinus, quia sensum dat;\(^5\) Jupiter, quia juvat. Refert etiam Plato in libro qui intitulatur *Philosophus*, quod poetæ luci causa et favoris rationes, scientias,\(^6\) et potentias ad usum vivendi concessas membratim effigiaverunt, et propriis nominibus assignaverunt; utpote scientiam colendi agros vocave-runt Cererem, scientiam colendi vineas Bacchum.\(^7\) Et etiam turpes actus hominum inter deos numeraverunt.\(^8\) *Isidorus, Etymolog.*, libro octavo. Quos pagani deos asserunt homines fuerunt, et pro unius-cujusque vita meritis vel magnificentia coli apud suos post mortem ceperunt. Sed etiam\(^9\) daemonibus persuadentibus\(^10\) quos illi pro sola memoria honoraverunt, successores existimabant\(^11\) deos. Et ad ista magis extollenda accesserunt figmenta poetica. *Ranulphus*. Et sicut inuit Augustinus de Civitate, libro secundo, capitulo undecimo, poeta Labeo\(^12\) tradidit tres differentias numinum. Nam quosdam

\(^1\) recipiendos, A. 
\(^2\) recipiendos cœperunt, C.D. 
\(^3\) ex, C.; om. D. 
\(^4\) utpote\(^9\) ut, C.D. 
\(^5\) For Vitumnus and Sentinus, see *Aug. de Civ. Dei*, vii., 2, and 3. 
\(^6\) et scientias, A.; om. C.D. 
\(^7\) vocaverunt Bacchum, A.; Bacchum vocantantes, C.D. 
\(^8\) numerantes, C.D. 
\(^9\) etiam\(^9\) om. C.D.E. 
\(^10\) persuadentibus\(^9\) so A.C.D.; om. C.; suadentibus, E. 
\(^11\) existimabant, A.; existimantes C.; existimaverunt, D. 
\(^12\) Labio, E. (not A.). This clerical error sufficed to lead Trevisa astray, and the Harleian translator also apparently.
error in worchippe of mawmetis gan to spred. Noeles pe same manere doyng was nouȝt i-ordeyned of al men. For phi-
losophres worchippede oon God and ȝaȝe lym many names for
men manere doynges and worchipynge þat he worcep; lyweep, for he ȝeœep lyt; fedeþ, for he ȝeœep felynge; Iupiter, þat is, helper, for he helpeþ. Also Plato, in þe book þat hatte
Philosophus, seip þat poetes, by cause of wynnyngg and of
favour, peyntede resouns sciens and myȝt þat were i-graunted
to þe vse of lyuyngg in meny manere schappes, and ȝaȝe ensurich a propre name. And so konnyng of teliengg 4 of feeldes þey cleped Cereres, 5 konnyng of telieung of wynes þey clepede 6 Ba[כ]chus, and accountede foule dedes of men amonge goddes. 7 Isidorus, Etymologia, libro 8. Þey þat payenis 8 cleipȝ goddis, þey were men. And as þey bere hem in her lif, bettre or wers, so þey were i-worshipched after her deep. Bote by false lore of fendes men þat come afterward worchipped hem for goddis, þat were first i-worshipched onlice for mynde; and þan þerto
make it more solemnpe com feynnynges of poetes. B. Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro iij. capitulo xi. Þe poete wip his lippe spekeþ of þe manere of goddes; for som þey clepeþ

of ydoles, neuertheless, that rite was not ordeyned fo
alle men. For philosophers worchippede oon God, whom
thei namede by diuerce names for the monyfolde dispo-
sicion thro whom he gouernethe the worlde in diuerse
maneres; as Vitænumns, 9 in that he þiffeth the life; Sentius, in
that he þiffeth wytte and felenge; Iupiter, for he helpeþe.
Also that grete clerke Plato reherseþe, in a boke of his
callede Philosophus, that poetes for cause of lucre and of
faoure haue chaungede reasons, sciences, and powers to
the vse of lyvynge grawntede a fore tyme to the actes and
vile operaciones of men, callenge Sereris the science of
tyllegenf eldes, and Bac[כ]chus of wynes, nowmbrenghe these
symple actes amonge goddes. Isidorus, libro octaço. The
goddes, that pagenes do worchippe, were men somme
tyme, and began to be worchippede after their merites
and magnificence in this lyfe; but, thro the persuasion of
the dead, theire succesors trawede themy to be goddes,
whom men afore worchippede oonly for a memory; whiche
thyngeþ the figumentes of poetes helpeþe moche. B. And
as Seynte Austyn semethe to reherse, De Civitate Dei, libro
secundo, capitulo undecimo, poetes in wrytynge ȝaȝe iij.
differences and diuersites of ydoles, callenge somme of

1 So a. and Cx.; now, MS.
2 o. a.; or, Cx.
3 and lyweþ, MS. a. ß. γ. Pro-
nably we should read ly wer (and feler below).
4 tellyinge, a.; telligynge, Cx.
5 So MS.; and the error may be
safely set down to Trevisa himself,
who elsewhere imagines Appobyn to
be the nominative of Apollo. The
Harl. version is somewhat worse.
6 So a.; clepe, MS.
7 So Cx.; goode, MS.; gode, a.
8 pagynns, Cx.
9 Victimus, Harl. MS.
dixit deos, ut Jupiter, Mars; quosdam semideos, ut Hercules, Romulus; quosdam heroes, id est, virtuosos et morigeratos homines, qui putabantur aliquid divinitatis habere, ut Hector, Achilles. Ex idolatria orae sunt varie superstitiones et multae, qualis est illa de qua loquitur Hieronymus super Isaiam decimo octavo, dicens quod Aegyptii et pene omnes orientales colunt Fortunam, cujus idolum loco nominatissimo ponunt; dextrae ejus cornu repletum hydromelle apponunt, de quo omnes circumse dentes nituntur gustare in ultimo die Novembris; quo tempore, si cornu plenum invenerint, pronesticant copiam rerum toto anno illo affuturam; si econtra invenerint, gemunt.

*Ex idololatria orae superstitiones.*

Trogus, libro primo, capitulo septimo. Mortuo Nino successit uxor sua Semiramis cum filio impube Nino sive Ninian relecto; quae non ausa immaturo puero regnum tradere, nec ipsa quidem regnum palam tractare, simulat se pro matre filium, pro femina puerum. Nam vox utrique gracilis et statura mediocris.igitur brachia et crura velamentis, caput tiara tegit. Et

---

2 ponunt, B.  
3 omnes] homines, B.  
4 invenerunt, A.  
5 Ranulphus . . . gemunt] om. C. D.  
6 cap. septimo] om. A.C.D.; primo, B. The true reference is to lib. i. c. 1. and c. 2.  
7 sua] ejus, B.  
8 se] om. B.  
9 utriusque, D.
goddes, as Jupiter\textsuperscript{1} and Mars; som half goddes, as Hercules and Romulus; and som vertuous men pat me trouwede pat hadde somewhat of godhede, as Hector\textsuperscript{2} and Achilles. Of such men and such godhes, as Jupiter spekep vpon Isay \textsuperscript{4} octavo,\textsuperscript{6} and self pat Egipciens and wel nyh alle men of est\textsuperscript{5} londes worshippeth Fortune, pat is, god of happes, as pey menep; the ymage of Fortune\textsuperscript{6} is i-sette in a place pat is wel i-knowe, and hep in his riȝt hond an horne ful of mede; alle pat sittep abonte fondep\textsuperscript{7} to taste of pat horne pe laste day of Nouembre; and \textit{if} pey fyndep pan pe horne ful, it bodep a good corn \textit{ere}, and \textit{if} pey fyndep it empty,\textsuperscript{8} \textit{panne pey makep sorwe.} \textit{Trogus, libro primo.}

Whanne Nynus was dede, his wyf Semiramis, wip hir sone Nynus, pat heet Nyuyan also, reginede in pis manere: pe woman man durste\textsuperscript{9} nouȝt bytake pe kyangdom to pe zong childe, noþer sche durste hir self regne openliche; \textit{perfore sche desgised hir self in pe childes liche,} pe moder for pe sone, a woman in stede of pe childe, for eiper hadde a small voys and \textit{was}\textsuperscript{10} mene of stature. \textit{Perfore sche} hidde hir armes and hir pyȝhes wip dyuers helynes, and here heed wip a cappe. \textit{And for me schulde nouȝt seie pat sche hidde}\textsuperscript{12} eny ping wip pe

\begin{flushright}
\textit{Trevisa.}
\end{flushright}

\begin{flushleft}
\textit{the} yeyme goddes, as Jupiter, Mars; somme halfe goddes, as MS. H. Harl. Hercules and Romulus; and somme vertuous as hauence parte of godhede, as Hector and Achilles. Also diuerse supersticiones began of ydolatry, as Seynte Ierom spekethe on the xvij\textsuperscript{the} chapitre of Ysay, seyenge that men of Egipte and of the este partes worschippe Fortune. The ydole of whom thei sette in the chiefe place, holdenge an horne in the ryȝhtehondre replete with hony, of whom alle men syttenge aboute do taste in the laste day of Nouember; and \textit{if} thay fynde the horne fulle at that tyme thei prenosciate grete habundancie of goddes to comme in that\textit{yere} foloeunge, and if hit be voide thei waile and sorowe. \textit{Trogus, libro primo.}

Ninus dedde, Semiramis his wife, lefte with Ninnus other Ninian his son tendre in age, began to reigne, which wyllenge not here childe to reigne for infancy, fysnede here as a son, beenge the moder. For thei were of an egalle stature, and lyke of speche. Wherefore sche made clothes for here hedde, legges, and armes of purpose, commandenge the

\begin{flushleft}
\textsuperscript{1} So a.; here, and elsewhere sometimes, MS. has \textit{jubiter.}
\textsuperscript{2} So a.; \textit{Ector}, MS.
\textsuperscript{3} \textit{pa}, MS.
\textsuperscript{4} \textit{Isay}, a., Cx., correctly.
\textsuperscript{5} \textit{pe est}, a.
\textsuperscript{6} \textit{the ymage of Fortune} twice repeated in MS.
\textsuperscript{7} \textit{foundeth}, Cx.
\textsuperscript{8} \textit{leer}, a.; \textit{coyld or empty}, Cx.
\textsuperscript{9} \textit{praste}, a.
\textsuperscript{10} Added from \textit{y}; \textit{a. B.} and Cx. agree with MS.
\textsuperscript{11} \textit{they}, Cx.
\textsuperscript{12} \textit{had}, Cx.
\textsuperscript{13} \textit{pe} om. a.
\end{flushleft}

**CAP. X.**

*De Abrahae.*

**Genesis.** Thare, cum septuaginta esset annorum, genuit Aram, Nachor, et Abram. Natusque est Abram
newe manere of clopinge, sche hiȝte þat hir peple schulde 

goȝ i-cloped in þe same array, and þit þat peple vscþ þe same 

manere clopinge. þanne þis womman dede meny grete dedes, 

and whanne 1 sche had ouercome þe envie 2 of alle enuyes, 

þanne sche knowlechede what sche was and how sche hadde 

i-doo. þan þe doynge torneȝ hire to ful 3 greet worschippe; 

for sche ouercome Ethiopia, blew men lond, and Ynde also. 

And at þe laste sche desired hir owne sone, and bad him forto 

ligge by here; and he slowe here, whan sche hadde i-reigned 

two and fourty þere. But hir sone Nynus helde hym apaided 

wip þe trauaille 4 of his fader and moder, and was afterward 

selde i-seie amonge men, and leuede and wax olde among 

wommen. And his successoresses, kynges þat come after hym, 

folwed þat ensample of hym and þeuen 5 answere to þe 

peple by messangers þat schulde goȝ by twene. R. þat manere 
doynge was i-vsed anon to þe kyng Sardanapallus his tyme.

Capitulum decimum.

Genesis. Thare whanne he was þre score þere olde and ten, 

þan he gat Aaram, Nachor, and Abraham; [and Abraham] 6 was 

peple to be clothede in that maner also, whiche consuctud 2261. 

peple of þat cuntre vse in to þis tyme presençe; whiche 

woman did grete thynges in here reigne. For sche made 

subiecte Ethioppe, and faȝhte sore ageynes Ynde, whiche 
siȝrengенe to haue hade the pleasure of the flesche with here 

awne son was sleyne by hym. And when Ninus, son to 

Semiramis, hade reignede xlijoth yere, contente with the labores 
of his fader, [he] was seen but selde of men, drawenge and 
taryenge moche in the company of women; whose succes-
sors vseyenge the seide condicion þate answereþ to peple 

by messyngers betwene. R. Whiche thyngue was observued and 

kepted vn to the tymes of Sardanapallus.

Capitulum decimum. 

Thare beenge of lxxiiith yere in age gate Aaram, Nachor, 

and Abraham; whiche Abraham was borne in þe xlijoth yere

---

1 and whan repeated in MS. | 4 transuaille, MS.; travail, Cx. 
2 envy, Cx. | 5 þere, a.; yaf, Cx. 
3 right, Cx. | 6 Added from a. and Cx.

---
quadragesimo tertio anno Nini regis Assyriorum, du-
centesimo nonagesimo secundo anno post diluvium secundum Josephum. Ranulphus. De numero an-
norum istius secundae actatis vide supra.\(^2\) Genesis. Porro Aram\(^3\) genuit Loth, Sarai,\(^4\) et Melcham. Sed\(^5\) mortuus est Aram ante patrem suum Thare\(^6\) in Ur Chaldæorum. Ex quibus liquet quod\(^7\) anno undecimo Abrahæ mortuus est Ninus. Petrus, capitulo sexagesi-
simo. Cujus uxor Semiramis, ut regnare posset post maritum,\(^8\) nupsit proprio filio,\(^9\) quem ex Nino marito\(^10\) susceperat; et ex eo filium suscepit,\(^11\) qui Babyloniam ampliavit. Genesis. Inde Thare, non valens ferre in-
jurias sibi illatas de adorando igne, in Chaldæa, ubi et Aram primogenitum suum\(^12\) extinxerant, peregrinatus est cum Abram et Nachor et familia Aram usque ad Charram\(^13\) Mesopotamiae,\(^14\) ubi completis ducentis quin-
que annis mortuus est.\(^15\) Abram, mortuo patre suo Thare,\(^16\) descendit de Charra in Sichem, et inde Penta-
polim; postmodum\(^17\) collocans tabernaculum inter Bethel et Hai,\(^18\) fame invalescente descendit in Ægyptum, dicens Sarai fore\(^19\) sororem suam.\(^20\) Josephus, libro prí-
mo,\(^21\) capitulo septimo. Abrahæm, apud Chaldæos prius

\(^1\) 293, C.D.
\(^2\) Ranulphus . . . supra] om. C.D.
\(^3\) So A.B.; Abraham, E.
\(^4\) So A.; Saray, E.
\(^5\) See] et, C.D.
\(^6\) Thare] om. C.D.
\(^7\) Ex quibus . . . quod] om. C.D.
\(^8\) maritum] cum, C.D.
\(^9\) filio suo, B.
\(^10\) marito] om. C.D.
\(^11\) suscepit] genuit, C.D.
\(^12\) filium suum pr. B.; filium

\(^{\text{in Carram, A.B.C. (not D.)}}\)
\(^{\text{Mesopotamæ}}\) om. B.
\(^{\text{moritur Thare, C.D.}}\)
\(^{\text{suor Thare}}\) om. C.D.
\(^{\text{postea, C.D.}}\)
\(^{\text{So A.; Hay, D.E.}}\)
\(^{\text{esse, B.C.D.}}\)
\(^{\text{dicens Saray uxor suam esse}}\)
sororem, C.D., which is better.
\(^{\text{primo}}\) om. E. The true refer-
ence is to lib. i. c. 8.
i-bore pe 2ere of Nynus kyng of Assiria pre and fourty, two Trevisa. hundred 2ere foure score and twelve after Noe his flood, so scip Iosephus. B. Pe nombre and pe somme of pis seconde age loke to fore in pis book. Genesis, Pan Aram1 gat Looth, Sarray, and Melcham: Aaram deide to fore his fader Thare in Ur Caldeorum, a place in Caldea: and so Ninus deide pe 2ere of Abraham his age eleuene. Petrus 60°. Semyramis Ninus his wif, for sche wilde regyne after hir hoursende Ninus, sche wedded hir owne son pat sche hadde by hir housbonde Ninus, and hadde by hir sone a childe pat eched² Babilonia and made it more. Genesis, Panne Thare myȝte nouȝt suffire pe wrong pat hym was doo of worschippynge of fuyr in Caldea, 2ere pei hadde i-slave his eldest sone Aaram. He wente out of pe 3 kontre wip Abraham and Nachor and Aaram his meyne anon to Charram in Mesopotamia, and deide pere after two hundred 2ere and fyue. Abraham whanne⁴ his fader Thare was dede he wente doun out of Charr in to Sichem, and penes into Pen[tα]polis;² afterward he piȝt his paulyoun bytwene Bethel and Hay. And honger wax⁶ strong he wente doun in to Egipte, and tolde pere pat Sarray was his suster. Iosephus, libro primo, capitolo 7°. Abraham lernede in

of Ninus kyng of Assiria, cc.xej, yere after the grete floode, MS. Harl. 2261. after Iosephus. B. Beholde in the viiȝhe chapitre afore of the nowmbr of the yeres of the secunde age. Genesis. Aaram gate Loth, Saray, and Melcha, but Aaram diefde afore Thare his fader, in the cote of men of Caldea, wherefore hit doth appere that Ninus diefde in the viiȝhe yere of Abraham. Petrus, capitolo sexagesimo. The wife of whom, Semiramis by name, did wedde here awne son, that sche myȝhte regyne, whom sche hadde by Ninus here houwsebonde, hauenge a childe by here son, which did ampliate Babilony. Thare hauenge not powere to suffire injuries doen to hym as for fire to be worschippede in Caldea, where he pereschede, Aaram his firste son wente furthe with Abraham and Nachor, and with the meyne other seruauntes of Aaram, to Carra in Mesopotamia, which diefe there, cc. and v. yere complete. Thare ded, Abraham wente from Carra to Sichem, and afterwarde to Pentapolis, fixenge his tabernacle betweene Bethel and Hay. After that for hongre he wente in to Egipte, taking Saray with hym, sayenge here to be his sustyr. Iosephus, libro primo, capitolo septimo. Abraham, crudite

1 So a, and Cx.; Aaron, MS.  
2 eched and enlarged. Cx.  
3 pat, a., Cx.  
4 So a. and Cx.; was, MS.  
5 Pentapolis, a., Cx.  
6 was, Cx.
eruditus, in Ægyptum descendens ¹ docuit Ægyptios primus ² arithmeticam ³ et astrologiam prius ⁴ illis ignotam. Genesis. ⁵ Abraham plurimum ditatus redi-
ens de Ægypto ⁶ ad locum prioris tabernaculi, propter jurgium pastorum recessit a Loth usque ad convallem Mambre juxta Hebron. Petrus, quadragesimo secundo. ¹² Hebron vel Chebron est ⁷ civitas, quæ et Cariatharbe
dicitur ⁸ a cariath quod est civitas, et ære quod est quatuor. Nam ibi ⁹ sepulti ¹⁰ sunt ¹¹ quatuor patriarchae maximi; Adam, Abraham, Isaak, et Jacob. Ranul-
phus. Sed Joseph sepultus est in Sichimis juxta Montem Ephraim, ¹² sicut supra dictum est, et in libro Josuæ ultimo capitulo patet. ¹³ Genesis. Abraham cum
redisset de cæde ¹⁴ quatuor regum dedit decimas de omnibus adquisisitis occurrenti ¹⁵ sibi Melchisedech, regi Salem, qui obtulit panem et vinum. Hieronymus
in epistola ad Evangelum, et Petrus capitulo quin-
quagesimo secundo. ¹⁶ Decimæ leguntur primum datre
ab Abraham, sed primitiae prius dabantur ab Abël. Hunc etiam ¹⁷ Melchisedech tradunt Hebraei fuisse
Seem, ¹⁸ primogenitum ¹⁹ Noe, et vixisse usque ad

---

¹  veniens, C.D.
²  primus] om. B.
³  arismetica, A.; arismetica, B.
⁴  ante, C.D., which, after igno-
tan, add, a quibus postmodum iste scientiae pervenerunt ad Ægyptios.
⁵  Reference added from A.
⁶  Abraham after Ægypto in E.
⁷  est] om. D.
⁸  dictur] om. B.
⁹  ibi enim, C.D.
¹⁰  sepultæ, D.E.
¹¹  sunt] om. B.
¹²  Variously written in MSS.
¹³  Ranulphus . . . patet] om. C.D.
¹⁴  occasione, C.D., which vary the sentence.
¹⁵  occurrente, A.
¹⁶  43, A.B.C.D. The true refer-
ence is to c. 46, and c. 47.
¹⁷  autem, C. (not D.)
¹⁸  Sem, A.
¹⁹  filium, D.
Caldea and wente doun in to Egypte, and was þe firste þat tawȝte þe Egipcians ars metrick1 and astrology, þat was unknowe to hem to fore honde. Genesis. Abraham was ful riche, and went æþen out of Egypte to þe place of þe forscide pauylum, and for strif of herdes he departede from Loth, and wente from hym anon to þe vale of Mambre besides Ebron. Petrus 42, Hebron. Hebron, þat hadde Chebron also, is 2 a citee, and hadde [also] 3 Cariatarbe, of Cariath, þat is a citee, and Arbe, þat is foure; for foure þe grettest patriarches were i-buryed þere, Adam, Abraham, Isaac, and Iacob; but Ioseph is i-buryed in Sichem besides Mount Ephraym, as it is i-seide abone in libro Isuue, capitulo ultimo. Genesis. Whan Abra-ham come æþen from þe batayle of foure kynges, he þæf þeþynge of al þat he hadde i-gete to Melchysedek 4 king of Salem; and Melchisedek offred bød and wyn. Hieronymus in Epistola ad Evangelum, et Petrus 43, Decimæ Melchisedek.5 Men 6 spekeþ and 7 demep þat Abraham þæf firste þeþynge; but Abel þæf ræper þe firste þat God sente hym of alle manere kynde, þe Hebrewes telle þat Melchysedek was Sem, Noe his sone, 1 arithmetrick, a. (not CX.) 5 Decimæ Melchisedek] om. a. 2 þere is, MS. (not a. or CX.) 6 Me, a. 3 Added from a. and CX. 7 spekeþ and] om. a.; Me redeth 4 Melchesedech,a.; Melchysedech,Cx. 8 that, CX.
Isaak; et omnes primogenitos a Noe usque ad Aaron fuisse sacerdotes, qui in conviviis et oblationibus benedicebant populo, quibus et primogenita dabantur; et haec esse primogenita, que Esau vendidit Jacob fratri suo. Ab ista etiam victoria Abrahæ tradunt quidam annum Jubileum sumpsisse primordium pro haec remissione captivorum. Jobel enim dicitur remissio, vel initium. Unde Jobeleus vel Jubileus instituitur in quinquagesimo anno, eo quod Loth tunc fuerit quinquaginta annorum, vel quod Abraham astrorum peritus noverat quod intemperies, quæ proveniunt ex planetis elevatis seu depressis usque ad quinquagesimum annum ad temperiem redeunt.

Abraham yere, I isalle 50 fore men lubile planetes Aaron Ysaac, he perure and blessid as som from 6, Added firste vctorie the telle.

...
ex parte Sarra\(^1\) se vocantes;\(^2\) cum verius sint Agareni, ab Agar matre Ismaelis, sive Ismaelitae ex patre sic dicti, seu\(^3\) Madanianæ. Indixit Deus Abrahæ\(^*\) et semini \(^*\) suo circumcisionem, quasi quodam charactere volens populum suum distinguiere a cæteris nationibus.\(^4\) Petrus, quadragesimo septimo.\(^5\) Quia tempore circumcisionis mutatum est nomen Abrahæ, ideo Hebraei nomina mutantur. octavo die, quando circumcidunt \(^6\) pueros,\(^7\) nomina illis imponunt. In veteri \(^8\) testamento quatuor nomina leguntur praemintiata, scilicet,\(^9\) Ismaelis, Isaak, Sampsonis, et Josiae; et in novo \(^10\) solummodo \(^11\) Johannis Baptistæ, et Christi. Ranulphus.\(^12\) Quod quando fit, singularis meriti aut virtutis indicium est, sicut legitur Sodoma in vita Remigii.\(^13\) Genesis. Hoc anno subversa\(^14\) est Sodoma, et Loth inde liberatus transiens in \(^15\) Segor, modicum urbem juxta montem, vinoque inebriatus genuit ex seniore filia Moab; de quo Moabite descenderunt. Et ex altera\(^16\) filia genuit Amon, de quo Amonite descenderunt. Ranulphus. De loco Sodoma, qui nunc Mare Mortuum dicitur, vide\(^17\) supra, libro primo de provinciis Asiae, capitulo Judæa.
Saracenys, as pogh þey\(^1\) were i-come of Sara; but þey beþp Trevisa. verrailliche Agarenys, for þey come of Agar [Ismael his moder. Also þey beþp cleped\(^2\) Ismaelites, for þey come of Ismael; and beþp Madianites\(^3\) also. Ê. Oure Lorde þat Abraham and his children þe circumciusion forto make and departe\(^4\) his peple from other nacionys. Petrus 47. For Abraham his name was i-chauynd whan he was circum-
sised, þerfore þe Hebrewes þeue hir children names þe eiþte\(^5\) day whan þey beþp circumcieided. In þe olde testa-
ment mo redeþ pat men were i-warned of foure men names to fore þe burþe: of Ismael, Isaac, Sampson, and Iosyas.
In þe newe testament onliche of John Baptiste and Crist. Ê. And whan þat [mat]\(^6\) was i-doo it bodid grete merite and vertue; so me redeþ in Remigius his lyf. Genesis. Êis þere
Sodoma was destroyed, and Looth delyuered, and wente into Segor, a litel citee þere besides an hul; and was wyndronken;
and in his sleپ he gat Moab on his eldest doþer and Amon
on his oþer doþter. Of Moab come þe Moabites, and of Amon
come\(^8\) Amonytes. Ê. Of þe place of Sodoma, þat hatte now þe dedde see, loke above in þe firste book, in þe province of Asia, in þe chapitre Iudea, pat is þe Iewerye.

dukes and gouernours of peple, calleþe thyme Saracenys, as comemenge of Sara, but in trawthe thei aþe to be
namede raper Agarenys, of Agar moder of Ismael, other elles Ismaelites after Ismael, as Madianites were namede of Madian.
Ê. God commaundyde to Abraham the vse of circumciusion,
and to his sede, wylleþe to make a distincceion, as by a
carecte, betweene his peple and other nacionys. Petrus,
47o capitulo. And for cause that the name of Abraham
was chaungeþe in the circumciusion, þerfore men of Hebrewe
name þere childer in the vijithe day, when the childer be
circumcieisede. And iiij. names be pronunciate in the olde
 testamente, that is to say, Ismael, Ysaac, Sampson, and Iosias, and ij. oonly in the newe testamente, John Baptiste and Criste. Ê. Whiche thynge is a specialle schewenge
of a singular merite and vertu, as hit is redde in the life
of Seynte Remigius. Genesis. Sodoma was destroyeþe
that yere, and Loþh delyuered; and salvede, goengþe in to
Segor, a litel citee nye to the hille, drunke þro wyne gate
of his elder doþhter Moab, of whom Moabites come. Of
Sodoma, whiche is calleþe the dedde see, loke in the firste
boke, capitulo 14o.

\(^1\) þei beþ, a.
\(^2\) Added from a. and Cx.
\(^3\) Madianites, MS. and a.
\(^4\) departed, MS. (not a. or Cx.)
\(^5\) eiþteþe, a.
\(^6\) Added from a.; not in Cx.
\(^7\) an, a.
\(^8\) come] the, c. and Cx.
Cap. XI.

De Isaac et ejus familia; et de mythica Graecorum historia. 1

Petrus quinquagesimo tertio. 2 Natus est Isaak 3 de 4 Anno Abr. 160. Sara nonagenaria; 5 qui trinus effectus 6 ablectatus est; et tunc factum est convivium eo quod tunc primo 5 accesserit 6 ad mensam patris. Cres copit regnare in Creta; 7 a quo et Creta insula 7 dicta est; quem aiuntuisse unum Curetarum 8 qui Jovem abscondit et educavit. 9 Moritur 10 Sara; 11 cum centum et viginti septem annorum, sepultaque est 11 in Hebron. 12 Et cito post Eleezer, 13 procurator Abraham, missus ad querendum uxorem pro Isaak, 14 adduxit Rebeccam. Duxit quoque 15 Abraham Cethuram in 16 uxorem, ex qua genuit sex liberos, quos omnes separavit a filio suo Isaak. 17

Petrus, quinquagesimo nono. 18 Dicunt Hebrei Cethuram esse 19 nomen appellativum quod interpretatur copulatum, quam dicunt etiam 20 fuisset Agar, que de concubina post mortem Sarae transivit in conjugen; ne, si senex aliam quam prius a se cognitam duceret, 21 lascivire videretur. Isaak quadraginta erat annorum, quando duxit Rebeccam in uxorem; quae mansit 11 et sepulta est, B. 12 Sentence slightly varied in C.D., as also the following. 13 Eleezer, A.; Eleazar, B.D. 14 Isaak, A.; Yeaac, C.D.; and so usually. 15 que, A. 16 in] om. D. 17 quos separavit ab Yeaac, C.D. 18 The true reference is to c. 62. 19 fuisset, C.D. 20 etiam dicunt, A. 21 novis imperitiis, ins. C.D.

1 Title wanting in MSS.
2 Reference added from A.C.D.
3 The true reference is to c. 56.
4 effectus] om. D.
5 postea, B.
6 accessit, D.
7 insula] om. C.D., which have in margin Dionisius.
8 Curetarum, A.
9 qui ... educavit] a quo Jupiter, ut ferunt, absconditus fuit et nutritus, C.D.
10 Petrus 56, ins. C.D. in marg.

Isaac
nascitur.

Isaac
Rebeccam
ducit in
uxorem.

A filiiis
Cethurae
separatur.
Capitulum undecimum.

Isaac was i-bore of his moder Sarra whan sche was foure skore yerre olde and ten. Petrus 53. Isaac was i-wened when he was pre yerre olde, and po was i-made a grete feste; for po he wente firste to his fader bord. Crees bygan to regne in Creta; of hym pat ilond Creta hap pat name Creta. Som men tellep pat Crees was oon of pe gouvernours pat norschede and hidde Iupiter. Sarra deide whan sche was sixe score yerre olde and seune, and was i-buried in Hebron. And sonc pere after Heleeser Abrahams servaunt was i-sent fortto fecche a wyf for Isaac, and brouȝhte Rebekka. Also Abraham wedde Cethura to wyf, and gatt on hire sixe children, and departed hem alle from his sone Isaac. Petrus 59. Hebreus seiep pat Cethura is a comyn name, and is to meynys i-coupled; and seip pat pis Cethura was Agar, and of a lemnan was i-made a wyf after pe deep of Sarra, anannte leste pe olde man schulde be holde a lecehour; and he hadde i-take anopre yan he hadde i-lay by to fore honde. Isaac was fourty yerre olde whan he wedded Rebekka, pat bare

Capitulum undecimum.

Ye Isaac was borne of Sarra beenge of xe. yerre in age, whiche, hauenge iij. yere in age, was weynede, and then a grete feste was made, in that Ysaae comme that tyne firste to the burde of his fader. Crees began to regne in the yle callede Creta, of whom that yle toke name, whom thei seye to be oon of theym whiche did hyde Iupiter and norschede hym secretely. Sara beenge of a cxxvij. yere diede, and was beriede in Hebron: after that Heleeser, proctor of Abraham, was sende to gette a wyfe for Ysaae, whiche brouȝhte Rebeeca. Abraham did wedde Cethura in to his wyfe, of whom he gate vj. childer, whom he departede from Ysaae his son. Petrus, 59ª capitulo. Men of Hebrewe say Cethura to be a nowne appellatyn, as cowplede, by interpretacion, whom thei say Agar, whiche beenge his concuynye, was made his wyfe after the deathe of Sarra. Ysaae was of xlii. yere in age when he did wedde Rebeeca,
sterilis per viginti annos. Augustinus de Civitate, De Pallade. libro octavodecimo. *Apud lacum Tritonidem appa-
no childe twenty [ere after. *Augustinus, libro 18°. At pe *Trevisa.* 

Lake Tritonides was i-seie a woman man het hec Tritona, pe Grees cleop hir Mynerua; and batte Pallas also of Pallas pe ilond of Tracia, pere he was i-norsehed, oper of Pallas pe geant pe he [slowly. R. Here take hede pe pis geant Pallas was anoper geant pan pe geant Pallas, pei Turnus Euander is sone slowh in Eneas his tyme. *Augustinus, ut 3 supra.* Pis mayde Pallas, pei geant Mynerua also, fonde yp meny craftes, and especialliche wolvercraft, and was pe li[stit]oker i-rowed a goddes. For me wiste wel litel whennes sche come. Isaac hade tweye twyynes i-bore of Rebeccen, Esau and Iacob. *Augustinus, ubi supra.* Pe kyngdom of Arguiues bygan in Grecia vnder Inachus Isis his fader. Isis hec [Io] also, and Inachus regenede fifty [ere, and pe kyngdom durede fyue hundred [ere or foure and fourty vnder fourtene kynges anon to pe laste Acrisius hym slow Persius, pey; it were nou[t] wie [his wille, pe twel[p] [ere of Delborn iuge of Israel. And per picked Persius dradde ful sore, and

which was bareyne by xx[nd] yeres. *Augustinus, libro decimo octavo.* A woman callede Tritona appereade at a water callede Tritonides, whom men of Grew calle Minerua, which was callede also Pallas, of an yle in Tracia of that name, where sche was norischede, other elles of Pallas the gigante, whom sche did slee. R. Hit is to be attendede that this gigante, callede Pallas, was an other then Pallas son of Euander, whom Turnus did sle in the tyme of Eneas. *Augustinus, ubi supra.* That virgyn callede Pallas other Minerua founde mony artes, and specially of makenge clothe, pe originalle of the byrthe of whom is not knownen, wherefore sche is callede a godesse. Ysaac gate ij. childe of Rebeccen, Esau and Iacob. *Augustinus, ubi supra.* The realme of men callede Arguyes, in Grecia, began vnder Inachus fader of Ysides, otherwise callede Io, whiche Inachus regenede [1] yere; and that realme contynude by v[e] and xliij yere, under xiiij. kynges, vn to the laste, Acrisius, whom Persius did s[e] geanye his wille, in the xij the yere of Delborn iuge of Israel. Wherefore Persius dredenge

---

1 heo, β; a, γ; she, Cx., quite rightly, who notwithstanding has he slough. The pronouns are so strangely employed by Trevisa or his scribes, that the concordant readings of MS. and a have been rarely corrected.
2 So MS., a, β, Cx.; heo, γ.
3 ubi, a, Cx.
4 wolfe craft, a, Cx.
5 lighter, Cx.
6 cam, Cx.
7 Added from a and Cx.
8 bg, Cx.
9 Tritonides, Harl. MS.
lefte pe Argus and tornede pe kyngdon to pe Myceenes.  Abraham lyuede fiftene 3ere pre skore and an hondred 3ere, and was i-buried in Ebron.  Petrus 66.  De longage of Hebrew and pe vsage of olde Latyn is forto aounte the lasse nombre to fore pe more, contrarye to pe manere pat Latyn vsef now, for now we seip in Latyn, Abraham lyuede an hondred 3ere pre skore and fiftene; but pe Hebrewes seip in pis manere, Abraham lyuede fiftene 3ere pre skore and an hondred 3ere.  Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro 18°.  Feronens, Inachus his sone, was pe seconude kyng of pe Argines, and reignede sixtene 3ere.  Pis Feronens Argolicus 3af firste lawes in Greeces, and ordeynede pat causes schulde be i-pleded 6 to fore inges.  Perfore pey cleped pe places of domes Forum after his owne name.  His brofer hect Fogous, and kowpe moche astrologie, and ordeyned temples to worship pe false goddesse ynde; perfore he was aounted a god amonge hem pat worschipped suche goddes.  His suster hect Isus, and Isidorus, libro 3.  Isis ordynede firste trompes, perfore pe Amazones cleped hire 

lefte the Arguyes, and translate that realme to Miceaes.  Abraham beenge of a clx. and xv. yere in age, diode and was beryede in Hebron.  Petrus, 66 capitulio.  The maner of men of Hebrew is to accompte the lesse nowmbre afore the more nowmbre, as by grace of exemple we say, that Abraham lyvede an e. yere lxv.  Men of Hebrew say, that Abraham lyvede v. xx. l. and a e. yere.  Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro decimo octavo.  Feronens, the secunde kyng of the Argines, began to reigne, contynenge by lx. yere.  This Feronens ordeynede firste lawes amonge the Greeces, which ordynede also causes to be ventilate afore a fugge, callenge the secte and place of the fugge Forum, after his name; which hade a sustyr, callede Isis other Io, which saylenge to Egipte tauthed theyrne firste letters, and to tylle the londe, wherefore shee was made a goddesse

---

1 So a. and Cx.; Myceens, MS., in which (as well as in e.) several words are wrongly inserted from below.
2 So a. and Cx.; Ebron, MS.
3 So a. and Cx.; his, MS.
4 armes, MS.
5 sixty, Cx.
6 pleteid, Cx.
7 So a.; Fegonis, MS.
8 and the Fegons coude, Cx., who varies the sentence.
9 [e] om. a.
10 Ysis, Cx.
11 she, Cx. (not a.)
12 jildes, a.
13 Cx. adds theyne.

De fabuloaco Epaphi orta.

Thessalus in Thessalia regnat. Benedictio Isaac a Jacob surrepta. De primo genitis.

Diluvium sub Ogyge.
ofte to bataillevard\(^1\) wiþ trompes. \([\text{R.}]\) \(^2\) Pat me rede\(\uparrow\) pat Jupiter ravesched Io and gat Epaphus, \(\text{Trevisa.}\) it is but a fable and feynynge of poctes for noble fam\(\text{e}^3\) of cypher persone.\(^4\) For poctes feynyp meny noble persones i-gete of Jupiter, for pe kyn schulde be\(^5\) pe more gentil and noble i-holde.\(^6\) But Io was in Ysaac his tyme, and Jupiter was afterward in Iosue his tyme. Thessalus, Grecus his sone, reignede in Thessalia. Iacob, after pat he hadde i-bouþt pe firste birpe, and styliche i-gete his fader blessynge by his moder counsaile pëy\(^7\) wente doun in to Mesopotamia. \(\text{Petrus 64.}\) Pe furste burpe\(^8\) of hem\(^9\) were special profisþes\(^10\) and worschippes\(^11\) to the eldest sonses,\(^12\) hadde in hire kynrede anon to Aaron; for pëy were eloped in special elofynge in offrynge of sacrifce, and hadde hire fader blessynge, and double porciou in festes and in delynge of heritage, and he\(^13\) schulde blesse hire lasse,\(^14\) Iacob gat his firste sone Ruben on his wyfe Lya. \(\text{Dis ßere was a litel flood in Æchaia, pat hadte Atthica pat lond, vnder 15 Ogiges pe kyng, pat renewede after here dethe. \(\text{Isidorus, libro 3°, et R.}\) That men say \(\text{MS. Harl. 2261.}\) Jupiter to have ravesched Io, and to haue gaten Epaphus, is but a fable, and a feynynge of poctes, for the famose excellence of bothe persones. For poctes feyny mony nowble men to haue ben geten by Jupiter, that the kynde of theyme myþlte be made more nowble pere by. For Io was in the tyme of Ysaac, and Jupiter was after the tyme of Iosue. Thessalus the son of Grecus reignede in Greece. Iacob wente in to Mesopotamie,\(^16\) after the cownsele of his moder, after that he hadde bouþte the fyристe frutes of Esaun, and after the blesseng of his fader. \(\text{Petrus, sexagesimo quarto capitullo.}\) The firste geten thynges were callede certyne dignites and prerogatives, whom the firste childre hade in theire cogniciones vn to Aaron; that is to say, they were induede with a speclalle vesture, in sacrifce and oblaciones to be ofrede, that thei scholde receyve also the benediccion of the fader, and thei scholde haue also a doubile portion in festes, and in the diuision of inheritaunce, and that thei scholde blesse the yongers of theyme. Iacob gate of Lia Ruben his firste son. A particuluer floode was that yere in Æchaia, vnder Ogiges\(^17\) kyng, whiche renouwenge

---

\(^{1}\) bataylheard, a.
\(^{2}\) Added from a.
\(^{3}\) flane, MS. (not a.)
\(^{4}\) persoyn, a.
\(^{5}\) holde, added in a.
\(^{6}\) i-holde] om. a.
\(^{7}\) he, Cx.
\(^{8}\) burpes, a., Cx.
\(^{9}\) of hem] om. a., Cx.

\(^{10}\) profisþ, a. (not Cx.)
\(^{11}\) worschippe, a., Cx.
\(^{12}\) oldest sone, Cx.
\(^{13}\) they, Cx.
\(^{14}\) be lasse, MS. (not a, or Cx.)
\(^{15}\) was vnder, Cx.
\(^{16}\) Egipte, Harl. MS. (first hand).
\(^{17}\) Ogides, Harl. MS.
Atthen innovans, etiam Eleusim condidit. Hoc anno
De strophis Jacob xci. annorum existens genuit Joseph ex Ra-
el. Petrus, septuagesimo quarto. Finitis quatuo-
dercam annis, quibus Jacob servivit pro uxoribus, pe-
pigit Laban cum eo quod quiueid variam nascetur-
de unicolore merces sua foret. Unde et tultit Jacob
virgas virides populeas, amygdalinas, et plataninas,
quas per loca decorticans posuit in canalis aqua-
um ante conspectum ovium in ipso fervore coitus,
Ut unde, et tullit Jacob virgas virides populeas,
etiam, sic tales foetus conciperent quales umbras
ascendientum arietum in aquarum speculo videbant.
Et ne omnes foetus vari coloris fierent et sic dolus
deprehenderetur, in verno conceptu ponebat virgas,
sed in serotina admissura non ponebat. Sicque
novam naturam stropham commentatus est Jacob,
qua contra naturam arte naturali pugnaret. Ranulphus.

innovatur, B.
etiam om. C.D.

Apparuit etiam virgo Minerva sive Pallas apud lacum Tritonidem,
In the place of this next passage the following occurs
in C.D.: "Hugutio, capitulo Molo.

Talem autem * ferunt feminarum
esse naturam, ut quales formas in
extremo voluptatis reu conspece-
rint dam concepium talem sobo-

* etiam, D.

lem procurent. Etenim anima
in usu venero formas extrinsecas
intus transmitit, earumque satis-
tat typis species rapid in pra-
primam qualitatem. Sic solent in
Hispania objecerre generosos equos
obtutibus equarum concepici-
tum, et etiam pulebras depingere
columbas in locis ubi columbas
conversantur. Hieronymus. Et
Quintilianus matronam accusa-
tam quod Äthiopem peperisset,
ex imagine tempore conceptionis
conspexit hoc contigisse argu-
mentans defendebat, Petrus. Et
in libris Hippocratis reperitur
scriptum quandam fore puniendam
quia pulcherrimum puerum utri-
que parenti dissimilem peperis-
set, nisi monuisset Hippocrates;
quarere si talis forte pietura esset
in cubiculo parentum tempore
conceptionis." See above, p. 198.

† defensavit, D.
‡ Typhos,MSS.
pe citee Athen and bulde Eleusis. Pis ʒere Iacob foure score Trevisa.
ʒere olde and enleuene gat Ioseph on Rachel. Petrus 74.
Whanne þe fourtene ʒere were i-doo in þe whiche Iacob ser-

nude for his wifes, Laban made covenent wip hym þat alle pe splekked lamberne 1 and kedes þat schulden be i-ʒened 2 duryng his covenent schulde be Iacob his ʒ mede, and al þat were of oon colour whyte oper blak, schulde be Laban his owne. Perfore Iacob took grene ʒerdes of populers of almand trees and of platans, 4 and pylde of þe rynde in som place of þe þerdes, and in som place pylde hem nonʒt; and so he made þe þerdes splekked, 5 and leyde hem in þe waterynge place to fore þe schepes cyʒen, whan þey schulde conceyue 6 lambren liche to þe schadewes pat þey seie of rammes in þe merour of þe water in þe conceyuynge. And for þey schulde not al be splekked leste þe gyle were i-knowe, perfore in þe þirste conceyuynge tyme he leyde so ʒerdes, but not in þe latter conceyuynge tyme, and so Iacob fonde a newe manere tornynge of kynde, 7 wip kyndeliche craft to siʒte agenst kynde. B. Loke more of þis mater aboue, libro ejus, capitulo

the cite of Athenes made the cite of Eleusis. Iacob, beenge MS. Harl.
that tyme of xej. yere, gat Ioseph of Rachel. Petrus, Harl. 2261.
746 capitulo. The xiiij. yere ypaste in whom Iacob did
servyce for his wifes, he made a covenent with Laban that he scholde haue alle lambes of diuerse colours that comme of ewes of oon colour. Wherefore Iacob gate roddes of almonde trees, of populer, and of other trees, which takegne barke from þeim putte the roddes in the places of water, afore the siʒte of schepe when þei scholde be blossomede, that þei myʒte haue lambes of diuerse colore, lyke to

1 lambren, a.; lammes, Cx.
2 gyned, a.; ecad, Cx.
3 Iacobys, a.
4 So Cx.; plauntes, MS.
5 speked, Cx.
6 for they shold conceyue, added in Cx.
7 kynde, MS.
Joseph in Aegyptum venditur. De Putiphari eunucho.

Vide residuum de materia ista\(^1\) supra, primo\(^2\) libro, capitulo primo. Reverso Jacob\(^3\) cum uxoribus et liberis,\(^4\) priusquam ad patrem veniret, duodecimo anno ante mortem Isaak, Joseph, sexdecim annorum puer existens, venditus est in Aegyptum; ubi mansit viginti duobus annis, antequam pater suus Jacob ad eum veniret. Joseph itaque\(^5\) sic venditus a fratribus, denno venditur a mercatoribus Ismaelitis\(^6\) in Aegyptum Putiphari eunucho, magistro militiae Pharaonis. Augustinus super Genesim. Iste Putiphar non erat de talibus eunuchis, qui parvuli castrantur; nam\(^7\) uxorem habuit et liberos; cujus etiam filiam Joseph desponsavit;\(^8\) sed Putiphar videns Joseph fore elegantem emit eum, ut eo abuteretur more sodomitico; sed Deus\(^9\) ita infringivit eum, ut deinceps foret impotens\(^10\) ad coitum, ac si eunuchus castratus fuisset. Unde, tanquam ex hoc habitus\(^11\) est honorebilior, factus est pontifex Heliopoleos.\(^12\) Augustinus de Civitate, libro octavodecimo, capitulo quarto. Argivorum\(^13\) tertius rex Apis, filius Foronei,\(^14\) cecipit regnare, et regnavit viginti duobus annis. Moritur Isaak centum octoginta annorum\(^15\) existens;\(^16\) et sepultus est in spelunca duplici in Hebron.\(^17\) Quo in anno Pharaon vidit somnium de septem spicis et septem bobus.

---

\(^1\) ista\] in materia, A.  
\(^2\) quarto, A.; eodem, B.  
\(^3\) Date added from A.D. The dates in E, below are corrected from other MSS.  
\(^4\) in itinere exeunte, ins. C.D. (existent, D.)  
\(^5\) aitur, C.D.  
\(^6\) a mercatoribus Ismaelitis\] om. C.D.  
\(^7\) qua, C.D.  
\(^8\) desponsavit, C.D.  
\(^9\) modo, C.; ut abuteretur co (only) D.  
\(^10\) Deus autem, C.D.  
\(^11\) esset, C.D.  
\(^12\) impotens\] om. B.  
\(^13\) fallum, B.  
\(^14\) factus, B.  
\(^15\) om. B.C.D., and the sentence slightly transposed.  
\(^16\) Eliopoleos, B.  
\(^17\) rex\] om. A.D.E. (D. has secundus.)  
\(^18\) Feronei, A.  
\(^19\) anorum\] so B.; annis, E.; an., A.D.  
\(^20\) cum patre suo Abraham, ins. C. D.  
\(^21\) in Hebron\] om. C.D.
primo. Whanue Iacob was i-come a\^e wip his wyfes and his children, or pey come to his fader, twelve \^ere to fore Izaac his deep, Ioseph sextene \^ere olde was i-solde in to Egipte to ou\^e heet Putyphar, pey was eunuchus, and maister of Pharao his ky\^rites. *Trevisa.* Eunuchus is he peat is i-gilded, and suche were somtyme i-made wardeynes of ladys in Egipt. *Augustinus super Genesis.* Pis Putiphar was not so eunuchus as pey pat were i-gilded in hir childhode, for he hadde a\^e wyf and children, and Ioseph hadde i-wedded his dou\^ster. But pis Putiphar [say pey Ioseph was fayre, and bou\^te him forto mysuse hym, perfere God made pis Putyphar]\^e so colde pe he my\^ste neuer after hauue to doynge flescheliche wip his owne wyf na more pey he were eunuchus\^e i-gelled, and perfere, as he peat was most worshipful, he was i-made bishopp of God Heliopoloes. Apis pe pridde kyng of Argiues was Foroneus his sone, and regned two and twenty \^ere. Izaac an hundred \^ere [oldc] and four skore[10] deyde, and was i-buryed in pe double graue of [11] Ebron. Pat \^ere Pharao sigh[12] pe sweuene of the seuene corn eres, and of pe seuene kyyn.

the coloure of the water whom thei did beholde. Iacob returnede, or that he come to his fader in the xij[13] yere afore the dethe of Ysaac, Ioseph a childe of the age of xvij. yere, was solde in to Egipte, where he tariede xxij yere or that his fader Iacob comme to hym. Ioseph solde of his breder to Israelites merchaundes, was solde ageyne in to Egipte to Putiphar maister of ky\^ites of Pharao. *Augustinus super Genesis.* This Putiphar was not of theyyme whiche were geldede when thei were childere, for he hade a wyfe and childer, whose do\^hter Ioseph did wedde. But this Putiphar seenge the beawte of Ioseph, bou\^te hym, that he my\^ste vse hym after the vse of sodomy. But Godde madde hym so colde of nature that he my\^ste no fulletyyle the luste of the flesche, whiche was made after that the bishopp of Heliopolis. Apis the son of Foroneus, the thrydde kyng of Argiues, began to reigne, contynuenge hit by xxij[14] yere. Ysaac of clxxx. yere in age, diede and [was] beriede in the doubwe denne in Hebron. In whiche yere Pharao hade the dreame of vij. eieres of corne, and of vij. oxen.

---

1 twelf, a. 2 eunuch-\^e, MS. (not a. or Cx.) ; sone after eunuches in MS. (not a. or Cx.) 3 gelded, Cx. 4 So Cx. ; but was, MS. and a. 5 a] om. a., Cx. 6 so fayre, a. (not Cx.) 7 Added from a. and Cx. 8 eunuches, a. 9 Added from a. and Cx. 10 \^ere olde, added in MS. 11 in, Cx. 12 \^ere, a. 13 Oliopolis, Harl. MS.
De reliqua patriarcharum historia. Varia de Aegypto et Graecia.


---

1 Not marked as a new chapter in B.C.D., indeed not even a new paragraph. No title in MSS.
2 So B.; annis, E.
3 capitulo x5,] om. A.C.D.; the whole reference omitted in B. It should be Lib. xviii. c. 5.
4 Apis] om. B.
5 sarcophagum, C.D.
6 dicebatur, C.D.
7 posten, D.
8 commutata, B.
9 bos albus maculis, D.
10 albus] om. B.
11 delicate] om. B.
12 sua] sui corporis, C.D.
13 predicce, C.D.; prernosticare. B.; provocare (sic), A.
Capitulum duodecimum.

This 307 were, pat was pe seconde 3ere of hunger, 2 Iacob, an honord 3ere old and pritty, wente wip his children doun in to Egipte. Augustinus, libro 18o. Pis 3ere Apis pe kyng Argolicus seilcde in to Egipt and deyde, and was i-cleped Serapis. [Varro tellith why he was eleped Serapis,] 3 and scip pat pe chiste pat he was i-putte inne was i-cleped Seron in Grewe, and perchore Apis was i-cleped [Seronapys], 5 and afterward by wip drawynge of lettres, as me vsep, he was i-cleped Serapis. Pat whyte slyelede ox 5 pat men of Egipt hadde, 6 for it was [i-worschhipped onlyve, hit was] 7 i-cleped Apsy; an whan pat ox 5e was deed, pey ordyned hem anoper ox 5at was also whyte slyelede and tenderliche i-norsched and i-worschipped. Hugutio, capitulo Apes. Pat bole heet Apis, pat was i-won ed to come out of pe ryuer Nylus, and warne by his pleynge and startelynge 8 what was to conyuge. Petrus. Som men tellep pat enriche 3ere in Serapis feste come vp a bole out

Capitulum duodecimum.

Iacob, becne of a c. and xxxd yere in age, wente in to Egipte that yere, whiche was the seconde yere of the hunge. Augustinus, libro decimo octavo. Apis, kyng Argolicus, cariede in to Egipte with schippes, diede that yere, otherwise callede Serapis. The poete Varro scheweth a cause and a reason as for that name. For Seraropis in Grewe sowndoth as a beryalle, in whom Apis was putte. And after hit was callede Serapis, ij. letters taken aweye. That ox 5e distincte with white spottes, whom Egipte worschippede, was callede Apis, in that Nius 9 was worschippede; which ox 5e other bulle dedde, an other calfe was inquirede that was like to hit, whiche founde thei norischede hit tenderly. Hugutio, capitulo Apes. That bulle was callede Apis, whiche was wonte to swymme over the floode callede Nilus, and to scheve thryges to comme thro his gesticulation. Petrus. Somme men say that bulle apperecde above the water in the feste of Serapis, whiche

1 Yis, a.
2 Funus, a., Cx.; Phanus, γ.
3 Added from γ., Cx.
4 Soron, γ.
5 Added from a. and Cx.
6 hadde] om. a. β. γ., Cx. For hadde we should perhaps read hadde in worship.
7 Added from a. and Cx.
8 So a. β. γ. and Cx.; stelyng, MS.
9 The Harleian translator has misread his MS.
Serapis festo annuatim\(^1\) emergebat\(^2\) ille de\(^3\) Nilo flu-
mine,\(^4\) habens in humero dextra signum candidum instar lunae corniculatum, ad quem cum \(\text{Ä}gyptii\) statim confluuerunt\(^5\) omni genere musicorum psallentes, taurus ille levabatur in aere tanquam psallens; ad cuius motum seu stationem \(\text{Ä}gyptii\) in terra move-
abant seu stabant, sed eadem die evanescēbat. Igi-
tur \(\text{Ä}gyptii\) taurum pro Ape, vacam pro Iside, ovem pro Hammone, id est Jove, adorabant. Unde et abo-
minabile fuit apud eos hujusmodi\(^6\) animalia\(^7\) occidere aut edere.\(^8\)

Argivorum quartus\(^9\) rex Argus cœpit regnare, et regnavit quadraginta sex annis; sub quo etiam\(^10\) Græ-
cia, allatis aliunde seminibus, segetes habere cœpit.\(^11\) Jacob\(^12\) centum quadraginta septem annorum existens,\(^13\) benedictis filiis suis ac filiis filiorum\(^14\) \(\text{singulis benef-
dictionibus, moritur;\(^15\) servatusque est\(^16\) et conditus triginta diebus. Tandem delatus est\(^17\) ad\(^18\) Hebron in spelunca duplici tumulandus. Petrus, capitolu-
do decimo. Mos erat ethnoricorum incondita servare corpora novem diebus, quibus deplangerent\(^19\) et corpora aqua calida foverent;\(^20\) ut sic sciretur an\(^21\) anima esset egressa vel\(^22\)

---

\(^1\) annuatim\] om. \(\text{B.}\)
\(^2\) taurus, ins. \(\text{C.D.}\)
\(^3\) sub, \(\text{A.}\)
\(^4\) fluine\] om. \(\text{C.D.}\)
\(^5\) confluerent, \(\text{B.D.}\)
\(^6\) So D.; \(\text{hujus, A.E.}\)
\(^7\) aut, ins. \(\text{B.}\)
\(^8\) comedere, \(\text{C.D.}\)
\(^9\) tertius, \(\text{D.}\)
\(^10\) et, \(\text{A.}\)
\(^11\) In the Harleian MS. the years of \(\text{Isaue}\) (not \(\text{Jacob}\)) are computed; thus giving 193, &c. instead of 133, &c.
\(^12\) segetes habuit, \(\text{C.D.}\)
\(^13\) autem, ins. \(\text{C.} (\text{not } \text{D.})\)
\(^14\) postquam mansisset in terra illa septemdecim annis, ins. \(\text{C.D.}\)
\(^15\) filiorum\] Joseph, \(\text{C.D.}\)
\(^16\) gnorum, ins. \(\text{B.}\)
\(^17\) mortuus est, \(\text{B.}\)
\(^18\) est\] om. \(\text{B.D.}\)
\(^19\) defertur, \(\text{C.D.}\)
\(^20\) ad\] in, \(\text{C.D.}; \ ab, \text{B.}\)
\(^21\) quibus deplangerent\] et singulis diebus plangere, \(\text{C.D.}\)
\(^22\) fovere, \(\text{C.D.}\)
\(^23\) utram, \(\text{C.D.}\)
\(^24\) an, \(\text{C.D.}\)
of pe ryuer Nilus, and hadde a whyte mark in pe riȝt schulder i-schape as a newe mone, and whanne pe Egipcians come to hym wip alle manere musyk and merpe, pat bole was i lef vp in to pe ayer as it were wip iolyte, and at pe menyngue and styntynge of pat boole pe Egipcians meu-d and stynte vp on pe erthe, but pat bole vanished out of hir siȝt pe 1 same day. Perfore pe Egipcians worschipped pe 2 bole for pat man Apis, and a kowe in stede of Isis 3 pat woman, and a bole also for Jupiter. Perfore it was a grete abhomynacioun among pe Egipcians to ele reperen 4 or 5 ete reperen flesche. Argus pe fourpe kyg of Argiu-s bygan to regne, and regnede sixe and fourty ȝere. In his [tyne] 6 Grees hadde seed i-brouȝt out of oper londes, and gan to ere and sowe and haue corne i teled pere yyne. Iacob, an hondred ȝere olde and seene and fourty, blessede his children, and ȝaf enerie his blessynge, and deyde. and was anoynt, and i-kept pitty dayes, and at pe laste i-bore in to Ebron, and i-buried pere in pe double graue. Petrus. Hit was pe manere of mysbelered men ferto kepe a dede body nyne dayes wip oute oynge, and make sorwe for hym nyne dayes, and wasche pe body nyne daies, for to wete wheþer pe soule were apassede oper no. Afterward pey

water was called Nilus, hauenge in the ryȝhte schulder a white signe other merke cornerede lyke to the moone; whom men of Egipte attendenge synyngen with alle kyndes of musikes, that bulle was eleuate amoon in to the aier, as makenge a melody; at the movenge or stondeenge of whom men of Egipte were movede other stode; which bulle euenneschede a weye the same day. Therefore men of Egipte worschippede a bulle for Apis, a kowe for Isis, and a schepe for Jupiter; wherefore to see eny of those bestes was an abominable thynge amonge theym, other elles to eite eny of theyme. Argus, the iiij the kygge of Arguyeys, began to regine, whichie reginede xlvi. yeres, in whichie tyme the londe of Grees began to sawe corne. Iacob beengo of a c.xlvij j, yere in age, blessenge his childer with single benedicclones, and the childer of his chider, diede, which kepepe xxxii daies, was brouȝhte at the laste to Hebron, and beriede in a threfolde deme. Petrus, decimo capitulo. The maner and consuetude of Erunikes was to kepe bodies dedde by ix. daies, in whom they myȝhte sorowe theire dethe, and norishe the body with hoote water, that thei myȝhte haue perfecte knowlege wheder thei were

---

1 pat, Cx.
2 pat, a, Cx.
3 Isus, MS.
4 reperen] neet, Cx.
5 oper, a.
6 Added from a. and Cx.

---

kepte pe bodies fourty dayes anoynt. But it was pe manere of Iewes forto kepe dede bodies seuene dayes wip oute oymentis, and afterward pritty dayes anoynt. *Augustinus, libro* 18. Me selp pat Prometheus 2 Rapetus 3 his sone, and Atlas 4 pe astronomer, his brojer, made men; so selp Ouidius in Magno; noytes pat is i-seide, for of men pat were vnkonnynge and boistous as bestes he made konnynge [men] 5 and wise. 6 *Isidorus* 13. Also for me redep pat he made ymages of men geoo and walke in 7 pe grounde by a certeyn craft. Also pe se fonde firste a ryng of iren, and closed thymary a precious stoon, and cleped it a nayle, for as pe nayle is i-closed in pe flesche, so is suche 8 a stoon i-closed in pe metal. *Hugutio, capitilo* Anulus. Anulus is a ryng i-seide of anus an ers, for somtyme peues and mansleers, whan pey were i-take, scholde bere an ape on hire nekke and holde hire nyng to pe apes 9 ers. But pis foule vsage cesed, and peues and mansleers whan pey were i-take schulde bere rynge of iren on hire fyngres. And perfore gentil men, for to haue dyuersite and distintioun from
dedde other nay. After that thei dressede the bodies with spices, and kepede theyrne by xi 10 dayes, other elles thei kepede theyrne after thei were beriede by xi 10 dates. But the consuetude of the Iewes was to kepe the bodies vnberiede by vij. dayes, and kepede theym by xxxii 11 daies after theire bereenge. *Augustinus, libro octavo decimo*. Prometheus, the son of Iapetus, 10 and brother to Atlas 4 the astronomer, after Ouidus in Magno, is seide to haue made men, in that he made discrete men of rude peple. *Isidorus, libro tertio decimo*. And also for cause that he made the ymages of men to walke by craftes. Also he founde firste a ryng of yrne, puttenge a gemme in hit, callenge hit vngulum, for like as the nayle of a fyngre is cloosed with flesche, so he compassed that gemme with metalle. *Hugutio, capitilo* Anulus. Also anulus, whiche is callede a ryngge, toke begynnege of this worde, anus; for some tyme men taken in mansleers other in thefte were wonte to bere an ape in theire nekke, holdenge theire mowthes to the hynder partes of that ape. That vile consuetude y-ceasede, suche men taken in felony were wonte to bere a ryngge of yrne in theire fyngre, vn to the distintioun of whom now-

---

1 enoynted, Cx.
2 So a.; *Prometheus*, Cx. (and so MSS. often); *Ptolomaeus*, MS.
3 So MSS. (including 8. and 7.) and Cx., for *Iapetus*.
4 *Atlas*, MSS. and Harl. MS., and so below.

5 Added from a. and Cx.
6 wise men, MS.
7 ou, Cx.
8 suche is, MS.
9 ape his, a.
10 *Taritas*, Harl. MS.

---

1 A.B.C.D. rightly introduce here the reference to Isidore below. See Lib. xix. c. 32.
2 medicus, B.; medium, E.
3 ab, B.
4 ad cor pretendens, A.
5 So B.; pertingit, D.; praten-ditur, E.
6 uti ultra uno anulo, B.
7 fuit; erat, A. The whole extract considerably varied and transposed in C.D.
8 19°, C.; 9, B.
10 frater; originally filius in C.; but corrected in the margin in another ink.
11 quidam, ins. C.D.
12 unde et mons enormis in Africa
13 hujus, B.
14 cf] quem propter normem altitudinem, C.D.
15 vulgus credit, C.D.
16 in] om. B.D.
17 Tripholomos, B., and versions.
18 nave sua, A.B.
19 draco, A.
20 Extract altered verbally and transposed in C.D.
21 So Higden writes for Demeter.
22 etiam] om. C.D.
23 triticum] om. C.D.
24 numera] B.; numerarent, D.
25 Ranulphus . . . habere] om. C.D.
suche briboures, made hem rynges of gold other of siluer. *Isidorus, libro 19o, in fine.* Gentile men vsede here rynges of gold and of siluer 1 on pe fourpe fynger, pat is y-cleped pe leche by cause of pe more liystyne and fairenesse, for in pat fynger is a veyne pat streechep to pe herte. But Romayus hadde rynges of pe common tresour 2: gentil men hade rynges, and opere hadde solidy pat were hole and sownde. Fremen of blood vsede [rynges of gold; free men that came of bonde men vsed] 3 rynges of siluer, but bonde men vsede rynges of iren. Somtyme it were a greet dallimacion for a man to vse more rynges þan oon. *Augustinus de Civitate.* Pis Prometheus hadde a broþet pat het Atlas, and was an astronomer; perfore mo føynece pat he bare heuene; also a greet hille in Affrique, pat 4 hadde Atlas by pis man Atlas his name; and pe lewed peple weneþ pat pat liyle bereþ vp heuene. *Petrus.* Me seip þat Tritholomus wente pat tyme in his schippe þat was i-peynt wip a dragoun into Grees, and made þere more craft of telenge of feeldes. Also þat tyme Ceres, þe womman þat þe Grees clepeþ Demetra, wip ouste instrumentes þat sche fonde vp of erynge craft, sche fonde vp also mesures of whete; for to forehonde þey delede whete by hepes 5 smal oþer greet. R. After ble men made rynges of golde and of syluýr. *Isidorus, MS. Harl. 2261.* Whom thei putte in the liiij 1 be fynger, which is callede the fynger medicinable, for cause of more dignite, in that a veyne is protendede from that fynger to the herte. Also rynges were þiffen to noublle men in Rome, and schilenges were þiffen to other men. Wherefore free men vsede rynges of golde, libertynes rynges of syluýr, and serauanteþ 6 rynges of yrne. For hit was somme tyme as a thynge of grete infamy to haue werede moo rynges then oon amonge olde men. *Augustinus de civitate Dei, libro 18mo.* Atlas, the astronomer, and broder to Prometheus, was seide to bere heuyn, wherefore there was a grete hille in Affrike callede Atlas after his name, whichile by the estimation of commune peple is supposede to bere heuyn. *Petrus.* Tritholomus, peyntenge a dragon in his schippe, is seide to haue entred in to Greece, and to hane amplifiede the tyllenge of londe; and Ceres, which is callede Demetra of the Grekes, founde diuere measures of whete, for whete was nowembrede afores that tyme by grete heepes. R. And after Isidorus, libro

---

1 of seluer and of gold, a. b. γ., Cx. 
2 tresorye, a. b. γ., Cx. 
3 Added from β. γ., Cx. 
4 þat om. a. b. γ., Cx. 
5 hupes, Cx. 
6 So Harl. MS.
Et ex tunc, secundum Isidorum libro quinto, Graecia exspit segetes habere.  
Joseph centum et decem annorum existens moritur in Aegypto, et conditus aromatibus conservatus est usque ad exitum Hebraeorum de Aegypto per centum quadriginta quatuor annos, quibus Hebraei servierunt Aegytiis. Fratres quoque Joseph, prout singillatim moriebantur, sepeliebantur in Hebron; ossa tamen eorum cum ossibus Joseph postmodum translata sunt in Sichem, quae modo dicitur Neapolis, urbs Samaritanorum. Et sic a descensu Jacob in Aegyptum usque ad exitum Hebraeorum sunt anni ducenti quindecim.

CAP. XLI.

De Moyse.  

Moyse nascitur.  


---

1 hoc, B.  
2 habere] om. E.  
3 existens] om. C.D.  
4 sexaginta, B.  
5 quinque, C.D.  
6 sepulti sunt, B.  
7 postmodum cum, A; cum, om. E.  
8 postmodum] om. A.B.  
9 Sichen, A.  
10 Paragraph slightly transposed in C.D.

11 No title in MS.  
12 So A.B.C.D. (and Vulg. 1 Chron. vi. 2.) Gath, E.  
13 Levy, E.  
14 Jocabet, A.  
15 sexaginta, C.D.  
16 ille] om. B.  
17 Nephres, B.D.  
18 Iste Pharao] Hic rex, C.D.  
19 So MSS.
pat tyme Gree by gau to haue tilpe and corne; so seyp Isidre, libro 5o. Ioseph, an hundred sere olde and ten, dyde in Egipt, and was anonyt wiþ swete oynementis, and i-kepte anon to þe goyuge of þe children of Israel out of Egipte, an hundred sere and fourte and fourty, in þe which tyme þe Hebrewes seruced þe Egiptians; also as Ioseph his breperen deide euereiche after oper, they were i-buried in Hebron. Noþes afterward hire bones were i-bore in to Sychem wiþ Ioseph his bones: þat place hatte now Neapolis, þe citee of Samaritans: and so from þat tyme þat Iacob come into Egipt anon to þat tyme þat þe Hebrewes þe children of Israel went out of Egipt were two hundred and fiftene sere.

Capitulum tertium-decimum.

Amram was Caath is sone, Caath was Leuy is sone. Þis Amram, sixty sere olde, gat Moyses on his wif Iocabeth. Petrus, libro 2o. Pharao, vnder wom Ioseph was, heet Nephes by his owne propre name; þe eiþe Pharao after hym heet Amonophis, in his tyme Moyses was i-bore. Iosephus, libro 2o. Þis Pharao hatede þe children of Israel for quinto, from that tyme the londe of Greece began to haue cornes. Ioseph, beenge of a cx. yere in age, dyde in Egipte, whiche dressede with spices, was kepede there vn to the goenge furthe of men of Ebrewe from Egipte, that was by c. and xliii4 yere, in whom men of Hebrewes seruced men of Egipte. But the breder of Ioseph were beriede in Hebron, but the boones of them were translate with the boones of Ioseph in to Sichem, now callede Neapolis, the cite of Samaritans. And so hit was that cc. yere a passede and xv. from the commenge of Iacob in to Egipte vn to the goenge furthe of men of Hebrewes from hit.

Capitulum tertium-decimum.

Amram, the son of Caat, the son of Leui, beenge of lxxi yere, gate of Iocabeth his wife Moyses. Petrus. The propre name of Pharao, vnder whom Ioseph was, was Nymphers; the viijth Pharao after whom was callede Amonophis, vnder whom Moises was borne. Iosephus, libro secundo. This Pharao did hate moche the peple of Israel, for the vertu of

1 and ] of, Cx. 2 So γ., Cx.; and were, MS. and a. (without sense); also Ioseph hys breperen(sie), as hy dyde, &c. were, B. 3 Petrus] So a., Cx.; Iosephus, MS. 4 Iohannes, Cx.
propter virtutem ingenii, laboris industriam, opum affluentiam, et sobolis elegantiam; unde et callide excogitavit filios\textsuperscript{1} Israel opprimere, ne multiplicatus contra eum\textsuperscript{2} insurgeret. Imposuitque eis angarias operum multimodorum, scilicet lateres\textsuperscript{3} coquendi, fossata circa rivulos Nili faciendi, lутum exportandi, sed paleas tantum ad victum præbens; quibus operibus populus\textsuperscript{4} contractus et fame confectus amplexibus non vacaret, et per consequens proles sic deficeret.\textsuperscript{5}

Insuper et quidam scriba sacrorum præscius futurorum nunciavit Pharaoni unum quemdam de\textsuperscript{6} Hebræis nasciturum, qui principatum Ægypti\textsuperscript{7} humiliaret et genus Israel exaltaret. Qua\textsuperscript{8} de causa jussi sunt infantes necari. Petrus.\textsuperscript{9} Sed his non obstantibus, populo\textsuperscript{10} adhuc\textsuperscript{11} multiplicato,\textsuperscript{12} præcepit\textsuperscript{13} Pharao obstetricibus Ægypti\textsuperscript{14} masculos infantes necare, fœminas\textsuperscript{15} vero reservare; tanquam sexum invalidum ad rebellandum,\textsuperscript{16} delicatum tamen ad libidinem Ægyptiorum. Sed eum

\textsuperscript{1} filios [om. C.D.}
\textsuperscript{2} eum [om. E.}
\textsuperscript{3} lateres, D.}
\textsuperscript{4} populus [om. E.}
\textsuperscript{5} Sentence slightly abbreviated in C.D.}
\textsuperscript{6} de [om. E.}
\textsuperscript{7} Ægypti] ejus, A.C. (not D.)}
\textsuperscript{8} Hæc, C.D.}
\textsuperscript{9} capitulo primo, ins. C.D. In the Lyons edition of 1543 it is c. 3.}
\textsuperscript{10} populo | populoque, A.C.D.}
\textsuperscript{11} adhæc, B.}
\textsuperscript{12} multiplicante, C.D.}
\textsuperscript{13} præcepit | præcepit ater necare, B.}
\textsuperscript{14} Ægypti] om. C.D.}
\textsuperscript{15} fæminasque, B.}
\textsuperscript{16} bellandum, B.}
vertu of witte, for konnyge of travaile, for plente of richesse and for fairnesse of children; perfore hye byponʒt hym felliche and gilefulliche to here a down pe children of Israel, and holde hem lowe, lest pe wolde multepleie to swipʒe and arysye aʒenstant hym; also hye putte yppon hem charges of many manere works forto make brend tyle forto digge diches aboute pe rennygne stremes of pe ryuer of Nilus, and for to bere fen and clay; and ʒaf hem nouʒt to mete but smal chaff, for he wolde so onercome hem wip travaile and wip honger, þat pey schulde haue no wille to ligge by here wyfes; and so it schulde folowe þat children schulde faile. Also oon, þat was a wirtere of holy lettres and wiste what was ʒ to comynge, warnded Pharao þe kynge of Egipte þat oon schulde [be i-bore of þe Hebrewes þat schulde] ʒ bere adown þe principat of Egypt, and are þe kynde of Israel, and make hem ful grete. Perfore it was i-hote þat ʒe knaue children of Israel schulde be i slawe when þei were i-bore. Petrus. But þit for al þis pe peple multeplied wele faste, and Pharao heet þe mydy-wyfes of Egipte þat pey schulde kylle? alle þe knaue children of Hebrewes, and kepe þe mayde children; flor he heeld womane kynde ful feble to be rebel, and noleþes wele likynge to þe lecherye of þe Egiptians. And when Pharao myʒt nouʒt so haue ʒ his wille, he heet prowe þe children þat were the witte of theyme, for the affluence of richesse, for the beaute of theire childer; where fore he thoughte to slee theyme priuely, that theire multiplicacion and frute scholde not be able to resisthe them. Where fore he putte to theyme diversites of labores, to make tyle stones, diches abowe ryuernes, and to make clay, þiffenge to theire fyndenge but chaffe, that peple opressede with labore and hungre scholde refuse multiplicacion, and so theire frute scholde decrease and faile. But a scribe, haunenge prenestication of thynges to commene, schewede to kynde Pharao oon childre to commene of men of Hebrew, that scholde make Egipte meke and taue, and exalte the kynde of Israel. Where fore the infantes of theyme were commaundede to be sleyne. Petrus. This not withsondenge and the peple causenge multiplicacion, kynde Pharao commaundede the mydde wifes of Egipte to slee the male childer and to kepe the childer female, as a kynde not apt to make batelle, and pleasuante to the luste of men of Egipte, commaundenge the childer to be caste

1 riches, a.  
2 fast, Cx.  
3 was to done and] MS. (not a. β. 7, Cx.)  
4 Added from a. and Cx.  
5 þat; So a. and Cx.; þe, MS.  
6 men, Cx.  
7 slee, Cx.  
8 of lechery to, Cx.  
9 haue se] MS. (not a. or Cx.)

Quapropter natus Moyses tribus mensibus absconditus est, sed tandem in fiscella scirpea bituminata conclusus projectus est in carecto fluminis; quem filia Pharaonis Thermut reperiens in filium adoptavit, Moysenque appellavit. Josephus, libro secundo. Quod Greece componitur a moy, quod est aqua, et esis, quod est salvatus; quasi per aquam salvatus.

Hie quoque omnem mammam Ægyptiarum abhorreens a propria matre prudenter lactatus est; at cum trimus effectus esset, speciem ejus et staturam Deus auxit; ut, ubicunque per plateas efferretur, circumstantes relictis occupationibus suis, quantumcunque severi aut turbati essent animi, in eum intenderent.

Die igitur quadam cum Thermuth eum Pharaoni inspiciendum offerret ut et ipse adoptaret in filium, admirans rex pueri venustatem coronam suam in carecto fluminis

---

1 So B.; Apum, A.F.
2 Genesis] om. E.
3 est] added from B.
4 Extract slightly varied in C.D.
5 moys, B.D.
6 Sentence slightly abbreviated in C.D.; quasi . . . salutus, om. B.
7 esset] om. E.
8 in, A.
9 ita, ins. C.D.
10 deferretur, C.D.
11 animi essent, B. Probably we should read animos, placing the comma after essent.
12 Sentence slightly varied in D.
13 So B.; dum, D.E.
14 Thermut, B.
15 So B.; obtulisset, E., after Thermuth.
16 Moysen, ins. C.D.; eum, B.
knaue children in to a ryuere anoon as pey were i-bore. Me
trowep pat for pat synee pe Egipcians fille in to pat errour for
to worschipe pat ox. pat pey clepep Apis, instede of God.
Genesis. Perfore Moyses was i-hydd pre monpes whanne he
was [i-bore, but at pe laste he was] 3 i-doo in a seaf of
risshes i-schape as a litel boot i-glewed wel a boute, and
i-prowe in pe ryuer. Panne Thermit, Pharao his douȝter,
fond hym, and took hym up of pe water, and made hym as it
were hire owne sone, and cleped hym Moyses. Iosephus, libro
2. Moyses is a name i-made of tweie names of Grewe, of
moy, pat is water, and esis, pat is i-saued ; and so Moyses is
i-seide as he pat is i-saued by water. Also pis childe Moyses
hatede alle pe wommen brestes of pe Egipcians, and wolde
socke no woman breste of pe Egipcians, but he was silliche
i-brouȝt to his owne moder, and sche fed hym ; and when he
was pre 6 ÿere olde, God Almyȝty made hym so fayre of
schap and of stature, pat whanne they were i-bore 7 by stretes
al pat were aboute lefte [of] 8 hire work and occupaciouns
for to loke and byholde on pat childe, were pey neure so
sterne ne so angry. Pan in a day Thermuth, Pharao his
douȝter, brouȝt pe childe to Pharao, for he schulde see pe
childe and make hym as hit were his owne sone. Panne the
freschely or newly in to the water after theire byȝthe,
leste that he scholde not preuyle in pat other wyse. For
whiche synee hit is trawede men of Egipte to haue fallen
in to that erroure that thei scholde worschippe Apis for
Godde. Genesis. But Moyses borne was hidde iij.
monethes, at the laste he was putte in a weele made of
rishes dressede with piche, and caste in to the water, whom
Thermuth, pe doȝter of kyng Pharao, fyndenge, desirede
hym in to here childe. Iosephus, libro secundo. That
name Moyses is compund of thys word moy, that is,
water, in Grewe, and esis, that is saluede, callede Moyses,
as saluede by water. Whiche aborrengge the noryschenge
of men of Egipte, was norischede of his awne moder, and when
he was of iij. yere in age, God encreasede see the beaute
and stature of hit, that men movede thro labore, other in
trouble, wolde refuse their occupacioun to beholde pat childe.
In a tyme when Thermuth offrede that childe to kyng
Pharao here fader, vu to beholde hym, and that he scholde

1 the men childe, Cx.
2 an ox, Cx.
3 Added from a. B. γ. and Cx.
(B. γ. Cx. have atte lust.)
4 recches, a.
5 So a. and Cx.; Isidore, MS.
6 so pre, MS. (not a.)
7 So MS. and a.; he was born,
Cx.; he were y bore; B.; a wer y
bore, γ.
8 Added from a. B. γ. and Cx.
9 on, Cx.

1 fabrefacta fuerat, C.D. (with other slight variations).
2 tamen, ins. A.B.
3 Astans quoque, A.D.
4 d'ceus] om. C.D.
5 Deus before nobis, B.
6 puerilem] om. C.D. (with other slight variations).
7 libro . . . xlf. ] om. C.D.
9 ardentibus] om. C.D.
10 eas] om. E.
11 cuncti, ins. C.D.
12 si quas haberent, ins. C.D.
13 circa haec temporæ] om. C.D.
14 Capitulum tertium decimum, A.
15 B. omits reference; Cum adul- tus esset Moyses, ins. C.D.
16 vastantibus, C.D.; vastantibus vel infestantibus, B.
17 acceperant, B.
18 venterentur, B.
19 obtulerent, B.
20 sibi] om. C.D.
21 tamen] om. C.D.
kyng wondred of pe childes fairnesse, and took his owne
crowne in pe whiche the ymage of Iupiter was i-graue, and
sette it on pe childes heed; but pe child anon brewe domp
pe crowne, and traddre peron spitousliche wip his feet. And
phere stood one pat was god Eleopolcos his preoste, and eride
and seide: "pis is pat childe pat oure god heet vs slee, pat we
" drede na more;" and wolde anon hane i-slave pe childe;
but peres was a wise man and seide pat pe child hadde so
i-doo by vnkonnyng of childhode, and so he saued pe child,

Petrus, libro 2d. In euydence of pis excusacioun of pe childe
were brennyng cooles i-brout to fore pe childes Moyses, and
anon he putte hem in his moupe and sealdede pe poynct of his
tonge. Pe Hebrewes trowep pat bycause perof he hadde a
lette of his tonge. Pis child Moyses was so faire, pat men
pat by helde hym took so great hede to pe fairnesse of hym
pat pey putte away alle anger and tene, and toke hede to pe
fairnesse of the child. Me seip pat aboute pis tyme
Hercules overcome Anteus in wrastlyng. 

Josephus, libro 2d. 

Pe Ethippe, blewe men, werred upp on Egipt, and pe dyuy-
nours of Egipt feunge answere pat pey schulde take a leedere
of Hebrewes; and vanepe pey gat Moyses, and made hym hire
desire hym in to his son, Pharao meruellenge the beaute of
pe child, putte the crowne on his heede, in whom an ymage
of Iupiter was graven, whom that child did trede with his
feete. A preste stondenge per by seide, "This ys the childe
" whom Godde willethe to be sleyne of vs, that we scholde
" not be in drede afterwarde." And so he wolde hane
pereschede that child, but that a discrete man was by
and seide contrary, excusenge that thynge by the insolence
of the child. Petrus, libro secundo. For the probacion of
whiche thynge hoote cooles of fire were broughte a fore
the childe, whiche takerenge oon of theym, putte hit to his
mowthe, and brente the extremite of his tonge. From
whiche tyme men of Hebrew suppose Moyses to have hade
an impedimmente in his tonge. Hercules is seide to haue
geneth victories at Athenes abowe these tymes. 

Josephus, libro secundo. Men of Ethioppe guerenge agyen men of
Egipte, their wiches zafe answere that thei scholde take
a man of Hebrew in to their gounoure, whiche hunege
grawnte made Moises their gounoure. Whiche beenge

1) had wonder, Cx.
2) dom, MS. (not a.)
3) no, a, Cx.
4) and Cx. add afterward.
5) hym] so a. and Cx.; the child, MS.
6) away] of, a. B. y., Cx.
7) tene, B.
8) Text as in a. and Cx.; MS. has several words repeated.
9) Anteus, MSS.
bellicis rebus peritus, relictus itinere per aquam Nili, circumduxit exercitum per loca serpentibus plena; quibus tamen de nocte objectit ibices, id est, ciconias Ægyptias, quae naturaliter infeste sunt serpentibus, sed mites sunt hominibus. Et sic improvisis conclusit Æthiopes in Saba civitate regia, quam postmodum Cambyses rex ex nomine sororis Meroen nuncupavit. Est autem civitas illa ratione murorum, fossarum, et circumfluentium aquarum fortissima; poniturque in confinio Ægyptiorum et Æthiopum super Nilum fluviun. Tharbis vero filia regis Æthiopum, respiciens in elegantiam Moysi, tradidit ei ex condicto urbem, ita ut eam duceret in uxorem. 

Petrus, libro secundo, capitulo quinto. Haece est illa Æthiopissa, pro qua jurgati sunt Maria et Aaron contra Moysen in deserto. Cum autem Moyses redire voluisset ad Ægyptum, non adquievit uxor. Proinde Moyses, tanquam vir astrorum peritus, duos annulos fecit; unum memorii, quem secum retinuit; alterum oblivionis, quem uxori tradidit, et sic

---

1 Sentence slightly abbreviated in D.
2 tuae, ins. A.B.D.
3 flumen, B.
4 Sentence slightly varied in C.D.
5 postmodum, ins. C.D.
6 vero, C.D.
7 Moyses after voluisset, B.
8 voluit, A.D.
9 quievit, B.
10 in Ægyptum, ins. C.D. (omitting ad Ægyptum above).
ledere and cheueteyn. Moyses was konnynge in dedes of batayle, and forsook pe wey by pe water Nilus, and ladde his oost by a wildernesse pat was ful of serpentes; nopeles he putte eiconias 2 by nyȝe aʒenst pe serpentes; eiconie 3 beep briddes 4 of the lond of Egipt, pat hettep and destroyep serpentes, pat 5 beep mylde i-nowe to mankynde; and so com vnuwar vppon pe Ethiopiaes, and closed hem in a rial citee Saba. Afterward Cambyses 6 pe kynge eloped pat citee Meroen after his owne [suster] 7 name. Pat citee is ful strong by cause of walles of ditches and wateres pat rennep aboute pat citee, pat 8 is i-sette bytwene pe Ethiopiaes and pe Egipciuns vppon pe ryuer Nilus. Tarbis, 9 pe kynges douʒter of Ethiopes, sigh pe fairnesse of Moyses, and bytook hym 10 pe citee vppon a conenant pat he schulde wedde hir to wif. Petrus, libro 2o. Pīs is pe 11 womman of Ethiopia for pe whiche Mary and Aaron stryue 12 with Moyses in desert. Whan Moyses wolde torne aʒen in to Egipte, his wif wolde not assente; perfere Moyses, as a man pat was konnynge in pe cours of 13 worshippe of pe sterres and planetes, made tweie rynges, oon of mynde and anoper of forȝetynghes ; and kepe pe ryngge of mynde wip hym self, and took his wif pe ryngg of forȝet-

wise in batelle, lefte the journey by water, and broughte his hoste thro places fulle of serpentes, to whom he putte briddes callede snypes, odious to serpentes and amiable to men. And so he concluded men of Ethippe, as without deliberacion, in the regalle citee of Saba, whom kyngge Cambyses 6 callede Meroen afterwarde, after the name of his sustyr. That is a stronge citee, by reason of the ditches of waters rennenge abowte hit, and of stronge walles, whiche is sette in the costes of Egipte, on that floode callede Nilus. Tharbis, the doghter to the kyngge of Ethiopes, seenge the beawte of Moyses, toke to hym that citee, that he scholde wedde here to his wife. Petrus, libro secundo. That is the woman of Ethippe for whom Maria and Aaron were at debate, and stryvede ageyne Moises in deserte. And when Moyses wolde have goen in to Egipte, his wif wolde not condescende; wherefore Moises cause de ij. rynges to be made, reteynenge with hym a ryngge of memory, [and] ʒafe to his

---

1 capitayne, Cx.
2 ciconias, MS.
3 So a; eicones, MS.
4 So a. b. γ.; byrylle, MS.
5 þat, and, Cx.
6 Cambises, MS. and Harl. MS.
7 Added from a., &c.
8 and, a., Cx.
9 Tharbis, Cx.
10 delyuered hym, Cx.
11 þat, Cx.
12 So a. b. γ.; stryweþ, MS.; stroof, Cx.
13 and, Cx.
Moyses occidit Aegyptium.

reddit.\(^1\) Genesis. Quo in tempore dum Moyses visitaret fratres suos in terra Gessen, occidit virum Aegyptium, qui peresserat virum Hebræum,\(^2\) abscondens eum\(^3\) sub sabulo.\(^4\) Quod cum\(^5\) die sequenti\(^6\) sibi improperaretur a viro Hebræo,\(^7\) tremens\(^8\) fugit in terram Madian, ubi desponsavit Sephoram,\(^9\) filiam sacerdotis; ex qua genuit Gersan et Eliezer.\(^10\) Petrus, libro secundo. capitulo sexto.\(^11\) Sacerdos iste primas fuit in terra Madian circa\(^12\) Mare Rubrum, cujus nomen præcipium fuit\(^13\) Raguel, agnomen\(^14\) Jethro,\(^15\) cognomen Cineus; habuitque\(^16\) septem filias pastrices; nam\(^17\) officium alendorum gregum tune erat mulieribus commendatum,\(^18\) maxime in regione Trogloditarum.\(^19\)

Cecrops. Regnum Atheniensium incepit sub Cecrope, ex cujus\(^20\) Anno Moysi 39. uxore Latona et\(^20\) Jove ferunt fabulæ Apollinem deum sapientie\(^21\) progenitum fuisse.

Deucalion. Deucalion cepit regnare in Thessalia,\(^22\) cujus anno\(^22\) Anno Morsì 60. duodecimo\(^23\) factum est tertium\(^24\) diluvium particulare\(^25\) in Thessalia, et incendium\(^26\) sub Phaethonte.\(^27\) Augus-

---

\(^1\) quiærit, B.  
\(^2\) occasum, ins. B.  
\(^3\) cum] om. B.  
\(^4\) abscondens . . . sabulo] om. C.D.  
\(^5\) dum, A.E.  
\(^6\) dum, ins. B. (omitting cum).  
\(^7\) a viro Hebræo] om. C.D.  
\(^8\) tīnen, A.B.  
\(^9\) Zéphorag, A.  
\(^10\) Eliezar, A.; Eliezar, D.  
\(^11\) capitulo sexto] om. C.  
\(^12\) contra, C. (not D.)  
\(^13\) deictus nomine proprio, C.D.  
\(^14\) agnominæ, C.D.  
\(^15\) So A.; Getro, E.  
\(^16\) habens, C.D.  
\(^17\) eius, C.D.  
\(^18\) commendatum] om. C.D.  
\(^19\) Trogloditarum, MSS.  
\(^20\) ex, C. (not D.)  
\(^21\) deum sapientie] om. C.D.  
\(^22\) in, ins. C.D.  
\(^23\) Moysi 42°, ins. C.D.  
\(^24\) tertium] om. C.D.  
\(^25\) particulare] om. C.D.  
\(^26\) incendium, D.  
\(^27\) This and other classical proper names in this chapter are variously corrupted in MSS.
nesse; and so sche tornede home azen. *Genesis.* Pat

tyme, whanne Moyses visited his brepere in pe lond of
Iessen, he slowz a man of pe Egipcians, and hyde hym in
pe sonde; for he hadde i-smyte a man of pe Hebrewes. A
morwe a man of Hebrewe putte pat azen Moyses herd, and
Moyses dradde sore, and liize into pe lond of Madian, and
wedded Zephora a preostes douzter of pat lond, and got on
hire Gersan and Eliezer. *Petrus, libro 2*o. Dis preost was
primat in pat lond of Madyan aboute pe Rede See; his propre
name [was] Raguel; and hadde tweie surnames, Jethro and
Cineus; and hadde seuen douzters pat were herdes and kepeth
bestes. For pe office of kepynge of bestes was pat tyme
i-ordeneyd to wommen, and specialliche in pe lond of Trog-
[l]odites.

The kyngdome of Athenes bygan under Cecrops. Fables
tellep pat on his wife Latona Apolynd lord of witt of and
wisdom was 1-gete of Jupiter. Deucalion bygan to regine in
Thessalia; in his twelpe zere was pe pridle particular flood in Thessalia, and pe brynyngynge vnder Feton. *Augustin-

wife that other ryunge of oblivion and forgetenge. *Genesis.* MS. Harl.

In whiche tyme, when Moises visitte his brether in the
lond of Gessen, he did sle a man of Egipte, whiche hade
smyten a man of Hebrewe, hidenge hym vnder sonde. Whiche
dredeen in the day folowenge, when that thynge was seide
to hym by a man of Egipte, fledde in to the londe of Madian,
where he did wedde Zephora, of whom he gate Gersan and
Eliezer. *Petrus, libro secundo.* That priste, fader to
Zephora, was the moste nowble man in the londe of Madian,
abowte the Redde See; the propur name of whom was Raguel,
by an other name Ietro, haueenge vij. dozters, and kepers of
bestes. For that office of kepynge and norischeunge bestes
was commendele to women, and specially in the region of
Trog[l]odites. The realme of men of Athenes began vnder
Cecrops, of Latona the wife of whom, and of Jupiter, fables
cherse Apollo to haue be geten. Deucalion began to regine
in Thessalia; in the xij he yere of the regine of whom the
thryde particular floode was made in Thessalia, and a
brennenge under Pheton. *Augustinus, libro decimo octavo.*

---

1 obbluyon, Cx. (who has however
forgetynyses above).
2 he, a. 8. Cx.; a, p.
3 On the morwe, Cx.
4 useyd for deede in to, Cx.
5 So a. and Cx.; Terson, MS.
6 pe, a., Cx.
7 Added from a. and Cx.
8 for, Cx.
9 Cecrops, MS. and Harl. MS.,
and so below.
10 Latona, MS.
11 by, Cx.
12 in Thessalia] om. Cx.
13 Pheton, Cx.; but Feton below.
tinus, libro octavodecimo.\textsuperscript{1} Istud diluvium magnam partem Græciae absorpsit; unde\textsuperscript{2} qui ad regem Thessaliae Deucalionem, tunc temporis Parnassum montem occupantem, ratibus advecti confugerant, salvabantur. \textit{Ranulphus}.\textsuperscript{3} Ex isto eventu finixerunt poetae quod Deucalion et Pyrrha uxor sua jactis lapidibus homines renovaverint.\textsuperscript{4} \textit{Isidorus}, libro tertio decimo. \textit{Cum flumina supra modum inundant,\textsuperscript{6} non solum praesentia damna inferre, sed\textsuperscript{7} aliqua futura significare consueverunt}. \textit{Orosius}, libro primo. \textit{Ex isto eventu finxerunt poetæ quod Deucalion et Pyrrha uxor sua jactis lapidibus homines renovaverint.\textsuperscript{8}}

\textit{Historia Moysi concluditur. Varia de Aegypto et Græcia.}\textsuperscript{11} Moyses octoginta annorum existens,\textsuperscript{12} una cum Aaron fratre suo octoginta trium annorum tune existente, Pharaonem alloquitur, ut populum Dei dimittat; quo indurato percussa est Aegyptus decem plagis. \textit{Augus-}

\textit{tinus, libro xviiio.} Ea tempestate quidam Aegyptiorum,

\textsuperscript{1} B. omits reference. \textsuperscript{2} et, C.D. \textsuperscript{3} \textit{Ranulphus . . . . renovaverint} om. C.D. \textsuperscript{4} renovaverunt, A. \textsuperscript{5} capitulo ultimo, ins. A.B. (correctly). \textsuperscript{6} habundant, D., which omits supra modum. \textsuperscript{7} sed etiam, D. \textsuperscript{8} Instead of this next passage C.D. have, \textit{Corinthus condita est, quae prius Epira dicitur}. \textsuperscript{9} et] om. B. \textsuperscript{10} Ciciam, B. \textsuperscript{11} No title in MSS. \textsuperscript{12} post visionem rubi flammei in monte Oreb, ins. C.D. \textsuperscript{13} tune] om. E.
This flood destroyeth a grete part of Greece, in whiche tyme men fleenge to Deucalion in schippes, to that grete mownte callede Parnasse, occypyenge hit were saluede. R. Thro whiche chaunse poetes feyne that Deucalion and Pyrrha his wife renewede men of stones caste vp with the water. Isidorus, libro tertio, capitulo sexto. Where and when floodes be more habundante then thei were wonte, thei be wonte to signifi ne oft oonly hurtes presente but also to come. Orosius, libro primo. In whiche tyme the son beeenge of fereunte heete, brente not oonly Ethioppe, but also Scyttica: for whiche thynges the fable of Feton is feynede of the Gentiles.

Capitulum quartumdecimum.

Moyses beeenge of lxxx. yere in age, and Aaron his brother of lxxxij. yere in age, spake to Pharao that he scholde suffre the peple of God to goe and to do sacrifice; whose herte was made harde, wherefore Egypte was smythen 11 Pyrrha, MSS. Similar slight errors in this chapter have been tacitly corrected.

1 partye, Cx.
2 fiedde into, Cx.
3 Pirra, MSS. Similar slight errors in this chapter have been tacitly corrected.
4 waxen, Cx.
5 mesure, Cx.
6 bode and bitoken, Cx.
7 Scetia, MSS.

8 This form, though unclassical, has been allowed to stand, as being in a manner anglicised.
9 So a. B., Cx.; hett, MS.
10 goo to] om. Cx., who has other slight variations.
11 matys, a.
12 Parnassus, Harl. MS.
timentes Aegyptum perituram, egressi sunt, ut Cecrops, qui 1 navigans Graeciam urbem Athenae condidit, quae postmodum dicta est Athenae. Ranulphus. De qua vide 2 supra libro primo, 3 capitulo Gracia, 4 scilicet Helladia. 5 Veruntamen 6 Corinthus, quae prius Ephyra 7 vocabatur, quinque in eis ante Athenae condita est. Petrus, libro secundo, capitulo vicesimo 8 tertio. 9 Multae aliae fuerunt Aegypti plagae praeter illas decem famosas plagas; 10 unde et quidam dies in calendario Aegyptiaco voeantur, quia in illis dies 11 passa est 12 Aegyptus aliquas plagas. Ex quibus duos solummodo dies 13 singulis mensibus annotamus ad memoriam; quamvis 14 fortassis plures fuerint. 15 Nee est credendum quod Aegyptii, quamvis 16 astrorum periti, deprehenderent hos dies 17 nefastos in inchoatione operis vel 18 iterineris seu munitionis. 19 Genesis. 20 Igitur 21 Moyses, cum 22 octoginta esset annorum, quo die 24 Israel in Aegyptum 25 ingressus est, eo die eduxit eum de "Egypto, luna existente quintadecima, post quadringentes triginta annos egressionis Abraham de Carra 27 Mesopotamiae in

---

1 qui vide om. B.
2 video urbe quere, C.D.
3 libro primo de provinciis, C.D.
4 Gracia Helladia vicesimo secundo, B. See vol. i. p. 190, where for Athen we have Acten, which is probably right. The similarity of of c and t in MSS. is a source of great confusion.
5 Helladia, MSS. (c s usually stands for scilicet, but sic was better. The standard MS. of Trevisa has scilicet at length.)
6 C.D. transpose this passage to the end of previous chapter.
7 Epita, MSS.
8 decimo, B.
9 libro tertio om. C.D.
10 et ideo forte taceant, ins. C.D.
11 dies] om. C.D. (with other slight variations.)
was i-smyte wip ten grete wreches.\footnote{wreches and pyngysshmentes, Cx.} \textit{Augustinus, libro 18o}. \textit{Trevisa.}

\footnote{fley, a.: sentence varied in Cx.} Pat tyme pat God took wreche in Egipte, som of pe Egipcians dradde leste Egipte schulde be lost for cuere more, and fleye\footnote{Athenes, Cx.} into oper loundes. \textit{And so oon Ceerops scillede in to Greece, and bulde pe citee Athen, pat heet afterward Athene.\footnote{So MS. for Helladia, the barbarous form in the Latin text.} Loke more of Athen in pe firste book, capitulo Greece, scilicet Alladia.\footnote{Sentence varied in Cx.} Nopeles Corinthius pe firste heet Epira, and was i-bulde fyue \textit{ere} to fore Athen.\footnote{Added from a. a. and Cx.}

\footnote{Added from a. A. and Cx.}\footnote{in Egipt, Cx., and so below.}\footnote{to be demed ne troved, Cx.}\footnote{Added from a. and Cx.}\footnote{Carra, MSS.}\footnote{Mesopotanea, MSS. and Cx.}

\footnote{Added from a. and Cx.}\footnote{Carra, MSS.}\footnote{Mesopotanea, MSS. and Cx.}

\footnote{Added from a. and Cx.}\footnote{Carra, MSS.}\footnote{Mesopotanea, MSS. and Cx.}

\footnote{Added from a. and Cx.}\footnote{Carra, MSS.}\footnote{Mesopotanea, MSS. and Cx.}

\footnote{Added from a. and Cx.}\footnote{Carra, MSS.}\footnote{Mesopotanea, MSS. and Cx.}

\footnote{Added from a. and Cx.}\footnote{Carra, MSS.}\footnote{Mesopotanea, MSS. and Cx.}

\footnote{Added from a. and Cx.}\footnote{Carra, MSS.}\footnote{Mesopotanea, MSS. and Cx.}

\footnote{Added from a. and Cx.}\footnote{Carra, MSS.}\footnote{Mesopotanea, MSS. and Cx.}

\footnote{Added from a. and Cx.}\footnote{Carra, MSS.}\footnote{Mesopotanea, MSS. and Cx.}

\footnote{Added from a. and Cx.}\footnote{Carra, MSS.}\footnote{Mesopotanea, MSS. and Cx.}

\footnote{Added from a. and Cx.}\footnote{Carra, MSS.}\footnote{Mesopotanea, MSS. and Cx.}

\footnote{Added from a. and Cx.}\footnote{Carra, MSS.}\footnote{Mesopotanea, MSS. and Cx.}

\footnote{Added from a. and Cx.}\footnote{Carra, MSS.}\footnote{Mesopotanea, MSS. and Cx.}

\footnote{Added from a. and Cx.}\footnote{Carra, MSS.}\footnote{Mesopotanea, MSS. and Cx.}

\footnote{Added from a. and Cx.}\footnote{Carra, MSS.}\footnote{Mesopotanea, MSS. and Cx.}

\footnote{Added from a. and Cx.}\footnote{Carra, MSS.}\footnote{Mesopotanea, MSS. and Cx.}

\footnote{Added from a. and Cx.}\footnote{Carra, MSS.}\footnote{Mesopotanea, MSS. and Cx.}

\footnote{Added from a. and Cx.}\footnote{Carra, MSS.}\footnote{Mesopotanea, MSS. and Cx.}

\footnote{Added from a. and Cx.}\footnote{Carra, MSS.}\footnote{Mesopotanea, MSS. and Cx.}

\footnote{Added from a. and Cx.}\footnote{Carra, MSS.}\footnote{Mesopotanea, MSS. and Cx.}

\footnote{Added from a. and Cx.}\footnote{Carra, MSS.}\footnote{Mesopotanea, MSS. and Cx.}

\footnote{Added from a. and Cx.}\footnote{Carra, MSS.}\footnote{Mesopotanea, MSS. and Cx.}

\footnote{Added from a. and Cx.}\footnote{Carra, MSS.}\footnote{Mesopotanea, MSS. and Cx.}

\footnote{Added from a. and Cx.}\footnote{Carra, MSS.}\footnote{Mesopotanea, MSS. and Cx.}

\footnote{Added from a. and Cx.}\footnote{Carra, MSS.}\footnote{Mesopotanea, MSS. and Cx.}

\footnote{Added from a. and Cx.}\footnote{Carra, MSS.}\footnote{Mesopotanea, MSS. and Cx.}

\footnote{Added from a. and Cx.}\footnote{Carra, MSS.}\footnote{Mesopotanea, MSS. and Cx.}

\footnote{Added from a. and Cx.}\footnote{Carra, MSS.}\footnote{Mesopotanea, MSS. and Cx.}

\footnote{Added from a. and Cx.}\footnote{Carra, MSS.}\footnote{Mesopotanea, MSS. and Cx.}

\footnote{Added from a. and Cx.}\footnote{Carra, MSS.}\footnote{Mesopotanea, MSS. and Cx.}

\footnote{Added from a. and Cx.}\footnote{Carra, MSS.}\footnote{Mesopotanea, MSS. and Cx.}

\footnote{Added from a. and Cx.}\footnote{Carra, MSS.}\footnote{Mesopotanea, MSS. and Cx.}

\footnote{Added from a. and Cx.}\footnote{Carra, MSS.}\footnote{Mesopotanea, MSS. and Cx.}

\footnote{Added from a. and Cx.}\footnote{Carra, MSS.}\footnote{Mesopotanea, MSS. and Cx.}

\footnote{Added from a. and Cx.}\footnote{Carra, MSS.}\footnote{Mesopotanea, MSS. and Cx.}

\footnote{Added from a. and Cx.}\footnote{Carra, MSS.}\footnote{Mesopotanea, MSS. and Cx.}

\footnote{Added from a. and Cx.}\footnote{Carra, MSS.}\footnote{Mesopotanea, MSS. and Cx.}

\footnote{Added from a. and Cx.}\footnote{Carra, MSS.}\footnote{Mesopotanea, MSS. and Cx.}

\footnote{Added from a. and Cx.}\footnote{Carra, MSS.}\footnote{Mesopotanea, MSS. and Cx.}

\footnote{Added from a. and Cx.}\footnote{Carra, MSS.}\footnote{Mesopotanea, MSS. and Cx.}

\footnote{Added from a. and Cx.}\footnote{Carra, MSS.}\footnote{Mesopotanea, MSS. and Cx.}
terræ promissionis. Egressi autem de Ægypto\(^1\) quasi dc. milia\(^2\) viri portaverunt se¿um ossa Joseph et ossa\(^3\) undecim fratrum ejus, qui vocantur patriarchæ. Et considerunt ea in Sichem,\(^4\) prout dicit Hieronymus. Tulerunt etiam secum\(^5\) farinam conspersam, qua usi sunt triginta diebus.\(^6\) Columna\(^7\) nubis precessit cos de die, et columna, ignis de nocte. Ad intvotum quoque Hebræorum divisum est Mare Rubrum, quod quidem submersit Ægyptios sequentes.\(^8\) Josephus, libro septimo.\(^9\)

Hujus maris divisio non est\(^10\) discrenda, cum mare Pamphylicum legatur divisum fuisset coram Alexander Macedone et etiam coram\(^11\) ejus exercitu in persequendo\(^12\) Darium. Petrus, libro secundo,\(^13\) capitulo tricesimo. Aqua maris hujus non est rubea, sed ex terra, rubra circumjacente gurges ipse et quod ex eo sumitur inficitur. Ob hoc\(^15\) gemmæ ibidem sunt rubrae,\(^16\) et minium acu¿issimum inde\(^17\) sumitur. Dividiturque\(^18\) in duos sinus, Persicum et Arabicum. Josephus, libro tertio. Post triginta dies e¿ressionis deficientie annona, dedit eis Dominus coturnices, manna, et aquam de petra

---

\(1\) autem de Ægypto\] sunt, C.D.
\(2\) milia\] om. A.E. and versions.
Added from C.D. and Cx. See Ex. xii. 37. The Latinity is awkward, but is given as in D.
\(3\) ossa . . . se¿um\] om. C.D.
\(4\) Sichem, A.
\(5\) secum\] om. E.
\(6\) diebus\] om. B.
\(7\) vero, ins. C.D.
\(8\) inseguntæ, A.B.; prosequentes, C.D. (placing submersit last).
\(9\) libro septimo\] om. A.B.C.D. The reference is to Ant. Jud. ii. 16.
\(10\) est\] om. E.
\(11\) etiam coram\] om. B.; etiam, om. C.D.
\(12\) in persequendo\] prosequente, C.; persequente, D.
\(13\) libro secundo\] om. C.D.
\(14\) de, B.
\(15\) E. places the point after hoc.
\(16\) rubiae, B.
\(17\) inde\] om. E.
\(18\) Dividitur autem, C.D.
byheste. Whanne Israel wente out of Egipt, aboute sixe \(^1\) hou-
dred \(^2\) men bare \(^3\) wiþ hem Joseph his bones and his
enleuene breþerem bones, that beeþ i-cleped pateriarkes, and
buried hem in Sychem, so seip Ierom. Israel toke wiþ hem
mele and floure i-sponge wiþ oyle, and vsed þat þrty dayes.
A pyles of a cloude wente to foare Israel, and ladde hem by day;
and a pyle of fuyre by nyþte. Whanne Israel wente out of
Egipt, þe Reede See openede and lete hem passe, and drenche 
alle þe Egipcians þat took þe same weye in þe openyngue of
þis \(^4\) see forto pursewe. Josephus. þe openyngue of þis see
schal not ben vntrowed, for me redeth þat þe see Pamphylicum
openede to fore kyng Alexander Macedo and also to þore his
oost when he pursewed Darius, Petrus, libro \(^2\). þe water
of þis see is nouþt rede of kynde, but is i-dyed \(^5\) of reed olyues
and erthe þat lieþ þere aboute. Þerfore also þere beeþ i-founde
reed precious stooones, and þere is i-founde scharpe fermyloun.\(^7\)
þis see is i-deled atweyne; þat oon is cleped þe see Persicus
and [pat oper] \(^8\) þe see Arabycus. Isidorus, libro \(^2\).\(^9\) þrty
dayes after þat þat Israel wente out of Egipt, hem failede corn; \(^6\)
and oure Lorde þaf hem corlewes and þi manna and water of

me goeunge furthe from Egip te bare the boones of Joseph
with theyme, and also the boones of his xj. brother, whiche
ar callede pateriarkes, and beraide theyme in Sichem, as
Seynte Ierom seythe. They toke floure with theyme, whiche
thei did vse; and a pylloure of a clowde wente to a fore
thyme xxx \(^10\) daies in the day, and a pillore of fire in the
nyþte. And the Redde See was diuidede at the entrenge
of men of Hebrew, and drownede the men of Egipte
folowenge theyme. Josephus. The diuision of that see is
not be þiffen to diffidence, sythe hit is redde the see Pam-
philyke to hane bene diuidede afore grete Alexander the
Conqueroure, and afore his hoste, in the persecucion of
Darius. Petrus, libro secundo. The water of that see is
not rede, but that water is infecte of the redde grownde
beeng abowte hit, where gemmes be founde of redde coloure;
whiche water is diuidede in to partes, as in to Persia and
in to Arabia. Josephus, libro tertio. The corne of the
childer of Israel failenge after the xxx \(^11\) day of the goeunge
furthe of theyme from Egip te, God seode to them euerlyne
bryddes, angelles foode, and water from the ston of Oreb.

---

1. An sixe, a. β.
2. Added from Cx.
3. hy (i.e. they) bar, γ, which is better.
4. drenched, α, Cx.
5. the, α, Cx.
6. dyed, α.
7. vermlyoun, α.
8. Added from Cx.; but absent from MS., a. β, γ.
10. They flagged corn, Cx.
11. and om. α.
Oreb. Adhuc autem sic¹ rigatur locus ille imbribus, sicut tunc per Moysen Deus ministravit.² Post tres menses egressionis eorum³ ascendit Moyses in montem,⁴ ubi jejunando quadragascar diebus et quadragascar noctibus legem accepit,⁵ et tabernaculum secundum quod sibi ostensum fuerat⁶ in monte⁷ septem mensibus construxit. Et sic⁸ secundo anno egressionis, prima die mensis Aprilis, erectum est tabernaculum. Ranulphus.⁹

Ab hoc¹⁰ loco usuque ad ædificationem templi¹¹ numerantur anni quadringenti octoginta. Sub hoc etiam tempore secundum quosdam¹² Io profecta est ab Argivis¹³ usque¹⁴ Ægyptum, ubi et¹⁵ Isis appellata est; quae et nupsit Telegono¹⁶ et Epaphum genuit.¹⁷ Petrus, libro quarto, capitulo sextodecimo. Post secundum annum egressionis missis duodecim exploratoribus ad terram promissionis et reversis ob murmure populi et desperationem, prohibiti sunt filii Israel ulterius procedere. Unde et¹⁸ reversi ad solitudinem, per quadragascar annos¹⁹ afflictis; ex quibus nullus ingressus est²⁰ terram promissionis, exceptis Caleph et Josue. Hoc²¹

---

¹ sic] om. C. (not D.); si, A.
² Slightly transposed in C.D.
³ corum] om. C.D.
⁴ Synay, ins. C.D.
⁵ accepit] So A.B.D.; suscepit, E.
⁶ fuerat] om. B.
⁷ secundum ... monte] om. C.D.
⁸ Et sic] om. C.D.
⁹ Dionysius, C.D.
¹⁰ isto, B.
¹¹ templi] om. B.
¹² Argivorum, ins. C.D.
¹³ Arivis, B.
¹⁴ ab ... usque] ad, C.D.
¹⁵ ibi quoque, B.
¹⁶ Thelegoni, MSS.
¹⁷ Slightly abbreviated in C.D.
¹⁸ et] om. C.D.
¹⁹ jugiter, ins. C.D.
²⁰ ad, ins. B.
pe stone in Oreb. 3it pat place is i-watered wip reyn, as God 3af water pat tyme by Moyses hond. [Pre monthes] after pat 2 Israel went out of Egipt, Moyses wente vp in to the hille, and fasted fourty dayes and fourty ny3tes, and fenge *pe lawe* ; and seuen monjes he made *pe tabernacle* [by enexample *pat* was i-schewed hym on *pe* hille; and *so* *pe* tabernacle] 3 was arered *pe* firste day of Auerel in *pe* secounde *3ere* of *here* out goynge of Egipt. From *pis* tyme to *pe* buldyng of the temple in Jerusalem is accounted foure hundred *3ere* and foure skore. Also *pis* tyme, as some men tellep, Io that womman wente from *pe* Arguines in to Egipt, and *tere* sech was i-cleped Isis, 4 and was i-wedded to Telegon, 5 and hadde a childe *pat* heet Epaphus. Petrus, libro 4°, [capitulo 16°.] 6 After *pe* secounde *3ere* of *pe* out goynge of Egipt sevle spyes were i-sente to the londe of *byheste*, and come azen; and for grucchyng of *pe* peple and despeyre and wanhope *pe* children of Israel were forbode to goo forjere. Deretore *pey* torndede azen in to wildernesse, and were *pe* i-punished fourty *3ere*; and noon of *hem* entrede into *pe* lond of *byheste* outake Caleph and Issue.

Which place is habundaunte with water vn to this tyme, as God ministred hit in that tyme by Moyses. Whiche Moyses ascendede in to the mounte of *Syyn*, after iij. monethes of the egression of the peple of Israel from Egipte, fastenge by xl1 dais afore and xl1 ny3thes, toke a lawe of God, settenge his tabernacle *tere* by vij. monetes, as he was commandede to do; and so the tabernacle was erecte in the secunde yere of the goenge furthe of the peple of Israel from Egipte, in the firste day of Aprile. From whiche tyme ece.lxxx. yere be annumerate other nowmbrede vn to the edificacion of the temple. In whiche tyme, after somme men, Io goenge furthe from the Arguines vn to Egipte, callede there Islam, and mariede to Theologenes, 7 gate Epaphus. Petrus, libro quarto, capitulo decimo sexto. After the secunde yere of *pe* egression of the peple of Israel from Egipte, xij. meassyngers sende to the londe of promission, and returnede ageyne; for *pe* murmure and desperation off the peple, the childer of Israel hade in commandemente that thei scholde returne, whiche returnenge were afflicte in deserte by xl1 yere, of whom eny entrede not in to the londe of promission, Issue and Caleph ex-

---

1 Added from a, β, γ, and Cx.
2 Pat tyme, MS. (only).
3 Added from a and Cx.
4 So a; Issus, MS.
5 Telegon, MS.
6 Added from a and Cx.
7 Here and below the proper names, which are considerably corrupt, have been left unaltered.
Varia de Gracia.

sexta anno egressionis templum Apollinis Delphici ab Aristone 1 ædificatur. Quo etiam anno Atheniensium secundus Cranaus capit regnare, et regnavit novem annis; ex ejus filia Athis2 Attica terra 3 nuncupatur.4 Ranulphus. Vide supra libro primo,5 capitulo Græcia, scilicet 6 Helladia. Quo in tempore 7 Hebraei receperunt 8 literas, et Graecia vites.9 et 10 Lacedœmonia quoque a Lacedœmone filio Semelis condita est. Et Atheniensium quartus Ericthonius regnavit quinquaginta annis. Et Argivorum nonus Sthenelus. Et Sicyniòrum Ericthonius. Argivorum rex Arcas Arcadiam a nomine suo 12 nominavit, quæ prius Sicyonia diceretur.13 Ægyptus, quæ prius 14 Aerea 15 diceretur, ab Ægypto 16 tune regnante, 17 Ægyptus dicitur est. 18 Argivorum de- cimus Danaus regnavit quinquaginta annis. Orosius, libro primo. Danaus et Ægyptus 19 fratres fuerunt; Danaus autem per quinquaginta filias suas quinquaginta filios Ægypti una nocte interficit, uno 20 filio solummodo relictum, qui post illum regnaret.21 Inde ipse Danaus tot malorum fabricator Argos conscendit; ubi per fraudem expulso Sthenelo, qui eum exulem et inopem

1 So A.; Eristone, D.E. (and versions). There is, however, no doubt that Erísthoue is the true reading. See Eusèbius Chron. (Vers. Armen.), vol. ii. p. 61. (Vers. 1818.)
2 nomine terra, ins. C.D. Higden should have written Attibœ.
3 terra] om. E.
4 nominatur, C.D.
5 Vide . . . primo] Quære supra de provinciis, C.D.—See vol. i. p. 190.
6 scilicet] om. E.; capitulo 22, B.
7 Tempore ducatus Moysi, C.D.
8 So A.B.; cepерunt, C.D.E.; habère, ins. C.D.
9 citam, D.
10 Dionisius, ins. C.D. (in marg.)
11 quoque] om. B.C.D.
12 a nomine suo] om. C.D.
13 quæ . . . diceratur] so B.; om. C.D.; dicitur, E.
14 prius] om. B.
15 Aera, B.
16 reger, ins. C.D.
17 in ea, ins. B.
18 vocabatur, C.D.
19 Epistus, A.B.; and so E. below.
20 unico, B.
21 regnavit, B.
Dis sīxere after pe out goynge of Egipt Eriston bulde pe Trevisa.

The temple of Appolyn Delphicus. Also pat 3ere Cranaus pe secounde of Athenes bygan to reigne, and reigned nyne 3ere. His dou3ter heest A[t]this; of hir Attica 1 pat lond hap 3at pat name. Looke to fore in pe firste book, capitulo Grecia, scilicet El[1]jadia. 3at tyme pe Hebrewes feng lettres, and Grecia vynes. Also Lacedemon Semelis sone bulde Lacedemonia pat citee, and pe ferpe Erictonius of Attene reignede fifty 3ere olde, and pe 2 ny3pe St[h]enelus of the Argyues and Erieti[h]onis 3 of Sciciones. Arcas 4 kyng of pe Argyues, 3at his name to pat lond Arcadia, 4 and eeleped it so after his owne name; but pat lond Arcadia heet raper Scicionia. Egipt heet rather Aeren, and hadde pat name Egipt of oon Egiptus pat reigned peryrne. Danaus pe tenpe of Argyues reigned fifty 3ere. Orosius, libro primo. Danaus and Egiptus 5 were tweye breperen; and Danaus by his fifty dou3ters slow3 Egiptes fifty sones in oon ny3ht, outake oon pat schulde reigne after hym. Danaus doere of meny eucl dedes wente vp to pe Arguyes, and by gile putte out St[h]enelus, pat hadde olte i-saued hym whiles he was nedly

cête. The temple of Apollo Delphicus was edifie de of MS. HARL. Heristones in the vijthe yere of the egression of the childer of Israel. In whiche yere also Cranaus, the secunde kyng of men of Athenes, began to reigne, and reigned ix. yere. Of Athica, the do3tler of whom, that londe callede Athica was namede, as hit is schevede afore, libro j., capitulo 22°., Elladia. In whiche tyme men of Hebrewe receyvede letteres, and men of Greece vynes. Lacedemonia was edifie de oones of Lacedemon. Eructonius, the iiiijthe kyng of men of Athenes, reignede l8 yere. Archas, kyng of Argyues, namede Archadia after hit name, which was callede afore Scicionia. Egiptus tok the name of hit of a man callede Egiptus reignenge in hit, for hit was callede afore Aeria. Danaus, the xthe kyng of Argyues, reignede l8 yere. Orosius, libro primo; et Petrus, li. 2, 6° capitulo. Danaus and Egiptus were brether, but Danaus, by his l8 do3hters, did slee in oon ny3ht 18 sones of Egiptus, oon childe lefte oonly, which scholde reigne after hym; wherefore Danaus, the causere of that mischefe, wente to the Argyues, expelde S[h]enelus by fraude, which noriscede

1 Athica, MSS.
2 in pe MS. (not a.): Cx. has some omissions here.
3 So a.; Erictorius, MS.
4 Archas and Archadia, MSS.
5 Here and below MSS. and Cx. have Egiptus.
foverat, ipse quoque regnavit.\(^1\) Sub ea tempestate egressus creditur Liber pater, qui et Dionysus Bacchus; qui Argos condidit, et usum vincee Grecis dedit.

\textit{Augustinus de Civitate, libro 18}.\(^3\) His temporibus major ille Mercenius\(^4\) fuisse perhibetur\(^5\) nepos Atlantis, ex Maia filia Atlantis progenitus,\(^6\) multarum artium peritus; unde et\(^7\) deificatus est. Posterior illo\(^8\) quodnammodo fuit Hercules ille major,\(^9\) qui cognominatus est Dasaneus secundum\(^10\) Marianum, libro primo, capitulo xlv.\(^11\) Iste etiam est Hercules ille (\textit{Ranulphus})\(^12\) qui\(^13\) secundum Ovidium occidit Busirum\(^14\) tyrannum. \textit{Josephus}. Iste Hercules despensavit Etheam,\(^15\) filiam Afer, filii Madian; qua de causa profectus est cum eo ad subjugandum Libyam, que ex Afer conquestore dicta est Africa.\(^16\) Quadragesimo anno egressionis\(^17\) Israel de Ægypto\(^18\) Aaron centum viginti trium annorum existens obiit in Oreb;\(^20\) eodemque anno Myses, cum quadragina annis in Ægypto, quadraginta annis in Madian, et quadragina annis, triginta diebus minus, in eremo\(^21\) prefuisset, centesimo viécésimo sexto suo anno\(^22\) obiit in monte Abarim contra Jherico. Sepultus\(^23\) est a Domino in valle Moab.

---

\(^{1}\) 
\textit{Orosius . . . regnavit} om. C.D.; regnavit, om. B.

\(^{2}\) 
\textit{Petrus}, ins. C.D. (in margin; varying also the sentence).

\(^{3}\) 
\textit{Alfridus xviij°.}, A.E. The reference is to Aug. de Civ. xviii. 8.

\(^{4}\) 
\textit{qui}, ins. B.

\(^{5}\) 
\textit{prohibetur}, A.

\(^{6}\) 
\textit{ex . . . progenitus} om. C.D.

\(^{7}\) 
\textit{et] om. C.D.}

\(^{8}\) 
\textit{eo}, C.D.

\(^{9}\) 
B, ins. B.

\(^{10}\) 
\textit{sicut dicit}, B.

\(^{11}\) 
45] added from B.

\(^{12}\) 
\textit{g} \ om. B.

\(^{13}\) 
\textit{qui . . . qui} om. A.C.D.

\(^{14}\) 
\textit{Busirum}, MSS.

\(^{15}\) 

\(^{16}\) 
\textit{de} \ om. A.

\(^{17}\) 
Sentence altered verbally and transposed in C.D.

\(^{18}\) 
\textit{filianam}, ins. B.

\(^{19}\) 
\textit{Israel de Ægypto} om. C.D.

\(^{20}\) 
\textit{Oreb} in Arabia in monte Asini (for Sinai? ; D. has Asi.) qui nunc Oreb dicitur, C.D.

\(^{21}\) 
\textit{populo}, ins. C.D.

\(^{22}\) 
\textit{anno} \ om. A.

\(^{23}\) 
\textit{sepultusque}, A.B.D. In this chapter several slight errors of MSS. in the spelling of proper names have been tacitly corrected.
and outlawe, and reigned hym self. Me trowe pat in pat
tempest went out pat man pat heet Liber pater and heet Dio-
nysus 1 [Bacchus] 2 also; he made vp Argiues, and 3 af pat
Greekes vse of vynes. Augustinus de Civitate Dei. Me seip pat
pe grete Mercourius was in pat tyme; pis Mercourius was Maia
Atlas 3 is douster sone. Pis Mercourius was connynge in
meny craftes, and pere he was i-made among hem as it were a
god. But pe grete Hercules 4 was somdel latte pan he. R.
Pis grete Hercules hadde a surname Dasaneus, so seip Marianus,
libro primo, capitulo lyne hondred fourty and fyue. Also pis
is pat Hercules pat slowh Busiris 5 pe tyrant, so seip Ouyde.
Iosephus. Pis Hercules weddede Etha Affer 6 his douster.
Affer was Madian his sone. Perfore Hercules wente wip
Affer to wynne Libya, and pat lond was pane i-clepde Affrica
by Affer pe conquerour his name. Pe fourty 3ere after pe out
goynge of Egipt Aaron an hondred 3ere olde and pre and
twentie dyde in Oreb. Also pe same 3ere Moyses whan he
hade i-lyued fourty 3ere in Madian, and fourty 3ere saue
pritty dayes in desert, sex score 3ere old almost, he deide in pe
hil Mont Abarim, azenst Ierico pat town, and was i-buried of
oure Lorde in pe valey of Moab.

Danaus when he was in exile and pouerte, that he myhte
reigne per. Dionysus Bacchus is trowede to haue bene
that tyme, whiche made feldes, and began the vse of vynes,
among men of Greece. Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro
decimo octavo. The nowble Mercury is selde to haue bene
in this tyme son to the doyther of Atlas, geten of Maia,
wise in mony artes, wherefore he was calde a godde after
his deth. After whom grete Hercules was. R. Whiche
was otherwise calde Dasaneus, as Marianus rehearseth,
libro 3, capitulo cxlv. 10. Also that is Hercules, whiche
did scee Busiris the tyrant, as Ouidius the poete dothe
rehearse. Iosephus. This Hercules did mary Stea, the
doyther of Affer, son of Madian; wherfore he wente furthe
with Affer to make Libya subiecte to hym, whiche was calde
after Affrica, after the name of Affer. Aaron havenge a
xxixij [yere] in age, in the xii yere of the egression of
the childer of Israel from Egipet, dieide in Oreb; and Moises
the same yere, in the c. and xxij yere of his age, dieide in
Abarim, ageynes Iericho, and was bereide of oure Lorde in
the vale of Moab.

1 Dymonius, MSS.
2 Added from a. and Cx. (Bac-
hus).
3 Athlas a.; Athhals, MS.

VOL. II.

3 Text as in a. and Cx.; MS. has words repeated from below.
4 Busiris, MSS. and Cx.
5 So 3. y., Cx.; after, MS., a.
CAP. XV.

De gestis et morte Josue; varia de Jove et Saturno aliisque.1

Josue populum in Chanaan introduxit. Isidorus, Etym., libro quinto. Josue, minister Moysi, per viginti sex annos rexit populum secundum Josephum2; Scriptura tamen de annis tacet;—qui3 primo anno ducatus sui, patefacto Jordane, populum ad terram promissionis introduxit, Phase, id est Pascha, immolavit, circumcisionem per quadraginta annos intermissam innovavit; ac comendentibus illis de fructu4 terrae illius5 manna, quod per quadraginta annos duraverat, tune defecit. Petrus. Secundum Euse-bium in chronica sua annus ille erat Jubileus, et erat Anno Abr. 545. Anno Josue 1. quinquagesimus primus6 inter Jubileos annos; ac si7 fluxissent ab initio mundi usque ad tune8 duo milia quingenti quinquaginta anni, singulis Jubileis9 per annos quinquagenos computatis; sed secundum LXX. interpretes10 longe plures anni fluxerant.11 Beda vero sequens Hebraicam veritatem probat a12 predicta summa annorum septem annos deficeret.13

Erichthonius. Anno primo Josue Erichthonius,11 quartus15 rex Athe-

---

1 No title in MSS.  
2 Most MSS. of Josephus give 25 years. See Ant. Jud., v. 1.  
3 Hic, C.D.  
4 fructibus, C.D.  
5 illius] om. C.D.  
6 annus, ins. B.  
7 annos; ac si] quasi, C.D.  
8 usque ad tune] om. C.D.  
9 annis, ins. B.  
10 interpret[es] om. C.D.  
11 fluxerunt, A.  
12 de, B.  
13 defuisse, C.D.  
14 Erietonius, MSS.  
15 quartus] om. C.D.
Capitulum quintumdecimum. Iosue.

Iosue, Moyses servaunt, rulede pe peple sixe and twenty yere, so seip Iosephus. Neuerpeles pe Scripture rekene p not pe yeres. Iosue,4 pe firste yere of his ledynes3 hadde pe peple into pe londe of byheste; and pe ryuer flom3 Iordan oponede, and let hem passe, and Iosue offrede pe Ester offrynge, and renewede pe circumsicioun pat was forbode fowryte yeres in wyldernesse. And whanne pey ete of fruyt of pat londe, panne manna failde pat hadde i-dured fowryte wynter. Petrus. Eusebius in his book4 seip pat5 yere was jubileus, pe yere of grace, and was pat oon and fyfty yere of grace, as pey; poo were apassed from pe bygynnynge of pe world two powsand pey fynne hundred and ffty, pat is oon and fifty [sipes fifty]6 yeres. Pat pat take of euerye ffty yere oon oon of grace it come p to oon and fifty yeres of grace; but by pe Senenty pere were apassed moyny mo yeres. And Beda folwep pe Hebrewe, and preuep7 pat pere lakkede euene yere of two powsand fyne hundred and ffty. Pe firste yere of Iosue Erichthonius,9 pe four pe kyng of Athene, was pe firste pat

Capitulum quintumdecimum.

Iosue, the minister of Moyses, rewlede the peple of Israel, MS. Harl. after Iosephus, xxvij1 yere; nevertheles Scripture expressethe not the yeres. Whiche ledenge the peple pro the water of Iordan, in the firste yere of his gouernayle, vn to the londe y-promysede, offrede Ester, and renewede circumsicion, refusede by xl1 yere; and then the noryschenge that was effen of God to thyme failde, after xl1 yere. Petrus. That yere was the yere of jubile, after Eusebius in his cronicle, and hit was the firste l1 yere amonge other yeres, as if ij, m1 yere v. and l1 hadde bene from the begynnenge of the worlde, alle the yeres of the jubile acomptede by l1 yere: but after the lxx1 interpretores, there were mony moo yeres from the begynnenge of pe worlde vn to that tyme. Bede, folowenge the trawthe and the trewe acompte of men of Hebrewe, proveye vij. yere to faile from the novmbre rehersede. Erichthonius9 the iiiij the kyng of men of Athenes, in the firste yere of Iosue,

1 of Iosue, MS. (not Cx.)
2 ledynge, a., Cx.
3 flum, a., Cx.
4 cronike, a., Cx.
5 that that, a., Cx.

4 Added from a. and Cx.
5 proved, Cx.
6 Erutonius, MSS.
7 Erutonius, Harl. MS., twice.
niensis, primus in Graecia quadrigam junxisse creditur. Erat tamen quadriga prius apud alias nationes. Augus-
tinus, libro xviiij. Hic primus instituit ludos Apollini et Minervae. Eoque tempore Busiris tyranni, rex
Ægypti, tyrammidem exercuit in hospites suos. Nam diis suis homines immolavit, quem feruntuisse filium
Neptuni ex Libya, filia Epaphi. Josue distribuit
Phœnixet
Cadmus.

Jupiter
Europam
rapit.

tempos
Busiris,

Sar-

Minois,

Philochronicon Ranulphi Higden

Anno Abr. 553. Anno Josue 10.

Anno Abr. 503. Anno Josue 18.

Anno Abr. 567. Anno Josue 22.

Anno Abr. 563. Anno Abr. 18° CD.

Astinus, B.; Astrius, E.D.

tiuxorem, C.D.

denominations have been left unchanged.

Astrius, B.

Ranulphus . . . filios] om. C.D.

Silicem, MSS.

Phœniciam, MSS.

Ranulphus.

Jupiter

Jupiter

Phœnix
e

Busiris,

MSS. and versions.

Dionysius (marg.). Anno de-
cimo, ins. C.D.

Joseph, E.

Eoque tempore, A.; Eo quoque
tempore, B.; Anno 18° C.D.

Anno 22 Josue, ins. C.D.

Exemplarily, the text is a translation from Latin to English, providing a historical account of the appearance of the quadrigam in Greece. The text mentions key figures such as Phœnix and Cadmus, and includes references to historical events and locations. The translation includes additional notes and references at the end of the page.
brouȝte chariot 1 in to Greekes, as me seip. Nopeles to fore honde were chariottes in oper londes. *Augustinus, libro 18.* Pis ordeyned first playes to Appolyn, and to Minerua. Also pat tyme Busiris pe tyme unte, kyng of Egypt, he kydde 2 his tymeuntyse 3 on his gestes; for he slowh men, and ofred hem to goddes. Me seip pat he was Neptunus his sone i-gete on Libya, Epaphus his douȝter. Iosue departed pe lond of Palestines to pe Iewes. Also pat tyme Fenix and Cadmus, 4 tweyne breperen of Thebe, pat is in Egypt, wente into Syria, 5 and reigned at Tyrrus and at Sidon, twice citees pat so hatte. Iupiter, kyng of Creta, raueschd Europa, pe douȝter of Agenor, 6 kyng of Libya. Afterward Asterius, kyng of Creta, wedded 7 Europa to his 8 wyf. *Augustinus, libro 18.* Iupiter on Europa pat he raueschd he gat Radamanthus, Sarpedon, and Minos, 9 pat reigned after hym in Creta. Nopeles, Marianus, libro primo, capitulo 610, 10 scip pat Asterius on Europa gat pese pre sones. *Isidorus, libro 14.* Agenor, kyng of Libya, gat pe sones, Silex, 11 Phenix, Cadmus, and oon douȝter pat heet Europa. Whan Iupiter hadde i-raueschd hire, he dede hire in

ordcinede firste a carte with iij, wheles in Greece; neuerthe-
lesse thei were afore in other places. *Augustinus, libro
decimo octavo.* The seide Erichthomius ordeyned plaies to
Apollo and to Minerva. In whiche tyme Busiris, the
tyraunte and kyng of Egypte, exercisede cruellenesse, for
he ofred men to his goddes, whom men say to haue
bene the son of Neptunus of Libya the doȝter of Epaphus.
Iosue distribute to the peple of Iewes the londe of Paleo-
tines. In whiche tyme Fenix and Cadmus brether, goenge
from Egypte to Syria, reignede at Tyrrus and Sidon. Iu-
piter kyng of Creta toke a weye Europa the doȝter of
Agenor kyng of Libya, whom Asterius kyng of men of
Creta did wedde. Iupiter gate of Europa, whom he toke
aweye, Radamanthus, Sarpedon, and Minos, 9 which reignede
after hym in Creta. *R.* Neuertheles Marianus rehersethe,
libro i°. capitulo vij 13 x10, that Asterius gate those iij. chilber
of Europa. *Isidorus, libro quarto decimo.* Agenor kyng
of Libya gate thre sonnes, Cilix, 12 Fenix and Cadmus, and
oon douȝter, Europa by name. But when Iupiter hade taken

---

1 chariot, a. 8. 7.; charyote, CX.
2 So a.; hiddle, MS.; ysed, CX.
3 tyrauntys, CX.
4 Cadmus, MS. (not a.)
5 Sceria, MS.
6 Agenore, MS.
7 wedde, a.
8 his] on. a., CX.
9 Minois, MS.; Minoye, Harl. MS.
10 61, CX.
11 So MSS. for Cilix.
12 Silex, Harl. MS.
habebat depictum eam imposuit. Qua de causa\(^1\) fingunt poetae Jovem in taurum\(^2\)uisse\(^3\)transmutatum. Præcepit itaque\(^4\) Agenor tribus filiis suis sororem suam sic raptam querere, sub interminatione redeundi nisi eam reducerent. Sed cum eam non invenissent,\(^5\) patris iram formidantes, Cilix in loco resedit\(^6\) quem a suo nomine Ciliciam\(^7\) nominavit. Phœnix quoque apud Phenician, Cadmus vero apud Graeciam exilium elegit, ubi sequens vestigium bovis conspectæ\(^8\) sedem posuit, et Boeotiam\(^9\) nominavit; ubi et postmodum Thebas construxit.\(^10\) Ranulphus. De quo vide supra libro primo, capitulo Graecia.\(^11\) \(^12\)Augustinus, libro octauodecimo.\(^13\) Eo tempore apud Cretam insulam\(^14\) regnavit Jupiter, patre suo Saturno expulsus ad Italianam. Henricus. Hic cum esset scelestissimus et bellicosissimus\(^15\) Graeciam conquisivit;\(^16\) ubi post mortem a Graecis semper mendacissimis dominus\(^17\) celci putatus est, et Deus deorum ob magnitudinem potentissimæ nominatus.\(^18\) Cretenses vero, apud quos sepultus est, quando de sepultura ejus loquuntur\(^19\) a Graecis dicuntur\(^20\) mendaces.\(^21\) Alexander

---

\(^1\) Quamobrem, C.D.
\(^2\) habebat . . . taurum] om. B.
\(^3\)uisse] om. C.D.
\(^4\) Recessitque, B.; igitur, C.D.
\(^5\) filii, ins. C.D.
\(^6\) recedit, B.
\(^7\) Ciliciam] om. B.
\(^8\) conspectis, C.D.
\(^9\) Boeotiam, MSS.
\(^10\) Slightly transposed in C.D.
\(^11\) De . . . Graecia] Quære supra de provinciis, capitulo Boetia, C.D.
\(^12\) C.D. here introduce the following passage:—"Petrus. Eoque tempore Danaus decimus Argiverum
\(^13\) per quinquaginta filias suas quinquaginta filiis Egisti fratris sui interfecit, uno solummodo superstiti relievo, qui post eum regnavit."
\(^14\) Asier, ins. C.D.
\(^15\) et bellicosissimus] om. B.
\(^16\) acquisitum, C.D.
\(^17\) Deus, A.B.
\(^18\) nominatus] om. C.D.
\(^19\) loquitur, B.
\(^20\) dicunt, E.
\(^21\) apud Graecos mendaces putantur, C.D.
his schippe pat was i-peynt wip a hole; and þerfore poetes feyneþ pat Jupiter was i-torned in to a boole. Agenor heet1 his þre sones pat they schulde goo and seche her suster pat was so i-rauisshed and i-lad away, and forbade hem forto come aþen, but þif pey brouȝte hir suster wip hem. And for2 þey myȝte not fynde hir, þey drede þe wreþpe of here3 fader. Silex abood in a contray and cleped hit Selicia4 after his owne name, and Phenix5 abood in Phenicia. But Cadmus cheese his exilynge in Grecia. þere he folowede þe fore6 of an ox, and come to a contray, and aboode þere, and cleped it Boecia, Oxelond. Afterward he bulde þere pe eite of Thebe. B. Loke more here in þe firste book, capitulo Grecia. Augustinus, libro 18°. Jupiter regned in þe ilond Creta, and his fader Saturnus was i-pat out, and wente to Itali. Henricus. Þis was a wicked man and a greet werriour, and conquered Grees. þere after his deth, þe Grees pat were full of lesynges hilde hym god of heuene, and nempen hym god of goddes for his grete power and myȝt. þe men of Creta, fore he was i-buriþ among hem, wolde speke of his burials. Þerfore þe Grees cleped hem lyȝers. Alexander in Myth.7

here awaye, he putte her in a schippe in whom he bade a MS. HARL. bulle depeicte, wherefore poetes feyne Jupiter to be transmutate in to the similitude of a bulle. Wherefore Agenor commandede his þre sones that thei scholde inquire for their suster, and not to commite to hym in eny wyse with owte here. Whiche childer not fyndenge here and dredenge the wrath of their fader, Cilix returnede to Cilicia, namenge that entre after his awne name, and Fenix to Fenicea, and Cadmus to the londe of Grecce, where he desirede exile; whiche folowenge the stappes of an ox made a place, namenge hit Boecia, where he made Thebas afterwarde. B. Beholde more of this mater afore, libro 3°, capitulo 22°, Boecia. Augustinus, libro decimo octavo. Jupiter regned that tyme in the yle called Creta, Saturnus his fader expulsede to Italy. Henricus. Whiche beenge wyckede and bellicose gate the londe of Grecce by conqueste; wherefore he was callede of men of Grecce, that be and were the greteste lyers, a god, after his death, and namede as godde of alle goddes for the magnitude of his power. Alexander in Mythologia. The trewe story hathe

1 bad, Cx.
2 by cause, Cx.
3 So a. and Cx.; the, MS.
4 So a. and Cx. (for Cilicia); Scicilia, MS.
5 steppe, Cx.
6 So a.; Fenix, MS.; and Fenicea below.
7 So Cx. (Mith.); Mathi, e.; Matthew, MS.
in Mythologia. Vera historia habet Saturnum patrem et Jovem filium regna contigua in Creta habuisse; inter quos bello pro finibus agrorum exorto praevallit Jupiter; Saturnusque fugatus Italiam petiit, ubi a Jano regnante ob usum vinearum, falcis, et agricultura in partem imperii admissus est, dictusque Saturnus a saturitate, quam ibidem promovit. Hic Saturnus fugiens filium suum Jovem e Graecia, in finibus Tusciae non procul a loco Romae latuit, in loco quem Saturniam a nomine suo, et postmodum Latium a latebra sua denominavit, ubi rudes populos adificare, colere, et plantare docuit, eum tamen antea glandibus sustentarentur et sub frondibus contextis habitarent. Hic etiam nummos aereos instituit, quamobrem a multitudine rustica deus putatus est. Ranulphus. Et quamvis poete contendant Jovem castrasse Saturnum, ne in sui supplantationem filios generaret; tamen historia Romana dicit Saturnum genuisse Picum in Italia. Alex-

1 de, C.D.
2 orto, C.D.
3 cum prævaluisset, C.D.
4 ubique, C.D.
5 tunc, ins. D.
6 est, ins. B.D.
7 Sentence slightly varied in C.D., which omit quam...promovit.
8 Saturnus quoque, C.D.
9 Creta, B.
10 Thussiae, A.; Thusiae, B.
11 a loco] ab urbe, C.D.
12 Lucia, E.
13 et] om. D.E.
14 tamen] om. C.D.
15 rusticae, C. (not D.)
16 aliqui C.D.
17 cumchassee sine, ins. C.D.
18 patrem suum, ins. C.D.
19 alios, ins. C.D.
20 narrat, C.D.
Verrey storie seip pat Saturnus pe fader [and Jupiter]\(^1\) pe sone hadde twee kyngoods ioynynge to gidres in Creta, and for endes and bondes of feeldes was a bataile bytwene hem; and Jupiter hadde pe maistrie, and Saturnus was i-chased out and wente into Ytaly; and þere Ianus pe kynge feng hym to a part of þe empere, by cause þat he koupe skile of vynes\(^2\) and \(^3\) in repynge and in telyenge of feeldes. And he was i-cleped Saturnus of saturetus, þat is plente; for he made a \(^4\) grete plente in þat lond. Eutropius. þis Saturnus fly\(^5\) his sone Jupiter out of Grees to þe endes of Tuscia nouȝt fer from þe place of Rome; he lidded hym þere in a place, and cleped þe place Saturnia after his owne name; and afterward he cleped hit Latium, þat is his hydlynge place. Þere he tauȝte boistous men to bulde and to crye and sowe, and to sette vynes. For to forehonde þey lyued by acres,\(^6\) and wonede vnder bowes and twiggis i-wounde\(^7\) to gidres. Also þis oderneyd pannes of bras; þerfore þe vplondische men hilde hym a god. R. And þey poetes meue þat Jupiter gildede\(^8\) Saturnus, for he schulde not gete children to supplante hym, neuerpeles þe storie of Rome seip þat Saturnus gat Picus in Itali.

Saturnus to the fader, and Jupiter to the son, and to MS. H.\(^{2261}\) haue hade realmes contiguite in Creta; but at the laste a batelle moveide betwene theyme for certeyn londe, Jupiter hade the victory, and Saturnus fleenge wente to Ytaly, whiche was receyvede of Ianus, reignenghe there in to parte of thempyre, for the vse of vynes and off tillenge of londe, that he brouȝhte in to Ytaly, where he was callede Saturnus, for the plentuousenesse that he brouȝhte in to that cuntr. Eutropius. This Saturnus fleenge Iupiter his son lay priuely in a parte of Tuscia not ferre from Rome, whiche place he callede Saturnia, after his name, where he tauȝhte rude peple to edifiye, to tylle feeldes, and to sette vynes, whiche peple lyffede alore with akornes, and inhabite places made with bowȝes of trees. Also he institute penyes of brasse, wherefore he was trowede to haue bene a godde of the rusticalle peple. R. And thanȝhe poetes fynye Iupiter to haue gildede Saturnus leste that he scholde gette eny childer to his supplantacion, neuertheless the story of the Romanes seithe that Saturnus gate

---

1 Added from a. ß. γ., Cx.  
2 So a. ß. γ., Cx.; wyne, MS.  
3 and] om. a.  
4 a] om. a. and Cx.  
5 So a.; fleȝe, MS.; flumed, Cx.  
6 akres, a.; akornes, ß., Cx.; akharns, γ.  
7 i-weue, a.; wouen, ß., Cx.  
8 gildede, a.
ander in Mythol. 1 Hunc 2 Jovem post patris expulsionem pacem quoque 3 perturbantem alii potentes tyranni expellere sunt conati; quos quia bellicos machinis superavit, gigantes fingitur fulminasse. Genesis. 4


---

1 in Mythol.] om. C.D.
2 Hinc, B.
3 etiam, C.D.
4 C.D. omit reference.
5 præquam, C.D.
6 coram populo] om. C.D.
7 inter . . . populum] om. C.D.
8 quia, A.
9 scilicet] om. C.D.
10 populus] om. B.
11 initi, C.D.
12 sic, A.D.
13 illius, C.D.
14 capitulo sextodecimo] om. C.D.
15 effuderunt aquam, B.
16 veteres] om. D.
17 ut, C.D.
18 Slightly transposed in C.D.
Alexander in Mythologia. Opere my;ty tyrauntes fondede to putte out his Jupiter, pat 1 was ful cruel and desturbed pe pears, after pat his fader was i-put out, and ouercome pe geantes wip gynmes of werre. Me feynef pat he li;mede out geantes. Petrus. Iosue, or he deide, 2 helte 3 water on pe erpoe to fore pe peple in tokene of pe couenante pat was i-made bytweni God and pe peple; [pat was, pat pe peple] 4 hade i-chose pe soopfast God. Petrus. Myssybleued men vssede to helde out, 5 and schede out 6 pe blood of a sowe pat is i-slawe 7 in tokene of couenante i-made. Huguito, capitulo Fedus. Fedus, pat is a couenent, is i-seide of fedæ, 8 a sowe pat is so i-slawe, as it were to mene, pat is blood pat brekep 9 pe couenent schulde in pat manere be i-sched. Petrus. But pe Hebrewes hilde out water in token pat as pe water is al i-schad and nowt i-left, so he pat brekep pe couenant schulde be ded, and al his kyn. 10 Also men in olde tyme vssede to arere signes and tokenes pat my;te longe dure in mynde of couenant to 11 hem pat come afterward; and so somme arered 12 stones and hopes of stones in mynde of couenantes.

Picus in Italy. Alexander in Mythologia. Other my;hty tyrauntes trowblenge peace were abowte to expelle Jupiter, whom he ouercome, wherefore hit is feynede of poctes Jupiter to haue sleyn diuere gigantes. Petrus. Iosue afore that he diede schedde water in to the erthe, in to a signe of luffe begunne betweni God and the peple, that the peple hade chosen a trewe Godde. But the gentiles vssede to caste downe the blood of a sowe in to a signe of luffe. Huguito, capitulo Fedus. Fedus is calde so of a fowle swyne sleyn per, as if hit scholde be seide, his bloode be schedde in lyke wyse that dothe violate and breke this bonde of luffe. Petrus, capitulo decimo sexto. But men of Hebrewes schedde water in to a signe, for like as water is schedde holly with owte eny signe or stoppe apperenge afterward, sée in lyke wise the breker of that bonde scholde persesche with alle his progeny. Also olde men were wonte to elcete thynge durable in to the signe of luffe, as stones and beryelles, that men suecendet my;te remembrbe the seide token of luffe.

---

1 pat] his Jupiter, a., Cx.
2 Some words repeated in a.
3 hyeld, Cx.
4 Added from a. and Cx.
5 out water, MS. (not a. or Cx.)
6 out] om. a. B. y.
7 pat is i-slawe] om. a. B. y., Cx.
8 So a., Cx.; pheda, MS.
9 So a. B. y.; is i-slawe, MS., Cx.
10 So a. and Cx. (MS. has repetitions from above).
11 to] of, Cx.
12 arered and enhanced, Cx.

Slight corrections of orthography in the proper names have been tacitly made in this chapter for both versions.
CAP. XVI.

De Chusan, rege Mesopotamie, et Othoniel. De nativitate Apollinis et Bacchi. Variae de Cadmo et litteris Graecis.1

Chusan. Post mortem Josue filii Israel servierunt Chusan regi Mesopotamie octo annis, qui tamen annis junguntur temporibus2 Othoniel, fratis Caleb, secundum Hebreos. Petrus. Nisi anni quietis et servitutis simul comprehenderentur sub diebus judicium, non starret veritas computationis in historia. Augustinus, libro xvii.3 Circa istud tempus Latona peperit Apollinem apud insulam Delos. Ranulphus.4 Non autem illum Apollinem Delphi cum, qui diu ante exiterat, sed illum Apollinem qui cum Hercule posteriore5 servivit Admeto6 regi. Hanc Latonam dicunt esse Isidem.7

Apollo nascitur. Igitur Othoniel annumeratis octo annis servitutis precedentis dux fuit super Hebreos quadraginta annis.8

Othoniel. Atheniensium rex quintus regnavit nomine9 Neptunus. Cadmus regnavit Thebis, ex cujus filia Semele10 natus est Dionysus Bacchus,11 qui etiam12 dicitur Liber Pater, cujus tempore Linus Thebaeus musicus claruit. Bithynia condita est Phoenice, quae prius Marian- dyna13 vocabatur.14 Isidorus, libro secundo et quinto.15

Bacchus nascitur. Atheniensium rex quintus regnavit nomine10 Neptunus. Cadmus regnavit Thebis, ex cujus filia Semele11 natus est Dionysus Bacchus,12 qui etiam13 dicitur Liber Pater, cujus tempore Linus Thebaeus musicus claruit. Bithynia condita est Phoenice, quae prius Marian- dyna13 vocabatur.14 Isidorus, libro secundo et quinto.15

---

1 No title in MSS.
2 junguntur temporibus] amnis, B.
3 idem, C.D.
4 Ranulphus] om. A.C.D.
5 autem] om. C.D.; tamen, B.
6 cum . . . posterior] Hercule posterior, C. (not D.)
7 servierat Meoto, B.
8 Hanc . . . Isidem] om. C.D.
9 Sentence varied in C.D.
11 Semele, MSS., and so below.
12 Dionisius Bacchus, MSS., and so below; similarly the versions.
13 Latine, ins. B.
14 Marandina, B.
15 The whole sentence slightly varied in C.D.
16 In vol. i. p. 128, the same passage is quoted from “Isido, us, libro secundo, capitulo quinto,” but the reference is false. Cf lib. i. c. 3., but this does not contain all here quoted.
Capitulum sextumdecimum. Othoniel.

After Iosue his death Israel seruode Chusan,\(^1\) kyng of Mesopotamia, ei\(^3\)te \(\ddot{3}\)ere. Neuerpeles pese ei\(^3\)te \(\ddot{3}\)ere beep acounted wip Othoniel his tyme, Caleph his broter, by pe Hebrewes; but pe \(\ddot{3}\)eres of reste and of praldom were acounted to gidres vnder inges of Israel pe sothnesse of acountes wolde not stonde in pe storie. [\textit{Augustinus, libro 18\.}]\(^2\) Aboute this tyme pat womman Latona baar Appolyne in pe ilond Delos.\(^3\) \(\ddot{R}\). But nou\(^5\)t pat oper Appolyne Delphi\(\ddot{c}\)us, \(\ddot{p}at\) hadde i-be longe to forchonde, but \(\ddot{p}at\) Appolyne \(\ddot{p}at\) seruode \(\ddot{p}e\) kyng Admetus\(^4\) wip \(\ddot{p}e\) lattre Hercule. \(\ddot{M}\)e se\(\ddot{p}\) \(\ddot{p}at\) \(\ddot{p}i\)s Latona\(^5\) was \(\ddot{p}e\) same womman [that heet]\(^6\) Isis. \(\ddot{\ddot{J}}\)anne Othoniel was ledere of Israel fourty \(\ddot{3}\)ere forte rekene \(\ddot{p}e\) forseide ei\(^3\)te \(\ddot{3}\)ere of praldom. Neptunus regnede and was \(\ddot{p}e\) fift kyng of Athene. Cadmus\(^7\) regnede in pe citee Thebes; of his dou\(^5\)ter Semela was i-bore Denys Bacchus, \(\ddot{p}at\) heet also Liber Pater, \(\ddot{p}at\) is \(\ddot{p}e\) Fre Fader. In his tyme was Linus\(^8\) of Thebe in Egipt, \(\ddot{p}e\) grete chauntour, in his floures. Fenix bulde Bithynia, \(\ddot{p}at\) heet somtyme Mariandyna.

Capitulum sextumdecimum.

The childer of Israel did seruyce to Chusan, kyng of Mesopotamia, viij. yere after the death of Iosue, whiche yeres be ioynde to the yeres\(^10\) of Othoniel the brother of Caleph, after men of Hebrew. \textit{Petrus.} But if the yeres of the quietnes and seruuite be comprehended to geder vnder the daies of the iugges, the trawthe of computacion scholde not be in the storie. \textit{Augustinus, libro decimo octavo.} Latona childe\(\ddot{d}d\)e Apollo abowte this tyme at the yle of Delos, which\(\ddot{e}\) was not Apollo Delphi\(\ddot{c}\)us, for he was longe afor, but this Apollo seruode kyng Admetus, with the later Hercule. The viij\(\ddot{e}\)the yere of the seruite of men of Israel annumerate, Othoniel was gouernoure of men of Hebrew\(\ddot{e}\) xi\(\ddot{e}\) yere. Neptunus the \(\ddot{v}\)the kyng of men of Athenes regnede. Cadmus did reigne in Thebis, of pe dou\(\ddot{t}\)ler of whom, Semela by name, Dionysus Bacchus was gelen, other Liber pater. In \(\ddot{p}e\) tyme of whom Thebeus the musicion was. Bithynia was made of Phenix, callede afor

\(^1\) So a. and Cx. ; \textit{Chusan, MS.}
\(^2\) Added from a. and Cx.
\(^3\) So Cx. ; \textit{Delos, MS.}
\(^4\) So a. and Cx. ; \textit{Admetus, MS.}
\(^5\) \textit{Lathona, MS.}, and so below.
\(^6\) Added from a. and Cx.
\(^7\) So a. ; \textit{Culynus, MS., Cx.}
\(^8\) \textit{Lynus, MS.}. Similar slight errors have been tacitly corrected in this chapter and the following.
\(^9\) yeres, MS.


decimam litteras, et verba componunt et numeros efficient. Ranulphus, numeri ensim numero alphabeti a prima usque decimam litteram ponitur, talem numerum apud Graecos designat; quia prima littera Graeca signat unum, secunda duo, tertia tria, et sic deinceps usque ad decem; quia decima littera signat decem, sed undecima littera signat viginti, duo-decima triginta, tertiadecima quadraginta; et ita deinceps usque ad centum, quod designatur per nonan-decimam litteram. Inde vicesima littera designat ducenta; vicesima prima trecenta; vicesima secunda quadringenta; et sic deinceps.


1 tradidit] primo dedid, C.D.  
2 Transposed in C.D., which add—unde et color ille Feniceus dicitur. \textit{Pygmeia, capitulo} Fenix. Et quia Fenices fuerunt primi literarum inventores, adhuc literas capitales rubeo colore scribimus, ut sic representemus eos suisse literarum repertores."  
3 Ran. \ldots Phœnicia] om. C.  
4 \textit{ubi Fenicia,} B. See vol. i. p. 128.  
5 \textit{Ranulphus} om. C.  
6 \textit{enim} om. B.  
7 a . . . deinceps] ponitur, litera Graeca talem numerum significat, C.D., omitting the rest of the extract.  
8 \textit{ante} ins. A.  
9 \textit{signant}, A.  
10 \textit{duo} om. B.  
11 \textit{denotatur}, B.  
12 \textit{signat}, A.  
13 \textit{vicesima secunda quadringenta]\ om. A.  
14 \textit{designat . . . ferri} deferri, B.  
15 \textit{reperta est,} B.; \textit{reperitur}, C.D.  
16 \textit{Et} om. C.D.  
17 So Higden, for \textit{Demetre}, who has also Danae.  
18 \textit{de Metra} Diana matre, B.  
19 facta fuerant, C.D.  
20 conditur secundum quosdam, C.D.
Isidorus, libro 2o, capitulo 5o. And as Fenix ɔaf pe Fenices TREVISA. some reed lettres. R. Per of loke more in pe firste book, capitulo quintodecimo,¹ in Fenicia. Isidorus, libro 2o. Pe lettres of Grees pat Cadmus ɔaf hem spelep wordes, and stondep for nombres. [R.]² Pe lettres of Grees from pe firste to pe tenpe as pey stondep in ordre [in pe A.B.C., so pey stondep]³ for nombre among pe Grees; for pe firste stondep for oon; pe seconde for twyne, [and]⁴ pe pride for pre, and so for⁴ anon to pe tenpe. But pe eleuepe lettre stondep for twenty, pe twelfpe for pritty, pe prittene⁵ for fourty, and so anon to an hundred. For an hundred stondep pe nyntenpe⁶ lettre; ʃanne pe twentye lettre stondep for two hundred; pe oon and twenty for pre⁷ hundred,⁸ and so forpe. Petrus. Craft and vse of byns was i-founde in Egipte. Pe dedes pat me tellep of Demetra⁹ and of Dan, Persius his moder, byfel pat tyme. And pe citee Corinthis was i-bulde pat tyme.

Mariandyna.¹⁰ Isidorus, libris 2o et quinto. And lyke as MS. HARL. Cadmus toke to men of Greece xvij. letters so in like maner, Phenix, brother to hym, toke certeyne letters of a redde coloure to the Pheniceanes. R. Attende to this process afore, capitulo 15o, Phenicia. Isidorus, libro 2o. The letters of men of Greece, whom Cadmus toke to þeim, compounde wordes and make nowmbræ. R. And in what nowmbræ a letter is putte from the firste letter to the xithe, hit signifieth the a like nowmbræ amonge men of Grewe, for the firste letter signifieth oon, the secunde twyne, and so vn to x, for the xithe letter signifieth x. and the xithe letter xxvi, the xijthe xxxii, the xiithe letter xliv, and so on to ac. whiche is signifiede by the xixthe letter. The xxvi letter signifieth cc., xxvi ccc., and so furthe. Petrus. The vse of yrne was founde this tyme amonge men of Egipte, and also those thynge happened whiche be sye of Metria and Dana,¹¹ the moder of Perseus. The cite of Corinthus was made, whom thei say to be Isis.

¹ So Cx., rightly; 5, MS. TREVISA's version is evidently mutilated here.
² Reference added from a. and Cx.
³ Added from a. and Cx.
⁴ the fourth, Cx.; badly.
⁵ pytiene, a.
⁶ So a.; nyth, MS.
⁷ So Cx.; fioure, MS.
⁸ Cx. adds: the xxij. for four hundred.
⁹ So a. and Cx.; Dometra, MS.
¹⁰ Moricandyna, Harl. MS.
¹¹ So Harl. MS. for Demeter and Dana.
C. XVII.

Ayoth.


Triptolemus 13 longa navi 14 Eleusim veniens frumenta distribuit; et rex Molosorum atque Thracic, Orest nomine, 15 Proserpinam rapuit, cujus canis ingens Cerberus Pirithoum 16 devouravit, 17 qui eum Theseo 18 venerat ad raptum Proserpine; sed et Theseum devorasset, nisi Hercules superveniens eum liberasset. Et ob hoc 19 ab inferis receptus est. 20 Achaia ab Achaeo fundata est 21

---

1 Ayoth, A.
2 et . . . . anno] connumerato etiam uno, B.
3 mo, B.D.
4 Slightly abbreviated and varied in C.D.
5 Jena, A.D.
6 filius, C. (not D.) om. B.
7 scilicet] om. C.D.
8 de, B.
9 Variousy barbarized in MSS.
10 sic dictum. Nam] om. C.D., with other slight variations.
11 Jeminum, A.E.
12 Jamyn, A.
13 Trikolomus, A.; Tropolomus, B.D.; Triptolomus, E.
14 navigatione, B.
15 nomine] om. C.D.
16 Pirithoum, A.E.; Piratonem, B.; Piritonem, C.D.
17 devouraverat, B.
18 cuum] om. E.
19 hoc] id quoque, C.D.
20 dicitur, C.D.
21 condita, C.D.
Capitulm septimumdecimum. Aioth.

Ayoth was ledere of Israel foure score 3ere, forto aounte ei3etene 3ere in pe whiche Israel seruede Eglon pe fatte king of Moab; also forto rekene oon 3ere of Sangar, pe duke and ledere 1 pat slow sixe hundred men wip a plowh share. Pis Aioth vsede eiper hond for his ri3t hond, and was Ihera his sone; Ihera was Geminus 2 his sone. Petrus. Som tellep pat Geminus was a vile persone of pe lynage of Beniamyn, and was ofte i-nempned by chaungynge ope wipdrawing of somwhat of pe begynnynge of pe name. For pey we settep Geminus pe Hebrewes settep Iamyn, pat is a rynge pat longep to pe ri3t side, and may be side 5 Geminus in 6 Latyn. Ritholomus7 com yn a longe schippe to Eleusis, and delede pere whete; and Orcus, kyng of Molos and of Thracia, rauuesched Proserpina; hire hond, pat heet Cerberus, swelowede yp a man, pat heet Piritoun, pat come with Theseus to rauysshe Proserpina; and pe same hound Cerberus wolde have i-ete Theseus also, but Hercules hadde i-come pe mene tyme and i-saned hym, and perfore he was i-fonge in to helle. Acheus

Capitulm decimum septimum.

Then xvij. yere an numerate in whom the peple of Israel ministred to Eglon the fatte kyng of Moab, and also oon yere of Sangar the duke, which did sle vj. men with the cultur of a plowe, Aioth reignede on the peple of Israel lxxx4 yere. This Aioth, son of Ihera, the son of Geminus, vsede either honde as the ry3hte hond. Petrus. Somme men say Geminus to haue bene a vile person in the tribe of Beniamyn, callede so as by effresis; for pei putte Iamyn where we putte Geminus, whiche sowndethe as pertenenge to the ry3hte parte, whiche may be called welle in Latyn Geminus. Tritholomus commenge to Eleusis in a longe schippe, and the kyngge of Thracia, rauuesched and toke aweye Proserpina, whose dogge callede Cerberus de noured Pirotonus, which come with Theseus to the takenge aweye of Proserpina; whiche hade de nourede Theseus also, but that Hercules delyuerede hym, for whiche thynge he was receyvede of helle. Aehaia was foundede of Acheus,
et Atheniensium dux, Dionysus, qui et Liber Pater dicitur, secundum quosdam, nascitur ex Semele; et mysteria de Perseo ceperunt, qui occidit Gorgonem meretricem quae ob nimiam pulchritudinem obstupefecit 1 aspicientes in cem. 2 Sub 3 qua etiam ætate Phrixus 4 et Helle 5 soror 6 sua fugientes insidias novercales submersi sunt in mari, quod usque hodie a nomine sororis vocatur Hellespontus; at quin 7 insigne navis eorum fuit aries, ideo finguntur per aerem vehi ariete 8 velleris aurei. 9 Laomedon, Sicyoniorum rex octavus decimus, 10 regnavit 11 quinquaginta annis. Amphion et 13 Zethus 14 regnavant 15 apud Thebas 16 Grecorum expulso Cadmo. 17 Tros, a quo dicuntur Trojani, regnavit in Dardania, quae est Phrygia, 18 et postmodum indixit bellum Tantalo, regi Atheniensium, propter raptum Ganymedis filii sui. 19


---

1 obstupefaciebat, C.D.
2 in cem] om. C.D.
3 Sub] om. C.D.
4 Frixus or Frius, MSS.
5 Elles, MSS.
6 cum Helle sorore, C.D.
7 atque, B.
8 ab ariete, A.
9 Slightly varied in C.D.
10 Seicionorum, MSS.
11 finguntur . . . xvii.] om. B.
12 regnare cepit, C.D.
13 et] om. B.
14 Zephus or Zepus, MSS. and versions.
15 regnaverunt, C.D.
16 apud Thebas] Thebis, A.B.
17 Transposed in C.D.
18 Frigia, MSS.
19 Added from B.
20 Tros . . . confingitur] Varied in C.D.
21 Erectei, MSS.
22 meretricis, ins. C.D.
23 bellerofontis, A.
24 vocavit, A.
25 debellando Indos] adversus Indos diminucis, C.D.
26 juxta Indum fluvium, ins. C.D.
bulde Achaia. Denys Liber Pater, duke of Athene, was i-bore of Semela, as som men tellep, and took misteryn of Per-
seus, pat slow3 pat hore Gorgon, pat was so faire, [that she]1 astonyed men pat byhelde hire wip hir fairnesse. Also pat
tyme Frixus and his suster Elles fly3e pe malice and pe purs-
sute of here stepdame, and were adraynt 2 in pe see pat heet
Ellespontus. And for a weper was i-peynt in pe signe of here
schippe, pefore me feynede pat a wether wip gildene flees
bare hem forp by pe ayer. Laomedon, pe eistpe kyng of
Sciciones, regnede fifty 3ere. Amphion and Zethus regned
in Thebe, pe3 citee of Grees, and put out Cadmus. Tros4
regnede in Dardania, pis is Frigia,5 and werrd afterward
a~enst Tantalus, kyng of Athene, for pe rauyschynge of
Ganymedes. Of pis Tros pe Troians hauende pat name, and hatte
Troians. [B.]6 Þan pe fable of Iupiter is i-feynd; and so pe
rauyschynge of en egle is i-feynd and7 ydnl. Perseus,
Erieus his broper, fauet a~enst pe Perses, and8 smoot of pe
heed of pat hoor Gorgon. Pegasus was a ful swift hors of a
womman, oper9 heet Bellefrontys his schip. Ion10 pe strong man
cleppe pe men of Athennes Iones by his owne name. Denys,
that hadde Liber Pater also, werrd wip pe Indes, and bulde pe

and Dionysus12 Bacchus, other Liber Pater, gounorne of men
of Athene, was borne abowte this tyme of Semela. And
the misterys of Perseus began, which did slee a strumpette
other hore. Gorgones by name, makeen men beholdenge to
meruayle the excellente beaute of hire. In whiche tyme
Frixus, and Elle his susyrr, dreddenge the watches of theire
steppenordes, were drownede in the see which is callede
vn to this tyme Ellespontus,11 after the name of his susyrr.
Laomedon, the kyngge of men of Scitin, the xviiith kyngge,
reignded 16 yere. Amphion and Zethus reigndede at Thebas
in Greece, Cadmus expulsed. Tros, of whom the Troianes
toke name, reigndede in Dardania, otherwise callede Frigia,
after that siengenge batayle to Tantalus kyngge of Athenes,
for the rape of Ganymedes his son. Perseus, the brother of
Erieus,13 Þe batayle ageyne men of Persia for the sleeenge
of Gorgones. That stronge man calleId Ion namede men
of Athenes Iones after his name. Dionysus,12 other Liber

1 Added from Cx.; þat (only), ß; heo, γ.
2 drowned, Cx.
3 in þe, MS. (not a, ß, γ.)
4 So a, ß, γ. Troos, MS.
5 Frista, MS.
6 Added from a, and Cx.
7 an, a, γ.; in, Cx.; on, ß.
8 he, Cx.
9 over] that, Cx.
10 So a, and Cx.; Ione, MS.
11 Ellespontus, Harl. MS.
12 Dionisius, Harl. MS. Similar slight errors have been tacitly cor-
rected in both versions.
13 Clerical error for Ereictus
(Erechtheus).
Pelops. nysus primus cum viris primus in exercitu habuit. Pelops, primus Peloponnesensibus regnans, Olympiis quoque præfuit; qui tamen postmodum adversus Ilium rebellans a Dardano superatur. Augustinus, libro octavodecimo. Temporibus Ayoth, ducis Israel, floruit Hercules posterior; plane [diversus] ab illo Hercules superius memorato. Trogus. Iste Hercules fortis, orbis domitor, Amazonum contritor, Indic penetrator, Trojanorum expugnator, Libyæ invasor, Hispanicæ dominator. Ranulphus. Iste Hercules secundum Ovidium in Magno, libro octavo, Antæum gigantem Libyæ devicit, Geryonem gigantem regem Hispanicæ occidit, armenta ejus in signum victoriae per Italian duxit; ex filia Faumi Latinum regem procreavit; leonem interfecit; hydram serpenter in Lerna palude extinxit; stadium itineris uno anhelitu percurrit; agonem Olympicum instauravit; Centauros contrivit; apud Gades insulas columnas posuit; duodecim immensos labores consummavit. Augustinus de Civitate, libro octavo decimo. Et cum post insignes virtutes

1 pariter in armis, C.D. (ad arma, D.)
2 primus ... habuit] sociavit, C.D.
3 Peloponnesibus, MSS.
4 tamen postmodum] postea, C.D.
5 illum, C. (not D.)
6 rebellando, B.
7 sequuntur, C. (not D.)
8 ducis Israel] om. C.D.
9 So A.B.C.D.; Titus, E.
10 Iste Hercules] om. C.D.
11 fuit] om. C.D.
12 Hercules, ins. C. (not D.)
13 Ranulphus] om. B.
14 Hic, C.D.
15 Antheum, A.; Athenæum, E.
16 regem, ins. A.
17 Libye] om. B; Libia, MSS., as usual.
18 Cerionem, A.
19 Leonem] om. B.
20 unico, B.
21 Aganum, A.B.; Aganem, E.
cizte Nisan. 1 Pis Denys ordeyned first wommen in his oost wip 5 men. Pelops, 2 pe firste kyng of Peloponens, was heed of pe Olimpies; 4 neuer pepes afterward he was azenst Troye, and overcomne of Dardanus. In Aioth his tyne, duke of Israel, pe latter Herecles, anoper pan we spak of raper, was in his floures. Trogus. Pis Herecles was strong, and temede pe world, and overcomne pe Amazones, and passed in to Iude and werred pe, and overcomne pe Troians, and werred in Libya, and was lord of 5 Spayne. R. Pis Hereules overcome Anteus, 6 pe geant of Libya, so seip Ouyde, in Magno, libro octavo; and slow Geryon pe geaunt, kyng of Spayne, and ladde his catel and his bestes porw Italy in tokyon of pe maistrye; and he gat pe kyng Latyn on pe dougter of Faunus; 7 and he slow a leon; he slow 3 pe serpen Ydra in pe water Lerna; and he ran a furlong at oon breep; and he restored pe torneimentis and lustes of Mont Olymp; he overcom pe Centaures; and piête his pilers in pe see at pe Iondes Gades; and he dede twelue grete dedes. Trevisa. Pe Centaures were men of Thessalia; pey were pe firste pat chastede 8 hors, and ladde hem wip brydels, and ride 9 on hors bakkis. Augustinus, libro 18°. And after his grete dedes he fille in a

Pater, fighetenge ageyne men of Ynde, made that cite callede MS. Harl. Nisan. This Dionysus hade firste women mixte with men in his hoste. Pelopos reignede firste amonge men of Peloponens, and also at Olympus, whiche rebellegen ageyne Troianes was overcomen by Dardanus. The later Hereules was in the tyne of Aioth, duke and governoure of Israel. This myghty Hereules was the tamer of the worlde, the victor of pe Amazones, the perescher of Ynde, the expugnator of Troianes, the entrer of Libya, the lorde of Speyne. R. This Hereules, after Ouidius, in Methamorphoseon libro octavo, overcomne the gigaunte of Libia at Athenes, and did sle Geryon the gigaunte and kyngue of Speyne, causenge his bestes to be brouhte thro Italy in a signe of victory, gettenge of the dougther of Faunus 10 Latinus the kyngue; whiche did sée also a lyon and a grete serpent in a marras callede Lerna, rennenge the space of a forelonge with oon brethe, settenge pilores at the yle of Gades; whiche finischede xij. huge labores. Augustinus, livro decimo octavo. Whiche hauenge as a disease intollerable after his grete labores, commandede hym selde to be caste

---

1 So all the MSS. 6 Antheus, MSS., and so below. 2 her men, MS. (not a. or Cx.) 7 So γ. : Faunus, MS., a. β. 3 Pelopis, MS. (not a.) 8 chastised, Cx. 4 So a., Cx. : Olimpus, MS. 9 rode, Cx. 5 of] in, MS. (only). 10 Faunus, Harl. MS.
morbum, quo vehementer languebat, ferre non posset, seipsum in Oeta monte Hispaniae cremandum flammis tradidit. Ranulphus. Qui sunt isti duodecim immensi sive inhumani labores, quos consummavit, patet per Claudiaum libro sexto de raptu Proserpine, et per Virgilium Æneidos octavo, et per Ovidium Met. nono libro. Quorum primus labor fuit de Centauris quos devicit; secundus fuit interfictio et excoriatio leonis in Nemeæa silva; tertius effugatio Harpyiarum; quartus tangitur in Lucano, libro nono, scilicet ablatio pomorum aureorum de horto septem filiarum Atlantis, sopito dracone custode; quintus catenatio Cerberi devorantis Pirithoum in raptu Proserpine; sextus oppressio Diomedis regis Thracie, qui pavit eequos suos carne humana; septimus extinctio hydre serpentis in Lerna palude; octavus devictio Acheloi in varias formas se mutantis; nonus prostratio Antæi gigantis Libyæ, qui terram tangendo semper vires resumebat; decimus occisio Caci, qui dicebatur ig-

---

1 Ceta, A.B.D.; Creta, E.  
2 So MSS. for Thessalia; but the error may be due to Higden.  
3 xii.] om. C.D.  
4 Hercules, ins. B.D.  
5 et] om. C.D.  
6 Æneidos] om. C.D.  
7 fuit] om. C.D.  
8 Menea, MSS.  
9 est, ins. A.  
10 Erpiarum, A.; Arpiarum, D.E.  
11 scilicet] om. C.D.  
12 Atlantis or Atlantis, MSS., and similarly elsewhere.  
13 Pirithoum, B.; Pirtonem, C.; Pirithum, D.E.  
14 Achiloi, A.; Archaeoi, D.  
15 mutans, E. (clerical error.)  
16 Antæi, MSS., and so below.  
17 super, B.  
18 Casi, A.; Eaci, B.  
19 dicitur, C.D.
grete sikness e pat was so hard
and sore pat he myste not
durare. Perfore he prewe hym self in to a fuyre, and brend
hym self. [R]. Claudianus, libro 6o, de raptu Proserpina,
and Virgil, Aeneidos 8o, and Ouid, Metamorphoses, libro 9o,
rekenet pe grete dedes pat Hercules dede. Of pe whiche dedes
pe firste was pe victorie pat he hadde of pe Centaures. Pe
seconde pe sleynge and pe hildynge of a leon in a wode pat
hatte Nemen. Pe pridde pe chasenge of pe foules pat hatte
Arpies. Pe ferpe pe takynge of goldene apples out of pe
orche[er]d of pe seuene dou[ters] of Atlas pe geant, and pe
sleynge of the dragon pat keppe pe place. Pe fife pe chaynyng
and teienge of pe grete hound Cerberus pat deuoured Pir-
thous 6 in pe ranisclnyng of Proserpina. Pe sixte pe berynge
doum of Dionede, pe kyng of Thracia, pat fedde his hors wip
manis 7 flesche. The seuenpe pe destroyenge of Ydra pe serpent
in pe water Lerna. Pe ei[pe 8 pe ouercommynge of Acheoulos,
pat chaunged ofte tyme in to dyuers liknes and schappe. Pe
nyupe pe prowynge doum of Auteus, pe geant of Libya, pat
took azen myste and strengpe as ofte as he touched pe erpe.
Pe tenpe pe sleynge 10 of the cat pat cast out fuyre of his moup,
in to a grete fire, in Ceta an hille of Speyne. Whiche
labores were not like to be the labores of man, as hit is
schewed by the poete Claudianus, libro vii o de raptu
Proserpina, and by Virgilius, Eneyd, libro viii o, and by Oui-
dius in Metamorphoseon libro nono. The firste was tak-
enge aweye of apples of golde from the gardyn of pe vii.
DOZ[HTERS] of Atlas, the dragon and keper of theyrne beengen
in slepe. The secunde was of the grete bestes callede
Centaure, whom he ouercome. The thridde was the sleengen
of a lyon, in a woode callede Menena. The iiijthe was
the chasenge of Arpies. The vthe was the chenenge of
the grete dogge callede Cerberus, which did sle Piri
thous in the takengen aweye of Proserpina. The vii the
was the oppression of Dionedes kyng of Thracia, which fedde
his horse with the flesche of man. The viijthe was the sleengen
of the serpent in that marras callede Lerna. The viijthe
was the victory of Acheolou[s], chaungenge hym in to diuerse
formes. The ixthe was the victory of Anteus the gigaun
to of Libya, which encresed in strenghte as he towchede the
erthe. The xthe labore was the sleengen of Cacus, whom
men seide to euomette fire. The xjtho was the sleengen of

1 hard] payneful, Cx.
2 Added from a. and Cx.
3 Nenia, Cx.; Menu, MSS.
4 Athlas, MSS., as usual; which
conversely have Tracia below.
5 patce, Cx.
6 Porphyes, and Perithous, MSS.
7 So a.; maris, MS.; mennis, Cx.
8 So a.; Berna, MS.
9 echt, Cx.
10 slynge, MS. (clerical error.)

Trevi

MS. Harl. 2261.

Hoc Lucan

Canus af

firmat libro

suonono.
nem evomere;¹ undecimus interfectio apri Arcadiae; duodecimus supportatio coeli, donec Atlas fatigatus respiraret. Sed ² in tertiodecimo labore, videlicet ³ in-duendo se⁴ interulum ⁵ Dejanirae,⁶ extinctus est. In quo notandum ⁷ est quod isti labores Herculi attributi vel solam ⁸ sonant historiaum, ut secundus de leone et undecimus de apro; vel solummodo spectant ad integumentum morum,⁹ et tunc fabulosum est quod explicant, quamvis ¹⁰ veritatem implicent, quaesunt tertius de fuga Harpyiarum, et quartus de raptu pomorum; vel etiam¹¹ sonant historia mixtam cum fabula, ut eæteri omnes labores. Est etiam hic¹² advertendum quod non videtur unus et idem Hercules fuisse, cui ¹³ isti duodecim labores¹⁴ attribuuntur; tum¹⁵ quia Augustinus de Civitate, libro octavodecimo, capitulo quartodecimo,¹⁶ dicit ¹⁷ quod alius fuit Hercules cui ista duodecim attribuuntur et alius qui ¹⁸ Antœum in palaestra¹⁹ devicit, et tamen Boethius²⁰ in fine quarti libri de consolatione narrat istud²¹ de Antœo²² inter duodecim labores²³ Herculis; tum etiam quia Augustinus²⁴ ubi supra et etiam²⁵ in capitulo xixe. dicit multos fuisse Herculis; et etiam²⁶ dicit quod Sampson propter mirabilem fortitudinem putatus est Hercules.

---

¹ evomuisse, C. (not D.)
² Sed] om. C.D.
³ videlicet] om. C.D.
⁴ se] om. C.D.
⁵ interulum, A.
⁶ Dejaniris, B.; Dianira, D.
⁷ sciendum, C.D.
⁸ solam] om. B.
⁹ moralem, B.
¹⁰ licet, C.D.
¹¹ etiam] om. B.
¹² hic] om. C.D.
¹³ omnes, ins. B.
¹⁴ ingentia facta, C.D.
¹⁵ etiam, ins. C.D.
¹⁶ unde, A.B.C.D. The true reference is to c. 12.
¹⁷ dicit] om. B.
¹⁸ qui] om. E.
¹⁹ palaestra, B.
²⁰ Boecius or Boetius, MSS.
²¹ illud, B.D.
²² de Antœo] om. C.D.
²³ labores] om. B.
²⁴ alius, A.
²⁵ etiam! m. C.D.
as me seide. Pe enleuenpe pe sleyng of pe boor in Arcadia.\textsuperscript{1} Pe twel\^fpe pe berynge and pe holdyng vp of heuene, while Atlas pe geant reste hym, whan he was wery. But in pe prittenpe he dede on a corsette of Ianyt,\textsuperscript{2} and deide. Here take hede pat pis\textsuperscript{3} twel\^fpe dedes pat be\^p acounted to Hercules sownep pe storie as it is i-tolde; soo doop the secounde of pe leon, and pe enleuenpe of pe boor; oper he perteynep onliche pe courerynge of pewes; and panne pe tale is a fable, but pe menyngse is ful of trowpe and of sopnesse. So is pe priddle of pe arpies, and pe fourpe of pe takyngy and ra\^yschyngye of pe goldene apples. Other he tokenep and sownep the storype meddled wip a fable; so doop alle his oper dedes of pese twelwe.\textsuperscript{4} Also here take hede, it sem\^p pat it is nou\^t al oon Hercules pat pese twel\^fpe dedes be\^p acounted to; fore\textsuperscript{5} Seint Austyn, de Civitate, libro 18, capitulo 14\textsuperscript{a}, seip pat it was an oper Hercules pat [pese dedes be\^p acounted\textsuperscript{6} to, and anoper Hercules pat]\textsuperscript{7} overcompe Antheus pe geant in wrastlynge. And also Boccius, in fine quarti libri de Consolatione tell\^ep pe\textsuperscript{8} same of Antheus among pe twelue dedes of Hercules. Also Seint Austyn, ubi supra, et capitulo 19\textsuperscript{b}, seip pat pere were meny Hercules; and also Sampson for his wonder strengpe was acounted Hercules.

the boore of Arcadia.\textsuperscript{1} The xij\textsuperscript{the} labores was the suppor-
ration of heuyn while that Atlas beenge very did reste; whiche dide or that he hade fulleffyldede the xij\textsuperscript{the} labore. Of whom hit is to be attendede, pat these labores attribute to Hercules sounde other a story, as that of the lyon, and the xij\textsuperscript{the} of the boore; other elles thei longe onely to the courerenge of maneres, and then hit is a fable that thei expresse, pane\^zbe thei do implicate trawthe, as the thrydde and iiiij\textsuperscript{the} labore were of the takenge aweye of the apples; other elles thei soynde a story mixte with a fable, as alle other labores. Also hit is to be attendede, that pese xij. labores be not to be attribute to oon Hercules, for as Seynte Austyn seythe, De Civitate Dei, libro decimo octavo, capitulo quarto decimo,\textsuperscript{9} that there was an other Hercules to whom these xij. labores were attribute, then that Hercules which overcome Antheus the gigaunte of Pales-
tria.\textsuperscript{10} And Boccius, quarto libro de Consolatione Philo-
sophiae, reheersethe that of Antheus among the xij. labores of Hercules. Also Seynte Austyn seythe that pere were mony Hercules, and also Sampson was trawede to haue be namede

\textsuperscript{1} Archadia, MSS., as usual.  
\textsuperscript{2} So MSS.; Dianier, Cx. (i.e., Dejanira.)  
\textsuperscript{3} these, Cx.  
\textsuperscript{4} So a. and Cx.; twelve dedes, MS.  
\textsuperscript{5} too, for, a.  
\textsuperscript{6} aretted, Cx.  
\textsuperscript{7} Added from a. and Cx.  
\textsuperscript{8} [he] that, Cx.  
\textsuperscript{9} The numbers are so written at length.  
\textsuperscript{10} It is possible that the translator's Latin text was corrupt.
Et in libello Phrygii Daretis de bello Trojano Jason ipse qui quaesivit pellem auream apud Colchos cognominatus est Hercules. Unde illud Ovidii tertio-decimo Metamorphoseon:

Moenia sub furti Trojana sub Hercule, et cætera. Et Ovidius octavo Met. attribuit interfecctionem apri Arcadiae Meleandro, et etiam Met. septimo attribuit fugam Harpyiarum filiis Boreæ, scilicet Zoe et Calai. Unde dicitur a nonnullis sciolis quod Hercules sit potius cognomen virorum illustrium, qui virtute et audacia singulares apparuerunt; quod etiam nominis hujus interpretatio sonare videtur. Dicitur enim Hercules ab heros, quod est vir, et cleos, gloria; quasi vir gloriosus.

CAP. XVIII.

De Græcorum fabulis, tempore potissimum Aod inventis.

Eusebios in Chronicis. Tempore Ayoth potissime in Graecia inventa sunt fabulae; et dicitur quod Aesopus primus eas invenerit ad exornandum veritatem

---

1 bello, E. ; libro, D.  
2 vellus, B.  
3 apud Colchos] om. C.D.  
4 Trojana] So D. ; Trojani, A.E.  
5 The true reading is:  
   "Moenia qui forti Trojana sub Hercule cepit."  
   Ov. Met. xiii. 23.  
6 Similiter, C.D.  
7 illud, B.  
8 So MSS. for Meleagro. See Ovid. Met. viii. 270.  
9 scilicet] om. C.D.  
10 Zethes and Calais, sons of Boreas, are mentioned by Ovid, Met. vi. 716; but Higden’s statement is a mere blunder.  
11 dicitur . . . sciolis] videtur peregrine, C.D.  
12 videbantur, the rest of the chapter being omitted, in C.D.  
13 autem, A.  
14 No title in MSS.  
15 primus] om. E.  
16 exornandum, B.
And Frigius Dares,¹ in his book of bataille of Troye, seip pat Iason pat gat ² pe weper wip the ³ goldene flees at Colchos had a surname, and was i-cleped Hercules. Perfore Ouid, Methamorphoses 13⁰, seip: Menia vnder furt ⁴ and pe Troians vnder Hercules. And Ouidius, ⁸ Methamorphoses, acontep ⁵ the sleynge of pe boor of Arcadia to Meleandrus; ⁶ and also ⁷ Methamorphoses acontep pe chasyng of pe arpies to Boreas his sones, pat heet Zoes and Calaius. ⁸ Perfore meny wise men tellep pat Hercules is pe surname of noble men and stalworpe, pat passed oper men hugely ⁹ in boldenesse and in strengpe. And so hit semep al by kyndeliche menynge of pat name; for Hercules is i-seide of heros,¹⁰ pat is a man, and of cleos, pat is blisse; as pey Hercules were to menynge a blissful man and glorious.

**Capitulum octavumdecimum.**

*Eusebius in Cronica.* In Aioth his tyme, nameliche in Grees fables were i-founde, and ¹¹ me seip pat Esopus fonde first fables for to hiʒte ¹² kyndeliche soopnesse; ¹³ for pe Hercules, for his meruellous strenʒhte. Also hit is ex-

pressede in the boko of Frigius Darets, of the batelle of Troy, that Iason, whiche did seiche the fleece of golde at Colchos, was callede Hercules. Also Ouidius, in libro octavo Metamorphoseon, ʒifethat labore of the sleeng of the boore of Arcadia to Melandrus other Melander. For that name of Hercules was ʒifen to nowble men for a singuler vertu and audacite, whiche thynge semethe to appere by interpretation of that name. For this worde, Hercules, is seide of this worde, eros, whiche is a man, and cleos, that is joy, as a glorious man.

**Capitulum decimum octavum.**

*Eusebius in Cronica.* Fables were founde specially in Grecë in the tyme of Aioth, and hit is seide that Ysupus founde theym firste to onorne trawthe naturalle, leste the secrete

---

¹ So Cx.; Daret, MS. a. β. γ.
² war, Cx.
³ the] om. a.
⁴ So a. and Cx.; fruit, MS. Trevisa cannot be blamed for making no sense of a corrupt text; nor the Harleian translator for leaving it out.
⁵ arreteth, Cx.
⁶ Meleandris, MS. (only).
⁷ So a. β. γ., Cx.; 17, MS.
⁸ So a. β. γ., Cx.; Calcanis, MS.
⁹ greetye, Cx.
¹⁰ So Cx.; eros, MS.
¹¹ as, MS. (only.)
¹² So a. β. γ.; histe wh, MS.
¹³ Sentence varied in Cx.
De varia naturalem, ne scilicet vilescerent secreta naturae. Unde secundum diversas rerum naturas et qualitates confinxe-runt deorum nomina et actiones. *Alexander in Mythol.* Utpote quod post diluvium homines de saxis et de arboribus\(^1\) nasci dicuntur, ab antiquissima\(^2\) hominum cohabitatione confictum est. Nam ante factas domos homines aut in cavis arboribus aut saxeis\(^3\) speluncis manebant; vel certe, dum debeat usus casarum, ipsi homines more pecorum vagabantur.\(^4\) *Augustinus de Civitate, libro xvii\(^6\), capitulo xii\(^6\).* Post mortem\(^5\) Josue usque ad bellum Trojanum confictae sunt fabule in Græcia; ut quod ex impetuosa libidine Vulcani cum Minerva Erichthonius\(^6\) cum pedibus dracontinis fuerit progenitus,\(^7\) fabulosum est et poeticum. Re autem vera in templo Vulcani et Minervae, quod ambo Athenis commune habebant,\(^8\) inventus est puer expositus, dra- cone involutus, qui eum significabat\(^9\) magnum futurum. Et sic\(^10\) propter commune amborum templum dicebatur utriusque filius; cum tamen ejus parentes fuissent\(^11\) ignoti. Item de Triptolemo,\(^12\) quod jubente Cerere anguibus portatus alitibus indigentibus terris frumenta volando contulerit. Item de Minotauro, quod fuit bestia inclusa labirintho,\(^13\) quo cum intrassent\(^14\) homines,

---

\(^1\) Transposed in B.
\(^2\) *antiqua*, C.D.
\(^3\) *in saxeis*, C.D.
\(^4\) Slightly varied in C.D.
\(^5\) *Post mortem*] A diebus, C.D.
\(^6\) *Erichthonius*, MSS.
\(^7\) *esse progenitum*, C.D.
\(^8\) *habebat*, A.
\(^9\) *signavit*, C.D.
\(^10\) *sic*] om. C.D.
\(^11\) *esse*, C.D.
\(^12\) Tritolomo, MSS.
\(^13\) *laberinto or laborinto*, MSS.
\(^14\) *transissent*, D.
So Trevisa.  

priuate of kynde schulde nouȝt be despised: perfore [by]\(^1\) kynde of pinges and by dyuere manere of doyynge pey feyned names and worcheynge of goddes. *Aleyyn*,\(^2\) *in Mythologia*. And so he\(^3\) feyned pat after pe flood men came of stonees and of trees; bote pat was i-feyned for pe manere wonynge of men in olde tyme; for, ere\(^4\) housynge were i-made, men wonede in holownesse of treen oþer in dennes of erpe and of stones, and som wente aboute as it were bestes. *Augustinus, libro 18°, capituto 13°*. After Iosue his deep anon to pe bataille of Troye fables were i-feyned in Grecia. As pat Vulcanus\(^5\) in grete hete and breynynge of leccherie wip Minerua gat Eructorius\(^6\) i-foted as a dragon, pat is a fable and a poetes feynynge and sawe. But pe soop menynges is pat in pe citee Athene was oo temple of Vleanus and of Minerua; in pat temple was a childe i-founde byclipped aboute wip a dragoun. Pat bytokened pat pe childe schulde be greeyt; and for pe childe was i-founde in here bope tyme, perfore pe childe was i-cleped hir bope sone. Also Tritholomus, pat was i-bore of fleynge addres in to nedyn londes at pe heste of Cereres\(^7\) and brouȝt hem whete, it is a fable. Also of Minotaurus,\(^8\) pat was a best i-closed in laborintus, Dedalus his hous; and

thynges of nature schulde wexe vile. Wherefore thei feyne dyuere manere and actiones of goddes after dyuere natures and qualites of thynges. *Alexander in Mythologia*. As thei seide men to haue bene made of stones after the grete floode; whiche was a thyngene feynede of olde men, for men inhabite other in dennes made of ston, other in holo trees, afores that they hade howses made; other elles, if thei hade not suche habitaciones, thei wente abowte in the maner of bestes. *Augustinus, libro decimo octavo, capitulo 13°*. Fables were made in the londe of Greece after the dethe of Iosue vn to the batelle of Troy, as Vulcanus to haue tariede with Minerva, and that Erutorius was geten with the feete of a dragon, whiche is but a fable and a fenyede thyngene of poetes. Neuerthelesse there was a childe founde in the temple of Vulcanus and of Minerva at Athenes, sette per compassede and wraprede abowte with the tayle of a dragon, whiche signifiiede the childe to be a grete man in tyme to come, whiche childe was called the childe of Vulcanus and of Minerva, the faders of whom were not known in trawthe. Also hit is seide off Tritho-

---

1 Added from conjecture only.  
2 So also a. b. 7. Cx. Read Alexander.  
3 he] om. MS.  
4 So a.; here, MS.; Cx. omits twenty words.  
5 Vleanus, MS. a. b.; and so below (not 7.).  
6 So a. b. 7. (for Erichthonius); Eructorius, MS.; Erucioni, Cx.  
7 So all MSS. (or Cerreres.) The error is certainly due to Trevisa.  
8 So b.; Minotaurus, MS., a. 7.
whan men wente into pat hous, þey were so i-briged \(^1\) pat þey couplenowȝ\(^2\)t come out. Also of Centaures, pat were i-medled of mankynde and of hors kynde. Also of \(^2\) Cerberus pe hound of helle, pat þadde þre heedes. Also of Frixus and his suster Elle, pat were i-bore of a wether by þe ayer and fliȝ\(^3\) as foules. Also of Gorgon þe hore,\(^4\) pat selie was i-hered wip addres and tornd in to stones men þat byhelde her. Also of Bellifront, pat he was i-bore of a sleynge hors wip fêperes and wynges; his hors heet Pegasus. Also of Amphion, pat he plesed stones, and drew hem to hym wip sweetnesse of his\(^5\) harpynge. Also of Dedalus þe carpunter and his sone Icarus, þat made hem wynges of fêperes and fîȝe as foules. Also of Anteus; hym slow\(^6\) Hercules. Anteus was þe sone of þe erpe; þ perfere, þam he fel doun, he roos anon aȝen in wel more strengþe. Isidorus, libro \(^1\)\(^1\)°. Also Geryon, þe geant kyng of Speyne, pat was i-slave of Hercules, and was descreuen in þre liknesses and schappes, it is a fable. For þere were pre breþperen so wel acordynge to gedres þat it semed þat þey hadde oon soule, oon witte, and oon wil. Also þe hoores\(^6\) Gorgons, i-hered as serpentes, hadde oon yȝe, and tornde in to stones men þat byhelde hem, it is a fable. But þere were þre sustres

lomus, that corne beeng skarse, he was brouȝhte in to the MS. Harl. 2261. aier with bryddes, whiche flyenge brouȝhte corne to londes hauenge necessite þer of. Also that Cerberus scholde be a dogge of helle. Also that Frixus and Elle þys sustyr cariede with a weder flye. Also that the ylle disposede woman, Gorgones by name, chaungede men beholdehen here into stones. Also of Bellofrons, that he was cariede with an horse flyenge with wynges, þe horse of whom was callede Pegasus. Also of Amphion, that he atraete stones to hym thro the sweetenesse of an harpe. Also of Dedalus, and Icarus his son, that they did flye. Also that Anteus was the son of the erth, whom Hercules did sele, in that he fallenge and tawchenge pe erth was more stronge when he did aryse. Isidorus, libro undecimo. Also hit is but a fable that Geryon the gigaunte and kyng of Speyne, sleyne by Hercules, was of þre similitudes. For ðere were þre breþer of suche concorde that thei were al se as of oon sawle. That the commune women, Gorgones by þeir names, turnede men beholdehen them in to stones, is but a fable. But there were iij. sustyrs as of oon pul-

\(^1\) begged, Cx. 
\(^2\) of \[\] om. MS. 
\(^3\) flewen, Cx. 
\(^4\) strompet, Cx. 
\(^5\) his \[\] om. MS. 
\(^6\) strompettes, Cx.
polychronicon ranulphi higden

368 dinis, quasi unius oculi; quae spectatores suos, ac si lapides essent, obstupefaciebant. Item quod fingunt tres Sirenes fuisset ex parte virgines et ex parte volucres, habentes alas et ungulas; quarum una voce, altera tuba, tertia lyra canebat, quae navigantes trahebant ad naufragia, fabula est. Sed fuerunt meretrices, quae quia adherentes sibi ducebant ad in-opiam, ideo naufragium ingerere dicuntur. Item quod fingunt Scyllam fuisset fremam succinctam capitibus caninis cum latratibus magnis, hoc dicitur propter fretum maris Siculi, ubi navigantes, verticibus concurrentium undarum exterriti, undas latrare putabant. Sic fingunt Hydram serpem cum novem capitibus, ita quod uno abscisso tria succrescant. Constat Hydram fuisset locum quendam aquas evomentem, ubi uno meatu clauso multi erumpabant; quod videns Hercules locum exussit et sic meatus

1 quasi unius oculi om. C.D.
2 ac si velut C.D.
3 finguntur C.D.
4 Sirenes om. E.; before fingunt in C.D.
5 tibia A.C.D.
6 naufragium C.D.
7 sibi om. B.
8 So A. B. C. D.; ingererebant (ingerere being followed by bant in another hand) E.; perhaps for ingerere dicebant.
9 Cilium B.
10 esse C.D.
11 fit C.D.
12 sevictum B. (i.e. sacevitum.)
13 ubi] in quo C.D.
14 virtutibus C.D.
15 aquarum C.D.
16 estimant C.D.
17 ita] om. C.D.
18 succrescent C.D.
19 vocem B.
20 quod videbant] quem B.
21 excussit B.
all of oon fairnesse; men pat byhelde hem [pei] made hem as stille and as stedfast as stones. Also pe pre Sirenes, pat were half maydens, half foules, and hadde wynges and clawes as haukes; and oon of hem songe, pat ojer pipede, and pe pridd harpede, and drow; to hemward schipmen pat seilled in pe see in to shipbruche; is a fable. But pere were pre hoores pat brouste men pat vseedem in to meschief; and perfore me seide pat pey brouste hem to shipbreche. Also [pat] me feynep pat Scylla was a woman byelipped aboute wip hedes of houndes and wip grete berkyng of houndes, pat is 1-seide for pe wawes of see Siculoys, pat flaschep and waschep vppon a rokke pat hatte Scylla, makep suche manere noyse pat men pat seillep perby beep so aferd pat pey wenepr pe wawes berkep pat waschep on pat rokke. So pey feynep pat pe serpente Ydra wip nyne hedes; and if oon hede were i-smyte of, panne grewe vp pat oon. De soope tale is pat Ydra was somtyme a place pat wonderliche and perilousliche caste vp water; and if oo water wery were i-stopped, pe water brak vp in meny places and weyes. Hercules seigh pat, and destroyed the swolwe and closede alle pe weies; per-
critude, whiche meruaylede their beholdiers, as if thee were stones. Also that poetes feyne iij. meremaydes to be in parte virgines and in parte bryddes, hauenge wynges and talandes, of whom oon songe with here voyce, an other with a trumppe, pat other with an harpe, whiche drawede men in the see to grete perelles, hit is but a fable. But there were iij. commune women, which inducde men drawenge to theym to grete pouerte, wherefore thee were seide to induce men in to grete perelle. Also that thei feyne Scylla to be a woman succincte with the hedes of dogges, with grete berkeng; that is seide for the see of Sicielle, where in men snyelenge and dredenge the turnenges of water per trawede the water to berke like a dogge. Soe in like wise men feyne Idra, pe serpente, to hauene hade ix. hedes, so that oon kyitte awei iij. increasede, whiche Idra was a place conteynenge water, and euomenge hit, where of oon place stoppede other broste vp in many places, whiche thynge Hercules perceyvreng schuttle those goenges furthe; wherefore hit is seyde that Hercules

\begin{align*}
\text{Seilla, MS., and Silla below.} \\
\text{[pat] om. MS.} \\
\text{a] that, a. B. γ. and Cx.} \\
\text{so a. and Cx.; rhoke, MS.} \\
\text{Probably we should read was with, or if not, cancel pat.}
\end{align*}
illos unde Hydram serpem extinxisset. Isidorus, libro primo, capitulo tricesimo. Fabulae dicuntur a fando, non quia sunt res factae, sed loquendo fictae; quas poetae primo induxerunt triplici de causa. Aut enim causa delectandi, quales sunt apud Plautum et Terentium, et ille quae vulgo narratur; aut etiam ad naturam rerum velandam seu exornandam, ut quod Vulcanus sit claudus, quia per naturam nonnulla rectus est ignis; et quod Chimæra, hominis ætatem exprimens, sit bestia triformis; cujus prima pars, adolescens, est ferox, ut leo; secunda, juventus, acute videt, ut caprea, seu per luxuriam fervida foetet, ut capra; tertia, senectus, casibus est inflexus, ut draco. Sic fabula Hippocentauri ex homine et equo mixti, humanae vitæ velocitatem exprimit. Tertio, fabulae constringuntur ad mores compounding; ut cum res finguntur ad se loquentes, ut per narrationem fictam ad quod agitur vera significatio referatur; ut apud Horatium de mure et mustela, apud Aesopum et Avianum de vulpe et lupo, et in libro

De variis fabularum generibus.
fore me feyned 1 pat he destroyed Ydra pe serpent. Isidorus, libro primo, capitulio 13°. Fables beep i-seide of fando, pat is spekyng; nouȝt for pei bep soop indede, but i-feyned in spekyng. Poetes bronȝte in fables for pe skiles; for likyng of 2 talkyng and of fuyre spekinge; suche beep pe fables [of Plautus and of Terentius and fables] 3 pat beep comounliche i-tolde. Also for helynge and hiȝtinge 4 of kynde; so me seip pat Vulcannus 5 haltep, for 6 pe fuyre is neuer euene; Vulcanus is i-feyned god of fuyr. So Chimera is i-feyned a beest of pe manere schappe and kynde, and bytokeneþ pe ages of mankynde; pe firste ȝowpe of manhode 7 is cruel as a lyoun; pe seconde age of manhode is scharp of siȝt as a goot, oper stynkeþ by leccherie as a goot; pe prیدe age is elde and bowpe as a dragoun, and wastep alle away. And so pe fable of Y pocentaurus, 8 pat was feyned i-medled of hors kynde and of mankynde, bytokeneþ pe swift passyngue of manis lyf. Also fables beep i-feyned for derke and faire manere speking of þewes; as whan me feynep pat pinges pat konneþ no resoune spekeþ hem self; pat by pe tale pat is i-feyned pe soop by tokenyngue may be remeued [to pat] 9 pat is sopeliche i-doo in dede. So Oras 10 spekeþ of pe Mous and pe Wesel, and Esopus and Avenet of pe Fox and of pe Wolf, and in libro Iudicium did see Idræ the serpent. Isidorus, libro primo, capitulio tricesimo primo. Hit is to be attended that poets in
duced fables for iij, especialle causes. Oon was for cause of pleasure and delectacion, as Plautus 11 and Terentius do
erhese, and also the fables that be reherse of commune peple. An other cause was for nature to be couered and
onornde that as a sigmente callede chimera, expressenghe the age of a man, scholde be of a triplicite nature. The
firste parte of whom, that is adolescence, is cruelle as a lyon. The secunde is youthe, scharpe of siȝhte, or elles
ille sauorenge like to a goote. The thrydde is age, de-
clynenge to feblenesse like to a dragoun. Therfore hit may be sechewed that fables were ordeinede to the com-
posicion and cause of vertuous exercise, that thanȝhe thyngeþ be feynedee the signification of theyne is pro-
fitable, as in Oratus of the mouse and wesylle, in Ysope and Arrian of the fox and of the wulfe, and Demosthenes 12

1 feynep, a. ȝ. 2 So a. ȝ. Cx.; and, MS. 3 Added from a. ȝ. and Cx. 4 helthe and enhauing, Cx. 5 Vicanus, MS., here and below. 6 for me seip, MS., a. (not ȝ.) 7 manhood, a. 8 Read Hippocentaurus, but the
barbarous form indicates the false derivation: cf. Y pocras, Y polita, &c. 2 Added from a. ȝ. Cx. 10 Orace, Cx. 11 Plautus, or Plautus, Harl. MS., and so below. 12 Demostines, Harl. MS.
Judicum de lignis Libani, et apud Demosthenem de lupis et canibus ad liberationem oratorum conflictis.  

Ranulphus. Et hoc est quod dicit Augustinus libro De Mendacio: "Fabulae," inquit, "licet veritatem in se non habeant, faciunt tamen in re significata." Augustinus, libro tertio, capitulo tertio. Auctoritate etiam Romana firmatum est quod Aeneas ex matre dea Venere sit genitus; quod Romulus ex patre deo Marte sit genitus. Sed ego non credo, sicut nee Varro Romanus historiographus doctus credidit; dicens latenter utile esse civibus, ut viri fortis, etiam si falsum sit, se credant ex diis progenitos, ut eo modo animus humanus, velut divinae stirpis fiduciam gerens, res maiores aggrediendas praesumat audacius, agat vehementius, consummet felicius. Alexander in Mythol. Fabularum, teste Macrobio super somnium Scipionis, aliae causa delectationis confinguntur, quales sunt comediae Menandri et Terentii, et hae ad philosophos non pertinent. Aliae vero utilitatis causa ad exhortationem confinguntur, in quibus aut ipsa materia aut narra-
of pe treen of Libanus; and so speke\footnote{1} Demosthenes\footnote{1} of wulifes and houndes i\-feyned for pe deliuerance of pe advoketes and ditoures.\footnote{2} But. And pat is pat Seynt Austyn seip in his book De\footnote{2} Mendacio. Fables, as seip Seynt Austyn, pe\textsuperscript{y}z pey haue no so\penesse in ham selfe, nopeles pey makep so\penesse in ping pat pe\textsuperscript{y}z betokenep.\footnote{4} Augustinus, libro\textsuperscript{3}, capitulo\textsuperscript{3}. By auctorite of pe Romayns it was affermed pat pe goddes Venus was Enyas his moder, and pat god Mars was Romulus his fader. But I trowe not so; Varro\footnote{5} trowe\footnote{5} it nou\textsuperscript{y}t, pe writere of stories of Rome, pat seip priueliche, it were profitable to citeseyns pat stronge men and orpede trowe\footnote{6} pat pey ben i\-gete\footnote{6} of goddes, pe\textsuperscript{y}z it be false; pat in pat manere pe men hertes schulde be pe boldere, and haue trust in pe lynam\footnote{8} of goddes, and auntr\footnote{9} hem to pe grettere dedes, and doon\footnote{10} gret dedes wip pe more boldenesse and myf\footnote{1} in trist of gracious ende by cause pat pey holde\footnote{9} hem self of pe kynde of goddes.\footnote{11} Alexander in Mythologia. Macrobius super somnium Scipionis seip som fables beep i\-feyned by cause of likynge; suche beep of Menander and Terentius, and suche longe\footnote{11} nou\textsuperscript{y}t to philosofres. And som fables beep i\-feyned by cause of profi\textsuperscript{2} in excitynge and conforte; in pe whiche fables pe matiere, pat me spekep of, oper pe

of wulifes and dogges, made to the deliuaunce of poetes. Seynte Austyn acordethe to this, libro De\footnote{2} Mendacio, seyenge, than\textsuperscript{y}fable fables be not trewe, neuertheles theye cause trawthe in the thyng significent by theyme. Augustinus de\footnote{2} Civitate Dei, libro\footnote{9} tertio, capitulo\footnote{9} tertio. Also hit is confirmate by the auctorie of the Romanes that Eneas was geten of that goddesse callede Venus, and that Romulus was gotten of that godde callede Mars; but y\footnote{11} ziffe not credence to that seieghge, neither Varro the writer of stories of the Romanes\footnote{11} ziffe credence perto, seyenge, Hit is profitable that men of nobilit\footnote{10} ziffe to credence peim to be geten of goddes, and also to citeynnes, that the herte of man bolde throu hit scholde presume and be more bolde to go to gretethe thynges. Alexander, in Mythologia. As Macrobius rehersethe of the dreames of Scipio, somme fables be feynede for cause of delectation, as the fables of Menander and of Terentius; and theye do not perteyne to philosofres. Somme be feynede for cause of vtilite to the exhortacion of peple, in whom other pat mater, other

\textsuperscript{1} Demosthenes, MSS.  
\textsuperscript{2} lauers, Cx.  
\textsuperscript{3} hit, a.; a., γ.  
\textsuperscript{4} neithed theye represente and endue to manner mynde soethesse that they betokene and signeffe, Cx.  
\textsuperscript{5} So Cx.; Farro, MS.  
\textsuperscript{6} trowed, Cx.  
\textsuperscript{7} were bigeten, Cx.  
\textsuperscript{8} lynamge, Cx.  
\textsuperscript{9} auenture, Cx.  
\textsuperscript{10} do, a, β, γ, and Cx.  
\textsuperscript{11} Clause slightly varied in Cx.
tionis ordo de re ficta et \(^1\) fictae,\(^2\) (hoc est \(^3\) falsum per falsum) narratur, ut patet in fabulis Æsopi et Aviani. Et nec istæ ad philosophos \(^4\) spectant. Aut etiam res vera per ficta narratur, quales sunt fictitiae Hesiodi et Orphei de deorum actu et progenie; et hujusmodi \(^5\) non est fabula sed fabulosa narratio, quæ si fiat per obscena, turpia, vel monstruosa, non spectat ad philosophos\(^4\) nec ad thelogos; sed illa quæ narratur per pia et honesta ad philosophos pertinent. Sic Plato finxit quendem militem Er\(^6\) nomine surrexisse a mortuis,\(^7\) et multa de animæ immortalitate narrasse; sic\(^8\) finxit Tullius Scipionem somniasse de animæ immortalitate.\(^9\) Ranulphus.\(^10\) Et Boethius finxit Philosophiam in specie puellæ sibi\(^11\) apparuisse. \(^12\) His modis\(^13\) poterit theologus uti temperate, excepto penultimo\(^14\) modo. Petrus.\(^15\) Tempore Ayoth Apollo ille filius Latoneæ secundum traditionem Graecorum, artem medicinæ invenit, et lyram condidit. Ranulphus.\(^17\) Veruntamen, secundum Isidorum libro tertio Etym., Mercurius postmodum sub diebus\(^18\) Ge-

---

1 aut, B.  
2 et, ins. B.  
3 quando, ins. B.  
4 spectant ... philosophos] om. C.D.  
5 So A.; hujus, E.  
6 Eræ, B.  
7 a mortuis] om. B.  
8 sicut, C. (not D.)  
9 sic ... immortalitate] om. B.  
10 Ranulphus] om. C.D.  
11 sibî] om. C.D.  
12 Omnibus, ins. C.D.  
13 predictio, ins. C.D.  
14 ultimo, B.  
15 Petrus] om. C.D.  
16 Mercurius, ins. C.D.  
17 Ranulphus] om. C.D.  
18 tempore, C.D.
orde of tellynge of þe þing þat is i-feyned is feynyngeliche i-tolde; þat is to menyng, so fals is tolde by a noþer false. So it fareþ in Esopus his fables and in Anian his fables also; and þese fables longeth noþt to philosofres.1 Also somtyne a sop sawe is i-tolde by a feynyng2 tale; and soche were þe feynynge of Hesiodus3 and of Orpheus, when he spekeþ4 of dyners dedes and kynde of goodes;5 and such a tale is no fable, but a tale liche a fable. And if suche a tale is i-tolde by liknesse of foule þing and harlotrie, þat it longeth noþt to philosofres [noþer to dynynes; but siche as beþ tolde by liknesse of feirnesse and of honeste perteyne to philosophris].6 So Plato feynede þat a knyžt, þat hebet Er, avos from7 dep to lyue, and tolde meny þinges of þe euerlastyng yeþ of manis soule.8 And Boys8 feynede þat Philosofye appereþ to hym in þe lyknesse of a mayde; in þis manere may a denyn9 vse ensamples manerliche in his talkyng and spekyng.

Petrus. In Ayoth his tyme þe lattre Apollo,10 þat was Latona his11 son, as þe Grees telleþ, fond vþ þe art of phisik and made harpe.12 Þ. Nepoleþ Isidorus, libro 3°, Etym., scip þat Mercu-

the ordre of the narracion of the thyng þe feynede, that is feynede falsely, and telled þe þing þat is feynede falsely, and these fables perteyne not to a philosophe; as the fables of Isoap and Anian. Other elles a trewe thyng is rehearsed by a feynede thyng, as the seynges of Esiodus and of Orpheus of the acts and progeny of goddes; and that is not a fable, but a fabulous narracion; whiche perteyne not to philosophres and to diynes. But fables whiche be rehearsed by meke thynges and honeste, as Plato feynede a knyžhte, Er by name, to haue risen from dethe, and to haue schewede mony thynges of the immortalite of the sawle. Soc in lyke wise Tullius feynede Scipio to haue dreamede of the immortalite of the sawle. Þ. Also Boe-tius, the grete clerke, feynede philosophy to haue appereþ to hym. A diyuyn may vse these maneres, the laste maner excepte but oon. Petrus. The latere Apollo, son of Latona, after the wrytenghe of men of Grewe, founde the arte of medicines, and made an harpe, in the tyme of Aioth. Þ. And, after Isidorus, Ethymol., libro 3°, that man

1 Clause varied in Cx.
2 feymel, Cx.
3 Cysiodus, MS.
4 they speke, Cx.
5 Goddes, Cx.; the more usul orm in MS, also.
6 Added from β. γ.
7 son, MS.
8 Boece, β. Cx.
9 dyuyne, Cx.
10 Appollo, MSS.
11 Latonaes, Cx.; both forms are instructive.
12 harpes, Cx.
deonis ad lyram sic\(^1\) inventam septem chordas addidit, et in\(^2\) nervos sonum strinxit in hunc modum: Cum Nilus post suam inundationem regrederetur in\(^3\) proprios meatus, variaque in campis animalia reliquist - set\(^4\) mortua, relict a est et\(^5\) testudo; qua\(^6\) putrefacta nervi extendebantur infra corium\(^7\) conchae, qui ad tenuem auram sonum\(^8\) reddabant. Quod comperiens Mercurius ad ejus similitudinem\(^9\) lyram condidit, et\(^10\) Orpheo citharædeo tradidit. Petrus. Illis etiam temporibus praefatus Mercurius syringas\(^11\) inventit, quæ sunt musica instrumenta de fistulis seu calamis composita; quorum nomen tractum\(^12\) est\(^13\) a Syringe\(^14\) uxore Cadmi,\(^15\) quæ propter zelum harmonie a viro suo recessit.\(^16\) Incertum est autem quis fuit iste Mercurius, an Hermes, an Trimegistus philosophus, an Mercurius ille major;\(^17\) nam\(^18\) apud Josephum tres leguntur Mercurii. Isidorus, libro quinto, capitulo viij.\(^19\) Eo

\(^{1}\) sic\] om. B.
\(^{2}\) in\] om. B.
\(^{3}\) ad, C.D.
\(^{4}\) relict a essent, C.; relict a fuisse - sent, D.
\(^{5}\) etiam\] om. B.; etiam et, D.
\(^{6}\) que, B.; de qua, A.
\(^{7}\) So D.E.; cornu, A.B., which is perhaps right.
\(^{8}\) sibilum, A.B.C.D.
\(^{9}\) speciem, C.D.
\(^{10}\) et\] om. E.

\(^{11}\) seringas, B.
\(^{12}\) tractatum, B.
\(^{13}\) trahitur, C.D.
\(^{14}\) Seringa, B.; Siringa, A.D.E.
\(^{15}\) Cadene, B.
\(^{16}\) recesserat, C.D.
\(^{17}\) minor, C.D.
\(^{18}\) nam . . . Mercuri\[] qui fuit nepos majoris Mercurii apud Josephum, C.D.
\(^{19}\) capitulo viij\] om. B.C.D. The true reference is lib. v. c. 39.
rius afterward in Gedeon 1 his tyme putte seene strenges to pe harpe, pat was to fore honde i-founde; and pey putte to pe strenges and streyned hem in pis manere. Pe ryuer Nilus 2 had be vppe and byflowe pe lond and was a falle 3 into pe chanel azen, pan lay many beestes dede on pe feddes, and among opere lay a dede snayle. Whan pis snayl was i-roted, pe senewes 4 were i-streyned with yyne pe skyn of pe snayles hous, and sownde as pe wynde blew pe perynne 5 esiliche and sofeliche. Dan Mercurius took hede 6 perto and made an harpe to pe liknesse perof, and took hit to Orpheus pe harpour. Trevisa. I rede among pe wondres of Ynde, pat snayles beep pere so grete and so huge pat a man may be herborwed in a snayles hous. Petrus. 7 Also pat tyme pe forseide Mercurius fonde vp an instrument of musyk pat hatte Syringa [by the name of that woman Syringa] 8 pat was Cadmus 9 his wif. She 10 wente away from hire housbonde for louse of musyk and melodie. It is uncertynte whichke Mercurius pis was; wheper Mercurius Hermes, oper Mercurius Trimigestus pe philosophe, oper pe [grete] 11 Mercurius; for Iosephus spekep of pre, of pe whiche enerie heet Mercurius. Isidorus, libro quinto. 12 Also pat tyme in Gres

Mercurius did adde to the harpe vij. cordes, in the tyme of Gedeon, and streynede peim in to a sownde in this maner folowenge. When that grete floode callede of Nilus after the floenge of hit returnede aegyne, levenge dierse bestes in the feldes, a schelle fishe was lefte also, whiche putrefie, the senowes of hit were extente within the couerenge of that fishe, whiche zafte a lytell sownde; Mercurius percyngenge that, made an harpe vn to the similitude of hit, and toke hit to Orpheus the nowble harper. Petrus. The seide Mercurius founde in that tyme siringas, whiche be musicalle instrumentes made of pipes other reedes, whichke name was taken of Siringa, wife to Cadmus, whiche departede from here housetonde for the luffe of armony. But hit is not hade in certitude what Mercury this was, wheder hit was Hermes, other Trimigestus the philosophe, other elles grete Mercurius. For Iosephus rehersete that there were thre nowble men callede by that name Mercurius. Isidorus, Ethym., libro 5o, et

---

1 So γ. Cx.; Gedion, MSS.
2 Salus, MS.
3 was ebbed, Cx.
4 seenuve, a.
5 peron, a, β, γ, and Cx.
6 hede] om. MS.
7 Reference added from Cx.
8 Added from β, γ, Cx.
9 Cadmus, MS. (not Cx.) Various slight errors in spelling proper names have been tacitly corrected in this and the following chapters.
10 he, a, a; heo, β, γ.
11 Added from β, γ.
12 So a. and Cx. (who has sexto); Petrus, MS.
378 POLYCHRONICON RANULPHI HIGDEN

quoque ¹ tempore chorus in Grecia repertus est.² Petrus, vj°.³ Quod quidem instrumentum Strabos ⁴ dicit esse pellem cum duabus eicitis, per quarum ⁵ alteram inspiratur ⁶ et ⁷ per ⁸ alteram ⁹ sonus redditur.

CAP. XIX.

De Delbora, et de ultimis Argivorum, et de primis Laurentinorum regibus.¹⁰

Delbora prophetissa de tribu Ephraim simul cum Barak de tribu Neptalim, connumeratis viginti annis quibus Jabyn ¹² rex Chanaan afflixit ¹³ Israel, rexit populum ¹⁴ quadraginta annis. In cujus diebus reges Argivorum defecerunt, qui quingentis quadraginta annis regnaverunt a primo ¹⁵ Inachus usque ad tempora Pelopis primi Peloponnnesium regis. Et tunc translatum est regnum ad ¹⁶ Mycenae.¹⁷ Eo ¹⁸ tempore cepit regnum Laurentinorum in Italia, ubi post mortem Jani et Saturni, qui diu ibidem regnaverant, Picus filius Saturni ¹⁹ cepit regnare. Augustinus de Civitate, libro octavodecimo, capitido tertiodecimo. Circa illud tempus obiit Dionysus, ²⁰ qui et Liber pater dicitur, qui ali-

¹ etiam, C.D.
² adinventas est, C.D.
³ vj°] om. A.D.
⁴ so A.B.C.D.; Stabius, E.
⁵ aquarum, B.
⁶ [inspirator, B.
⁷ et] om. C.D.
⁸ per] om. B.
⁹ adian, C.D.
¹⁰ No title in MSS.
¹¹ A.B.C.D. omit reference. It should be lib. xviii. c. 15.
¹² Jubius, A.D.
¹³ oppressit, C.D.
¹⁴ rexit populum] So A.D.; om. E.; regens populum Israel, B.
¹⁵ scilicet, ins. B.C.D.
¹⁶ So A.B., om. E.; usque ad, C.; usque, D.
¹⁷ Micenas, A.B.; Micenas, D.
¹⁸ quoque, ins. C.D.
¹⁹ jam, ins. D.
²⁰ Dionysius, MSS. and Harl. MS. as usual.
was i-founde vp an instrument of musyk that hadde chorus. Trevisa.

Petrus. Strabus seip that instrument is a skynne\(^1\) wip tweie pipes; by oon pipe pe ayer goo\(\mathring{p}\) yn, and by pe ooper pe soun goo\(\mathring{p}\) out.

Capitulum nonum decimum.

Augustinus, de Civitate, libro 18\(\text{o}\), capitulo 13\(\text{o}\). Delbora pat woman was a prophetes of the lynage of Effraym. Pis Delbora wip Barach of pe lynage of Neptalym rulde pe peple of Israel fourty \(\text{y}r\)ere, for to rekene twenty \(\text{y}r\)ere in pe whiche Iabyn kynge of Canaan pursued Israel. In hir tyme kynges of Arguyues faillede pat hadde i-regned fyue hundred \(\text{y}r\)ere and fourty, pat was from pe firste Inachus to pe firste Pelops his tyme, kynge of pe Peloponenses; and panne pe kynghom torne to pe Mecenes.\(^2\) Pat tyme bygan pe kynghom of Laurentynes in Italy. After pe deth of Ianus and Saturnus pat hadde longe i-regned \(\text{y}r\)ere, pere regned Picus Saturnus his sone. Augustinus de Civitate, ubi supra. Aboute pat tyme deyde Denys pat heet also Liber Pater, pat werred in

Petrus. A instrumente callede chorus, other a chore, was MS. Harl. founde in Greece, of fewe cordes and stryuges, which is callede nowe a crowthe or a crowde.

Capitulum decimum nonum.

Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro decimo octavo, capitulo decimo tertio. The xx\(\text{i}\) yere of Barach annumerate, which was of the tribe of Neptalym, in whom Iabyn, kynge of Canaan, trowblede pe peple of Israel, Delbora, the prophetisse of the tribe of Effraym, gournerede the peple of Israel xl\(\text{i}\) yere. In the dayes of whom the kynges of men callede Argyues began to fayle, which reignede \(\mathring{v}\)c. and xl\(\text{v}\) yere from Inachus to Pelopis firste kyngye of men of Peloponense; and then the realme of Argynes was translate to Micenas. In which tyme the realme of Laurentines began in Italy, where Picus the son of Saturnus began to reigne after the deth of his fader and of Ianus, whiche reignede there longe. Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro decimo octavo, capitulo tertio decimo. Dionysus other Liber pater diede abowte thys tyme, which \(\mathring{f}\)ifenge batelle to

\(^1\) is a skynne\] om. Cx. | \(^2\) So a. and Cx.; Macenas, MS.
quando Indiam debellans habuit feenas in suo exercitu; tandem tamen devincebatur 1 a Perseo. Ejus sepulchrum 2 aureum adhuc ostenditur in Thessalia juxta Apollinem Delphicum in 3 Parnasso. Mida 4 rex dives sub hoc tempore regnavit in Phrygia, de quo poetae multa confixerunt, sicut patet in Mythologia et 5 Fulgentii et Alexandri. 6 Et Ilium ab Ilo 7 filio Apollinis condita est in 8 Troja.

CAP. XX.

De Gedeon, Minoe, et Daedalo.


1 vincebatur, C.D., which transpose other words.  
2 sepulchrum] om. B.  
3 monte, ins. C.D.  
4 Mida, C. (not D.)  
5 et] om. A.  
6 de . . . Alexandri] om. C.D.  
7 Ilio, MSS.  
8 in] om. E.  
9 connumeratis, C.D.  
10 populum] om. B.  
11 in . . . anno] om. C.D.  
13 Petrus, ins. C.D.  
14 regis Athenarum] om. C.D.
Inde, and hadde in his oost men and wommen i-medled to Trevisa. 

Nopeles at pe laste Perseus slowʒ hym. His goldene buryls is ʒit i-seyn 1 in Thessalia bysides Appolyn Delphicus in mount Parnassus. Mida pe riche kyng regnede pat tyme in Frigia; of hym poetes feynede meny þinges, as it is i-write in Mythologia Fulgentii and Alexandri. And Ilus, 2 Appolyn his sone, bulde Ilium in Troye.

Capitulum vicesimum.

Gedeon, pat heet Iherobal, was ledere of Israel fourty þere, forto rekene 3 eʒte þere þat Israel servede Midianites and Amalchites. Iosephus seip þat pe citee Tyrus was i-bulde in Gedeon his tyme, aboute an 4 two hondred þere and fourty to fore Salomon his temple. Petrus. Minos, kyng of Creta, Iupiter his sone, occupied pe see þat [tyme and ʒaf lawe to pe men of Crete. Pat tyme] 5 pe strong man Theseus, Egeus þe kynges sone of Athene, slowʒ Minotaurus in þe tornemente. Perfore men of Ynde, hade women mixte with men in his hoste. MS. HARL. 2261. But at the laste he was deuicte of Perseus, whose sepulcre of golde is schewed þitte in Thessalia, nye to Apollo Delphicus in Parnassus. 6 Mida, the riche kyngye, reignede abowte this tyme in Frigia, of whom poetes feynede mony thynges, as hit is schewed in Methologe of Fulgentius and of Alexander. And also a cite callede Ilium was edisiede and made in Troy by Ilus the son of Apollo.

Capitulum vicesimum.

The viij. yere connumerate in whom the peple of Israel servede the Madianites, Gedeon other Iherobal gonnede the peple of Israel xl 1 yere. In the thyme of whom, after Iosephus, that cite callede Tirus was made, abowte þe and xl 1 yere afore the makenge of the temple of Salomon. Petrus. Minos kyngge of Creta, son of Iupiter, obtayned that tyme the sec, and ʒaf lawe to men of Creta. In whiche tyme Theseus, the son of Egeus, kyngge of Athenes, a myȝhty man, which ouercome a beste

1 seic, a. 2 Ilus, Cx.; Iulius, MS. and a. 3 So a. and Cx.; reigne, MS. 4 So MS. a. ß. γ. 5 Added from a. and Cx. 6 Pernasus, Harl. MS.
interemit; quam ob causam Athenienses qui prius tributarii fuerant a praestatione vectigalis liberabantur.\footnote{So B.; liberantur, A.D.E.} Fuit autem Minotaurus vir quidam inhumanus multum valens in lucta palæstræ. Et etiam fuit carnifex regis Minois; qui ideo sic dictus est, quasi Minois\footnote{Monois, A.E. (not D.); but Minoys or Minois above.} taurus, id est, Carnifex. Circa illud\footnote{idem, C.D.} tempus Theseus Helenam rapuit, quam rursus fratres sui Castor et Pollux reduxerunt, capta matre\footnote{Thesei, ins. A.C.D.} Theseoque peregre profugato.\footnote{profector, C.D.} Eó quoque\footnote{demo, C.D.} tempore Dædalus\footnote{profere, C.D.} fertur floruisse. Hic fecit aves metallinas volare artificioso spiritu incluso. Dicitur etiam fecisse simulacra sese moventia. Primus enim omnium pedes statuarum a se invicem divisit,\footnote{falter, ins. C.D.} cum\footnote{separavit, C.D.} caeteri eos conjungere\footnote{tamen, ins. C.D.}\footnote{conjunctus eos fluere, C.D.}\footnote{Petrus, B.}\footnote{10°., A. correctly. See lib. xix. c. 19.} Theseoque peregre profugato.\footnote{imitando, B.} Hie quoque puer excogitavit primus usum circini; quamobrem Dædalus magister suas invidia

\footnote{quam, E.}\footnote{dentium] om. B.}\footnote{et, C.D.}\footnote{sarram, A.D.}
men of Athene pat were tributarii to forhonde\textsuperscript{1} were quy\textsuperscript{2} and free of al tribute. Minotaurus was a grete man and huge, my\textsuperscript{3}ty and strong, and a wi\textsuperscript{4}t wrastler,\textsuperscript{2} and was kyng Minois his bocher. Perfore he was i-clep\textsuperscript{5} as it were Minois taurus, pat is a bocher. Aboute pat tyme Theseus rauesched Eleyne,\textsuperscript{3} and here tweye breperen Castor and Pollux fette hir, and brou\textsuperscript{t}t hir a\textsuperscript{3}en, and took Theseus moder and chasede Theseus out of contray. Also me seip\textsuperscript{6} pat Dedalus was pat tyme in his flour\textsuperscript{es}. Pis Dedalus made brid\textsuperscript{es}\textsuperscript{4} of metal by craft of spirit enclosed\textsuperscript{6} for to flce aboute. Me seip also pat he made ymages pat menened hem self. He was \textit{\textsuperscript{7}e} firste pat departede feet of ymages stwynne; flor oper men-i\textsuperscript{yon}d hem to gid\textsuperscript{ers}. \textit{Isidorus, libro nono}. Pis Dedalus hadde a newe\textsuperscript{7} pat heet Perdix,\textsuperscript{7} and fenge hym to his lore. Pis Perdix wax so\textsuperscript{t}il and connynge of craft, and bypou\textsuperscript{t}t hym\textsuperscript{8} for to haue som spedful maner cleu\textsuperscript{ny}ge of tymber, and took a plate of iren, and fyled it, and made it i-toped\textsuperscript{9} as a rugge\textsuperscript{10} boon of a fische, and \textit{panne} it was a sawe. Also pis childe bypou\textsuperscript{t}t hym and made \textit{\textsuperscript{8}e} firste com\textsuperscript{pas}, and wrou\textsuperscript{t}t perwip. Perfore his my\textit{\textsuperscript{5}yster} Dedalus took greet envie to \textit{\textsuperscript{e}e} childe, and prewe hym downe of an h\textsuperscript{3}e toue, calle\textsuperscript{d}e Minotaurus; for whiche acte men of Athenes, whiche MS. HARL. were tributaries afore, were delyuered from that seru\textsuperscript{itute}. Minotaurus was a my\textsuperscript{3}nty man, and as a gigante hauenge grete stren\textsuperscript{h}te, whiche was the bo\textit{cheor of kyng} Minois, calle\textsuperscript{d}e Minotaurus, as the bo\textit{cheor of kyng} Minois. Theseus toke away Helena abowte this tyme, whom Castor and Pollux, bre\textsuperscript{per} to here, broughte ageyne with the moder of Theseus, Theseus fleenge in to other cunt\textsuperscript{res} for helpe. In whiche tyme Dedalus is seide to haue bene, whiche made bry\textsuperscript{d}des of metalle to flye thro spirittes in\textsuperscript{clus}ed in thyme. Also hit is seide that he made simila\textsuperscript{cers} movenge thym sel\textsuperscript{fe}. Whiche diu\textsuperscript{idede} firste the feete of ymages a sundre, for other men i\textsuperscript{yon}ede thyme to ged\textsuperscript{re}. \textit{Isidorus, libro nono}. This Dedalus hade with hym the son of his do\textsuperscript{3}hter, Perdix by name, whiche founde firste an instrumente whom men calle a sac. Also this childe founde firste the vse of a compass, wherefore Dedalus his ma\textit{\textsuperscript{5}ister} caste hym done\textsuperscript{a}e from a toue. Therefore Dedal-

\textsuperscript{1} before, Cx.  
\textsuperscript{2} and ful dely\textsuperscript{e}re in wrastling, Cx., who otherwise varies the sentence.  
\textsuperscript{3} Eleyne, Cx.; Helen, a.  
\textsuperscript{4} byrdes, Cx.  
\textsuperscript{5} of\textsuperscript{3} aud, a. B. Cx.  
\textsuperscript{6} i\textsuperscript{-}closed, a.; closed, Cx.  
\textsuperscript{7} So Cx.; Perdix, MS., here and below.  
\textsuperscript{8} Cx. adds, \textit{in his yumagynacion}.  
\textsuperscript{9} I toved, a.  
\textsuperscript{10} rugge, Cx.
ductus precipitavit eum de quadam arce.\(^1\) Inde\(^2\) Dædalus cum Icaro filio suo apud Cretam fugiens de-\nvenit Siciliam; ubi et\(^3\) primo fecit labyrinthum.\(^4\) Petru\n\ns, sexto.\(^5\) Idcirco propter celerem\(^6\) et investiga-
blem fugam ejus post homicidium perpetratum fingitur
pennis volasse.\(^7\) Isidorus libro quintodecimo. Laby-
rinthus\(^8\) est ædification quoddam ex perplexis parie-
tibus compositum, ubi fuit Minotaurus inclusus; quo
sisquis sine glomere fili ingrederetur, exitum facile\(^9\)
on reperiret. Aperientibusque\(^{10}\) in ea fores tonitrus
terribilis audiebatur. Hugutio, capitulo Labyrinthus.

Descenditur\(^{11}\) quasi gradibus centum; transitus ibi sunt
quasi innumerí\(^{12}\) per tenebras. Et sunt quatuor tales
domus in orbe;\(^{13}\) una\(^{14}\) Ægyptia,\(^{15}\) secunda Cretica,\(^{16}\)
tertia in Lemno\(^{17}\) insula, quarta in Italia. Omnes
quidem ita constructae\(^{18}\) ut vix per secula dissolvi\(^{19}\)
quaeant. Hugutio, capitulo Cilleo.\(^{20}\) Denique cum
Athenienses laborarent pestilentia pro morte Icari et
Erigones\(^{21}\) filiae suæ, et virgines Athenienses quasi ad
laqueum compelleruntur, responsum est ab\(^{22}\) Apolline

---

1 \(\text{arce}^1\) om. B.  
2 \(\text{Unde}, \text{C. (not D.)}\)  
3 \(\text{et}^3\) om. B.  
4 \(\text{laborintum}, \text{MSS.} \) Various written below.  
5 \(\text{sexto}^5\) om. A.B.D.  
6 So A.B.; celebrem, E.  
7 The two preceding sentences are varied and transposed in C.D.  
8 \(\text{laborintum}, \text{C.D.}\)  
9 \(\text{facile}^9\) om. C.D.  
10 \(\text{apparentibusque}, \text{B.} \); a parie-
tibus que, C. (not D.)  
11 \(\text{in illo, ins. C.D.}\)  
12 \(\text{centum . . . innumerí}^1\) innume-
ris, C.D.  
13 \(\text{in orbe}^1\) om. C.D.  
14 \(\text{una, [cor.] unus, &c., all masculi-
line in MSS.} \) It is harsh to under-
stand \(\text{laborintus}; \) and Higden could
hardly intend \(\text{domus} \) to be masculine.  
(See vol. I. p. 216, &c.)  
15 \(\text{apud Ægyptios, B.}\)  
16 \(\text{in Creta, B.}\)  
17 \(\text{Lempe, B.}\)  
18 \(\text{constructi, MSS.}\)  
19 \(\text{solvi, B.}\)  
20 \(2540, \text{C. (not D.)}\)  
21 \(\text{Erigonis, MSS., and so below.}\)  
22 \(\text{ab}^2\) om. A.
and brak his nekke. Perfore Dedalus wip his son Icarus\(^1\) at Creta flie and come in to Sicilia,\(^2\) and pere he made first laborinthus.\(^3\) Petro. For Dedalus flie away so swiftliche after pe manslauzet,\(^4\) me feyne pat he flie\(^5\) wip wynges as a bryd by pe ayer. Isidorus, libro quintodecimo. Laborinthus is a manere buldyngie wonderliche i-bulde wip daungers\(^6\) walles; perynne Minotaurus was i-closed. Ẓif eny man wente pider yn wip oute a clewe of þrede, it were ful harde to fynde a way out. Pey pat opone pe Ẓates schukle here dredful pondringe. Hugutio, capitulo Labor. Me goop adoun [as hit were]\(^6\) by an hundred greeus;\(^7\) pere beep also in derkenesse wonder meny dyuers wyndynge and tornynges; and suche soure beep in pis worlde of suche hous;\(^8\) oon in Egipt, anoer in Creta, pe prydde in pe ylond Lemmo,\(^9\) and pe ferpe in Italy; and beep so i-made pat vnnepe pe moye be destroyed, while pe worlde durep. Hugutio, capitulo Cilleo. Whanne pere fel a pestilence among men of Athene\(^10\) for pe deth of Icarus and his douȝter Erigon, and maydens of Athene were compellede as it were to snarles and greues, þanne pei hadde

lus fleenge with Icarus\(^1\) his son to that yle calde Creta, MS. HARL. come afterwarde to Sicilia,\(^2\) and made a mase pere firste. Petro. Whom men feyne to haue flyede, for the switte flieȝe of hym after that he had done that offense. Isidorus, libro quintodecimo. A turnenge, other elles a mase, is a thyng made with mony turnenage, and a man entrenge in to hit with owte a clewe of threde, can not come furthe from hit aȝeyne liȝhtely, and also a thundre dothe appere to men openenge the durres of hit. Hugutio, capitulo Labor. To whom men goe downe as by a c. greeus, the weies þer be as innumerable by derkenesse, and þer be iiȝ. suche places in the worlde; oon is in Egipte, an other is in Creta, the thrydde is in the yle calde Lemno,\(^9\) the iiȝþe is in Italy; whiche be made soe that thei can not be destroyede vn to the ende of the worlde. Hugutio, capitulo Cilleo. When men of Athenes laborede in þe pestilence for the deth of Icarus, and of Erigon his doȝther, and virgynes were compellede as vn to hongenge, hit was answerede to thayme by Apollo Del-

\(^1\) Yearus, MSS., and so below.
\(^2\) Sicilia, MSS.; Sicilia, Harl. MS.
\(^3\) CX. adds, otherwise callyd a mase.
\(^4\) after he had slayn his nevec, CX.
\(^5\) daungersous, CX.
\(^6\) Added from a. and CX.
\(^7\) grees or steppes, CX.
\(^8\) houres, CX.
\(^9\) Lemno, MS. Similarly Harl. MS.
\(^10\) MS. has some words repeated.
Delphico illum pestem sedari non posse nisi Icari et Erigones cadavera requirentur. Quae cum diu quæsita reperiri non possent, ad ostendendum devotionem quam ad inquirendum habuerant, ut in alio elemento viderentur quaerere quod in terra reperire non possent, Athenienses suspendebant funes in aëre, ad quos homines innexi huc et illuc agitabantur, ut sic viderentur quaerere in aëre cadavera praedicta. At dum inde caderent homines et læderentur, statutum fuit apud illos ut statuae illis cadaveribus similis imponerentur et sic moverentur. Ludus autem ille apud Latinos vocatur Oscillum, quod componitur a cilleo -les quod est moveo, et os, oris, quia sic agitati in ora hominum in movebantur.

---

1 pestem] So A.B.C.D.; om. E.  
2 non posse] om. E.; posse, A.  
3 nisi] so B.C.D.; si, A.E  
4 dum, B.D.  
5 quam . . . habuerant] suam, C.D.  
6 cum, C.D.  
7 Ac dummodo, B.  
8 eos, C.D.  
9 cadaveribus] om. C.D., which is better.  
10 innexi, C.D.  
11 trahentium, C.D., which transpose various words in this extract.
answere of Appolyn Delphicus pat pe pestilence myȝt cese, TREVIGA.

3 if pey souȝt besiliche pe bodyes of Icarus and his douȝter Erigon. Pan pey souȝt besiliche, and whanne pey hadde longe i-souȝt and myȝte nouȝt fynde, for to scheewe pe deuocioun and wil pat pey hadde forto seche [and]

for seie seche besiliche in anoer element pat pey myȝte nouȝt fynde in erȝe, men of Athene heng vp ropes in pe aier and men totrede peron and mened hider and pider; for pey wolde be seie seche pe bodyes in pe aier aboue pe erȝe. And when men [fel] of pe totros and were i-hert te sore, it was i-ordeyned among hem pat images i-liche to pe bodyes schulde be sette in pe totros, and men and totery in stede of hem pat were a-falle. Pat game is ecleped ocellum in Latyn, and is com-

pownde and i-mayde of tweyne, of cilleo cilles pat is forto menære to make inquisicion to fynde in an otralement that thei cowthe not be founde, men of Atheenes schewenge a deuocioun to the inquisicion of theyme, as to make inquisicion to fynde in an otro elemente that thei cowthe not fynde in the erthe, honged ropes in the aier, to whom men fixede were seen to move in the aier. And when that men felle downe and were hurte, ymages were made lyke to theyme, and moveode þer in the ropes. And men of Latyn calle that play ocellum, whiche worde taketh the composicion of this word cil leo es, that is, to move, and of this worde os oris pat is a mowþ; for pey pat totered so monede aȝenst men mouþes.

phicus that pestilence to be mitigate if thei wolde inquiere MS. HARL. the cariones and bodyes of Icarus and of Erigon his douȝter. Whiche inquirede longe cowþe not be founde, men of Athene schewenge a deuocioun to the inquisicion of theyme, as to make inquisicion to fynde in an otro elemente that thei cowthe not fynde in the erthe, honged ropes in the aier, to whom men fixede were seen to move in the aier. And when that men felle downe and were hurte, ymages were made lyke to theyme, and moveode þer in the ropes. And men of Latyn calle that play ocellum, whiche worde taketh the composicion of this word cil leo es, that is, to move, and of this worde os oris pat is a mowþ; for pey pat totered so monede aȝenst men mouþes.

1 nowther, Cx.; nowbar, B. y. 4 hyng, a.
2 fynde in erȝe, MS. (not a, B. y. or Cx.) 5 Added from a. and Cx.
3 Added from conjecture; but perhaps the five words following should be cancelled. 6 i-hart, a.
7 totros, a, Cx.
8 meone, a.
9 toterynge] om. a. and Cx.
CAP. XXI.

Abimelech et Thola judicant Israel. De Fauno; item de Amazonibus.¹

De Abimelech. Abimelech, filius Gedeon ² sive Jeroboal,³ ex concubina natus, dux fuit ⁴ in Sichem ⁵ tribus annis post patrem, et occidit septuaginta fratres suos ex variis uxoribus progenitos excepto uno.⁵ Eoque tempore Atheniense ⁸ bellum fuit inter Lapithas ⁹ et Centauros, quos Palesphatus libro De Incredilibus dicit fuisse ¹⁰ nobiles equites Thessalorum, qui pugnabant contra ¹¹ Thebæos.¹² Thola de tribu Isachar ¹³ judicavit Israel viginti tribus annis, cujos anno quarto Medea discessit ¹⁴ a viro suo Ægeo, Atheniensium ¹⁵ rege, usque ad Colchos insulam unde fuit oriunda. Trogus, libro quadragesimo tertio. Circa hos dies Faunus filius Pici regnavit in Italia, sub quo Evander de finibus Arcadianæ veniens agros ¹⁷ et montem Palatinum accepit. Huic Fauno fuit ¹⁸ uxor nomine Fatua, spiritu vatidico frequenter ¹⁹ repleta, unde et adhuc qui inspirari solent fatuari ²¹ dicuntur. Ex filia ²² hujus ²³ Fauni et Hercule, ²⁴ qui tunc extincto Geryone gigante ²⁵ rege

¹ No title in MSS.
³ regnavit, C.D.
⁴ Sichen, A.
⁵ solo, ins. C.D.
⁶ Eo quoque, B.
⁷ apud Athenienses, B.
⁸ Laphitas, B.; Laphitas, D.E.
⁹ centum, ins. C.D.
¹⁰ adversus, C.D.
¹¹ Thelas, C.; Thelas, D.
¹² Isacar, A.
¹³ Thebas, C.; Thelas, D.
¹⁴ discendit, C.D. (first hand.)
¹⁵ Atheniensium] Atheniensi, D.
¹⁶ Arcadiae] om. B.
¹⁷ aros, B.
¹⁸ prefuit, B.
¹⁹ assidue, C.D.
²⁰ et] om. C. (not D.)
²¹ fatuati, C.D. (first hand.)
²² quoque, ins. C.D.
²³ hujus] om. B.
²⁴ Herculis, A.
²⁵ gigante] om. C.D.
**Capitulum vicesimum primum.**

**ABIMALECH.** Gedonæ his son i-bore of a concubyn, was ledere in Sichem after his fader pre æere, and slow his owne bropern pre score and ten, outale oon, qui were i-bore of diuers wíes.\(^2\) Pat tyme was þe batayle of Athene byttwene þe Laphites and Centaures. Palefatus, libro De Incrediilibus, seip pat þe Centaures\(^3\) were noble hors men of Thessalua, pat þat aȝest þe Thebes men of Thebe in þEgipt. Thola of þe lynnage of Isachar was iuge in Israel pre and twenty æere. In his fourþe æere Medea\(^4\) wente from hire housbonde Egenes, kyng of Athene, in to þe iloude Colchoes, þere sché was i-bore. Trogus, 43. Aboute þat tyme Faunus [Piæ his sonne regned in Italy. In his tyme Euander come out of Arcadia and feng æides\(^5\) and þe bil mount Palatyne. Pis Faunus\(^6\) had a wyf þat heet Fatua, and hadde ofte a spirit of prophecie. Perfore þat ofte þe wyf hauþ a spirit of prophecie beþe i-cleped Fatui. Doe Hercules hadde i-shawe Geryon þe geant, kyng of Spayne, and hadde

---

1. So a.; Geon, MS.
2. So a. and Cx.; a concubyn, MS.
3. So a.; Sentaures, MS.
4. Meda, MS., and so below. A few similar slight errors have been tacitly corrected in this chapter; as
5. Gereon, Sympoe, Archadia.
6. receype and take feldes, Cx.

---

**Capitulum vicesimum primum.**

**ABIMALECH, the son of Gedon, geten of a concubyne, was gouernoure in Sichem ij. yere after his fader, whiche did slee lxxt\(^2\) brether to hym, geten of diuerse women, oon exceyte. In whiche tyme the batelle of Athenes betwene Laphites and Centaures, whom Palefatus, libro De Incrediilibus, seithe to have ben nowble hors men of Thesalia whiche did ſigte ageyne the Thebes. Thola, of the tribe of ÿsachar, reginede on Israel xxiiijth yere. In the iijth yere of whom Medea wente from here housbonde Egenes, kyng of Athenes, vn to that yle callede Colchoes, where sché was borne. Trogus, capitulo quadragesimo tertio. Fanus, the son off Piæus, reginede aboute this tyme in Ytalie, vnder whom Euander, of the costes of Archadia, commenge to those costes, the feldes and the mownte Palatyne. This Fanus hade a wyfe, Fatua by name, whiche was vexede moche with a spiritte, whereof peple so vexede now in this tyme bene seide to be fataunte, after the name
Hispaniae armenta ejus in signum victoriam per Italiam duxerat, stupro conceptus est Latinus; qui postmodum regnavit ibidem. Orosius, libro primo. Circa hunc annum Vezoses rex Aegypti Scythis bellum primo indixit, missis tamen prius legatis qui hostibus legem parendi indicerent. Ad quod Scythae sic responde- runt: "Stolide rex opulentissimus adversus inopes bellum movet, præsertim cum dubius sit belli eventus, præmia nulla, sed damna manifesta." Nee mora quin dictis facta subseuntur. Nam regem ad regnum Aegypti redire compellunt, exercitum ejus spoliante et invadunt, totamque Aegyptum spoliassent, nisi Nili paludibus impediti fuisse. Inde redeundo per quindecim annos Asiam conterentes vectigalem fecerunt; quibus denunciatum est ab uxoribus quod, nisi redi- rent, sobolem sibi a finitimis locis quererent. Medio tempore apud Scythas duo regii juvenes per factionem optimatum domo pulsi, contracta secum ingenti mul-

---

1 Orosius] The rest of this chapter is omitted in C.D.
2 Vezoses, A; Vezores, B. The MSS. of Orosius (lib. i. c. 14) similarly vary. Sesostris is presumed to be intended.
3 Scitis, A; Schitis, B; Shitis, E, and similarly below.
4 primus, A.
5 induxit, B.
6 inducerent, A.
7 sic] om. A.
8 moris, B.
9 acta, B.
10 quin, B.
11 domo] denuo, A; viatorum denuo, B.
his bestes poruș Italy in token of pe victorie; he lay by pis Faunus his doușter vnlawfulliche and gat Latinus,1 pat regnede afterward in Itali. Orosius, libro primo. Aboute pis ʒere Vesores, kyng of Egipt, werred first aʒenst pe Seites; nopřes2 firste he sente messangers and hec[t]3 enemies be soge; to his lawe; and pe Seites answerede: "A d.j. kyng and most riche " meuep bataile aʒenst pore men and nedy, nameliche while it " doutep whai ende pe batayle schal haue; profite comep perof " noon, but grece and opoun hurme and damage." And nouʒt longe after the dede acordede4 wip pe answere; for pey com-
pelled pe kyng of Egipt forto flee aʒen, and chasede and spoyp-
ede his oost, [and wolde have i-spoylled]5 al Egipt, hadde pey nouʒt be lette by watres of pe ryuer Nilus. Panne in pe torn-
ynge aʒen pey werred fiftene ʒere in Asia, and made Asia tributarie; and here wifies sent hem worde, pat but pey wolde come home pey wolde haue children by men of pe contrayes aboute. Pe mene tyme among pe Seites twyeal real ʒonge-
lynges by fraude and deeyt of pe grete werre6 i-putte

of pat woman. Of the douʒter of whom Hercules gate a MS. HARL son, Latynus by name, whiche regnede after hym, not geten in trewe matrimony. Orosius, libro primo. Abowe whiche yere Vesores, kyng of Egipt, ʒafe7 intende to ʒiffe bataile to men of Seitia, sendenenge to thyme messe-
gerves afore commaundende thyme to obey him. To whiche messangeres the men of Scithia answerede, seynye, that the plenuous kyngye of Egiptye intende a symple thynge to move bataile ageyne pore men, sythe the chance of victory in bataile is in dowte, where he knowthe to have noon avayle but grete hurtes and losse. Whiche thynge happeped accorinde to the seyenge of thyme; for they compellede the kynge off Egipte to retorne, and peresch-
enge a grete parte of his hoste hade spoilede a grete parte of Egipte, but that pe water of Nilus was an impedimente to thyme. That peple of Seitia, returnenge towarde theire centre, faŋhte myʒltilte ageyne men of Asia, and made theym theire tributarie. The wifes of whom sende worde to the-im that thei wolde take men to theym of ojer centres o cause multiplication, withowthe thei wolde comme home. Wherefore ij. nowble men were electe amongeth theyme,

1 So a. and Cx.; Latthinius, MS.
2 pat, Cx.
3 Added from Cx. (only), who varies the clause.
4 accord, Cx.
5 Added from a, and Cx.
6 So MS.; were, Cx.
7 Sic Harl. MS. Probably the word should be cancelled; if not, or must be added: which seems to be omitted after afore.
titudine, oram ¹ Ponti et Cappadociae occuparunt, ² ubi post multam depopulationem factam a finitimis viris trucidabantur. Quorum uxores exilio ac viduitate permotae arma sumunt, ultionem pro maritis faciunt. Amazones. Tunc pace armis quasita externos ³ concubitus ⁴ ineunt, editos maris eneant, foeminas inustis dextris mammis reservant. Harum tandem duæ fuerunt reginæ Marcepia et Lapeto; ⁵ quæ aegmine diviso vicissim curam belli et domus custodiam sortiebantur. Igitur cum Europam magna ex parte perdomuissent, captis aliquibus Asiae urbibus praecipuam exercitus sui partem spoliis onustam domi remisissent, reliquæ foemine ad tuendam Asiam relictæ cum regina sua ⁶ Marcepia ab hostibus trucidantur. Cujus filia Sinope post matrem regnum tenuit, singularem virtutis gloriam perpetua virginitate cumulavit. Hujus nempe tanta ⁷ admiratio gentes invaserat, ut cum Hercules jubetur a domino

¹ coram, A.  ² occupaverunt, A.B.  ³ exterios, B.  ⁴ So A.; cubitus, E.  ⁵ Lampeo, B.  ⁶ suæ] om. B.  ⁷ tam, B.
from home, and took wip hem a grete multitude of peple and strengye, and wree 바 in pe contrayes of Pontus and Capadocia.\(^1\) And whanne pey hadde i-doo greet destrueccion, pan pey were i-kilde of men of pe contrays aboute. Danne hire wifes exi\(i\)ede and wydewes armed hem, and toke wreche of hire houesbondes dep; and whanne pey hadde i-made pees by strengye and by dedes of armes pey took men of ope roudes to li\(g\)ge\(^2\) by hem forte hau children, and slow hire owne knaue children\(^3\) and kepe here mayde children, and brende of pe\(^4\) ri\(\tilde{z}\)t brest. At pe laste tweyne of pese women were queenes, Marsepia and Lampeto, and departed hire oost, and kepie and mayntenede hem. and batailled\(^5\) eiper by hire coars. \(\ddot{\text{D}}\)an whanne pey hadde overcome a grete dele of Europa and many citees of Asia, pey sent home pe bettre part of here oost wip prayes pat pey hadde i-take. \(\ddot{\text{D}}\)an enemyses slow, Marsepia pe queere and\(^6\) pe opere women pat were i-left pere forte kepe Asia. And here dou\(j\)\(t\)er Sinope regaed after hire moder de\(p\), and gaderoed a singuler ioye of vertue by everlastynge chasite. Men wondrede so hugeliche of this woman, pat whanne Hercules hadde haste of his lorde for to werre

whiche, takeenge with theyme a grete hoste, occupiepede the MS. HARL. 2261.

louDES of Pon\(c\)es and Capadocia, which were destroyede at the laste by op\(e\) peple of peere cuntrees. The wifes of whom movede there with toke armoure, inquirenge vengeance for theire houesbondes. So at the laste, peace made by grete batelles and confl\(c\)cies, thei toke to theyme strange men for cause of multiplicacion, sleenge the male childer, reseruede the childer female, brenenge the ry\(\tilde{y}\)hte pappe of here. Of whiche women were ij. qwenes at the laste, Marsepia and Lampeto, which kepede batelles by course. And when thei hade made that londe of Asia tame, and taken the principalle citees in hit, thei sende the chiefe parte of theire hoste to theire cuntre with grete richesse and goodes. That other parte of women lefte with Marsepia to be the defence of Asia were sleyne. The dou\(l\)\(t\)er of whom, Synope by name, kepede the realme after the dethe of here moder, in hepine the glory of vertu with virginite perpetuall. Als\(o\) thei were of so grete my\(u\)lhte, that when Hercules was commaundede of his lorde that he scholde brynge

\(^1\) Capadocia, Cx.
\(^2\) Ige, Cx.
\(^3\) men childer, Cx.; who, however, has childer above.
\(^4\) her, Cx.
\(^5\) hem in batel, Cx.; bataille, a. y.; batel, B.
\(^6\) So a. and Cx.; of, MS.
suo arma reginae inferre,\textsuperscript{1} universam\textsuperscript{2} Graeciae electam
juventutem contraxit, novemque longas raves præpara-
ravit,\textsuperscript{3} insperatas mulieres circumvenit, malens insi-
diendo quam palam bellando congre i. Oppressis igitur
subito duabus sororibus reginis,\textsuperscript{4} Hercules Melanippen\textsuperscript{5}
sorori sua Antiope\textsuperscript{6} reddidit.\textsuperscript{7} Hippolytam vero so-
orem ejusdem. Theseo militi suo copulavit; arma
reginae pretio redemptionis accepit. Tandem post Or-
thiam reginam Penthesilea\textsuperscript{8} regina Trojano bello in-
terfuit, magnaque insignia suæ virtutis\textsuperscript{9} contra Grceos
dedit.

**CAP. XXII.**

*De Jair; item de Carmente Nympha, litterarum
Latinarum inventrice.*\textsuperscript{10}

\textbf{JAYR}\textsuperscript{11} Galadites de tribu Manasse judicavit Israel
viginti duobus\textsuperscript{12} annis, habuitque triginta filios, quos
fecit principes\textsuperscript{13} supra\textsuperscript{14} triginta civitates, quas deno-
minavit a nomine suo Anat Jair;\textsuperscript{15} id est, oppida Jair.
Ranulphus. Hujus Jair\textsuperscript{16} anno tertio secundum quos-
dam Carthago condita est; sed de hoc vide supra

\textsuperscript{1} So A.; offerre, E.
\textsuperscript{2} So A.; universitati, E.
\textsuperscript{3} reparavit, B.
\textsuperscript{4} reginis] om. B.
\textsuperscript{5} Monalippam, MSS.
\textsuperscript{6} Antrope, B.
\textsuperscript{7} reddit, B.
\textsuperscript{8} Penthesilea, MSS.
\textsuperscript{9} soe virtutis J Added from A.B.
\textsuperscript{10} No title in MSS.
\textsuperscript{11} Jair, A.C.D.
\textsuperscript{12} no, C.D.
\textsuperscript{13} principales, B.
\textsuperscript{14} supr, C.D.
\textsuperscript{15} Anat jair, A.; Anathe jair, B.; Anot jair, D.
aisten pis\textsuperscript{1} queene, he gadrede al pe grete strengpe of pe zong men of Gree, and ordeyned hym nyne longe schippes, and fil vppon pe wommen pat were vnarmed. For hym was leure stele\textsuperscript{2} vppon hem pan come vppon hem wip a bataile opounliche. Pan, whanne pe tweie queenes pat were sustres were sodeynliche overcome, Hercules zaf Menalippa to his suster Antiopa, and wedded hir suster Hippolyta\textsuperscript{3} to his knyht Theseus, and fenge pe armure of pe queene in prys of redempcioun. At the laste after Orthia pe queene, Penthesilea\textsuperscript{4} pe queene was in pe batayle of Troye, and af\textsuperscript{5} dede meny grete actes aisten the Gree.

\textit{Capitulum vicesimum secundum.}

Iair\textsuperscript{6} of Galaad, of pe lynage of Manasse, was iuge of Israel two and twenty zere, and hadde pritty sones, and made hem princes vppon pritty citees, and clepecl pe citees by his owne name, Anot Iair, pat is to mene, Iair is townes. R. Som tellep pat Carthago\textsuperscript{7} was i-bulde pe nowble men of Gree in ix. schippes, 2261. whiche compassede the women as with owte deliberacion; hauenge more pleasure to do see then to make an open batelle ageyne theyme. The seide Hercules, those women oppresseed, zafe Menalippa to his sustyr Antiopa, and mariede Ypolita, sustir to the same Menalippa, to Theseus his knyghte, takeenge to hym the armore of the queene as for a price of here redempcioun. After that queene callede Orthia, the queene Penthesilea\textsuperscript{8} was at the batelle of Troye, and schewede mony grete actes ageyne men of Grece.

\textit{Capitulum vicesimum secundum.}

Iair Galatides, of the tribe of Manasses, reignede on the peple of Israel xxij\textsuperscript{th} yere, which hade xxx\textsuperscript{i} sones, whom he made princes of xxx\textsuperscript{th} citees, whom he callede, after his name, Anot Iair, that is to say, pe citees of Iair. R. I the thrydde yere of whom, after diuerse men, that cite callede Carthago was edifide, of which mater hit is rehersede afore,

\begin{itemize}
\item [\textsuperscript{1}] the, Cx.
\item [\textsuperscript{2}] to stele, Cx.
\item [\textsuperscript{3}] Ypolita, MS., c.; Ipolita, B. 7.
\item [\textsuperscript{4}] Pentasileu, a.; Pentafides, MS.
\item [\textsuperscript{5}] zaf and\textsuperscript{]} om. Cx.
\item [\textsuperscript{6}] Lair, MS.
\item [\textsuperscript{7}] Cartago, MSS.; Cartage, Cx.
\item [\textsuperscript{8}] Pentisilia, Harl. MS.
\end{itemize}
Minos moritur. Lingua Latina quadruplex.


look in the first book, capitolio Africa, scilicet Numidia.\footnote{So B.; Munidia, a. \( \tau \), Cx.} The next of Iaire, Mynois of Egypt amendede armure a\textsuperscript{2}gen\textsuperscript{3}st Dedalus in Sicilia, and was i-kyld of Cocalus his sons.

\textit{Isidorus, libro primo.} Carmentis Nynpha, \( \hat{\text{p}} \)at heet also Nicostrata,\footnote{Nicostrata, MSS.} kyng\textsuperscript{3} Latyn his moder, fond and brow\textsuperscript{3}t vp\footnote{brow\textsuperscript{3}t vp\footnote{om. a.; Cx.}} Latyn lettres. \textit{Isidorus, libro nono.} De longage of Latyn was departed in foure: for the firste was vnder Ianus and Saturnus, and was i-kyld Prisk; and Latyn vnder \( \hat{\text{p}} \)e\textsuperscript{6} kyng Latyn and o\textsuperscript{6}per kynges of Thuseayn;\footnote{Thuseayn, a.} in pat longage were pe twelve tables of lawe i-write; also Romayn \( \hat{\text{p}} \)at bygan after kynges were i-made suget; and pat longage vsede Plautus and Tullius, Virgilius and Caton; but medled\footnote{medled, a.; myxt, Cx.} longage encreased after \( \hat{\text{p}} \)at pe Empere encreasede and was huge. After pe deeth of Iaire Israel seruede pe Philistinis and Ammonitys ei\textsuperscript{3}tene \( \hat{\text{p}} \)ere, \( \hat{\text{p}} \at beep acounted to pat \( \hat{\text{p}} \)eres of Iepte \( \hat{\text{p}} \at was duke afterward of Israel.

\footnote{1 So B.; Munidia, a. \( \tau \), Cx.; Mundia, MS.}
\footnote{2 Nicostrata, MSS.}
\footnote{kyng of, MS., and so below.}

\footnote{3 kyng of, MS., and so below.}
Jepte. De Jepte; item de Sibyllis, et de rebus Trojanis.  

Jepte Galatides de tribu Gad, filius meretricis, judicavit Israel sex annis; cujus anno primo Latinus filius Fauni cepit regnare in Italia, in qua regnavit triginta duobus annis, a quo regnum Latinorum sumpsit initium, cessante ex tunc vocabulo Laurentinorum.

Rex Latinus.

De decem Sibyllis.

Isidorus, libro octavo. Tempore hujus Latini floruit Sibylla Erythrea, nomine Heropha, de Babylone oriunda, quae Grecis Ilium potentibus prædictum Trojanum evertendam et Homerum mendacia postmodum scripturum. Et cum decem fuerunt Sibyllæ, haec ponitur quinta in numero, et cæteris antefertur; quarum prima fuit Persica, secunda Libyca, tertia Delphica, in templo Apollinis progenita ante bellum Trojanum, cujus plurimos versus Homerus inseruit in suis opusculis. Quarta fuit Cimmeria de Italia; quinta Erythrea, de qua nunc agitur; sexta fuit Samia, in Samos insula nata; septima Cumana, de

---

1 No title in MSS.
2 Eritrea, MSS.
3 Erosiba, B.; Erosita, V.
4 potentiibus, B.
5 fuerint, B.
6 et . . . quarum] om. C.D.
7 enim, ins. C.D.
8 Delphici, ins. C.D.
9 suo opusculo, C.D.
10 Cimerica, B.
11 fuit, ins. B.
12 Eritrea, MSS.
13 dictum est, C.D.
Capitulum vicesimum tertium. Iepte.

Iepte of Galaad, of the lynage of Gad, an hoore\(^1\) sone, was inge of Israel sixe \(\overline{3}\)ere. Kyng Latyn, Faunus is sone, bygan to regne in Ytaly; and regned \(\text{pere two and pritty }\overline{3}\)ere. Of hym we kynges of\(^2\) Itali hadde pat name, and were i-clepled kynges of Latyns, and pan cesa\(d\) \(\text{pere name of }\overline{3}\) Laurentines, and torned in\(t\)o \(\text{pere name of }\overline{3}\) Latyns.\(^3\) Isidorus, libro octavo. In pis kyng Latyn his tyme was Sibil Eritria \(\text{in }\)hir florues, pat ho\(e\)t Erifila, and was i-bore in Babilon. Sche warnede \(\text{pere Greeks }\overline{pere} \)went to Troye pat Troye schulde be destroyed, and \(\text{pere Homerus schulde write leynesge aft}\(e\)ward. \(\text{Pere were ten Sibilis, and pis is }\overline{pere} \)s\(i\)lic in nombre, and is i-putte tofore opere. \(\text{Pere firste }\overline{Sibilla} \)was of \(\text{Pere, }\overline{4} \)secunde of \(\text{Libya. }\overline{\text{Pere pridde was Delphia in Appoly\(n\) thes temple to fore }\overline{pere} \)bataile of Troye. Homerus wro\(o\)t: meny \(\text{of }\overline{hir} \)vers \(\text{in his bookes. }\overline{\text{Pere fou}r\(pere} \)was Cimeria of \(\text{Italy. }\overline{\text{Pere fiste was Eri\(i\)ren, of h\(i\)re is now oure speche. }\overline{\text{Pere sixte was Samia, i-bore in }\overline{pere} \)ylond }\overline{5} \)of Samos.

Capitulum vicesimum tertium.

Iepte Galatides, son of an hoore \(\text{of the }\overline{\text{tribe of }\overline{\text{Gad, }}}\) was inge in Israel \(\overline{v} \)ye. In the firste yere off whom, Latins the son of Faunus began to regre in Italy, in whom he reigne\(d\) \(\overline{xxxij} \)yere. from whiche tyme the realme of Latines toke begynnenge, and the name off the Laurentynes decrease\(d\) and fay\(y\)lede. Isidorus, libro octavo. Sibilla Eritria, Erif\(o\)la by name, borne in Babilon, was in the tyme of Latins, whiche scide to the Grekes Troy \(\text{to be destroye}d\), and that the poete Omerus schol\(d\)e write mony leynesge aft\(e\)wardes. But \(\text{pere were }\overline{2} \)Sibilles, amonge whom sche was putte the \(\overline{y} \)the in orde, and is preferrede afore other. The firste \(\text{of }\overline{\text{whom was called }\overline{Sibilla Persica. The secunde Sibilla Libica. The thrydde Sibilla Delphica. whiche was geten in the temple of Apollo afore the bat\(a\)lle of Troy, of the versus of whom Omerus toke mony and putte th\(e\)yme in his werk. The }\overline{iii} \(\text{the was }\overline{Sibilla Temeria, of }\overline{\text{Italy. The }\overline{y}\)the was }\overline{Sibilla Eritria, of whom we spake of afore. The }\overline{y} \overline{the} \text{was called Sibilla Samia, of that yle called }\overline{Samos.}

\(^{1}\) a company womans, Cx.
\(^{2}\) of[y om. MS. (only.)
\(^{3}\) and "pan ... of Latyns] om. Cx.
\(^{4}\) Pierze, a.
\(^{5}\) londe, MS. (only.)
\(^{6}\) Sie Harl. MS. for Cimeria.
Campania oriunda, quae novem libros attulit Tarquinio Prisco, Romano regi, Romanis decretis conscriptos; octava fuit Hellespontia, in agro Trojano nata, quae legitur Cyri regis et Solonis temporibus extitisse; nona fuit Phrygia, quae legitur vaticinata Anchise; decima Tiburtina, dicta Albunea. Quarum omnium carmina extolluntur, eo quod de Deo, de Christo, de gentibus multa scripsisse comprobantur. Veruntamen Augustinus octavo libro De Civitate capitulo sextodecimo videtur velle, quod Sibylla Erythreæ floruerit tempore Romuli; de qua etiam dicit quod multa de Christo manifeste scripsit, sicut patet in illis ejus versibus:

Judicii signum tellus sudore madeset; Ecco rex adveniet per sæcla futurus. Siquidem in carne præsens ut judicet orbem, et caetera. Quorum versuum capitales litteræ hunc reddunt sensum: JESUS CHRISTUS DEI FILIUS SALVATOR. Isidorus, libro quarto, capitulo sexto. Sibylla nomen est officii, non personæ. Dicitur enim a Syos, quod est deus, et Bele, quod est mens, quasi habens

1 Romano regi] om. C.D.  
2 inscripto, D.  
3 oriunda . . . fuit] om. B.  
4 Ellespontia, C.D.  
5 regis] om. C.D.  
6 Salonis, A.; Salamonis, B.D.; Salonis, E.  
7 Albaniæ, E.  
8 Quoranum, E.  
9 Extract slightly varied in C.D.  
10 decimo octavo, A. The true reference is to lib. xviii. c. 23.  
11 floruit, A.  
12 ejus] om. B.  
13 qui sic incipiant, ins. C.D.  
14 madescit, B.  
16 Siquidem . . . cetera] om. B.  
17 capitulo sexto] om. A.B.  
18 Scios, A.; Sios, D.  
19 quasi] om. A.


The text is from a medieval manuscript, and the content includes references to various ancient texts and figures.

---

1 Added from a. and Cx.
2 he, a.
3 he, a.
4 Added from a. and Cx.
5 Salou, MSS.
6 she, Cx.
7 Albumea, Cx. Some proper names in this chapter being very corrupt, have been left unaltered.
8 Payne, Cx. (who varies the sentence.)
9 of sweete, Cx.
10 speketh thus, Cx.
11 9, a.; quarto, Cx. The true reference is to lib. viii. c. 8.
mentem Dei; unde sicut vir prophetans dicitur vates seu\(^1\) propheta, sic fœmina prophetans Sibylla vocatur.\(^2\) Sub his diebus tempore regis Latini\(^3\) facta est Argonautarum navigatio, que\(^4\) fuit occasio belli Trojani, quod sic introducitur. \textit{Trogus, libro secundo.}

Post Neptunum successorem Ericthonii regnum Atheniensium ad Ægeum descenderat, qui ex priore uxore filium Theseum genuerat; tandem, uxore illa mortua, desponsavit Medeam filiam regis Colchorum, ex qua genuit filium suum Medum. Medea tandem sibi\(^5\) timens\(^6\) propter adultam Thesei privigni sui ætatem, ad patrem suum cum filio\(^7\) Medo Colchos redivit.\(^8\)

Post\(^9\) Ægeum apud Athenas regnavit filius suus Theseus, qui aliquando cum Hercule pœnestus Amazones contrivit. Post Theseum Demophon\(^10\) filius ejus successit, qui adversus Trojanos Graecis opem tulit \textit{Phrygius}.\(^11\) Igitur Pelias rex Peloponesensis\(^12\) seu Thessalae,\(^13\) timens sibi ne Jason illustris filius Æsonis fratris sui regnum\(^14\) invaderet, se expulso, suadet

\(\text{AEgeus et Medea.}\)

\(\text{Theseus.}\)

\(\text{Demophon.}\)

\(\text{Pelias.}\)

\(^1\) \textit{vel}, C.D.
\(^2\) \textit{dicitur}, C.D. B. adds \textit{quia habens mentem Dei.}
\(^3\) \textit{regis Latinis} Latini prædicti, C.D.
\(^4\) \textit{et}, C.D.
\(^5\) \textit{sibi} om. B.
\(^6\) \textit{metuens}, C.D.
\(^7\) \textit{suæ}, ins. B.
\(^8\) Slightly transposed in C.D.
\(^9\) \textit{Post . . . Phrygius} om. C.D.; for \textit{Phrygius}, B. has \textit{Trogus libro xij}; A. has \textit{Trogus 42.}
\(^10\) \textit{Demophon}, B.
\(^11\) \textit{Phrygius}, E. The text is correct. See \textit{Dar. Phryg.} § 1, which explains the absurd gloss, \textit{scu Thessalie}; but Higden has also borrowed from Justin, lib. xlii. c. 2.
\(^12\) \textit{Peloponesensis}, MSS., as usual.
\(^13\) \textit{scu Thessalae} om. C. D.
\(^14\) \textit{suum}, ins. B.
Sibil is i-seide as it were a womman pat hap Goddes 1 pouz. Trevisa.
Perfore as a man pat propheciep is i-cleped a prophete, so a womman pat propheciep is i-cleped Sibil. Vnder pis dayes in kyng Latyns tyme was pe seylynge i-made pat is i-cleped pe seylynge of Argonates. Pat seylynge was cause and occasion of pe bataille of Troye, and bygan in pis manere. _Trogus, libro 2°._ After Neptunus, pe successour of Eritonius, 2 pe kyngdom of Athene fil to Egeus, pat hadde i-gete his sone Theseus on his firste wif; and at pe laste whanne pat wyr was deed, he wedded Medea, pe kynges douzter of Colchos, and gat on hire Medus. At pe laste Medea drede hir step sone 3 Theseus, whan he come to age, and took wip here hir same Medus, and vente hoom to hire fader in to Colchos. After Egeus his sone Theseus reignede in Athene; he vente somtyme wip Hercules and werred, and overcame pe Amazones. After Theseus his sone Demophon regned; he hap 4 pe Grees azenst pe Troians. _Trogus, libro 42°._ Panne Pelias, kyng of Peloponens, pat is of Thessalæa, drede laste Iason pe noble warriour 5 wolde werre in his londes 6 and putte hym out. Iason was Eson his sone; Eson was Pelias his owne broper. Pelias brozte

eman prophesieyenge is callede Vates, soe in lyke wise a woman prophesieyenge is callede Sibilla. In this tyme of Latinus the kyng, the Organates seylede and keped the see, whiche was an occasion of the batelle of Troy, whiche was inducde in pis maner. _Trogus, libro secundo._ The realme of men of Athenæ descende to Egeus, after Neptunus, the successor of Eritonius, whiche gate of his firste wife a son callede Theseus. That wife dedde, he did wedde Medea, the douzter of the kyng of Colchos, of whom he gate a son callede Medus. Medea, drede Theseus when that he was commen to age, turnede ageyne to Colchos to here fader, with Medus here sone. Theseus reignede at Athenæ after Egeus his fader, whiche, goenge furthe with Hercules, hade the victory of the Amazones. Demophon, the son of Theseus, succeede in that realme, whiche zafe helpe to pe Grees ageyne the Troianes. _Trogus, libro 42°._ Pelias, 7 kyng of Peloponense other of Thessalæa, drede laste that the nowble man, Iason by name, son of Eson his brother, scholde entre in to his realme, movede Iason

---

1 God his, a. 2 So a.; Eritorius, MS. Read Eriehonius. 3 So a. β. γ., Cx.; sone, MS. 4 hap and assisted, Cx. 5 warriour om. a. β. γ. and Cx. 6 lond, Cx. 7 Pelias, Harl. MS. here and below.
Jasoni querere pellem auream apud Colchos insulam; sperans per hoc juvenis interitum provenire aut ex longa navigatione aut ex bello barbarici.\footnote{1} Trogus, \emph{libro quadragesimo secundo}.\footnote{2} Insuper et Pelias fecit\footnote{3} Argum parare navem pulcherrimam huic profectioni congruentem. Petrus. Ab hoc nomine, Argon, Argonautae descenderunt, qui fuerunt juvenes validi ad profectum Jasonis undecumque\footnote{4} collecti, cum quibus Phrygiam primo applicuit,\footnote{5} regnante tune ibidem Laomedonte. Trogus, \emph{libro quadragesimo secundo}.\footnote{6} Sed et Jason de finibus Phrygiae repulsus cum suis sodalibus\footnote{7} Colchos venit, regem devicit, filium regis \AEgealium occidit, pellem auream abstulit, Medeam regis filiam abduxit, et uxorem sibi fecit, quam tamen postmodum repudiavit. Sed cum postea\footnote{8} a Pelleis\footnote{9} regis filiis esset pulsus\footnote{10} et\footnote{11} Thessalia, reconciliata sibi Medea cum privigno\footnote{12} suo Medo de \AEgeo rege Atheniensium suscepto,\footnote{13} ingentem juvenum multitudinem recolligit, Colchos repetit, ubi socerum\footnote{14} suum regem regno\footnote{15} pulsuum\footnote{16} viriliter restituit, nonnullas etiam civitates in recompensationem prioris injuriae regno ejus adiect. \emph{Phrygius Dares}. Igitur Jason,\footnote{17}
Iason in witte forto fette 1 pe goldene flees at Colchos and hopede perby pat pe ʒong man schulde be deed opw for long seillynge in pe see opw in bataile əzenst strange nacioons. Phrygius 2 Dares. Perfore Pelias made Argus ordeyne a wele faire schippe covenale to pis seillynge and passage. Petrus. Of pis name Argon comep pis name Argonaute. Argonaute were stalworpe ʒonge men i-gadred al abuse for Iason his viage; ðanne Iason seillede forþ wip pese men and londede firste in Frigia. Þo Laomedon 3 reignede per. Trogus. But Iason was put out of Frigia and come in to Colchos, and overcame pe kyng and slowþ his son Egealius and took pe goldene flees, and had wip hym Medea 4 pe kynges doȝster, and made hire his wyf. Nopeles afterward he forsook hire and putte hire away. But afterward when kyng Pelias his son was put out of Thessalia, Iason reconciled 5 and took əzen his wif Medea wip his stepson Medus, and gaderede a straunge multitude of ʒonge men and wente in to Colchos and restored orpedliche 6 his wires fader, pat was putte out of his kyngdom, and ʒaf hym meny citees to his kyngdom in 7 recompensation and amendement of pe olde wrong. Phrygius to goe to the yle of Colchos to seche the skynne of golde, supposenge that by that laboure he scholde be pereschede other in the see other pro batelle on londe. Phrygius Dares 2 xxxij 6. Wherefore Pelias made Argus to ordeyne ryalle schippes apte and pleasant to theyme. Petrus. The peple that were callede Argonautes, toke name of Argon, whiche were myȝhty men, gedrede of alle costes to go with Iason. Whiche londede firste in Frigia, Laomedon regnigne there in that tyme. Trogus. But Iason, expulsede from Frigia, come with his felowschippe to Colchos, and overcame the kyngue of hit, sleenge Egealius his son, and toke with hym the skynne of golde, and also Medea, the doȝter of that kyngue, and toke here to his wyfe, whom he refusede afterward. But when that Iason was expulsede from Thessalia by the soomes of Pelias, and Medea his wyfe reconciled to hym, with Medus here son, gotten by Egeus kyngue of Athenes, he gedrede a grete hoste and wente to that yle callede Colchos, and restored his fader in lawe vn to his realme, whiche was expulsede from hit, and bronghte to his realme mony oper citees, in recompensation of the wronge doen afore. Phrygius Dares. After that Iason hade

---

1 fetche, Cx.
2 Frigius, MSS. and Cx.
3 So Cx.; Laomadon, MS.
4 So Cx.; Medea, MS.
5 reconseyllyd, Cx.
6 orpedliche, Cx.
7 So a, b, γ., Cx.; and, MS.
postquam Colchos subjugaverat, invitatis secum Castore et Polluce, Peleo 1 de Phthia, 2 Telamone de Salamina, 3 paratis quindecim navibus Phrygiam 4 nocte appulit, Laomedontem regem occidit, Ilium in 5 Troja 6 vastavit, Hesionam regis filiam rapuit, quam Telamoni, militi 7 suo, uxorem 8 dedit; eo quod primus Trojam intraverat. 9 Praeda quoque 10 facta, Jason ad sua cum suis 11 reedit. Quo 12 audito Priamus Laomedontis primogenitus Ilium portis et muris firmavit et regnare ccepit.

CAP. XXIV.

De Abessa; reliquâ de bello Trojano narrantur. 13

Abessa. Abessa Bedlemita 14 judicavit Israel septem annis; Anno Abr. 825. Anno Abessa 1. 

Priamus Hesionam requirit. cujus 15 anno secundo Priamus rex Phrygiae seu Troja 16 misit Antenorem 17 ad Graecos, dicens se omnes injurias preteritas sequiniter passurum, si

1 Pelleo de, B.
2 Scithia, D.; Scitia, MSS. The emendation is certain. See Dur. Phryg. § 3.
3 Salamania, B.; Salomonia, D.
Salamina, E.
4 de, ins. C.D.
5 in] de, E.
6 Troya, MSS., and similarly below.
7 militi] om. C.D.
8 in uxorem, D.
9 introierit, C.D.
10 Prædaque, C.D.
11 Transposed in A.B.
12 Hoc, C.D.
13 No title in MSS.
14 Bethlemita, A.; Bethlemita, B.; Bethlehemita, D.; mortuo Jepte, ins. C.D.
15 cujus] om. B.
16 Troge, B.
17 Anthenorem, MSS.
Dares. When Iason hadde \(^1\) sodued Colchos, he hadde wip hym at his prayenge \(^2\) Castor, Pollux, Peleus \(^3\) and Scitia, Telamon \(^4\) of Salamina, \(^5\) and come yn wip fyue schippes by ny\(^{3}\)te into Frigia and slow Laomedon pe kyng and destroyed Ilium in Troye. He raunysched Hesiona pe kynges dou\(^{3}\)ter and \(\) af hire to his kyn\(^{3}\) Telamon of Salamina to wife; \(^6\) for he was pe firste pat entrede in to Troye and \(\) pere took \(^8\) a grete pray. And Iason tornede a\(^{3}\)en wip his men. When Priamus \(^9\) Laomedon his eldest some herde and wiste of al pis, he strengepede Ilium pat is Troye wip \(\) ates and wip walles and bygan for to reigne.

**Capitulum vicesimum quartum. Abessa.**

Abessa of Bethleem was inge in Israel seuncene \(\)ere. In his seconnde \(\)ere Priamus kyng of Frigia, \(\)at is kyng of Troye, sento Antenor to pe Grees, \(^{10}\) and seide \(\)at he wolde gladliche for\(\)ene al trespas \(\)at was doo to forehonde, \(^{11}\) \(\)at \(\)ey wolde made subiecte that yle of Colchos, desirede with hym Castor MS. HARL. and Pollux, and Peleus of Scitia, and Thelamon of Salamina, with v. schippes entrede in to Frigia in the ny\(^{3}\)hte, and did sle Laomedon the kynges dou\(^{3}\)ter, whom he toke to Telamon\(^{4}\) his kyngs dou\(^{3}\)ter, to be his wife, in that he entrede in to the cite of Troye firste. And when thei hadde taken preyes at theire pleasure, Iason returnede with his felow-schippe towarde his cuntre. Priamus the son of Laomedon, herenge of that treason, made that city of Troy stronge, dressenge hit with \(\) ates and walles, and began to reigne in hit.

**Capitulum vicesimum quartum.**

Abessa, of the cuntre of Bethleem, was inge in Israel vij. yeres, and reignede \(\)er. In the firste yere of whom Priamus, the kyng off Frigia other elles Troy, sende Antenor vn to the Grekes, seyenge that he wolde suffre alle

---

\(^{1}\) Thanne Iason whanne he hadde, a. 8. y.  
\(^{2}\) Cx. ins. Hercules.  
\(^{3}\) and of, MS., a. (not B. y. Cx.)  
For Scitia read Phthia. See above.  
\(^{4}\) Thelamon, MSS. and Cx.  
\(^{5}\) So B. y.; Salamina, MS., a. Read Salaminis.  
\(^{6}\) nyre, a.  
\(^{7}\) and] om. a.  
\(^{8}\) was i-take, a. B. y.; was taken, Cx.  
\(^{9}\) Priamus, MS. A few similar corrections have been made tacitly in this chapter.  
\(^{10}\) Grekes, Cx.; and so below.  
\(^{11}\) trespasses that they had do before, Cx.

---

1 sibi] om. D. 
2 de gentibus, B. 
3 Paris qui et frater, B. 
4 Nam esserat, C.D. 
5 Iadam silvam, C.D. 
6 sibi, ins. C.D. 
7 sibi] om. B. 
8 sapientiam] om. C.D. 
9 daturam se ei uxorem quae in Graecia pulchrior forst, ins. C.D.; et Venerem sibi promississe uxorem de mundo pulchriorem si ejus speciem

---

The text is evidently incomplete. See Trevisa.

10 Græcos, A.D.; om. B.
11 et] om. C.D.
12 ceterisque pluribus, ins. C.D.
13 in, C.D.
14 Citharæam, MSS. (and versions).
15 Paris] om. C.D., with other slight variations.
16 Priamus quoque, C.D.
17 appellaudi, B.
sende aȝen his suster Hesiona, pat pey hadde i-rauesched. Pe Grees wolde nouȝt. Priamus arrayed for pe bataille and made his eldest son Hector leadere of opere men. Alisaundre, pat heet Paris also, Hector his bropter, assentep her to, and seip pat whanne he honteede some tyme in pe woode pat hatte Ida, he sleep and mette pat Mercurius broughte abowe to fore hym Iuno, Venus, and Minera, for he schulde deme whiche of hem was fairest; and Minera by heet hym wisdom, [Iuno worship, and Venus behete him] 5 pe fairest wif of pe worlde, ȝif he wolde deme pat sche were pe fairest. Helenus pe oþer bropter propheciede pe contrarie; and seide pat ȝif Alisaundre, pat heet Paris, took a wyf of Grees 7 [pe Grees] wolde come and destroye Ilium, pat is Troye. Pat woman Cassandra propheciede pe same. Nepelles schippes were arrayed, and Alisaundre, pat heet Paris, wip Antenor 9 sent into Grecia, and whenne wommen come 11 into pe ilond Cythera to pe feste of Iuno, Helena kyng Menelaus his wif come forto see pe fairnesse of Paris, [and Paris] 12 rauesched hire and took hir wip hym and turnede home aȝen. 13 Pan was Priamus glad i-now,

inuryes a-paste if that Hesiona his sustyr, taken aweye by theyme, myȝhte be restorede. The men of Greece denyenep that, Priamus made redy to make batelle ageyne theyme, makeynge Hector, his firste son, gouernoure and rewlore of hit, whiche thynge Alexander other Paris exhortede to be fulfillede, seynge that as he wente to hunte in a woode callede Ida, he see in his slepe Mercury to haue broughte to hym Venus and Minera to jugge of the beawte of theyme. Then Minera promisede to hym sapience, if that he wolde preferre here beawte; and Venus promisede to hym oon of the feieste women of pe worlde to his wife, if pat he wolde preferre here beawte. Neuerthelesse schippes were made redy, and Alexander with Antenor were sende to the londe of Greece, whiche, commenge to an yle callede Cythera, where women were gedrede to the feste of Iuno, Paris toke awey Helena, the wife of kyngg Menelaus, commenge to mete Paris to beholde his beawte, and broȝhte here toPriamus. At whiche acte Priamus ioyede moche,

1 So B, Cx.; Ector, MS., here and below.
2 So a, Cx.; Ydo, MS.
3 slept, Cx.
4 dremed, Cx.
5 Added from Cx. (only); wyt and wisdom and the fayrest wif; 7.
6 So a, and Cx.; gf, MS.
7 Greece, Cx.
8 Added from a. and Cx.
9 Anthenore, MS., but Antenor above.
10 and Paris with Anthenor were sente, Cx.
11 tho men came, Cx.
12 Added from a. b. γ., Cx.; MSS. sometimes have Paris.
13 and toke hir with hym in to Troy, Cx. (omitting the rest.)
per hoc recuperaturus. Igitur Menelao rege Lacedæmoniae fratri suo Agamemnoni regi Mycenarum de raptu uxoris sua\(^2\) gravius\(^3\) conquerenti adunantur\(^4\) robusti\(^5\) quinque;\(^6\) Achilles, Patroclus, Ulixes, Ajax, Nestor, cum cæteris validis numero quadranginta septem, habentes naves paratas in portu Athenarum\(^7\) numero mille ducentas. Deinde responso\(^8\) accepto ab Apolline Delphico, quod in decimo anno Ilium foret subvertendum, Graeci mare sulcant, classem navium\(^9\) solvunt, in Phrygia praedas agunt, et redeunt. Interea mittit Agammenon legatos Ulixem et Diomedem ad regem Priamum, si vellet Helenam reddere. Priamus illico commemorat Argonantarum injuriam, patris interitum, sororis raptum,\(^10\) Antenoris legati sui contemptum; idcirco\(^11\) pacem repudiat, et\(^12\) bellum indicit.\(^13\) Igitur exercitu hine inde congregato Hector occidit Protesilaum, Patroclum et Merionem,\(^14\) multosque sauciat; usque dum Ajax Telamonius, con-

---

1 Meeenorum, MSS.  
2 de . . . sue] om. C.D.  
3 graviter, B.  
4 congregantur, C.D.  
5 fortes, C.D.  
6 quique, MSS. See Harl. translation.  
7 Atheniensii, C.D.  
8 Responsoque, C.D.  
9 navium] om. C.D.  
10 et, ins. C.D.  
11 idemque, C.D.  
12 et] om. C.D.  
13 So A.B.; indicit, E.  
14 Menovem, E.
as pey he schulde rekke neuere and haue azen his suster Hesiona. 1 Pan Menelaus kynge of Lacedemonia made a greuous 2 playnt to his broper Agamemnon, 3 kynge of Messenes, 4 of pe rauiyschinge of his wif, and gadrede passyng strong men, Achille, Patroclus, Vlixes, 5 Aiax, Nestor, sup opere stalworpe men, seuen and fourty; and hadde schippes redy in pe haune of Athenes 6 in nombre of a powsand and two hundred, and hadde answere of Appolyn Delphicus, pat Ilium, pat is Troye, schulde be destroyed in pe tenpe 3ere. Pe Greces took vp here ancers and seillede on pe see, and took grete prayes, and tornede home aze. In pe mene tyme Agamemnon sende messangers Vlixes and Diomedes to kyng Priamus, 7 if he wolde 5elde vp Helene, and sende hir home azen. 8ane Priamus bypouzt hym, and hadde anon in mynde pe wrong of pe Argonates, 7 pe deth of his fader, pe rauiyschynge of his suster, pe displesynge of his messager Antenor. Perfore he forsook pees, and heet aray 8 for pe werre. Pan when pe oost was i-gadred in eiper side, Hector slow Protesilaus 9 and Menon, 10 and slow and felde to pe 11 grounde meny men

thenkenge to recure Hesiona his susty by that. Wherefore Menelaus, kyng of Lacedemonia, made compleynyte to Agamemnon, 3 kyng of Mccenas, v. myzhty men condescende to their help, whiche were Achilles, Patroclus, Vlixes, Aiax, and Nestor, with mony other stronge men, xlviij. m i in nowmbre, haungenge a m i and cc. schippes redy at Athenes in the haven or porte. After that Apollo Delphicus 3afe an answere to theyme that Troye scholde be destroyede after the xthe yere; wherefore the Grekes goeng to the see lordede in Frigia, and robbenge there, returnede 12 after that thei hade taken peyre pray. Then Agamemnon 3 sende Vlixes and Diomedes as messeyngeres to kyng Priamus that he scholde delyuere Helena. Then Priamus re membrere the intury deo to hym by the Argonates, the deth of his fader, and the takenge away of his susty, and the contempte off Antenor his messeyngere, refusethe peace, desirenge batelle. Wherefore an 12 grete hoste gedrede and metenge to gedre, Hector did sle Protesilaus 9 and Menon, and woundede soore mony other, vn til that Aiax, son of

---

1 as pey ... Hesiona] wenyng therby recorne his sister Hesiona, Cx.
2 greet and greuous, Cx.
3 Agamemnon and Agamynon, MSS., and so below.
4 Messenes, B. γ.
5 So B. γ., Cx.; Flixes, MS., a., and so below.
7 Argonates, MS.
8 heet array] ordeyned, Cx.
9 Prothesilans, MS.; Prothesalans, Harl. MS.
10 So MSS. here and below. The translators had Menenem (i.e. Memnon) in their text.
11 pe] om. α. B.
12 So the MS.
sobrinus ejus de Hesiona natus, recognita \(^1\) inter eos consanguinitate, eum impediret. Interim \(^2\) conceduntur induciae biennales, ut quisque \(^3\) mortuum suum \(^4\) sepeliat; sed \(^5\) post biennium bellum repetitur, in quo Hector decem fortes duces occidit. Econtra Achilles quatuor illustres viros interimit; ac \(^6\) per octoginta dies acriter pugnatum est continue. Et post dantur induciae triennales.\(^7\) Post quas, inito certamine, plures utriusque \(^8\) corruunt. Et quamvis Hector per somnium Andromachæ uxoris suæ, ne in bellum prodiret eo die admonitus fuisset,\(^9\) in bellum tamen properat et ab Achille occiditur.\(^10\) Quo sepulto induciae dantur ad \(^11\) annum. Dumque dies anniversarius \(^12\) Hectoris ageretur, adest Achilles amore Polyxenæ filiæ Priami nimium \(^13\) succensus, cujus nuptias dum petit et consequitur\(^14\) a bello se \(^15\) subtrahit, asserens iniquum fore propter raptum Helenæ totam Europam conturbari.

\(^1\) cognita, C.D.  
\(^2\) Ideo, C. (not D.)  
\(^3\) quilibet, C. (not D.)  
\(^4\) mortuos suos, C.D.  
\(^5\) sed] om. C.D.  
\(^6\) ac] om. C.D.  
\(^7\) Altered verbally and slightly transposed in C.D.  
\(^8\) utrimque, C.D.  
\(^9\) eo . . . fuisset] moveretur, C.D.  
\(^10\) interficitur, C.D.  
\(^11\) per, A.D.  
\(^12\) So B.; anniversaria, A.C.D.E.  
\(^13\) nimium] om. C.D.  
\(^14\) et consequitur] quibus concessis, C.D., with other slight variations.  
\(^15\) se] om. B.
Thelamonius, but 13 Be myȝte burye hir men þat were i-slawe. But after two þere þey fenge in a strong bataille. Hector slowȝ ten staworpe, and Achilæs in þe oþer side slow foure stalwórpe men and noble; and þe bataille durede foure score dayes contynueliche in harde fyȝttinge and stronge. And after þat were 4 trewes i-take for þre þere, and after þe trewes þey fenge on forto fiȝte and slowȝ ful men in oþer side,5 and Andromach, Hector his wif, warned Hector by here sweuene 6 þat he schulde 7 þat day nouȝt 8 wende in to batayle. 9 Noþeles Hector wente in to bataille and was i-slawe of Achilæs. And whan Hector was i-buried, were trewes i-take for a þere. Whan Hector his mynde day was i-holde, Achilæs was þerat, and loued hugeliche Polyxena,10 kyng Priamus his douȝter, and axede and had 11 hir to his wif, and wipdrowe hym from þe bataille, and seide þat it was euel i-doo 12 forto destourbe 13 al Europa for þe raueschynge of Helen. But at

Hesionæ, sustir to Priamus, did lette hym knowenge con- sanguinite betwene þemhe. After þat bataille doen, respite of iȝ, yere was grawnte, that men sleyne myȝhte be beryede. But þat space a-paste, the bataille began, contynuenge by lxxx. daies, in whiche bataille Hector did sle x. nowble dukes, and Achilæs did sle iij. stronge men. After whiche bataille doen, space and respite of iȝ, yere were grawntede. The bataille begunne ageyne, mony nowble men were sleyne, where Hector, warnede by Andromacha his wif, þat he scholde not goe to bataille in þat day, was sleyne by Achilæs, whiche beryede, respite was þiffen by a yere. And at the ende of the yere, in the anniversary day of Hector, Achilæs, movede to the luffe of Polyxena, doȝhter of kynge Priamus, wente to þeymhe. Whiche desirenge of Priamus to haue Polyxena,10 his doȝhter, to his wif, and hauenge grawnte, come not to þe bataille, seyenge þat hit was a wikende thynge alle Europe to be trombledge for takenge aweye of Helena. Whiche, goenge to bataille at

1 forto] til, Cx.
2 Thelamonius, MS.
3 sleyn, Cx.
4 was, Cx.; but were (trewes) just below.
5 Sentence slightly varied in Cx.
6 dreame, Cx.
7 not þat, a. and Cx.
8 nouȝt] om. a. and Cx.
9 þe batayle, a., here and below.
10 Polyxena, MSS.; Polyxena, Cx.
11 and had] to have, Cx.
12 done, Cx.
13 destrouble, Cx.

1 jam, ins. C.D.  
2 vulnerat, B.  
3 Quo jam] qui jam, B.; unde, C.D.  
4 excoquit, A.B.C.D.  
5 constituit, C. (not D.)  
6 Polyxenam] om. C.D.  
7 vulneratur, D.  
8 venit, B.  
9 Penthesilea, MSS.  
10 Sentence slightly varied in C.D.
pe laste he wente forp at pe prayere of pe Greeks, and was i-wounded of Troilus,1 pat hadde i-slaye many Greeks. Perfore he was angri and wroop, and slow Troilus and Menon also. Pan was Hecuba wonder wroop, Priamus his wif, and by pouȝte [here of gyle],2 and sette Achilles a day whan he schulde come and fecche home his wyf Polyxena, pat was hir owne douȝter. And whanne pe day was i-come,3 Alisaundre, pat het Paris, slow Achilles gilefulliche. Perfore pey hadde answere of goddes, pat pe Greeks schulde haue pe victorie by Achilles his lynage. Neoptolemus,4 Achilles his sone, wente forp into bataille; in pe whiche bataile Alisaundre5 and Aiax were i-wounded to pe deth ciper of opor. Paune pe seuenpe ʒere of pe bataille 6 come Penthesilea,7 queene of Amazones,8 in help and socour of pe Troians, and brak pe sege of pe Greeks, and brende many of hir schippes. Nopeles sche was i-slaye of Neoptolemus pat sche hade i-wounded. After pat Antenor9 and Eneas counsaillede forto delyuere hoom Eleyne, and forto axe10 pees. Priamus took grete indignacion [of here

the laste thro the supplication of the Grekes, was woundede soore of Troilus, which hade sleyne and woundede mony Grekes. Achilles seenge that, and vexede soore, did sle Troilus and Meno. Then Hecuba, the wife of Priamus, hauneg hym in despecte, intendeved decepcion, thankenge to ordeyne a day to Achilles in whom he scholde wedde Polyxena here doȝter. Achilles, comenge to thyeme that tyme assignede, was sleyne by disseite of Paris other Alexander. Where off an answere was ʒifen of goddes that men of Grece scholde be victores thro the bloode of Achilles. Then Neoptolomus,4 the son of Achilles, wente furthe to batelle, in whom Aiax and Alexander woundede either other dedely. Penthesilea,7 the qwene of the Amazones, come to helpe the Troianes in the vijthe yere of theire batelles and fiȝhte, whiche dissolue the sege of the Grekes and brente mony of theire schippes. Neuerthelesse that qwene Penthesilea7 was sleyne of the son of Achilles, Neoptolomus4 by name, whom sche hade woundede soore. After that, Antenor9 and Eneas movenge Priamus that Helena, wife to Menelaus, scholde be restorede, he hade indignacion,
Priamus; mortem eis intentans, si ultra id persuaderent.¹ Quamobrem ipsi indignati ² mittunt Polydamantem ad Græcos, urbis traditionem pro salute sua offerentes. Concessa ¹ igitur pace illis tribus et omnibus suis, scilicet Antenori, Ænæ, et ⁵ Polydamanti, urbs de nocte hostibus aperitur; ubi Priamus a Neoptolemo etiam ad aras deorum confugiens occiditur.⁶ Æneas Polyxenam apud patrem suum Anchisen ⁷ abscondit ad instantiam Helenæ; libertas Andromachæ conceditur. Polyxena diu quæsita et tandem inventa a Neoptolemo ad patris sui ⁸ tumulum jugulatur. Æneas propter absconsionem Polyxenæ discedere jubetur; Antenori terra illa relinquitur; Helena cum suo Menelao domum rexit.⁹ Igitur pugnatum fuerat ¹⁰ apud Trojam decem annis sex mensibus, ceciderunt ex Trojanis ante urbem profidam delxxvi.,¹¹ sed urbe prodira colxxvii.¹² Æneas ergo cum viginti quatuor navibus a patria discessit, comitantibus eum tribus

counsell, and seide he schulde dey if enere he were so wood
to counsell pat etsones. Perfore pey took greet indignacion, 1
and sente Polydamas to pe Grekes forto betraye pe citee for hire
owne saucion. The Grekes graunctede pees to pese pre, [to] 2
Antenor, to Eneas, to Polydamas, and to alle hires, 3 and pe
citee was i-opened by nyȝte to pe enemies. 4 Panne Priamus
fliȝt to auters of goddes, and Neoptolemus pursued hym and
slow hym stan deed. 5 Eneas hidde Polyxena at his fader
Anchises at pe prayer of Helene. Andromache hadde freodem
i-graunted. Polyxena was longe i-souȝt, and at pe laste i-founde
and i-slawe of Neoptolemus at here fader tombe. Eneas, for he
hadde hidde Polyxena, was i-hote be ago. Pe londe was
i-lefte to Antenor. Helen wente home aȝen wip Menelaus.
Me hadde i-fouȝte at Troye ten ȝere and sixe monpes,
and were i-slawe of pe Troians, or pe citee was bytrayed,
sixe hundrede pousand pre skore and sixtene; and whan
pe citee was betrayed, pre score powsande and eiȝten
powsande. 6 Panne Eneas wente oute of pe contray wip fourre
and twenty schippes, and wip hym pre bowsend men and pre

seynge pei scholde loose their lyfes, if thei movede to
hym euy more of pat mater. Wherefore thei, hauenge in-
dignacion, sende Polydamas to pe Grekes, offerenge to
theyrn the deleyuarence of the cite, the lifes of theym
graunctede and of their men. Whiche grauntenge to theyrne
peace, and to alle their men, that is to saye, vn to An-
tenor, Eneas, and to Polydamas, and to alle their men,
the ȝates of the cite were sette open to the Grekes in pe
nyȝhte. Where Priamus was sleyne of Neoptolomus.
Eneas takeynge Polyxena, hidde here at a place of Anchisen
his fader, in the temple of goddes. Also liberte was
graunntede to Andromacha at the instaunce of Helena.
Polyxena, doȝhter to Priamus, founde at the laste, was
throteled at the beryalle of here fader. Wherefore Eneas
was commandede to departe from that cuntre, for the
hidengen off Polyxena. That londe was lefte to Antenor,
and Helena was restorede to Menelaus her lowsebonde,
kynge of Athenes. Where thei did siȝhte by x. yere and
vj. monethes, and there were sleyne of the Troianes, afore
the treason of hit, vjc. lxxvj. m1, and after the treason of
that cite cc. lxxvij. m1. Eneas departede from that cuntre,
takeynge with hym xxviiiȝ schippes, with iij. m1. men and eec.

1 Added from a. and Cx. (ȝ, has
bei for he twice.)
2 Added from a. ȝ, and Cx.
3 to alle theyr retinue, Cx.
4 Grekes, Cx.
5 stan deed] om. Cx.
6 Sentence recast by Cx.

VOL. II.

D D
milibus et trecentis, Antenorem quoque secuti sunt duo milia, Andromacham et Helenum duo milia.

**CAP. XXV.**

*De Aylon et Abdon, judicibus Israel.* Graeci post Trojam eversam domum redeunt; socii Diomedis in aves conversi. De hujusmodi transmutationibus quid judicandum.  

_Aylon._ AYLON de tribu Zabulon judicavit Israel decem annis; quos tamen Septuaginta interpretes non annumerant, et ideo Eusebias annuuerat ejus annos temporibus Josuæ, Samuelis, et Saulis, quorum annos Scriptura tacet, plus annorum ponens quam in Josepho reperitur. Ita ut ab egressu de Αγγυπτo usque ad tempulum Salomonis sunt anni quadringenti octoginta.  

_Abdon._ Abdon sive Labdon judicavit Israel octo annis, cujus anno tertio capta est Troja, anno scilicet a nativitate Abrahæ octingentesimo xlijii., ab egressu Israel de Αγγυπτo cccxi., anno regni regis Latini in Italia xxv., anno ante urbem Roman conditam circiter quadringentesimo xxxii.o. Augustinus, libro octavodecimo, capitulo sextodecimo. Post Trojam eversam,
hundred, and wip Antenor two bowlsand, wip Andromache Trevisa.
and Helenus two bowlsand.


AYLON, of pe lynage of Zabulon, was iuge of Israel ten 3eres. Nopeles pe Seenty acountep hem nonst, and perfore Eusebius acountep his 3eres of Issue, of Samuel, and of Saul; for pe Scripture spekep nonst of here 3eres. Nopeles pey settep moo 3eres pan bee by i-founde by Iosephus. So jat from pe goynge out of Egipte anon to Salaman his temple were foure hundred 3ere and foure score. Abdon, pat heet Lapdon, was also iuge of Israel ei3te 3ere. In his priddie 3ere Troye was i-take, ei3te hundred 3ere and foure and forty after Abraham his burpe, pre hundred 3ere and fourty after pe goynge out of Egipt, pe 3ere of kyng Latyn in Italy fyue and twenty, to fore pe buldynge of Rome aboute an 3 fore hundred 3ere and two and pritty. Augustinus, libro octavodecimo, capitulo sextodecimo. After pat Troye was destroyed, jit while kyng Latyn reigned in Itali, pe Grekes pat tornede azen and hadde in pe

and also ij. m. folowede Antenor, and ij. m. Helena and MS. Harl. Andromach.a.

Capitulum vicesimum quintum.

AYLON, of the tribe of Zabulon, was governoure in Israel x. yere, whom the lxxvi interpretatores do not annumerate; perfore Eusebius zifice the tym to the yeres of Issue, Samuel, and of Saul, the yeres of whom Scripture dothe not rehearse. Abdon, other Labdon, was governoure in Israel xliiiij. yere, in the cce. and fourty yere of the egres-

1 three, Cx.
2 Adromache, MS. A few similar trivial errors of orthography have been tacitly corrected in this chapter.
3 this word should be cancelled apparently, though found in all the four MSS.

4 Augustinus, librum decimo octavo, capitulo decimo sexto.
5 After the de-

struccion of Troye, Latinus the kyng reignenge that tym in Italy, the Grekes were afflicte and trowblede score in

419
Græci post Trojam eversam domum revertuntur.

Diomedis templum; ejus socii in volucres conversi.

Similia de sociis Ulyssis et de Arcadibus in lupos mutatis narrat Varro.

Græci post Trojanum revoluere domum revertuntur.

Diomedis templum; ejus socii in volucres conversi.

Similia de sociis Ulyssis et de Arcadibus in lupos mutatis narrat Varro.

regnante adhuc in Italia rege Latino, reversi Græci multipliciter in itinere sunt afflicti. Nam, teste Varrone libro tertio de historiis, socii Diomedes in volucres sunt conversi, ipseque Diomedes in itinere dispa-rruit, ita ut pro deo sit habitus, templumque ejus celebre sit apud insulam Diomedium non longe a monte Gargano in Apulia; et hoc templum circumvolare atque incolere aves perhibentur tam mirabili obsequio ut aquam rostris spargant. Ubi si venerint Græci aut Græcorum stirpe nati eis adulantur; si autem alienigenas viderint, grandibus rostris eos vulnerant. Et ad id astraendum narrat Varro non fabuloso mendacio sed historica veritate de illa maga famosissima Circe, quæ socios Ulixis mutavit in bestias; et de Arcadibus qui sorte ducti transnatabant quoddam stagnum atque ibi convertebantur in lupos, et cum feris vivebant. Si autem non vescerentur ibi carne humana, rursum post novem annos renatato stagno reformabantur in homines. Dicit etiam Demænetum

---

1 ejus] om. F.
2 rostris, om. A B.
3 progeniti, C.D.
4 So D., which has et ille si above; adulentur, A.E.
5 verberant, B.
6 vertebantur, B.
7 ibidem, ins. C.D.
8 ibi] om. B.
9 denatato, C. (not D.)
10 denique, C.D.
weie many myshappes. For Varro,¹ libro tertio de historia, seip pat Diomed his felawes were i-torned in to foules, and Diomedes hym self was na more i-seie; so pat he was i-holde a god. His temple is solemne in pε ilond Diomedia, nουζt fer from Mont Gargan in Apulia.² Me seip pat foules wonep and fleep about pis temple, and seruep wonderliche, and springeþ water. Ʒif pe Greees or ³ eny oper of pe kynde of [pe] ⁴ Greees comeþ peder, pe bryydes makeþ ⁵ hem good semblanace;⁶ and Ʒif eny oper comeþ, þey woundep hem wip hire grete beedes. And forto conferme þe same Varro seven teleþ nουζt a fable lesynge, but sopennesse of storie of pat famous wieche Cirece, þat tornede⁷ and chaungede Vlixes his felawes into bestes; and of þe Arcades ⁸ þat by lot swarn ouer a pool and þan were i-torned into wolffes and leuede wip wylde bestes, and Ʒif he ¹¹ ete þere no mansis flesche, þey schulde after yyne þere swymme home ouer þe pool and torne æþen in to schup of mankynde. [He sayth also that Demenetus, whan he had

[2] So a. and Cx.; Ampula, MS.
[3] So also Cx.; oper, a. (or is very frequently oper in æ.)
[6] semblant, a., Cx.
[7] So a. and Cx.; F̆̃̃̃r̆̃ŏ, MS.
[8] dympnesse, sorcresse, and wyliche, Cx.
[9] transfourmede, Cx.
[10] Arcades, MSS. and Cx.
[11] they, Cx. (a frequent variation.)
cum gustasset de sacrificio Arcadis, in lupum fuisse conversum; et post novem annos in propriam\(^1\) formam restitutum; pugillatu quoque sese exercisset, et Olympico postmodum vicisse\(^2\) certamine. *Plinius, libro xvij.\(^3\) capitulo xxij.\(^4\) Homines in lupos verti rursumque\(^5\) restitui falsum existimamus.\(^6\) Auctores tamen Graecie tradunt Arcades ad stagnum quoddam ejusdem regionis duci, ac vestitu eorumdem in quercu suspenso tranare,\(^7\) et in deserto in lupos transfigurari,\(^8\) et cum eisdem lupis per novem annos conversari. Quo in tempore, si humana carne abstinerint, rursum rematato stagno ad proprium habitum et effigiem redire, addito tamen novem\(^9\) annorum senio; sed nullum est tam impudens mendacium quod omnino teste careat.\(^10\)

*Augsburgius, libro octavodecimo, capitulo sextodecimo.*\(^11\)

Quid igitur ad huc dicemus? Certe cum nos in Italia constituti essemus, satis audiebamus de quibusdam

\(^{1}\) pristinam, C. (not D.)  
\(^{2}\) vixisse, B.  
\(^{3}\) 18°, C.D. The true reference is to lib. viii. c. 34. (c. 22 of some.)  
\(^{4}\) 2°., A.  
\(^{5}\) rursusque, C.D.  
\(^{6}\) estimamus, C.D.  
\(^{7}\) transnaturae, B.  
\(^{8}\) transformari, B.  
\(^{9}\) novem\(^\text{om.}\) E.  
\(^{10}\) careat\(^\text{om.}\) E.  
\(^{11}\) The true reference is to lib. xviii. c. 18.
tasted of the sacrifice of Archad,\(^1\) was torned in to a wolf; and after nyne yere he was restored ayene to his owne shappe of mankynde,\(^2\) and vsete afterward geauntes dedes, and hadde pe maistrye in a tornement\(^3\) of Olympus.\(^4\) Plinius, libro sextodecimo, capitulo vicesimo secundo. \(\text{Trevisa.}\)

\(^{2}\) Added from B. γ. Cx. (γ. omits of mankynde).

\(^{3}\) tonyng, Cx.

\(^{4}\) Olymp, a. B.

\(^{5}\) be transformed into, Cx.

\(^{6}\) oft, Cx.

\(^{7}\) pat be, a. (not Cx.)

\(^{8}\) older, Cx.

\(^{9}\) pat ... witnesse] but it may be confirmed, Cx.

\(^{10}\) So a. and Cx.; 16, MS.

\(^{11}\) So a. and Cx.; 22, MS.

\(^{12}\) sayngys, Cx.
illarum partium mulieribus stabulariis, quae dare solemn-
bant caseum veneficum viatoribus; unde et in jumenta
illico verterentur, et onera portarent, manente in eis
mente rationali; iterumque perfuncto officio ad se
redire. Sic quoque de se fatetur Apuleius in libro suo
sibi contingisse, quod veneno hujusmodi sumpto, et hu-
mano manente animo, asinus fieret. Ranulphus.

Simile narrat Willelmus de Regibus libro secundo de
duabus incantatricibus, quae in strata publica Romam
duciente habitantes, hospitem, si quando solus veniebat, in
aliquod animal vertebant. Unde et quemdum histrio-
nem sic hospitatum in asinum verterunt mirabilibus
gesticulationibus insignitum, quem et pro ingenti
summa pecuniae cuidam diviti vendiderunt; sub tali
tamen admonitione, quod aquam nunquam transiret.

Custos itaque illi appositus aliquandiu mandatum rigide
observabat, veruntamen temporis lapsu sub laxiori
custodia asinus evadens in proximum lacum se pro-
jectit, et sic pristinam formam humanam receptit. Cus-
tos insequens de asino amisse a quocumque occurrente
sciscitatur. Refert ille sic reformatus se asinum fuisse,
trauailed by pe weie, and anon ¹ pe men tornede into bestes and bar hevy charges, and hadde kyndeliche witte and resoun; and whan pey hadde i-do hir servise pey tornede azen into ² hir owne schap. Also Apule[i]us in his book knowlechede ³ pat so hit happed hym self, pat he toke suche venym, and hadde his witte and resoun, and was i-made an ass." ⁴ B. Willelmus de Regibus, libro secundo, telleth suche ⁵ doynge of twyne wicches pat wonede in pc hi ze weye pat lede to Rome; ⁶ and yf eny gest come allone, pey torne ⁷ hym in to a beest; and so come by ham a mynstral pat coupe moche merpe, and pey tornede hem in to an ass, and solde hym to a riche man for a grete somme of monny. Nopeles wip suche warnyuge pat he schulde neuere passe water, and his wardeyn kepte hym besiliche longe tyme. Nopeles in passyng of tyme he took lasse hede to his ass; and pe ass seaped to water, and torned azen in to pe schappe of mankynde. Pe wardeyn of pe ass folowede after, and asked ⁸ his ass of euerich man pat he mette; and he, pat hadde ben an ass [and] ⁹ was torned to

to ziife chese to trauellenge men thro the whiche thei were chaungede in to other similitudes and did bere burthones, the mynde of man remanente in thyme. And to returne to theire propre forme, that office and labore doen. Also Apule[i]us rehersethe in his boke that same thyng to hauo happe to hym thro the recepotion of suche venome, and to hauo been made an ass, hanenge the mynde of a man. B. Willelmus, de Regibus et Pontificibus, libro ²°, rehersethe, acorderenge to the confirmation of this mater; of ij. wicches dwellenge at Rome, won to chaunge a man in to an other similitude, if that he come to theire place sole. Whiche women tornede in a season a ioculer other mynstrelle in to the similitude of a ryalle ass, whom thei solde for a grete summe of money, vnder this condicion and monnic to the byer, that the ass scholde not goe ouer the water in eny wise. The byer kepede that commandemente stretrytely a longe season, neuerthelessse he hade more liberte in kepenge by processe of tyme, whiche goe ouer a water was restorede in to his propre forme. The byer of the ass folowenge, inquirede of euyer man with whom he did mete of his ass. That man restorede to his propre forme seide that he was that ass, and to be restorede to

---

¹ to be, MS. (not a. or Cx.)
² to, a.
³ knowlechede, a. β. ; sayth, Cx.
⁴ Some words erroneously repeated in MS. (which omits θ), and a.; (text as β. γ. and Cx.)
⁵ pat suche, MS. (not Cx.)
⁶ way to Romeward, Cx.
⁷ turned, a. β.
⁸ azed after, Cx.
⁹ Added from a. and Cx.
et modo hominem induisse. Famulus custos ad dominum suum hunc adducit. Dominus autem ad Leonem papam utrumque ducit.\(^1\) Incantatrices anicule coram papa convictae id idem fatentur. Dubitantem papam super hac re confirmat Petrus Damianus, litterature peritus, exemplo Simonis Magi, qui Faustinianum in Simonis figura videri et\(^2\) a filiis proprisi horreri fecerat. *Augustinus, libro octavodecimo, capitul o sextodecimo.* Tenendum est igitur daemones, nisi Deo permittente, nihil\(^3\) posse; nec etiam naturam aliquam creare, neque animum neque\(^4\) corpus mutare.\(^5\) Quae tamen a vero Deo conditore create\(^6\) sunt specie tenus videntur\(^7\) aliquando commutare, ita videlicet ut illud hominis fantasticum, quod cogitando sive somniando variat,\(^8\) per rerum genera, etiam cum corpus non sit, corporum\(^9\) tamen similes formas mira\(^10\) celeritate capit, sopitis corporeis sensibus;\(^11\) fantasticum autem illud velut corporatum in alicujs animalis effigie apparet sensibus\(^12\) alienis, talisque homo sibi videatur esse, qualis sibi videri posset in somnis, et portare onera.\(^13\) Quae si vera

1. adducit, B.  
2. So A.; om. E.  
3. nec, A.  
4. aliquod, ins. C.D.  
5. permutare, B.  
6. creatore condita, C. (not D.)  
7. daemones, ins. C.D.  
8. variatur, A.D.  
9. corporium, A.  
10. inita, C.D.  
11. fantasticum . . . sensibus] om. A.B.  
12. Sentence slightly varied in C.D.
man azen, seide pat he hadde ben an asse and was by come 
man. And his wardeyn ladde hym to his lorde, and pe 
lorde ladde hem bope to Leon pe pope, and pe olde wicches 
were conjynt tofore pe pope, and knowleched pe dede. Pe 
pope dowted of pis ping, and Petrus Damianus, a 
connyng man of lettrure, confermede pe manere doynge by enzample 
of Simon Magus, pat tornde Faustinus in to his owne 
schappe, and made his owne children drede hym ful sore. 
Augustinus ubi supra. Hit is to trowynge, pat fendes movye 
nouȝt doo but at Goddis suffrance; and so pe movye make 
ano manere kynde, noper body chaunge. Nopeles it semep 
somtyne pat pey chaungep liknes and schappe of pinges, pat 
God made and wrouȝte; so pe fantasia of man pat 
chaungep in pouȝt and in metynge of sweuenes by dyuers 
manere pinges, and takep pe lyknesse of bodies wip a wonder 
swiftynesse, pey no body be present. Whan pe wittes of pe body 
beep absent and i-lette of here worchynge, and pe ymage 
and liknesse, pat is in pouȝt and in fantasie, is as it were 
i-peyned in pe liknesse of som beest, and semep to oper 
men wittes in pe same liknesse. And so a man may seme to 
hym self suche as he semep in metynge of sweuenes; and so
his propre similitude. The seruaunte and keper of that
asse brouȝhte the man to his lorde. Then the lorde and
byer of that asse brouȝhte bothe the wicches to Leo the
pope, whiche conniety afore the pope graunteded that thynge.
The pope dowteng of that thynge, Damianus, a man ex-
cellente in sapience, affermede Faustinianus to be seen in 
the similitude of Simon Magus, and to be drede soore 
of his owne childer. Augustinus, ubi supra. Hit is to be
holden that the delelles may not do eny thynge but by 
the permission and sufferaunce of God, neither to create 
eny nature, neither to chaunge the body or sawle of 
those thynge which be create of Allemȝȝty God. Ne-
uerthelesse thei appere to chaunge thynge to the siȝhte, 
as the vertu fantasicalle, when a man is in slepe, causeth 
a man as to appareance to be chaungede in to an other simi-
litute, and soo that thynge fantasicalle apperethe to theyme 

1 led, a., Cx.  
2 doute, a. 
3 Damianus, MS.; also Symon 
and Faustinus below. Other MSS. 
read as in text, but Faustinus is the 
mistake of Trevisa. 
4 Letture, Cx. 
5 childer, Cx. 
6 It is to be bileyned, Cx. 
7 pe chaunge bodyes, Cx. 
8 a man, Cx. 
9 astent, a. (not Cx.) 
10 i-sette, MS. (not a. or Cx.) 
11 So a. and Cx.; in, MS. 
12 i-peyned, a. ß. γ. and Cx. 
13 to] pat, MS. (not a.) 
14 in pe] so ß. γ., Cx.; þe, MS., a.
sunt onera, portantur a daemonibus; ut sic illusio fiat hominibus. Nam quidam nomine Prestantius patri suo hoc contigisse narravit, ut venenum illud per casum in domo sua sumeret, et jaceret in lecto quasi dormiens, nec posset aliquatenus excitari. Post aliquot vero dies evigilans quasi somnia narrabat, quae passus fuerat; se videlicet caballum effectum, et annonam inter alia animalia militibus apud Rhaeticam bajulasse; quod ita ut narravit factumuisse comper-tum est. Dixit etiam se domi per noctem vidisse quendam philosophum sibi notum, sibique exposuisse nonnulla Platonica, quae antea rogatus exponere noluerat. Et cum ab eodem philosopho quæsitum fuisset cur in domo ejus fecerit quod in domo propria petenti negaverat, "Nec feci," inquit, "sed me sic fecisse somniavi." Ac per hoc alteri per imaginem fantasticam exhibitum est vigilanti, quod alter vidit in somnis. Prome quod Arcades vertuntur in lupos; quod carminibus Circes socii Ulixis vertuntur in volucres secundum istum modum videtur mihi posse fieri, si tamen factum est. Socii vero Diomedis, quia cito disparuerunt et nusquam comparuerunt, perdentibus cos ultoribus angelis malis, creduntur in alias aves conversi; que arte da-
hym may sene pat he berep burpnes and charges; [but
if pey beep verrey burpnes and charges], 1 fendes berep hem,
pat men move so be bygiled. For oon Prestantius tolde pat
suche an happe byfel his owne fader, pat he took suche venym
by chase in his owne hous, and lay in a bed, as he were slep-
ynge; and no man my3te hym awake, but after many dayes he
wook, 2 and tolde as it were a sweuene how hym was byfalle;
for hym pou3te pat he was i-made an hors, and bare corne
among oper bestes to kny3tes pat were at Retica; 3 and it was
i-founde, pat ri3t as he tolde it was i-loo in dede. He seide also
pat he say a philosofre at home in his hous; pe whiche philo-
sofre 4 expowned hym 5 many pinges 6 of Plato his bookes, pe
whiche pinges he hadde i-bede hym expowne to fore
honde, and he wolde not. And whan me axed of pe philosofre,
why he wolde expowne in anoer manis hous pat [he] 7 hadde
denied in his owne, "Nay," quod he, "I dede nou3t so, but I
"mette pat I dede." And in pat manere by pe ymage and liknes
of fantasie it was schewed to pat oon wakening what pat oper
mette in his slepe. Perfore pat pe Arcades torned in to wolffes
by wichecraft of Circa, 8 me sene3p it my3te bee in pis
manere, nopeles yf it were sop. But for Diomedes his felawes
vanschede sodenlynche awye, and were neuere after i-founde,
me trowep pat wicked angells took wrecche of hem, and torned
hem in to anoer foules liknesse, 9 pat were i-made and i-brou3t

as thynge corporealle in a straunge similitude, and to bere MS.HARL.
burdone, whiche be borne of denelles and if the trowthe
my3lte be known. A novible man, Prestantius by name,
rehersethe such a thynge to have happende to his fader by
the eytengne of chese, lyenge in his bedde that he my3hte
not move. Whiche man awakede rehersete meruellous
thynges whiche he hade suffreded, and how that he was
made in the similitude of an horse, and how he bare corne
amonge other bestes to Retica, 3 whiche thynge was provede
to have bene after his narracion. Also that men of Arcadia
be chaungede in to wolffes, and that pe felawes of Vlixes
were chaungede in to bryddes thro Circe, 8 y thenke that
hit may be done by this maner rehersete afore. The
felawes of Diomedes be supposede to have bene chaungede in
to bryddes, which were perschede as sodenly of my3hty
bryddes, callede Gripes, but to be trawede raper that thei
were denelles, whiche bryddes were brou3hte thro the

1 Added from a. β. and Cx.
2 So a.; awade, Cx.; toke, MS.
3 Retica, MSS.
4 Words erroneously repeated in
MS. and a.; text as β. γ., Cx.
5 to him, Cx.
6 secretes, Cx.
7 Added from a. and Cx.
8 So MSS. and Cx., for Circe; but
correctly above; Siences, Harl. MS.
9 torned hem in to oper foules, a.
β. γ.
monum aliunde deductae sunt, et in loco illorum hominum subrogatae, sicut cerva pro Iphigenia Agamemnonis filia supposita fuisse cognoscitur. Quod autem Diomedis templo aves rostratae aquam spargunt et Græcigenis blandiuntur, daemonum fit instinctu; quorum interest persuadere hominibus Diomedem deum factum esse, ut sic decipiantur homines in cultura deorum falsorum. Ranulphus. De ista materia vide plus supra, primo libro, capitulo Hibernia.* Giraldis in Topographia. Daemones seu mali homines naturas mutare non possunt; sed species, Deo permittente, transmutant seu transfigurant. Ita ut sensibus humanis illumine sopitis res non videantur sicut sunt, sed vi phantasmatis artis fictitiae formæ appareant; sed Deum sicut res creare ita et eas invicem commutare se vindicando aut potentiam suam seu misericordiam declarando non absurdum credimus; sicut uxorem Loth in statuam salis, et aquam in vinum, vel, interiore manente natura, extra solum transformare.

---

1 adductae, A.B.D. 2 et, E. 3 regis, ins. C.D. 4 daemonis, E. 5 deorum] om. E. 6 C.D. introduce the following passage here: "Isidorus, Etymologicum quodque monstruosæ transformationes hominum in bestias, quod fit magicis earminibus aut herbarum beneficiis. Quidam enim recipiunt mutationem per ipsam naturam; quidam vero per corruptionem transseunt in alias species, ut de putridis vitulis apes, de equis scarabæi; unde Ovidius: Concaua litorei si demas brachia cancri, Scorpionis exspect cautæque.

pider by craft of fendes in stede of pe men,1 as hit is i-knowe
pat an hynde was i-brout and i-put in stede of Iphigenia,2
Agamemnon3 his douȝter; and she was i-lad away. Pat
foulus at Diomedes temple springeþ water, and flatereþ wip
pe Grees, pat is by excitynge of pe deuel for to bryng† men
in witte for to trove4 pat Dyomede is i-made a god, pat
men be so begiled in worschippyng of false goddes. R.
Loke more of pis matere in pe firste book, capitulo Hibernia.
Giraldus in Topographia. Fendes and wicked men move
not chaunge kynde but by sufraunce of God; pei move
chaunge liknesse and schappe and latte manis wittes and
bygile men, so þat þinges semep nouȝt as þey beþ þe. But
by strengþe of fantasies and of wiccheerckt men haueþ 
semynghe by feyned schappes; but it is nouȝt vsnit^ghe5 pat we trove
þat God as he makeþ þinges of nouȝt, so he chaungeþ hem
oon into anoþer,6 forto take riþful wreche oper forto 
schewe his myȝt oper mercie. So he tronede Loth is wyf in to an
ymage of salt, and water in to wyn; oper chaunge pe liknesse
wip oute and leue pe kynde vnchaunged wip yne.

illusion of the deelle, and subrogate in pe places of those
men. Lyke as a herte was knowne to haue bene putte in 
the place of Iphigenia 2 doȝter of Agamennon. And that 
grete bryddes caste water with theire bylles in the temple of
Diomedes, and schewe as a glosenge chere to men of Gree,
is causeð by the illusion of the deelle, causenge men to
believe that Diomedes was a godde, that men scholde be 
deceyved in the worshippenge of false goddes. R. Be-
holde more of this matere afore, libro primo, capitulo 34°.
Giraldus in Topographia. Deenelles or ylle men may not
chaunge nature of eny thynge, but thei may chaunge 
similitudes thro the permission of God, so that the 
trawthe of the thynge dothe not appere, the wyttes oppresse with
the illusion of the deelle; but after a similitude fantasti-
calle made and causeð by wycheerckt. But we beleve 
Godde, that made nature, to chaunge theym, lyke as he 
chaungede the wife of Loth in to a grete parte and quantite
of salte, and water in to wyny.

---
1 Clauses varied in Cx.
2 Ephigenia, MSS. and Cx.
3 Agamennon, MSS. and Harl. MS.
4 for to trove, &c.] to believe Di-
mede to be made a god, Cx.
5 See MS.; and so a. b. γ., Cx.
6 oper, a. b. γ.
De Ænea et Didone, et de regibus Latinis. Quæ in Græcia acciderunt tempore Sampson. ¹

Æneas in Italiam venit.

Martinus. Post Trojæ excidium Æneas ² cum Anchise patre suo ³ Ascanioque ⁴ filio in navibus duodecim venerunt in Siciliam, ubi Anchise mortuo, cum vellet Æneas navigare Italianam, tempestate pulsus venit in Africam; ubi a Didone regina nimium est adamatus. Sed post aliquantulæ more spatum relictæ Didone devenit ¹⁰ Italianam. Ranulphus. Sed si verum est quod Trogus et Papias et alii docti dicunt Carthaginem fuisset fundatam a Didone septuagesimo secundo anno ante conditionem urbis Rome, quæ condita est anno quarto Achaz regis Judæ, constabit ¹¹ quod Æneas nuncquam vidit Didonem reginam Carthaginis, quia Æneas præcessit Didonem, ¹² et obiit ante fundamentem Carthaginis plusquam trecentis annis. Et hoc ¹³ innuit Augustinus primo libro Confessionum in fine, ¹⁴ dicens quod docti negant ¹⁵ Æneam vidisse Carthaginem. ¹⁶

Hugutio, capitulo Elissa. Hæc Dido vocata est Elissa, id est virago, ab eventu subsecuto; quia viriliter

¹ No title in MSS.
² Æneas] om. B.
³ et, ins. C.D.
⁴ So A.B.; E. omits quæ.
⁵ in] suo cum, C.D.
⁶ in] om. A.B.
⁷ repulsus, C.D.
⁸ devenit, C.D.
⁹ regina] om. B.
¹⁰ So A.B.D.; venit, E.
¹¹ constat, A.B.
¹² Didonem] om. A.B.
¹³ Et hoc] ut', B.
¹⁴ in fine] so A.B.; om. E.
¹⁵ negabant, A.B.
¹⁶ Ranulphus . . . Carthaginem] om. C.D.
Capitulum vicesimum sextum.

After he destroyenge of Troye, Eneas with his fader Anchises and his son Ascanius with twelue schippes come to Sicil. \( \text{b} \) Anchises deide. And whanne Eneas wolde seille into Itali, tempest drof hym in to Africa.\( \text{g} \) he was hugeliche i-loued of Dido queene; but after a schort tyme he lefte Dido and come in to Italy. R. Yf it is soo \( \text{y} \) that Trogus and Papy and oþer wise men tellep, \( \text{t} \) Dido bulde Cartage þre score þere and twelue to fore þe byldynge of pe citee of Rome, \( \text{p} \) pat was i-bulde þe fourþe þere of Achaz, kyng of Iuda, þanne it is soo \( \text{y} \) þat Eneas sayte neuer Dido þe queene of Cartage; for Enes was to forehonde, and deide þre hundred þere and more to fore þe byldynge of Cartage. And \( \text{y} \) þat menep Scoft Austyn primo libro Confessionum in fine, and seip \( \text{y} \) pat wise men denyep \( \text{y} \) þat Eneas sey Cartage.\( \text{h} \) Dido heet Elissa, \( \text{p} \) pat is Virago, a manlie womman; for hap \( \text{p} \) pat fel afterward, for sehe

---

Capitulum vicesimum sextum.

Martinus. Eneas, with Anchisen his fader, and Ascanius his son, come to Sicile with xij. schippes, after the batelle of Troy, where Anchisen diele, whiche dedde, Enes willenge to sayle to Ytaly, was broughte thro tempestes in the see vn to Affrika, where he was lufede moche of Dido the qwene. Whiche, leverenge Dido the qwene, wente in to Ytaly. R. And if that be trawthe that Trogus and Papis rehearse, seyenge that cite of Carthago to haute bene made by Dido in the lxxij. yere afore the makeunge of the cite of Rome, whiche was edifed in the iiij the yere of Achaz kyng of Iuda; then hit may be concludede that Enes see neuer Dido qwene of Carthago, for Enes was before the fundacion of Carthago more than cce. yere. To the whiche confirmation Seynte Austyn seythe, primo libro Confessionum, in the ende, that men discrete denye Enes to have seen Carthago.\( \text{h} \) Dido was callede Elissa, that is to say, virago, of a chaunce folowenge, for

---

1 destruction, Cx.
2 and there, Cx.
3 Sentence varied in Cx.
4 hugeliche] right wel, Cx.
5 So a.; seij, Cx.; seip, MS. (probably clerical error for sety).
6 was before, Cx., who varies the sentence.
7 So a. B. γ.; Cartago, MS. and Harl. MS.

---

¹ *ad* om. B.
² *ipsa* om. D.
³ *sibi* om. C. (not D.)
⁴ *et* om. B.D.
⁵ *Thussie, A.*
⁶ Citation slightly abbreviated in C.D.
⁷ *Ranulphus* om. A.B.
⁸ *Pompeius* om. C.D.
⁹ 93°., C.D. wrongly. See lib. xliii. c. 1.
¹⁰ *Latini meruit, C.D.*
¹¹ Slightly abbreviated in C.D.
¹² *Ἐneas et Latinus* om. C.D.
¹³ *adversus, C.D.*
¹⁴ *regem Tuscorum, ins. C.D.*
¹⁵ *susceperint, A.; protuderunt, C.D.*
¹⁶ *quidem, ins. C.D.*
¹⁷ *occubuerunt, C.D.*
¹⁸ *scilicet . . . Tuscorum* om. C.D.
¹⁹ *et* om. C.D.
²⁰ *urbe . . . regem* om. A.B.
²¹ *Tuscorum, ins. C.D.*
slowly his self manly. *Trogus, libro octavo decimo,* at the laste pis Elissa, Pygmalion his dozter, when he schulde be compelled of the peple forto take an housebonde, sche wente in to a greet fuyre that sche hadde i-made; and so sche slow hir self manly, and was longe after i-worschipped as a goddes. *Martinus.* Pan Eneas comm in to Itali, and was confedered and i-swore to kyng Euander, pat he regnede in seacne hilles. Thes twylene faustre at*enst Latyn, kyng of Latyns, and at*enst Turnus, kyng [of Tuscan, kyng] Latyn his dozter housebonde. In pat batayle Pallas Euander his sone and Turnus were i-slave. *R.* Nepoles Trogus, libro quadragesimo tertio, wil mene pat Eneas in his firste comyng fond so gyte grace wip kyng Latyn, pat he entrede into a partyte of pe kyngdom, and wedded Lauyn, kyng Latyn his dozter, pat was Turnus his spouse; and so bope Latyn and Eneas i-confedered to gidres toke batayle at*enst Turnus for pe gileful marriage of Lauyn, and Latyn and Turnus were bope dede in pat bataile. And Eneas afterward was kyng of eiper kyngdom of Latyns and of Tuscanes, and bulde a citee and eleped pe citee Launinium by pe name of his wif, and werred afterward at*enst pe

---

1 So a, and Cx.; octavo, MS., wrongly. See lib. xviii, c. 6.
2 *Pygmaleon,* MS.
3 So also a, she, Cx.; heo, *β,* and so below.
4 have be, Cx.
5 *Turnus,* MS., a. (not *β,* Cx.)
6 Added from a, 8, and Cx.
7 So a, and Cx.; *Lamyn,* MS., and so below.
In bello contra Mezentium occiditur. De Iulo, qui et Ascanius vocatur.

Ascanius Albam condit.

Mesentium¹ egit;² in quo et³ Aeneas⁴ occubuit, relicito post se Ascanio filio⁵ quem ex Creüsa genuerat apud Trojanum.⁶ Isidorus, Etymologiarum libro quarto.⁷ Iulus⁸ fuit filius Aeneae, qui primo loco dictus⁹ est Ascanius, ab Ascanio fluvio Phrygiae, et postmodum¹⁰ dictus est Iulus¹¹ ab Ilo¹² rege Trojanó. Hugutio, capitulo Iulus.¹³ Postmodum¹¹ occiso Mesentio¹² Tuscorum¹⁶ rege certamine singulari, Ascanius¹⁷ vocatus est Iulus,¹⁸ a prima lanugine barbae tunc primum¹⁹ in ca.²⁰ apparente, que proprie dicitur Iulus;²¹ et est nomen disyllabum, liceet quandoque metrice ponatur trisyllabum.²² Ranulphus. Hie notandum est quod nisi tres²³ annis regni²⁴ Mnææ computentur infra annos regis²⁵ Latini vacillabit historiae calculatio, quæ dicit Latinum regnasse xxij. annis; praesertim cum anno xxv. regis Latini²⁷ secundum omnes historicos Aeneas, capta Troja,²⁸ Italiam venerit.

²⁹ Ascanius filius Aeneae cepit regnare apud Latinos, et regnavit triginta octo²⁰ annis. Qui relictum oppido Lavinio, quod pater suus³¹ construxerat, Albam Lon-
The page contains a text in Latin, discussing the Trojan War, the descendants of Aeneas, and the fate of the Trojans. The text mentions the battle of Messene, the reign of King Latinus, and the events leading to the fall of Troy. It also refers to the byname of Aeneas, Ascanius, and the importance of the story of these events in the Trojan War.

The text is a historical account, focusing on the lineage and events related to Aeneas and his family. It provides details about the succession of kings and the significance of their reigns in the context of the Trojan legend.

The text is written in Latin, with a few terms in Italian and English. It includes references to historical figures and events, providing a detailed account of the events leading to the fall of Troy.
gam super ripam Tiberis construxit, quae trecentis annis caput regni illius fuit; a qua urbe Latini reges dicti sunt Albani.\(^1\) Trogus, \textit{libro xliii}.\(^2\) Hic Ascanius\(^3\) fratem suum \(^5\) Silvium Posthumum ex \(^5\) Lavinia noverca sua, post mortem patris \(^6\) natum, summa pietate educavit. Qui ideo dictus est Posthumus, quia post humationem patris natus. Et Silvius dictus est, quia in silva nutritus. A quo postmodum Latinorum \(^7\) reges dicti sunt Silvii.\(^8\) Huic quoque Silvio Ascanius postquam regnasset tria-inta octoannis succedit. \(^1\) ilius \(^10\) Lulus, a quo \(^1\) familia Juliorum \(^11\) orta est, adhuc tenellse erat atatis, sicut dictus Eutropius primo.\(^12\) Sampson\(^13\) judicavit Israel xx. annis; cujus tempore\(^14\) Anno Abr. 850. \(^{13}\) Sampsonl. \(^{13}\) Accidemnt. quomodo \(^1\) Scyllam \(^16\) fugerit et Sirenas. De quo \(^1\) dicit Paleephatus, \(^17\) libro primo Incredibilium, quod Scylla fuit mulier hospites suos spoliare \(^18\) consueta; et Sirenas \(^19\) dicit esse meretrices, \(^20\) quae deceperunt \(^21\) navigantes. Eoque tempore \(^23\) \(\text{\`E}gyptiorum \(24\) Pyrrhus ab Oreste in templo Delphici Apollinis occiditur. \(^25\) Quo etiam \(^26\) tempore quidam tradunt Homerum floruisse.\(^27\)
Tibre. Pat cite was hede of pat kynghom pre hundred see; by pe name of pat citee kynges Latyns were i-cleped kynges Albans, Reges Albani. Eutropius. Pis Ascanius norsched yp ful myndeliche his brodepart Siluius Posthumus 1 pat was i-bore of his stepdame Launinia 2 after his fader dep, and was i-cleped Posthumus, for he was i-bore after pat his fader was i-buried; and was i-cleped Siluius, for he was i-norsched in a wode. 3 A woode is silva in Latyn. By his name pe kynge of Latyns were i-cleped Siluiues. Ascanius, whanne he hadde i-regned eijpte and pritty see, he lefte pe kynghom to 4 Siluius Posthumus; for his owne sone Ilus was see of tender age, so seip Marianus, libro primo. Of pis Ilus pe mayny 5 pat is i-cleped Familia Iliorum hadde pat name. Sampson was iuge in Israel twenty see. In his tyme byfel pat pe fables telleth of Vlixes 6 of Greecia, how he sleigh Scylla and Sirenes. Perof spekep Palephatus 7 libro primo Incredibilum, and seip pat Scylla was a woman pat vsede to robbe hir gestes, and seip pat Sirenes were hoores pat bygiled men pat seillede on pe sec. Also pat tyme Orestes slow Pyrrhus 8 of Egipt in Appolyn Delphicus his temple. Also som tellep pat Homerus was pat

which was aduncet to the realme off Latynes by ccc. yere, of whom the kynge of Latynes were callede Alhan. Eutropius. This Ascanius norschede for pite his brodepart Siluius Posthumus, geten of Launinia 2 his stappemoder after the deth of his fader, which was callede Posthumus, in that he was borne after the deth of his fader. He was callede Siluius, for he was norschede in a woode; of whom kynges of Latynes were nameide Siluii afterwarde. To whom Ascaniu, after that he hade reigneide xxx viij. [yere], lefte that realme, in that Ilus his son was but of tendre age, as Marianus reherseth, libro primo. Sampson was gouernoure in Israel xxi yere; in whose tyme those thynge happeide of Vlixes the Grecke, after the fables, that he causede Scylla and Sirenes to flee, of whom Palephatus, 6 libro primo Incredibilium, reherseth, seyenge that Seilla was a woman wonte to spoyle here gestes, and Sirenes to be commune women which deceyvede men saylengue, in that Pyrrhus was sleynge of Orestes in the temple of Apollo Delphics in the tymes of men of Egipte. In which tyme somme men saye Omerus the poeto to hame bene, of the tyme of whom greet

---

1 Posthumus, MS., here and usually (not always) below. A few very slight errors in spelling proper names below have been tacitly corrected.
2 Launinia, MS. and CX.
3 Sentence varied in CX.
4 So CX.; of, MS.
5 pyes, CX.
6 So CX.; Vlixes, MS., as before.
7 Palephatus, MS.; Palephatus, Harl. MS.
8 Pirus, MS.; Pirus, CX., Harl. MS.
De Homeri De cujus tempore apud veteres magna dissonantia est; nam quidam centesimo anno, alii centesimo\(^1\) quadragesimo anno, nonnuli centesimo octogesimo anno, alii ducentesimo quadragesimo\(^2\) anno post eversam Trojam fuisset perhibent; quidam\(^3\) ante Trojam eversam\(^4\) fuisset putant. Huc usque liber Judicum annos trecentos\(^5\) sub duodecim judicibus numerat.

**Cap. XXVII.**

*Hely, [etiam de Bruto, et de verum Britannicarum primordiis].*\(^6\)

Hely sacerdos judicavit Israel post Sampsonem quadraginta annis, secundum Isidorum libro quinto, et secundum Josephum libro sexto; sed secundum Septuaginta interpretes Hely præsedit populo\(^7\) viginti annis. In cujus diebus facta fame in terra Israel contigit historia Ruth\(^8\) Moabitidis. Hectoris filii receperunt\(^9\) Ilium, id est Trojam,\(^10\) expulsis posteris Antenoris, opitulante Heleno filio Priami.\(^11\) Latinorum\(^12\) tertius Silvius Posthumus, filius Æneæ et frater\(^13\) Ascanii, ex Lavinia verca progenitus,\(^14\) cœpit regnare; et regnavit triginta

---

\(^1\) *anno ... centesimo* om. B.

\(^2\) 200°., C.D.

\(^3\) *dua, ins. C.D.*

\(^4\) *captan*, C.D.

\(^5\) 200, C.D.

\(^6\) MSS. have *Hely* only, for title.

\(^7\) *Hely præsedit populo* om. C.D.

\(^8\) *Ruth* om. C.D.

\(^9\) *receperunt*] So A.B.C.D.; *cepérunt*, E.

\(^10\) *id est Trojam*] om. C.D.

\(^11\) Slightly transposed in C.D.

\(^12\) *Latinus*, Gale.

\(^13\) *frater*] om. Gale.

\(^14\) *progenitus*] om. C.D.
tyme. But to speke of his tyme, olde men discordep. For som menep\(^1\) pat he was an hondred \(\text{3ere}\), some an hundred \(\text{3ere}\) and fourty, some an hundred \(\text{3ere}\) and four score, som two hundred \(\text{3ere}\) and fourty after pat Troye was destroyed, and some trowep pat he was to fore pat Troye was destroyed.\(^2\)

Hyderto pe book of Ingges, liber Judicum, acountep pre hondred \(\text{3ere}\) vnder twelue inges.

**Capitulum vicesimum septimum. Hely.**

\(\text{Hely pe preost after Sampson was iuge in Israel fourty} \text{3ere}; so seip Isidorus libro quinto, and Josepheus libro sexto; but pe Secentye tellep pat Hely was ouer pe peple twenty \(\text{3ere}\). In his dayes fil a greet\(^3\) longer in pe lond of Israel; and pe storie of Ruth, pat was of Moab, fil in his tyme. Hector his children took Ilium, pat is Troye, and putte out Antenor his ofspringe by helpe of Helenus, Priamus his son. Siluius Posthumus, Eneas his son, and Ascanius his broper, i-gete of his stepdame Lauinia, was pe pridde kyng of Latyns, and bygan to reigne and reigned nyne and pritty \(\text{3ere}\); in pe

dissonaunce is hade amonge olde men, for somme men say that he was in the c. yere, other in the cx\(\text{11}\) yere, and mony men in the clxxx., after the takenge of Troye. And mony men suppose that Omerus was a fore the takenge of Troye. The booke of Judicum nowmbrethe ccc. yere vn to thys tyme, vnder xij. dukes and gouernoures.

**Capitulum vicesimum septimum.**

\(\text{Ely the preste was gouernoure in Israel, after Sampson, xl\(\text{11}\) yere, after Ysidero, libro quinto, and after Josepheus, libro sexto; but after the lxx\(\text{4}\) interpretatores, Hely was gouernoure by xx\(\text{4}\) yere. In the tyme of whom the story of Ruth Moabitidis happede, a grete hungre beceng that tyme in Israel. The sonnes of Hector recurrede and toke pe cite of Troye, expellenge the succession of Antenor, thro helpe off Helenus son off Priamus. Siluius Posthumus, son of Eneas, geten of Lauinia, brother to Ascanius, the thrydde kyng of Latynes, began to reigne; whiche reignede xxx\(\text{4}\) yeres \(\text{per}\). In whiche yere Brutus, son of Siluius,}

\(^1\) saye, Cx.

\(^2\) The text of this sentence as in a. 8. \(\gamma\). The numbers are confused in MS.

\(^3\) So a. and Cx. (who has \(\text{filche}\); \(\text{fil grett}\), MS.

Gaufridus et Alfridus. Hic igitur Brutus, quia matrem in puerperio et patrem postmodum quindennis occidit, idcirco de Italia pulsus Graeciam adiit;
whiche ȝere Brute, Siluius his sone, þat was Ascanius his sone, occupied Britayne, as stories telleþ. B.1 Hit seneþ þat stories discordeþ, þat telleþ of þis Brute his fader; for þe storie of Britouns seíþ þat þis Brute was Siluius his sone, [þe whiche Siluius was Ascanius his sone].2 But þe storie of Rome seíþ þat Ascanius gat Iulus, of þe whiche come the mayny, Familia Iuliorum, and makeþ noon mencion of Siluius. Þan bot3 þis Iulus hadde twoe names, and were i-cleped Siluius also, þat ðoon of þe stories ſaileþ. For me seíþ þat þis Brute, whan he was fiftene ȝere olde, slouþ his fader at hontynge; and alle stories telleþ þat Siluius Posthumus was Eneas his sone, and noþt Ascanius sone, and leued long age5 afterward vnslawe, and regned also. Þanne hit is soþ þat þis Siluius Posthumus was noþt Brute his fader, bote vppon caas for þe storie of Rome seíþ þat Ascanius after Eneas his deth norsched yp tenderliche Siluius Posthumus, perfore he is acounted his fader. Herto I wolde assente wip oute doute, ner þat me redeþ þat Siluius was i-slawe of his sone Brute. Gaufridus. Þis Brute slowh his moder in his burþe, and his fader afterward an6 hontynge, whan he was fiftene ȝere olde. Perfore he was i-pute out of Italy, and wente into Grees, and

son of Ascanius, after storyes, began to occupye Briteyne. MS. HARL. 2261.

B. Storyes sene to discorde moche of the fader of Brute. For the storie of Britones seythe Brute to haue bene the son of Siluius, son to Ascanius. But the storie of the Romanes seythe Ascanius to haue geten Iulus, makenge no mencion of Siluius: with owte þis Iulus hade ij. names, and [was] callede Siluius, the oon story faylethe. For hit ys seide that this Brute, of xv. yere in age, did sle his fader in huntenge, and Siluius Posthumus, after alle storyes, was the son of Eneas, and not the son of Ascanius, reignenge and lyvenge longe after that; but peramenture that the storie of the Romanes seythe Ascanius to haue norsched pro pite Siluius Posthumus after the deth of Eneas, and for that to haue bene trawede his fader. Whiche thynge y wolde admitte, if hit were not redeþ that Siluius Posthumus was slyne of Brute his son. Giraldus. This Brute, whiche did sle his moder in the childenge, and also when he was of xv. yere in age, he did slee his fader in huntenge; wherefore Brute, putte from Ityle, wente to the londe

---

1 B.] added from a. b. γ. (not in Cx.)
2 Added from a. b. γ.
3 if, Cx.
4 be, a. γ. (not B. or Cx.)
5 longe after, a. b. γ., Cx.
6 at, Cx.

1 ubi] om. C.D.  
2 So A.D.; Pandrasum, E.  
3 enavigans] so A.B.; navigans, D.E.  
4 Slightly varied and abbreviated in C.D.  
5 Philenorum, B.  
6 ac] om. C.D.  
7 Corineo, B.; Corineo, D.  
8 Sophario, A.; Gaffario, D.; Gophario, Gale.  
9 Turnei, B.; Turnew, Gale.  
10 Turnæ, A.; Turonis, D.; Turon, Gale.  
11 Totenestium, B.  
12 monarchia, C. (not D.)  
13 effectus] om. C.D.  
14 inhabitantes, C.D.  
15 London, Gale.  
16 Siccioniorum, B.; Scicionorum, E.  
17 postquam, E.  
18 post quo saevordates constituit sunt, ins. C.D.
ere by help of pe Troians he ouercome Pandrasus pe kync of Gree, and weded Pandrasus pe kynges douȝter Innoges. Sche 1 deluyered pe Troians, and seillede pennes, and hadde answere of pe goddes, and londede in Afrique. Pan he passede pe numteres 2 of Philenes, pe lake þat hadde Lacus Salinarum, pe salt lake, þe ryuer þat hadde 3 Malae, and Hereules his pilers, and com in to þe see Tyren, and fonde þere Corinious, 4 and wente into Gyan, and ouercome þere Gopharnys, 5 duke of Peytow. And Turnus, Brute his neuew, was i-slave at a citee þat heet Turnupt 6 oper Taroun 7 by his owne name. And panne Brute hadde good wynde, and seilled into Britayne, and helde Bretayne at þe clif of Totenes in Cornewayle, and was first kync of Bretayne al hoole, and destroyed þe geantes þat wonede þeryne; and cleped pe ilond Bretayne by his owne name, and cleped his felawes Britouns, and bytake 8 Cornewayles to Cor[i]neus, and bulde a citee, and cleped hit Trinquantum, as it were Newe Troye. þat citee nowe swatte Londoun, and is vppon Themise. 9 Brut gat þre sones, Locrinus, Cambre, and Albanaetus; and dyde whan he hadde i-regned foure and twenty þere in þe ilond, þe kynge of Scicions 10 faillede whan pey hadde i-reigned an hundred þere

of Greece, ouercommenge Pandrasus, kynge of hit, thro the helpe of the Troiaus, and did wedde Ymogen his douȝter, and deluyerede the Troiannes; whiche saylenge from þat cuntre, hanenge an answere of Diana, londede at Afrique. After that he entred in to the see of Tirus, whiche fyndenge there Corineus, brouȝhte hym in his companye to Acquitanny; whiche ouercommenge Gephyrus, the duke of Pictaues, and Turnus, the son of the suster to Brute, dedde, at Turnip, or elles Tiroune, callede after his name, come to Britayne, to Totenes in Cornawail. In whom he, occupiege the monarchye, destroyede gigantes that inhabite that cuntre, namenge that yle Bruteyne, and his felawes Britouns; þiflenge to Corinicus Cornawail; made a cite on the water of Thamys, callenge hit Urbis Trinquantum, as Newe Troye, callede new London. Whiche gate iij. childer, Locrinus, Cambre, and Albanaetus, dienge after that he hade gouernede that yle xxiiij. yere. The kynge of Scitia faylede, whiche hadde reguide a elxij. yere; after that prestes

1 He, a. b., Cx., correctly.
2 anenters, Cx.; but alteres (allars) is doubtless the true reading, and so b. γ.
3 þat hadde] om. a. b. γ.
4 Corneus, Cx.
5 Gopharnys, Cx.
6 Turnip, a. b. γ.
7 Tarou, a. (Cx. has Taron owther Taron).
8 bytook, a.
9 Tenose, a.
10 Read Sicyon.


pre score and twyne. Samuel after Hely was iuge in Israel twelve 3 ere; so seip Iosephus, libro octavo, nopeles pe Skripture spekep non; 3 perf. From his tyne bygan pe tymes of prophetes, tempora prophetarum. [And] 1 in his priddle 2 ere Dauid was i-bore. Petrus. Pis Samuel ordeyned first companye of clerkes and queres forto synge; and pan me seide pat pey prophécied, pat is to menyge, pei worshipped God bysliche. Afterward Samuel was iuge in Israel vnder Saul ei3tene 3 ere. Loerinus, Brute his eldest sonc, bygan to reigne as it were vppon pe sou)? see to pe ryuer of Homber, 2 and cleped pat partye of pe ilond Loegria, pat is Engelond, as it is i-seide in pe firste book in pe chapitre of Britayne. But Albanaetus was i-slave, and Camber deide; and Loerinus, after pat pey 3 hadde i-regned twenty 3 ere, was i-slave also in [a] 4 batayle pat his wif Guendolena 3 af hym, by cause of a strompet pat heet Estrilda. And Guendolena reigned after hire housbonde fiftene 3 ere.

were made iugges and gouernoures. Samuel was gouernoure MS. HARL. in Israel xij. yere after the deth of Ely, after Iosephus libro octavo; but the story dothe not expresse that from whom the tymes of prophetes began, in the thrydde yere of whom kyng Dauid was borne. Petrus. This Samuel ordeynede conuientes of religious men, whiche were seide also to prophecye, that is, to lawde Godde. Loerinus, the firste son of Brute, began to reigne as on the thrydde parte of Britayne, from the sowthe see of hit vn to the water of Humbre, whiche parte he callede Loegria, after his name. Albanaetus his brother sleyne, and Camber the thrydde brother dedde, Loerinus was sleyne in batelle after the xxli. yere of his reigne, whiche batelle Guendolena his wife movede for an hoore callede Estrilda, whiche reignede after her howsebonde xv. yere.

1 Added from a. b. y. and Cx.
2 Humber, a.
3 He, a.
4 Added from a. b. y. (not in Cx.)

---

1 MSS. have Saul only, for title.  
2 Sacra] om. B.  
4 Samuel, vivente Saul, B.  
5 mortem ejus] eum, C.D.  
6 Petrus, ins. C.D.  
7 xii., Gale.  
8 in] om. B.  
10 Athenienses, D.  
11 C.D. transpose reference as above.  
12 De isto Codro legitur quod, ins. C.D.  
13 Peloponnesibus, MSS., as usual.  
14 et, ins. A.B.  
15 Codri] om. B.  
16 armamenta, B.  
17 interficitur, D. The latter part slightly abbreviated in C. (not D.)  
18 Peloponnesienses, C.D.  
19 descendunt, A.
MONACHI CESTRENSES, LIB. II.

Capitulum vicesimum octavum. Saul.

Saul, of the tribe of Beniamyn, firste kyng off men of Hebrewes, and regned twenty yere; so saip Iosephus. Of pe whiche yere pe Scripture spekep not. Petrus. For Saul regnedде eijtene yere while Samuel lyuode, and two yere after his dhe. Pe fourpe kyng of Latyns, Eneas Siluius, was Posthumus his sone, and bygane to regne and regned oon and pritty yere. In som stories Posthumus his brother, Latinus Siluius,1 is i-sette pe fourpe, and2 pis Eneas is i-sette pe fifte. But in pis place pis Eneas schal be sette pe fourye. Pe seuentе Duke of Athene, Codrus, Melanthus3 his sone, bygane to regne, and regnedе oon and twenty yere. After his dhe kynges of Athene faillede. Augustinus, libro octavodecimo, capitulo quartodecimo. Pe Peloponcen, men of Thessalіа, weren rebel aжent men of Athene. Paune was answere i-еue of4 pe goddes, pat in wheper side pe duke were i-slawe, pat side schulde haue pe maistrye. Perfore pe knyʒtes were i-charged ouer al ping to take good kepe of kyng Codrus. Noyeles Codrus took a pore manis clopinge and a burpen of fagettes on his nekke, and entrede in to pe strengпе of his enemies. And pere was strif arered amonge pe peple; and a knyʒt slow hym, pat he hadde raper i-wounded wip an hook. Whan pat was i-knowe pe Doreyns5 wente away wip oute

Capitulum vicesimum octavum. MS. HARL. 2261.

1 Siluius, MS. (not Cx.) 2 So a, and Cx.; in, MS. 3 Melanthus, MSS. 4 So a, b, g; to, MS. 5 that corce, Cx.
lubrantur. Maluit enim Codrus mori dummodo\(^1\) vincerent sui, quam vivere suis superatis. Post cujus mortem apud Athenas\(^2\) republica per magistratus diu administrata est; solaque libido dominantium pro lege erat; quosque\(^3\) Solon,\(^4\) insignis legum conditor, in duce\(^5\) eligeretur.

Maddan,\(^6\) filius Locrini et Guendolenæ,\(^7\) regnavit apud Britannos\(^8\) quadraginta annis, genuitque Mem- pricium et Maulum.

Amazones invadunt Asiam.

Saul cum filiiis suis\(^9\) occiditur in Monte Gelboe.

Et sic terminatur tertia aetas seculi ab ortu Abraham.usque ad regnum David; habens annos, secundum Isidorum,\(^10\) nongentos quadraginta octo, per generationes quatuordecim; sed\(^11\) secundum utramque editionem,\(^12\) habet\(^13\) annos nongentos quadraginta duos. Ranulphus. Hae diversitas\(^14\) emergit ex hoc,\(^15\) quod Isidorus dicit Samuelem et Saulem præfuisse populo Israel quadraginta annis; cum tamen Josephus, libro octavo, et Magister in historiis dicant Samuelem præfuisse\(^16\) duodecim annis solum,\(^17\) et post illum\(^18\) Saulem regnasse viginti annis.\(^19\)

---

\(^1\) dum, C.D.  
\(^2\) apud Athenas \(^3\) om. C.D.  
\(^3\) usque, B.  
\(^4\) So B.; Salo, A.C.D.E.  
\(^5\) iudicem, B.  
\(^6\) So A.B.D.E, Gale; Maudan, E.  
\(^7\) Gevedalene, A.  
\(^8\) apud Britones, A.; in Britan- niam, C.D.  
\(^9\) suis \(^3\) om. C.D.  
\(^10\) quinto libro, ins. A.B.D.  
\(^11\) sed \(\ldots\) editionem \(\text{om. A.}\)  
\(^12\) secundum vulgarem editionem, B.  
\(^13\) habens, C.D.  
\(^14\) ista autem varietas, C.D.  
\(^15\) eo, C.D.  
\(^16\) populo \(\ldots\) præfuisse \(\text{om. B.}\)  
\(^17\) sahns, A.D.E.; se solo, B.  
\(^18\) post illum \(\text{postmodum, D.}\)  
\(^19\) Slightly transposed in C.D
bataile, and pe Athenes were delyuercd. Codrus were leuere deye and his men haue pe maistrie, pan lyne and his men be overcome. After his depre pe commounalte of Athenes was gouerned by maistres. For pere was no lawe bot likynge of lordeeschipp, forto pat Solon 1 pe noble makere of lawes was i-chose to inuge.2 Maddan, Locrinus his sone, on Guendolena 3 i-gete, regnedele fourty 3ere among pe Britouns, and pat Mempricius and Maulus. Pe Amazones werrepe in Asia. Saul and his children bech i-slawe in pe hille, Mont Gelboe. And so endepe pe priddle age of pe world from pe burpe of Abraham to pe kyngdom of Dauid. Isidorus libro quinto seip pat the priddle age of pe worlde conteynep nyne honred 3ere and two4 and fourty by fourtene generaciouns. But eiper trans-lacioun seip pat pe priddle age of pe worlde conteynep nyne honred 3ere and two and fourty. 5. Pis dyversite bifallep for Isidorus seip pat Samuel and Saul rulede pe peple fourty 3ere; noblese Joseplus, libro octavo, and pe Maister of Stories tellep5 pat Samuel rulede pe peple allone twelue 3ere, and after hym Saul regnedele twenty 3ere.

were delyuercede. For Codrus wylllede rather to dye, that MS. HARL. 2261. his subiectes myȝhte be victores, then for to lyve his subiectes oppressede. After the dethe of whom endy man reigne theare after his pleasure, vn tille that Solon,1 the noble man and maker of their lawes, was electe in to theri gouvournour. Maddan, the son of Locrinus, regnedele on the Britones xl1i yere, whiche gate Mempricius and Maulus. The Amazones entrede in to Asia. Saul was sleyne with his sones in the hilles of Gelboe. And so the thrylde age off the worlde is terminate, for6 the byrthe of Abraham vn to the regne of kyunge Dauid, hauenge after Ysidor, libro 52, ix6 yere and xliij, by xiiij. generaciouns, and after eiper ix6. xlij. yere. 7. This dyversite of yeres may be cause of that thynge, that Ysidorus seythe Samuel and Saul to have rewlede the peple of Israel xlii yere. But Joseplus seythe, libro octavo, and the Maister of stories, Samuel to haue ben gouernoure in Israel onely xij. yere, and Saul to haue reignede after hym xxii yere.

1 Salun, MSS. and Cx. 2 So a.; inges, MS.; was chosen ingou, Cx. 3 eyyte, a., Cx. 4 accorden, Cx. 5 So Harl. MS.; probably a clerical error for fia. 6 So Cx.; Guendolena, MS.

END OF VOL. II.
LONDON:
Printed by GEORGE E. EYRE and WILLIAM SPOTTISWOODE,
Printers to the Queen's most Excellent Majesty.
For Her Majesty's Stationery Office.
[ —750.—4/69.]